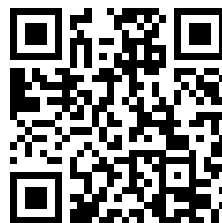
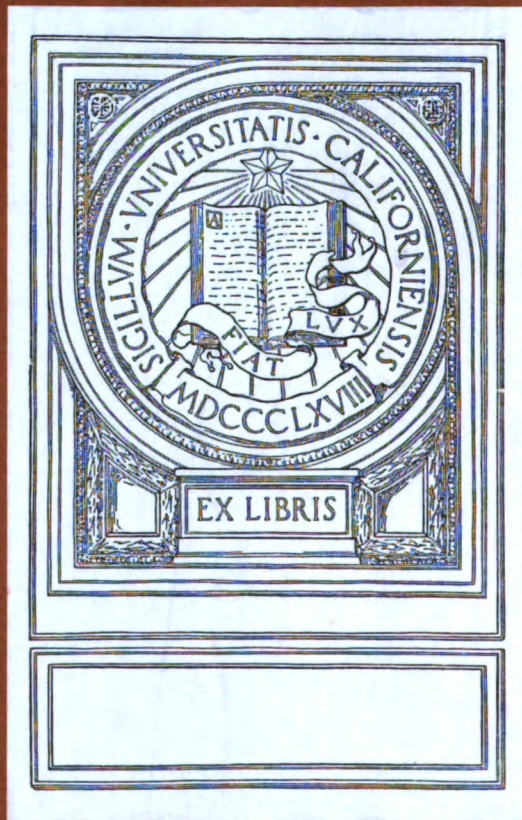

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

GoogleTM books

<https://books.google.com>







2000

THE YORKSHIRE HUSSARS



1854 — REVIEW ORDER — 1894

THE CANTABRIGIA JOURNAL

FOUNDED
BY THE REV. J. H. STUART



Published by the
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON

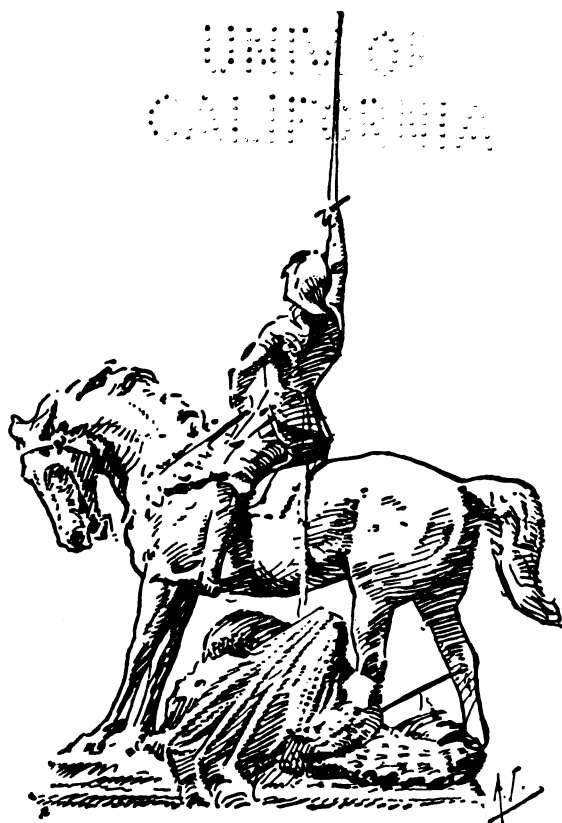
1921



THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XVIII

JANUARY to OCTOBER, 1928



Published at
ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1
LONDON
1928

WITH THE SANCTION OF THE ARMY COUNCIL.

UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

Field-Marshal The VISCOUNT ALLENBY, G.C.B., etc. (Colonel Life Guards and 16th/5th Lancers),

Lieut.-General Sir R. S. S. BADEN-POWELL, Bt., G.C.M.G., G.C.V.O., K.C.B. (Colonel 13th/18th Hussars),

General Sir P. W. CHETWODE, Bt., K.C.B., K.C.M.G., D.S.O., A.D.C.,

Brigadier A. E. W. HARMAN, C.B., D.S.O., A.D.C.,

Lieut.-Colonel Sir A. LEETHAM, K.C.V.O., C.M.G., F.S.A.

HONORARY EDITORS AND SUB-EDITORS.

Managing Editor :

Major-General T. T. PITMAN, C.B., C.M.G. (Colonel 11th Hussars).

Editor :

Captain O. J. F. FOOKS, 14th/20th Hussars.

... Sporting Editor :

Colonel R. J. P. ANDERSON, C.M.G., D.S.O.

... Sub-Editors : ...

Royal Horse and Royal Field Artillery.—Lieut.-Colonel WILFRID JELF, C.M.G., D.S.O., Royal Horse Artillery.

Yeomanry.—Lieut.-Colonel F. H. D. C. WHITMORE, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D., Essex Yeomanry.

Royal Tank Corps.—Colonel W. D. CROFT, C.M.G., D.S.O., Senior Officers School, Sheerness.

Royal Air Force.—Wing Commander W. R. READ, M.C., D.F.C., A.F.C., R.A.F. (late King's Dragoon Guards).

Royal Corps of Signals.—Lieut.-Colonel R. CHENEVIX-TRENCH, O.B.E., M.C., Royal Corps of Signals.

Canada.—Lieut.-Colonel C. E. CONNOLLY, D.S.O., Lord Strathcona's Horse, Calgary.

India.—The Commandant, Equitation School, Saugor.

New Zealand.—Colonel C. G. POWLES, C.M.G., D.S.O., A.D.C., N.Z. Staff Corps, Wellington.

South Africa.—Captain R. D. S. GWATKIN, M.B.E., South African Field Artillery.

Secretary and Treasurer :

Major E. L. HUGHES, D.S.O., O.B.E.

Published at

THE ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W. 1.

Sole Director of Publicity :

C. GILBERT-WOOD, F.R.G.S., F.R.S.A., M.J.I., etc., "Bertwood," Wimbledon, S.W. 19.

Printers :

J. J. KELIHER & Co., LTD., Marshalsea Press, Southwark, S.E. 1

INDEX

- Accidents—By Flood and Field. By *Major J. Goddard*, 102.
- Addington, *Major Hon. R. A.*: A Government Stud Farm, in the Days of the Company Bahadur, 457.
- Aden, Action at, 8th March, 1917 (*Map*), 73.
- Alliances, Regimental, 123, 656.
- Armes Blanches, La Reine des. By *C. C. Wall*, 261.
- Armoured Car Regiment, Cavalry, Organization of A, 656. *How many ...*
- Armoured Cars—Back to the Chariots, 306.
- Ashby, Turner, Brigadier-General (*Illustrated*). By *Colonel H. C. Wylly, C.B.*, 539.
- Beaman, Lieut.-Colonel Ardern, D.S.O.*:
- Destiny, There is A, 253
 - Frightfulness, 569.
 - Ichabod, 386.
- Beasts "of Whatever Description." By *Captain H. Bullock*, 62.
- Bihar Light Horse (*Illustrated*). By *Captain H. B. Ellis*, 617.
- "Bird, A Little, Told Me," 601. *Goose ...*
- Bonde, Count C. Cson.: Notes on Riding in Sweden (*Illustrated*), 240.
- Bride, The Soldier's, 629.
- Browne, Colonel J. G., C.M.G., C.B.E., D.S.O.: The Cavalry Regiments of the Iraq Levies (*Illustrated*), 273, 391.
- Bullock, Captain H.: Beasts "of Whatever Description," 62.
- Canada:
- Canadian Mounted Police, The Royal (*Illustrated*), 78.
 - Remounts in the Canadian West. By *S.S.M.I. W. C. Roberts*, 97.
- "Car-biniers, The Armoured," 469. *For ...*
- Cavalry:
- Armoured Car Regiment, Organization, 656.
 - Epic of 1785, A. By *Percy Cross Standing*, 638.
 - Irregular, Very. By *F. J. Hudleston*, 64.
 - Journal Committee, The, 122.
 - Madras, The (*Illustrated*). By *Major E. J. Shearer*, 347.
 - Medical Arrangements for (*Diagram*). By *Colonel Langford Lloyd, C.M.G., D.S.O.*, 403, 583, 655.
 - Reliefs, 1928-29, 482.
 - Signals in India. By *Captain R. H. Neale*, 574.
 - Spanish, The, 422.

- Cavalryman, A Great (*Illustrated*). By *Bt.-Major A. R. Godwin-Austen, O.B.E., M.C.*, 169, 478.
- China War of 1860, An Incident. By *Colonel H. C. Wyllly, C.B.*, 647.
- Dalton, Major-General J. C.*: A Family Regiment in the Peninsular War (*Illustrated, Map*), 282.
- Destiny, There is A. By *Lieut.-Colonel Ardern Beaman, D.S.O.*, 253.
- Egypt, A Nine Days' Trek with a Squadron in (*Illustrated, Map*), 428.
- Elliott's Light Horse, One of. By *Colonel H. C. Wyllly, C.B.*, 39.
- Ellis, Captain H. B.*: Bihar Light Horse (*Illustrated*), 617.
- Epéhy, Second Lancers at (*Illustrated*), 566.
- Epic, Cavalry, of 1785, A. By *Percy Cross Standing*, 638.
- Establishment, Peace, in Colonies, 303.
- ✓ Experiences, Some, of Light Six-Wheelers with the 1st Cavalry Brigade (Part I), 558.
- Ex-Cavalrymen's Association, 303, 658.
- ✓ Eye for A Horse, An. By *Charles Trehane*, 32.
- ✓ Family Regiment in the Peninsular War, A (*Illustrated, Map*). By *Major-General J. C. Dalton*, 282.
- Fourteenth, The, in Fact and Fiction (*Illustrated*). By *J. Paine*, 605.
- France's "Cavalerie à Pied." By *Percy Cross Standing*, 357.
- ✓ Freak of Nature—A Three-Legged Colt (*Illustrated*). By *C. S. G. Haji*, 38.
- Frightfulness. By *Lieut.-Colonel Ardern Beaman, D.S.O.*, 569.
- ✗ Fuller, Colonel J. F. C.: The Ancestors of the Tank (*Illustrated*), 244.
- ✓ Goddard, Major J.: Accidents—By Flood and Field, 102.
- Godwin-Austen, Bt.-Major A. R., O.B.E., M.C.*: A Great Cavalryman (*Illustrated*), 169, 478.
- Haig, the late Field-Marshal the Earl. An Appreciation (*Illustrated*), 180, 303.
- Haig—British Soldier. By *Corporal-of-Horse R. J. T. Hills*, 644.
- ✓ Haji, C. S. G.: Freak of Nature—A Three-Legged Colt (*Illustrated*), 38.
- Hills, Corporal-of-Horse R. J. T.*:
Haig—British Soldier, 644.
- ✗ Skein, Tangled, The, 27.
- ✗ Winkle, R. van, Trooper, or, The Last Cavalier, 444.
- ✓ History, Cuttings from, 59.
- Hobson, Lieut.-Colonel G. W.*: Ideas on Breaking Polo Ponies, 107.
- ✓ Horse, An Eye for A. By *Charles Trehane*, 32.
- Horwood, A. R.*: Reynard the Fox (*Illustrated*), 233.
- Hudleston, F. J.*: Very Irregular Cavalry, 64.
- ✗ Hume, Major E. G.: Some Thoughts on Modern Reconnaissance (*Map*), 211.

- Ichabod. By *Lieut.-Colonel Ardern Beaman, D.S.O.*, 386.
- India :
- Bihar Light Horse (*Illustrated*). By *Captain H. B. Ellis*, 617.
 - Madras Cavalry, The (*Illustrated*). By *Major E. J. Shearer*, 347.
 - Memorial, War, Unveiling of the 18th K.E.O. Cavalry (*Illustrated*), 616.
 - Mhow Cavalry Brigade, Operations by the, 1st December, 1917 (*Maps*), 44.
 - Signals, Cavalry, in. By *Captain R. H. Neale*, 574.
- Iraq Levies, Cavalry Regiments of the (*Illustrated*). By *Colonel J. G. Browne, C.M.G., C.B.E., D.S.O.*, 273, 391.
- Jousts, Tournaments and Tilts (*Illustrated*). By *Lieut.-Colonel F. E. Whitton, C.M.G.*, 527.
- " Lisette "—An Incident at the Battle of Eylau, 1807, 553.
- Lloyd, Colonel Langford, C.M.G., D.S.O.* : Medical Arrangements for Cavalry (*Diagram*), 403, 583.
- Madras Cavalry, The (*Illustrated*). By *Major E. J. Shearer*, 347.
- Magazines :
- Home and Dominion, 131, 312, 494, 662.
 - Foreign, 135, 314, 497, 664.
- Marchant, Le, Major-General J. G. (*Illustrated*). By *Bt.-Major A. R. Godwin-Austen, O.B.E., M.C.*, 169, 478.
- Mars-la-Tour—The Last Great Cavalry Battle (*Illustrated, Map*). By *Lieut.-Colonel F. E. Whitton, C.M.G.*, 366.
- Maxwell, the late Lieut.-General Sir R., Memorial to, 659.
- Medical Arrangements for Cavalry (*Diagram*). By *Colonel Langford Lloyd, C.M.G., D.S.O.*, 403, 583, 655.
- Memorial, War, Unveiling of the 18th K.E.O. Cavalry (*Illustrated*), 616.
- Mhow Cavalry Brigade, Operations by the, 1st December, 1917 (*Maps*), 44.
- Mountain, Some Men and A (*Illustrated*), Part II. By *Lieut.-Colonel E. F. Norton, D.S.O., M.C.*, 14.
- ~ Mutiny Veteran, A Chat with A, 450.
- Neale, Captain R. H.* : Cavalry Signals in India, 574.
- Néry, 1914 (*Maps*), 182.
- Norton, Lieut.-Colonel E. F., D.S.O., M.C.* : Some Men and A Mountain (*Illustrated*), Part II, 14.
- Notes, 122, 303, 482, 656.
- Obituary Notices, 124, 303, 307.
- " Old Bean," A Veteran of the Indian Show Ring (*Illustrated*), 365.

- Paine, J.* : The Fourteenth in Fact and Fiction (*Illustrated*), 605.
- Peninsular War, A Family Regiment in the (*Illustrated, Map*). By Major-General *J. C. Dalton*, 282.
- Police, The Royal North-West Mounted (*Illustrated*), 78.
- Polo in Peking (*Illustrated*), 267.
- Polo Ponies, Ideas on Breaking. By *Lieut.-Colonel G. W. Hobson*, 107.
- Pony Society, National, 483.
- Prejvalsky's Wild Horse (*Illustrated*). By *G. M. Vevers*, 70.
- Preston, Major T., M.C., T D* : The Yorkshire Hussars (*Illustrated*), 1 Publications, Recent, 138, 320, 501, 669.
- Reconnaissance, Du Groupe de, 290.
- Reconnaissance, Modern, Some Thoughts on (*Map*). By *Major E. G. Hume* 211.
- Regimental Items of Interest, 126, 309, 486, 661.
- Reliefs, Cavalry, 1928-29, 482.
- Remounts in the Canadian West. By *S.S.M.I. W. C. Roberts*, 97.
- ✓ Reynard the Fox—His Nature, Craft and Tactics (*Illustrated*). By *A. R. Horwood*, 233.
- Roberts, S.S.M.I. W. C.* : Remounts in the Canadian West, 97.
- Sabreur, A Beau, of Revolutionary France. By *Percy Cross Standing*, 92.
- Shearer, Major E. J.* : The Madras Cavalry (*Illustrated*), 347.
- Sheppard, Captain E. W.* : British Women Soldiers in War, 203.
- Signals, Cavalry, in India. By *Captain R. H. Neale*, 574.
- ✕ Skein, The Tangled. By *Corporal-of-Horse R. J. T. Hills*, 27.
- Spanish Cavalry, The, 422.
- Sporting Notes (*Illustrated*), 159, 332, 516, 680.
- Squadron on its Own, A (*Map*), 470.
- Standing, Percy Cross* :
 ✓ Epic, Cavalry, of 1785, A, 638.
 France's "Cavalerie à Pied," 357.
 Sabreur, Beau, of Revolutionary France, A, 92.
- Stud Farm, Government, A, in the Days of the Company Bahadur. By *Major Hon. R. A. Addington*, 457.
- Sweden, Notes on Riding in (*Illustrated*). By *Count C. Cson. Bonde*, 240.
- ✕ Tank, The Ancestors of the (*Illustrated*). By *Colonel J. F. C. Fuller*, 244, 477.
- ✓ *Trehane, Charles* : An Eye for A Horse, 32.
- Vevers, G. M.* : Prejvalsky's Wild Horse (*Illustrated*), 70.
- ✕ *Vino Veritas*, In, 198.

- Wall, C. C. : " La Reine des Armes Blanches," 261.
 Whitton, Lieut.-Colonel F. E., C.M.G. :
 Jousts, Tourneys and Tilts (*Illustrated*), 527.
 Mars-la-Tour—The Last Great Cavalry Battle (*Illustrated, Map*), 366.
 Winkle, Trooper R. van, or, The Last Cavalier. By *Corporal-of-Horse*
 R. J. T. Hills, 444.
 Wire Jumping in New Zealand (*Illustrated*), 549
 Women Soldiers in War, British. By *Captain E. W. Sheppard*, 203.
 Word, Just the, 402, 652.
 Wyllly, Colonel H. C., C.B. :
 Ashby, Turner, Brigadier-General (*Illustrated*), 539.
 China War of 1860, An Incident, 647.
 Elliott's Light Horse, One of, 39.
 Yeomanry, Scottish, in 1828, 578.
 Yorkshire Hussars, The (*Illustrated*). By *Major T. Preston, M.C., T.D.*, 1.

PLATES

The Yorkshire Hussars, 1854 and 1894	..	..	..	..	Frontispiece
Mount Everest :					To face page
The North Col from Camp III	..	..	..	..	16
Camp IV near the North Col	..	..	..	..	20
Freak of Nature : A Three-Legged Colt	..	..	..	..	38
Prejvalsky's Wild Horse	..	..	..	..	70-72
The Royal Canadian Mounted Police :					
A Corporal	..	..	..	..	78
On the Way to Churchill	..	..	..	..	82
Patrol Crossing Ice. Hudson Bay Country	..	..	..	..	82
Fort McPharson in the Far North	..	..	..	..	88
Dog Team at Fort Churchill, 1914	..	..	..	..	88
" Call Boy "	..	..	..	..	160
" Book Law "	..	..	..	..	162
" Sprig "	..	..	..	..	164
" Beam "	..	..	..	..	166
Major-General John Gaspard Le Marchant	..	..	..	..	169
The Late Field-Marshal The Earl Haig	..	..	..	..	180
Reynard the Fox	..	..	..	..	236

	<i>To face page</i>
Riding in Sweden	240, 242, 243
The Ancestors of the Tank	244, 246, 248, 250
Polo in Peking	270
The Cavalry Regiments of the Iraq Levies :	
1916-1917	274
The Grey Section 1/2nd Regiment, 1926	276
Native Officers 1/2nd Regiment, 1927	280
Lieut.-Colonel Norcliffe Norcliffe, K.H.	284
Lieut.-General Sir Charles Dalbiac, K.C.H.	286
The Canadian Army Team in New York, 1927	332, 336, 342
The Madras Light Cavalry, 1818-1845	347
" Old Bean "—A Veteran of the Indian Show Ring	365
Von Bredow's Cavalry Brigade at Vionville, 16th August, 1870	368
The Coptic Monastery of St. Marchaios	436
A Tournament as Practised in the XVth Century	527
Knights Jousting	536
Brigadier-General Turner Ashby	540
Wire Jumping in New Zealand	550, 552
Lance-Dafadar Gobind Singh, V.C.	566
Ramnuggur, The Charge of the 14th Light Dragoons, 22nd November, 1848	610
The 18th K.E.O. Cavalry War Memorial	616
The Bihar Light Horse	622

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

JANUARY, 1928

LIBRARY OF
CALIFORNIA

THE YORKSHIRE HUSSARS

By MAJOR T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D., *Yorkshire Hussars*

OFFICIALLY formed on 13th August, 1794, the Yorkshire Hussars are the third oldest yeomanry regiment, the Royal Wiltshire and the Warwickshire being a few months senior. These early regiments, as is generally known, were formed under the threat of a French invasion,* among them being the York North Riding Yeomanry† and the Northern Regiment of West Riding Yeomanry Cavalry,‡ which changed its title to "The Yorkshire Hussars" in 1819.

The first-named regiment was disbanded later, and the Yorkshire Hussars then recruited in the North Riding as well as in the northern part of the West Riding of Yorkshire. The first arrangement was that the troops comprised about fifty men each; they were to be paid only when they were called out; they found their own horses; their uniforms were bought by local subscription, and the Government provided arms and accoutrements.

* See "The Origin of the Yeomanry Cavalry," *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, January, 1922.

† One of the captains in this regiment was Charles Duncombe, great-grandfather of the late Earl of Feversham who commanded the Yorkshire Hussars in 1914.

‡ Captain R. York of this regiment was great-grandfather of the present C.O.

We have a record of Lord Morpeth's troop of the North Riding Yeomanry being inspected on 24th June, 1797 ; it was told that it compared very well with a regular regiment—a compliment paid to one of the present Yorkshire Hussar squadrons 130 years later.

The Northern Regiment of West Riding Yeomanry Cavalry (a somewhat cumbersome title) was in 1803 reorganized in four squadrons: Ripon, Knaresborough, Harewood and Tadcaster, with regimental headquarters at the former place. Each squadron contained two troops, then and for many years after. The Regiment wore scarlet Hussar jackets, with white breeches—sometimes overalls—and a helmet with a bearskin and a plume at the side : this latter was replaced by a shako in 1817. The first commanding officer was Lieutenant-Colonel Robert Harvey, who held the post for sixteen years.

On 26th September, 1803, we are told that "The Regiment marched from Scarborough to York (forty miles in one day) and was inspected the following day by Lieutenant-Colonel Ponsonby, Fifth Dragoon Guards."

We imagine few units would like to emulate this feat in these days, what with tarred roads and motors ! Another entry of 1803, "John Burgess, late 20th Light Dragoons, appointed Sergeant Major"—shows that the attachment of regular N.C.O's as instructors to Yeomanry, dates back to the earliest times.

On 5th December, 1805, we have a record of the Ripon Squadron attending a thanksgiving service at the cathedral in honour of the victory of Trafalgar. The eight days' annual training (or "permanent duty" as it was called) was in this and the following years held at York, Ripon, Doncaster or Pontefract, and the Regiment seems invariably to have got a good report from the inspecting officer. In 1817, for instance, a report by Major-General Sir John Byng contains the words :—"I should have been satisfied to have seen an equal appearance in any Regular Regiment which had been together as many months as this had hours at exercise."

This year saw the raising of a fifth squadron at Leeds* which made the Regiment up to ten troops, with a total strength of about 500.

The "Northern Regiment of West Riding Yeomanry Cavalry" changed its title to "The Yorkshire Hussars" on 11th January, 1819, and a week later Colonel Harvey died. He was succeeded by Lord Grantham, who afterwards became Earl de Grey and held at different times the offices of First Lord of the Admiralty and Lord Lieutenant of Ireland. He commanded the Yorkshire Hussars for no less than forty years. We may note here that Captain W. Slayter Smith (late 13th Light Dragoons and 10th Hussars) was adjutant for forty-one years, his time in that position nearly—but not quite—coinciding with Lord de Grey's as commanding officer.

During the early part of the last century serious disturbances sometimes occurred in the manufacturing districts, which often necessitated the calling out of troops, both regulars and volunteers and in May, 1826, the Yorkshire Hussars were summoned to Bradford and Addingham to protect mills, etc., from the violence of the rioters.

In 1827 the colour of the jacket was changed from scarlet to blue.

The Duchess of Kent and Princess (afterwards Queen) Victoria visited York in September, 1835, and the Regiment found guards of honour and escorts. This same year the annual assembly was at York,† a custom which continued right up to 1899. The drill, etc., took place on Knavesmire (York racecourse), often in conjunction with whatever regular regiment was stationed in the city. The Regiment took the oath of allegiance to Queen Victoria in York Minster on 8th October, 1837.

The Queen Dowager (Queen Adelaide) travelled from Leeds to Harewood House and on to Bolton Bridge on 20th July, 1840, an escort of Yorkshire Hussars being provided for both journeys.

* It was commanded by Captain W. Beckett, great-great-uncle of Lord Grimthorpe who commands the present Leeds Squadron.

† Regimental H.Q., however, were at Ripon till 1871.

August, 1842, witnessed the outbreak of serious Chartist riots in the West Riding, and the Regiment found itself on duty in the Leeds and Bradford area, with the 17th Lancers and other troops. One Yorkshire Hussar troop under Captain York had to charge the mob at Cleckheaton.

A month later, the De Grey Rooms in York—named after the C.O.—were opened as a permanent officers' mess, which was used until billets were replaced by camps in 1900.

In 1856, the shako which had been the full-dress head-dress for nearly forty years, was done away with and a busby substituted; whilst a further alteration in uniform was made in 1871, when pantaloons and knee-boots were adopted for mounted parades in lieu of overalls.

The title "Princess of Wales's Own" was conferred on the Regiment in February, 1864, the plumes being added above the White Rose of York which had hitherto formed the Regimental badge.

There is nothing much to record till we come to 1894, when the centenary of the Regiment was marked by Colonel The Earl of Harewood and the officers giving a dinner to the N.C.O's and men, 353 of whom attended.

A printed form entitled "Yeomanry Cavalry Training Return, 1897," issued by the Adjutant-General, shows the Yorkshire Hussars as having 379 of all ranks present at that year's training—the highest number in any of the thirty-eight Yeomanry regiments then existing. The establishment was 431, and in addition to other figures, the form shows that 331 men rode their own horses. The same form for the next year, 1898, gives the Regiment second place for the number of men present at training.

* * * * *

Like most other Yeomanries, the Yorkshire Hussars sent out a "company" to the South African War, two Yorkshire and two Notts companies forming the 3rd Battalion Imperial Yeomanry. The Yorkshire Hussars' company was commanded by Major R. F. T. Gascoigne* (afterwards D.S.O.), the other officers being Captain J. Mackillop (attached from Leeds Rifles),

Captain C. W. E. Duncombe,* Lieutenant R. B. Wilson, and Lieutenant Stephen F. Wombwell. There were about 120 N.C.O's and men, of whom only about a third were previously in the Regiment, the others just joining for the campaign. Sailing on 29th January, 1900, the Yeomen reached Table Bay on 20th February, joined Lord Methuen's division, and had their first fight (in which they greatly distinguished themselves) at Boshof, near Kimberley, on 5th April. More fighting followed at Paardeplats, Heilbron and Rhenoster River; and in July at Oliphant's Nek, Lieutenant R. B. Wilson was wounded and died later. Captain Duncombe, who served for a time on Lord Methuen's staff, notes in his diary that the 3rd I.Y. "met and fought the Boer on twenty-five occasions" and had a casualty list of ninety-two. He also records how after the action of Buffels Hook, De Wet told a British prisoner that he "would rather meet 1,000 British regular cavalry than 200 of the Yeomanry in Methuen's division."

The Yorkshire Hussars' contingent sustained another serious loss when Captain Stephen Wombwell died of enteric fever at Vryburg in February, 1901. He was the only surviving son of Sir George Wombwell, late 17th Lancers, who rode in the Charge of Balaklava.

* * * * *

The Boer War marked the passing away of the old-time Yeomanry training for eight days in billets, and mornings spent in executing "field movements" in showy uniform. In June, 1900, the Yorkshire Hussars under Colonel Lord Bolton held their first camp at Harrogate, with the Yorkshire Dragoons; this was for a month, but all subsequent camps were (and still are) for a fortnight.

In 1902-3 the Regiment was re-clothed in khaki, the full dress† being done away with for mounted parades and only retained for church parades, etc. Swords were done away with

* Both afterwards commanded the Regiment.

† See right-hand figure in coloured plate. It is interesting to note that the Yorkshire Hussars are one of the very few units which still wear the slung pelisse in Levee Order.

except for officers, the idea being that time only admitted of the men being taught one weapon—the rifle. The latter was carried, when mounted, muzzle upwards with a short sling round the right arm, the butt being supported in a small bucket which gave occasional trouble with sores. Until 1914, all ranks wore brown boots and gaiters, whilst the breeches had a scarlet piping down the seam: slouch hats were worn with khaki from 1903 to about 1907.

In 1903 the Regiment's title was altered to "*Alexandra Princess of Wales's Own.*"

The Territorial Act of 1908 resulted in the Yorkshire Hussars, Yorkshire Dragoons, and East Riding Yeomanry being put together as the Yorkshire Mounted Brigade. In 1912 the Brigade trained at Bulford (Salisbury Plain), this being the first—and so far the only—occasion the Yorkshire regiments have trained outside their own county in peace-time.

* * * * *

We now reach the Great War. On 5th August, 1914, all Territorials were mobilized, and in response to telegrams, the Yorkshire Hussars assembled at their respective squadron headquarters, as follows:—"A" Squadron (Major F. H. Fawkes) at Leeds; "B" (Major Viscount Helmsley) at York; "C" (Major A. E. Collins) at Knaresborough; and "D" (Major E. A. Herbert) at Middlesbrough. Here the men were issued with horses and arms—it has been mentioned that yeomanry were not then armed with swords, though old pattern swords were kept in store. They were, however, armed with the same (short) rifle as the regulars, though infantry Territorials did not get it for some months.

Within two days, the Regiment had taken up its pre-arranged war stations along a part of the Yorkshire coast, with headquarters at Scarborough; Lieutenant-Colonel E. W. Stanyforth was in command, with Major Lord Deramore second-in-command, Captain Malise Graham (16th Lancers) adjutant, and Lieutenant Viscount Lascelles machine-gun officer. "D" Squadron was then divided among the others to bring them up to war strength.

Later in the month it was decided to form what was at first called a Foreign Service Regiment, comprising those of the existing regiment who were willing to serve overseas, and made up to strength by recruits. This unit was shortly afterwards termed the 1/1st Yorkshire Hussars, and was commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Viscount Helmsley,* with Major C. L. Ward-Jackson (a former officer of the regiment) second-in-command, Captain Malise Graham adjutant, with Majors W. G. Eley (late 14th Hussars and a former adjutant), G. R. Lane Fox, and E. York as squadron leaders.

In October this regiment was detailed at divisional cavalry to the North Midland (afterwards 46th) Division under Major-General Hon. E. Stuart-Wortley, proceeding to Hitchin (Herts) and later to Harlow, Essex, where the winter 1914-15 was spent. As the weeks wore on, all ranks became impatient to cross the Channel; but nothing happened till February, when the disappointing news came that the regiment was to be split up, each squadron to go to a different infantry division. Accordingly "B" Squadron (Major Eley) sailed for France with the 46th Division in February, 1915; "C" Squadron (Major York) with the 49th (West Riding) Division in April; and "A" Squadron (Major Lane Fox) with the 50th (Northumbrian) Division also in April. Regimental Headquarters and the machine-gun section accompanied the latter; but in the middle of May the headquarters were broken up† and the M.G. section (Lieutenant T. Preston) was sent intact to the Essex Yeomanry, 8th Cavalry Brigade, with whom they took part in the Battle of Loos in September. (It may be noted here that the machine gunners were the only Yorkshire Hussars who were destined to remain as cavalry throughout the War; on the formation of the Machine Gun Corps early in 1916 they

* Later Earl of Feversham.

† The C.O.—Lord Feversham—went home to Yorkshire, raised and commanded the 21st Bn. K.R.R. ("Yeomen Rifles") and fell in action at Flers (Battle of the Somme), 15th September, 1916.

Lord Lascelles (who had succeeded Captain Malise Graham as adjutant) rejoined the Grenadier Guards in which he had formerly been, and later commanded their 3rd Battalion.

became part of the 8th M.G. Squadron in the 3rd Cavalry Division, did duty in the Thiepval trenches on the Somme in August, 1916, and took a prominent part in the Battle of Arras, April, 1917. Besides various other spells in the trenches when the Cavalry Corps was holding a sector of front, they were in all the cavalry operations during the spring and autumn of 1918, sustaining several casualties and being awarded certain decorations—though it must be realized they had officially ceased to be Yorkshire Hussars early in 1916).

Reverting to the three squadrons of the Regiment, it soon became apparent that their chances of taking part in any cavalry operation were remote. The truth was that though there was much scope for mounted action during the first three months of the War in 1914, and again in the spring and autumn of 1918, the divisional Yeomanry regiments got little or no opportunity in either period: for they were still in England during the early part, and by 1918 many of them had been dismounted owing to the general cavalry reduction due to man-power and shipping difficulties. Consequently (through no fault of their own but through sheer bad luck in not being among the Yeomanries chosen to serve in cavalry brigades in France and elsewhere), the Yorkshire Hussars' war history is perforce a tale of disappointments and uncongenial work done without complaint and without much hope of distinction. "Our work," wrote an officer in a letter, "was very miscellaneous. We fetched up remounts, dug trenches, buried wires, supplied M.M.P., and orderlies to the divisional staff, and observation posts to the infantry in the front line."

Taking the squadrons in turn, "A" (with the 50th Division) arrived in France on the eve of the Second Battle of Ypres. From 22nd to 25th May the squadron—dismounted—came under the orders of Cavalry Corps and was in the G.H.Q. trenches near the Menin road, losing five men killed and five wounded (the latter including Major Lane Fox). The next few months were spent in the Bailleul-Hazebrouck area, finding men for digging parties, police duties, etc.

"B" Squadron (Major Eley) with the 46th Division, was

in much the same district at first, moving later to Bethune. On 31st August, 1915, Lieutenant E. S. Turton who had joined the Regiment in 1908, was killed by a sniper when attached to the 8/Sherwood Foresters in the trenches. In January, 1916, there was apparently some idea of the 46th Division going to the East, and "B" Squadron entrained for Marseilles; but after a fortnight there they returned to the north, where they were located in the St. Pol area, supplying men for miscellaneous duties.

"C" Squadron (49th Division) was billeted in turn at such places as Merville, Steenwerck, Proven and Esquelbecq, from which various working parties were sent to the line held by the division; but there is nothing much to record until May, 1916, when G.H.Q. sent out a letter from which the following is an extract:—

"In consequence of the growth of the Army and the development of the Corps organization, much of the independence of action and movement formerly belonging to the Division has passed to the Corps. It has been found necessary, therefore, to reconsider the organization and distribution of the mounted troops hitherto allotted to Divisions.

"The allotment of these troops was originally made with a view to providing the Divisional Commander with a small mobile force under his immediate control for reconnaissance, protective and escort duties; and on the assumption (originally correct) that the Division would be moving either independently, or with one or more roads allotted to its exclusive use.

"These conditions are unlikely to recur; any future movement will be by Corps, marching and fighting in depth on a comparatively narrow front. The mounted troops belonging to the Corps must, therefore, be assembled under the direct control of the Corps Commander, and organized as Corps units.

"The Commander-in-Chief has accordingly decided—

(a) to convert the Squadrons of Divisional Cavalry into

Corps Cavalry Regiments . . . one Regiment being allotted to each Corps."

Accordingly on 10th May, 1916, the Yorkshire Hussars found themselves re-united as a regiment under the XVIIth Corps (Lieutenant-General Sir C. Fergusson) at Gouy-en-Ternois, where on 1st June Lieutenant-Colonel W. Pepys, 13th Hussars, took over command. Later the Regiment moved to Berles (between Arras and St. Pol) where it remained on and off for more than a year.

The satisfaction felt by all ranks at being together again was heightened by the hope that opportunities of proper cavalry work might now arise; and during the summer and autumn of 1916 and the spring of 1917 there were, as we know, times when the Higher Command thought a break-through was a possibility; but these hopes never materialised. The main task of the Regiment was the finding of working parties in the Arras sector, the squadron leaders often being in command of the Corps working parties. In September, 1916, came the sad news of the death in action of their former C.O., Lord Feversham; and on 7th November, Lieutenant-Colonel Pepys was appointed to another command and handed over that of the Yorkshire Hussars to Lieutenant-Colonel W. G. Eley, Major G. R. Lane Fox becoming second-in-command. After spending the winter at Warne the Regiment was located again at Berles and later at Habarcq, where on 14th August, 1917, it received the disheartening tidings that the Yorkshire Hussars, with other yeomanries, were to be broken up and used as reinforcements to various infantry battalions. Lieutenant-Colonel Eley at once wrote to XVIIth Corps asking that the Regiment might, if possible, be transferred as a complete unit to the Tank Corps, but without avail: he, the squadron leaders and some others were appointed to posts either in France or at home, whilst the bulk of the Regiment went to the infantry base for five or six weeks' special training.

On 11th October, 1917, twenty officers and 396 other ranks of the Yorkshire Hussars joined at Zudrove the 9th West Yorkshires in the 32nd Brigade, 11th Division, this battalion

henceforth being known as "The 9th (Yorkshire Hussars) Battalion West Yorkshire Regiment."* The Hussars soon settled down to do their best in their new surroundings. After a spell in the line north of Lens, they carried out on 10th November a successful raid on the "Norman brickstacks," Captain Roger Walker commanding five parties of fifty men each—all being in charge of Yeomanry officers, of whom one, Lieutenant C. S. Haslam, was unfortunately killed. Lieutenant-Colonel F. P. Worsley, D.S.O., was the battalion commander at this time.

The winter 1917-18 was spent in the depressing colliery district south of Bethune, with spells in the line opposite Hulluch, Haisnes, etc.; the 11th Division was still holding this sector in March and April of 1918, and so was not fated to stand in the path of the great German offensives on the Somme and Lys, though it was on the fringe of the latter battle on 9th April and following days, the 9/West Yorks coming in for some gas shelling at St. Elie and elsewhere. The summer passed in comparative quiet; the Battalion won the rapid shooting competition and also the sports cup for the brigade, and on 15th June earned a complimentary message from the Corps Commander by a raid at St. Elie craters, in which the entrance to a tunnel was successfully blown up by Second Lieutenant A. V. Dalley.

The 24th August saw the Battalion shifted to the Arras front, where the First Army was commencing its final advance. The morning of 30th August found the Battalion in the line east of Pelves, where a complete German clothing store and other captures were made; on this and the next day the casualties were only two killed and six wounded. After two spells in the line near Boiry (with rests between), the Battalion under Major R. E. M. Cherry, M.C., took part, on 27th September, in a successful attack on Aubencheul-au-Bac, whilst at midnight on 3rd October, Marquion Quarry was assaulted and captured. The enemy was now in full retreat in this area, and daybreak on 10th October saw the Battalion across the Sensée Canal at

* They wore Yorks. Hussar Cap-badges and West Yorks. Collar-badges.

Thun-Leveque, north of Cambrai. On this date Captain (acting Lieutenant-Colonel) R. H. Waddy assumed command of the 9/West Yorks. After going a short distance back for a rest, the Battalion was again in the forefront of the battle during the first week in November, advancing south and east of Valenciennes. Having dug in on the evening of 3rd November just beyond the Jenlain-Curgies railway line, they advanced at dawn on the 4th through thickly wooded country. With slight trouble from enemy machine guns, the Battalion cleared Le Triez, capturing many prisoners and releasing a number of civilians, and pushed on towards Roisin. Here, however, the troops on the right failed to get up into line, and a retirement became necessary to a sunken road near Roisin, where a number of casualties were caused by the enemy's heavy shelling. Captains N. T. Hartley, M.C., and E. Westcott, M.C., Second-Lieutenants E. S. Burnley and W. T. Howe and twelve other ranks were killed, whilst three officers and fifty-seven other ranks were wounded and forty-four missing. One of the three wounded officers, Captain Roger B. Walker, M.C., died in Boulogne a few days later; he had been one of the keenest of the pre-war Yorkshire Hussar officers, having joined originally in 1908.*

The attack on Roisin was renewed on 5th November; there was little opposition except that the Germans again shelled the village heavily, despite the fact that it was full of civilians. The Battalion sustained forty-three casualties and rested in Le Triez next day. The advance was resumed on 7th, 8th and 9th November through Eugnies, Hergies and Bettignies (on the Maubeuge-Mons road), the enemy having practically ceased to fight. On the 10th, the 11th Division was relieved and the 9/West Yorkshires' active part in the Great War came to an end. They marched back by easy stages to Wallers (five miles west of Valenciennes), where the winter was spent and where, on 20th February, 1919, General Sir H. S. Horne, the First Army Commander, presented colours

* Two of his elder brothers, Majors O. B. Walker (15th Hussars) and W. B. Walker (K.O.Y.L.I.) had fallen in 1914.

and thanked the Battalion. Demobilization was proceeded with, and by the end of May, 1919, only a cadre of six officers and forty-one men remained.

* * * * *

It is some compensation for their war-time disappointments that the Yorkshire Hussars are, under the post-war re-organization, one of the fourteen Yeomanry regiments who still retain their cavalry status.* After a two years' eclipse as a mounted unit, the Regiment was re-formed in 1920 under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel G. R. Lane Fox, T.D., M.P., and held a short training at Harrogate, albeit with reduced numbers. Since then (except for the "strike" years 1921 and 1926) the usual fortnight's camp has been held each year, and much strenuous work has been put in at week-ends and during the winter evenings. The present C.O. is Lieutenant-Colonel E. York, T.D., and the three squadrons are located at Leeds, Middlesbrough and York, with regimental headquarters at the latter place as before. It may be of interest to note that the three adjutants since the War are Captain M. F. Dudgeon, M.C. (Inniskillings), Captain I. M. Hedley (17th Lancers) and Captain T. L. Dugdale (Royal Scots Greys). The Regiment is justifiably proud of its musketry, having won Lord Scarbrough's Cup—open to the 5th Cavalry Brigade—five times in the last seven years; whilst in a Vickers Gun competition started two years ago, it has each time headed the score for the Brigade.

* A list of these is given in "The Changes of the Yeomanry Cavalry," CAVALRY JOURNAL, January, 1922.



SOME MEN AND A MOUNTAIN

By LIEUT.-COLONEL E. F. NORTON, D.S.O., M.C., R.A.

PART II

THE best thing about an expedition of this sort is the way in which it brings out the best qualities in every member—unless he is a “rotter,” and then it brings out the worst; happily we had none such on these expeditions. Looking back on the experience of two years, I often marvel at the way in which men seemed to rise superior to the common weaknesses of the flesh: some of the following anecdotes may serve to illustrate what I mean.

The morning of 11th May provided a test which found out all of us except one. Somervell, Geoffrey Bruce, Odell and I, with some twenty porters, were at Camp III and had spent two days and nights there in a continuous blizzard; each night it had blown “great guns” and it was a marvel that our little 10 lb. or 16 lb. tents had survived: each morning daylight had found the inside of every tent drifted up with an inch or more of the finest snow powder covering everything and filtering into our sleeping bags. Each day we had worked hard carrying loads into camp from a dump on the glacier below or trying to evolve order out of the chaos of snow-covered piles of stores, tents, and bedding, which represented the camp.

Overnight it had been decided that unless the weather improved we must evacuate the glacier camps and retire to the Base, for under prevailing conditions it was out of the question to attack the formidable wall of ice and snow leading to the N. Col—our next step: rightly anticipating that this move would almost certainly be necessary, we all had our allotted tasks for the morning. We somehow got some breakfast cooked on primus stoves and by 9 a.m. the word to

clear camp was given. I think we all failed pretty miserably except Bruce: I know I only succeeded in checking and making a list of some mess stores before I turned into my tent again and lurked there for a good ten minutes trying to coax some life back into my numb fingers, for though the temperature was only a little below zero it was blowing a full gale.

Bruce's job was to get a move on the porters who were to strike and bag their tents and make a pile of stores weighted with stones and so disposed that they should not be buried and lost in the snow when next they were required. But the porters were for all the world like bees on a frosty morning: half of them professed themselves too sick to move; for, fine fellows as they are, these men have a characteristic common to all Orientals that I have met: once they pass their limit they are finished; they seem to lack that moral reserve which only lifelong tradition and training can provide.

But Geoffrey Bruce was at the top of his form; he took a firm stand on a large rock in the middle of camp where, from his exposed side, he soon looked like a snow man and, without an unnecessary movement, he got such a hustle on the men that they seemed to have been galvanised, and this with no undue harshness: I saw him at intervals delivering judgments of Solomon on the sick and "would be" sick whom he categorised with unflinching decision as "fit for duty" or "excused" as the case might be.

It was all done by sheer personal influence: he called each man by his name and I can only imagine that the whip lash of his tongue cut, when required, deeper than the wind; it nearly gave me frost bite merely to look at him.

In little more than half an hour Camp III was struck and neatly packed and piled and the party was making a fair wind of it down the glacier, some of us none too proud of our morning's work.

If that morning got to the bottom of Somervell it was the only occasion in two expeditions on which I saw that most undefeatable of men defeated. The impression of him which

I remember most vividly is connected with an incident on 24th May ; but I must "hark back."

We returned to Camp III on 19th May : next day the route to the N. Col was made good by Mallory, Odell and myself, and the suitability of the old site of Camp IV confirmed. Next day a party of porters under Somervell, Irvine and Hazard pitched a camp of four tents on this site in a snowstorm and after homeric exertions.

According to plan the two former returned to Camp III leaving Hazard with twelve porters at Camp IV, where he was to be relieved next day by Odell and Geoffrey Bruce : the intention was that this pair should next reconnoitre a site for Camp V at about 25,000 and pitch some tents there.

Again the weather defeated us : on 22nd May, it snowed all day. May 23rd broke clear, fine and bitterly cold, and Geoffrey and Odell started with a party of porters ; but before they got half-way to Camp IV it was again snowing hard and they had to turn back, for the steep snow and ice slopes leading to Camp IV were always dangerous under fresh snow. As they turned back they saw through the blizzard above them that Hazard and his porters were descending ; this was a wise decision on Hazard's part for it seemed almost certain to us at the time that the monsoon was already upon us, and Camp IV was no place in which to be cut off under monsoon conditions. Unfortunately, partly from lack of nerve and partly owing to the fact that they were suffering from frost bite, four of his twelve porters turned back from the tail of the party and remained at Camp IV. Hazard and the remaining eight arrived in Camp III at dusk.

The situation was very serious. It was now snowing steadily, big soft flakes which surely meant the monsoon and a highly dangerous condition of the N. Col slopes : of the four men marooned at Camp IV, two were reported to be frost bitten and we did not know if they were fit to walk ; they were believed to be short of food and we knew that they must be a prey to the superstitious terrors to which these men are subject if left alone on a big mountain.



III.—The North Col from Camp III

This photograph was taken in 1922
Note the track of an avalanche which killed seven porters ;
it is on the right centre of the picture nearly half-way up

of
asia

That night we more or less abandoned hope of climbing the mountain. The only thing which mattered was that the four men must be saved; I was firmly determined that this year no more porters must lose their lives. Once again it was decided to evacuate Camp III and to withdraw the party to the lower glacier camps, and while Geoffrey Bruce conducted this strategic movement to the rear, Mallory, Somervell and I were to try and rescue the four men from Camp IV.

It stopped snowing at midnight: it froze very hard and there was a cloudless sky all next day. As it turned out this combination saved the situation for it bound the new fallen snow to a holding consistency. As a result, Mallory, Somervell and I found ourselves at 4 p.m. at the foot of the final steep and dangerous traverse leading to the shelf just below the N. Col on which Camp IV had been pitched. We had had a gruelling climb, often to our knees, once to our waists in snow: but we had met nothing really dangerous. We knew that the final traverse was the crux: once before in 1922 we three with Morshead had descended this same traverse under somewhat similar conditions after we had been caught high on the mountain by a heavy fall of snow; and I, for one, had a vivid recollection of how, on that occasion, the whole surface of new snow cracked across each time I drove in my ice axe—threatening to peel off and carry us with it. In 1921, Mallory had crossed it with the first party to reach the N. Col and when they returned an hour or so later the whole surface of fresh snow where they had crossed had been swept away by an avalanche in the interim. It was a nasty place—an exceedingly steep slope some 200 feet across and 400 feet in height finishing off in a big cliff of blue ice at the bottom; there was no way of circumventing it and it had to be traversed diagonally upwards to the point where we could see the heads and shoulders of the four porters waiting for us on the shelf above.

This brings me to my picture of Somervell: he insisted on being the one to go across; so Mallory and I made a secure anchor of two ice axes driven to their heads in the snow and

round this we passed the rope and payed it out as he made his way across. He went very slowly, cutting and kicking big steps—a most exhausting process; every now and then he stopped and gave vent to a paroxysm of coughing, for he was suffering from the “high altitude throat” that affected many of the party: after each of these spasms he would lean his head on his forearm, supported on the slope, in an attitude of complete exhaustion; so steep was the slope that he seemed to be standing almost upright in his steps as he did this, but the precarious surface held. When he was five or ten yards from the shelf the rope ran out; we could give him no more; but time was desperately short if we were to reach the glacier before dark and there was nothing for it but to take a risk. I shouted instructions to the porters that they must cross, one by one and unaided, the remaining unbridged gap represented by these five or ten yards.

This the two first did without mishap and one was passed across the rope and Somervell's ladder of steps to where Mallory and I represented safety. As the second was just starting to follow him the remaining two men left the shelf and foolishly tried to cross together to Somervell; their combined weight was too much for the treacherous surface and in a moment they were flying down the slope on their backs, feet first in an almost vertical position. For a moment my heart stopped beating as in fancy I foresaw the tragedy—two black figures shooting together over the ice cliff below; and then I breathed again, for the snow piled under their feet and pulled them up in a few yards.

Somervell was as cool as the proverbial cucumber: “tell them to lie still” he shouted to me (for I had rather more command of the language than he) and while I did so he started the second man across the rope to us, chaffing the two shivering wretches below him over his shoulder; I heard one of them give a kind of involuntary bark of laughter. Somervell then drove his ice axe into the snow to its head and, untying the rope from his waist, held its end in his right hand: Mallory and I similarly held the other end at arms length: by straining

the rope tight round the anchor of his axe Somervell could just descend far enough to reach the two men with his left hand and, grabbing them in turn by the scruff of the neck, he dragged them back to the anchor of his axe. Thence they were passed across to us, slipping and sliding and hanging on to the rope, for their nerve had gone and they no longer stood upright in the steps.

Finally Somervell himself recrossed the slope. The steps he had made were all ruined but there was no time to renew them and it was a fine object lesson in mountain craft to see how his erect poise carried him across the track which the porters had been able to cross only by the aid of the tight rope handrail.

We reached the glacier at dusk, after a trying time shepherding down the four porters, one of whom had very badly frostbitten hands and one slightly frostbitten feet.

Hingston was doctor and naturalist to the Expedition: fond of birds and beasts, he had a perfect passion for insects. While most of us rode about half and half, all the 300 miles from Darjeeling to Mt. Everest, Hingston walked—slowly—the whole way, in order that he might look on the under side of every stone in Tibet. He brought home 10,000 specimens, of which a number are new to science, the gem of his collection being a spider collected at about 22,000 feet on the cliffs of the North Peak above Camp III; of this he found more than one specimen without counting the little pieces of fluff off our stockings with which we used to manufacture most realistic spiders to be distributed about Camp III for his edification. For at least ten miles in every direction from this spider there is no green thing—just rock, ice and snow—and I believe there is no other insect: what it lives on and how it got there remain a complete mystery.

Now Hingston had never climbed a real mountain and this fact should be borne in mind in view of the incident I am going to describe.

On 4th June, Somervell and I returned to Camp IV from our attempt on the mountain and at eleven o'clock that night

I was suddenly stricken with acute snow blindness. Throughout that day I had dispensed with my goggles while on rock (the top 6,000 feet of the N. face of Mt. Everest is predominantly rock, for the great N.W. wind blows the snow off as fast as it falls) and so great is the power of the sun in the rarefied atmosphere of great altitudes that this was evidently an unwise proceeding. I remained quite blind throughout the 5th, so Somervell, who descended on that day to Camp III, arranged for Hingston to come up on the 6th to Camp IV to see what he could do for me.

Soon after I had heard—for I could not see—the departure of Mallory and Irvine as they started on their last climb, Hingston appeared at Camp IV with two trusty porters: he had apparently accomplished the quite formidable snow and ice climb of nearly 2,000 feet as if he had been climbing snow mountains all his life.

He could do nothing for my eyes at the moment and so proposed that he should take me down to Camp III: I quite agreed, for I was as helpless as a baby, and at Camp IV I was only a nuisance to Odell and Hazard; their role was to act as supporters to the climbers above and all their attention was needed for this. As, however, they were free for the moment, Hazard undertook to rope me from above as far as the foot of the ice chimney which formed the most difficult part of the descent; at 10 a.m. we started down.

On all the steepest and most awkward parts of the climb we had attached fixed ropes which hung down and helped the laden porters in their ascents. On an ice wall below the chimney that ingenious couple Odell and Irvine had hung a rope ladder made of alpine rope and big tent pegs. It was these artificial aids and the fact that I wore crampons (an arrangement of eight sharp spikes fitted to the sole of a boot like skates) that made the descent possible. Our procedure was that Hazard held me from above with a rope round my waist while Hingston descended ahead of me and placed my feet in every step I took from top to bottom, while the two porters stood by and helped where there was room. It was a most tedious process; but



IV.—Camp IV near the North Col

70322
AUG 2 1955

I never had an anxious moment, for Hingston displayed the steadiness and resource of an alpine guide—a wonderful performance in a novice. I particularly remember the descent of a most airy and exposed ice ridge: it was like walking backwards down the curved edge of a knife blade, one side of the blade being a sheer ice cliff some hundreds of feet in height, the other the side of a bottomless crevasse: knowing the route as I did I could tell exactly where I was and but for Hazard's rope from above and Hingston's steady hands on my ankles I should have felt very lonely on this particular section.

At perhaps 3 p.m. we arrived on the glacier and here our procedure changed: Hingston and a porter each took one of my arms and when we came to a small crevasse—there was a series of these—the former would say “one, two, three—hup” and we all jumped in unison. It must have been an absurd sight to see us “one, two, three—hopping” down the surface of the glacier like three drunken revellers.

Arrived on the moraine—an embankment of tumbled and icy rocks set at every angle—I was done. I could never have gone a quarter of a mile here; so a porter was sent on to Camp III and returned with six more and a one-man carrier—an arrangement like a bicycle seat fixed on to a knapsack-frame that we used for evacuating casualties: on this I was carried for the last mile or so into camp. These men are surely the most surefooted in the world, for the six of them took it in turns to carry my long, top-heavy 12 stone—and though the going was abominable, a treacherous mixture of ice and rock, not one of them made a single false step until they landed me safe in camp at about 5 p.m.

Next day I was beginning to open my eyes and by the day after that my sight was almost normal—so that from Camp III I was able to watch what little there was to be seen of the last tragic phase of the expedition: but before I describe it I must introduce Mallory.

So far as the problem of conquering Mt. Everest concerned the mountain itself, Mallory was the great driving power of three successive expeditions: he it was who, with Bullock,

tried three sides of the mountain and eventually found the accepted route to the top in 1921 : in 1922 it was he who again, with Somervell, pioneered the route to the N. Col, and he took part in the attempt which reached a height of just under 27,000 feet without oxygen : he was one of the party which was carried away by an avalanche in the final attempt of that year.

In 1924 he led the party which worked out a variation of the old route to the N. Col : he took part in the expedition to rescue the porters from Camp IV which I have described : he, with Geoffrey Bruce, reached nearly 25,000 feet in the first of our final series of attempts, but was turned back owing to a failure of the porters. Undefeated and indomitable he again started for the summit six days later, this time with oxygen, and was last seen at about 28,200. In fact in three years there were only two important climbs in which Mallory did not take part : I think every member of each expedition would willingly have admitted that he was in a class by himself—a kind of super-mountaineer.

To what did he owe this pre-eminence ? He was a beautiful physical specimen : 5 ft. 10 or 11 in. in height and weighing 11 st. 7 lbs. in his clothes, he was of exactly the height and weight that seem to fit a man for almost anything. He was exceptionally good-looking. When I first met him in the autumn of 1921 he had the face of a boy of eighteen : two more years on Everest aged him ten or fifteen years in appearance but left his essential qualities untouched, for he seemed to be actuated by some inner fire and when he was once strung up for action it was impossible to get to the bottom of his fund of energy and determination.

“ If you can force your heart and nerve and sinew,
To serve your turn long after they are gone,
And so hold on when there is nothing in you,
Except the Will that says to them ‘ Hold on ! ’ ”

He was a most finished and accomplished mountaineer ; his movements were the acme of grace and rhythm and economised energy : in his younger days when climbing in the

Alps he would not admit defeat and climbed until he "fell off"; but time and experience had sobered this exuberance and by 1924 his discretion was scarcely less than his valour.

The night after I said good-bye to them at Camp IV he and Irvine slept at Camp V while Odell and Hazard remained at Camp IV in their role of "supporters": Bruce, Hingston, Noel and I were at Camp III. The following night the pair slept at Camp VI at about 26,800 and Odell, following in their tracks with two porters, slept at Camp V: the weather continued all that could be desired. Mallory sent a note down from Camp VI by the porters who had accompanied him there to say that they had gone well on a limited supply of oxygen so far; that the weather looked perfect and that we were to look out for them at the foot of the final pyramid at eight next morning.

Accordingly, the morning of 8th May found every glass in Camp III glued to the mountain. But there had come a change in the night: the top 2,000 or 3,000 feet of Mt. Everest were peppered with fresh fallen snow and shrouded intermittently with some rather damp and "cotton-woolly" clouds: we didn't like the look of it for we were obsessed by the fear of a party being caught on the mountain when the monsoon broke; and I knew from personal experience how such a sprinkling of snow accentuated the danger of the slippery, slabby rock composing the whole top of the mountain; on the other hand, it was very comforting to see that there was little or no wind high up.

Under these conditions we could see nothing of the climbers, but towards evening the clouds began to melt away and about sunset the whole north face of the mountain was brilliantly lit by the evening sun and quite clear: you can picture the excitement at Camp III—the hope that presently two tiny ant-like figures would appear descending the great North ridge and that something in their gait would tell us that they had won: then we did pick up a solitary figure coming down, but this we identified as Odell whose intended movements we knew. By dark we began to be anxious and uneasy, for though more

than one party had descended part of the North arête in darkness before, such a proceeding usually meant that things had not gone altogether according to plan.

We should have been far more anxious had we known what Odell had seen that day at about 12.50 p.m. from near Camp VI. A rift in the mist had disclosed to him a section of the great ridge that leads from the N.E. shoulder to the summit, the route that Mallory was known to favour in preference to the lower parallel route that Somervell and I had taken: he thought that he could identify a feature that we called the "Second Step," one of the principal obstacles on this route. On this he suddenly saw something move—and then he picked up two black figures just in the act of surmounting the feature; the leading figure apparently turned and helped the second up, and then—the mist curtain was drawn again to hide for good and all this tantalising last glimpse of the climbers: at this height on Mt. Everest nothing but man has ever moved, and the figures could only have been those of Mallory and Irvine. It was now nearly five hours after the time at which Mallory had told us to look out for them at the foot of the final pyramid—and they were still at least an hour's climb below that point: they were evidently upward bound, yet they had barely time at the most favourable computation to reach the top and back to safety by dark.

Until late that night watchers at both Camps III and IV kept the north face under continuous observation but no light was seen: next morning we again searched every inch of the mountain with binoculars and telescope in the hopes that the pair, having slept in Camp V or VI, might now be descending the ridge: from Camp IV they could actually see the tiny solitary tent, 4,000 feet above, which represented Camp VI, but no sign of life could be detected.

At about 11.30 a.m. we saw Odell leave Camp IV with two porters and (for the third time in six days) head up the North ridge: we had now little hope of the return of the missing men and we settled down for another period of gnawing anxiety until Odell should be safely back with, perhaps, some

light to throw on their fate. The monsoon must now be imminent, and so long as any members of the party were on or above the North Col we could have no peace of mind. Our anxiety was accentuated next day for I have seldom seen a wilder day on the mountain: there seemed to be—and no doubt there were—two currents contending for mastery, the great prevailing N.W. wind meeting the S.E. monsoon current: the result was such a wild tossing of cloud and driven snow all along the N.E. ridge as I have never seen before—and in that boiling cauldron Odell must be fighting his way to Camp VI.

We had arranged a system of signals with Camp IV: by placing blankets on the snow its occupants could indicate to us the result of Odell's mission; for Odell had arranged to signal down in like fashion from Camp VI. In due course, at about 2 p.m., we saw the figures of men at Camp IV preparing to make a signal; we knew beforehand what it must be but it was a dramatic moment when the black cross which meant "No sign of Mallory and Irvine" took form on the glittering snow slope. By 5.30 p.m. we saw Odell once more reach Camp IV and the next morning the party was safe at Camp III.

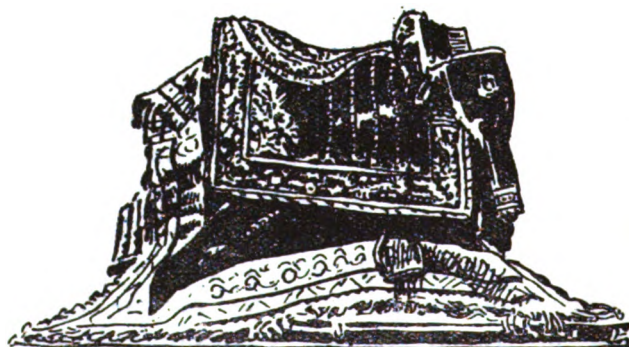
So ended the 1924 attempts. Did Mallory and Irvine reach the summit? and how did death find them? In all probability we shall never know. My own view is that the time and place at which they were last seen were such that the odds against their having succeeded were very long, but it is nevertheless just possible that they did; and my own view is that they slipped and fell, for I know how treacherous was the going just ahead of where they were last seen and doubly so when powdered with fresh snow which conceals the precarious footholds. Roped together, as they must surely have been, if one fell the other could scarcely have held him, for the outward sloping angle of the rock strata is such that there is neither handhold nor "belay" for the rope.

I believe the tragedy caused a considerable stir at home: there were many who deplored the unjustifiable sacrifice of such splendid lives, and asked "What is the good of it when all is said and done?"; or as a business man in India once

said to one of us "We can't see the good of your Everest Expedition: it isn't going to alter the value of the rupee by one pie."

To such my answer is that an enterprise which can bring out all the finest qualities of its members must be worth while; if there is no sordid consideration of gain attached to it that at least is something for which to be thankful in this material age. Let us rather look on it as a chance for one more flicker of the spirit of enterprise that made the British Empire before the world grew too small and too crowded.

"Our fathers in a wondrous age
'Ere yet the earth was small,
Bequeathed to us an heritage
And doubted not at all
That we the children of their heart,
Which then did beat so high,
In later time should play like part
For our posterity."



THE TANGLED SKEIN

By CORPORAL OF HORSE R. J. T. HILLS

NEVER, surely, has the order of things military been so much in the melting pot as at the present time. "An intelligent trumpeter" it has been said, "is just as likely to draw up a successful plan of campaign, as might Marlborough were he to-day C.I.G.S." The fact is, of course, that no one will be able to prove the value, or otherwise of modern developments, save in actual war.

During the war we settled down in our trenches, more or less comfortably. Inventive gentlemen came forward with various ingenious devices for the harassing of the enemy. They were tried out, if they were in any degree feasible, in real live warfare, and, if successful, added to the impedimenta of the "P.B.I." or other appropriate arm.

1918 left all tacticians resolved on one point. It would be the Commander's duty, in any future campaign, to avoid, at all costs, the stagnation of a war of position. "Keep moving" might well be sloganised for a present-day army. But how? There's the rub. Some there be who revert boldly to 1914, with some slight deference to aeroplanes and the like. "Pish," howls the other wing, "Antique. You fight with bow and arrow. Mechanize, mechanize." It was inevitable that such extreme schools of thought should have been set up. Much might have been gained from a reconciliation. Nor is this so impossible as at first sight appears.

The whole argument is generally summarised, rightly or wrongly, as Tanks versus Cavalry. Grand manœuvres of 1925 were avowedly shaped as a phase of the argument. They

terminated, incidentally, rather unfortunately from the mechanical point of view. The Great War was disastrous to the Cavalry Arm. Trench warfare lasted so long that its earlier achievements were forgotten. The final advance was rapid—almost unopposed—and a well organized pursuit was stopped by the Armistice. So rare were opportunities for the effective appearance of *L'arme blanche* that leaders almost lost the habit of including a cavalry scheme in their arrangements at all.

The direct result of all this was the commencement of the policy of disbandment and reduction.

The Tank was a marvellous invention. Let us make no mistake about that. It put heart into the almost despairing infantryman of the later Somme days. It struck terror into the heart of the unprepared Bosch. But—there was a big but—our friend Fritz did not remain terrorised. His artillery was reorganised to meet the new menace. His only compliment was to convert a few thousand heavy rifles of—it was said—1870 pattern, into anti-tank rifles. Who of us does not remember the Somme Valley of 1918? It was littered with British tanks like a nursery littered with broken toys.

The tank has advanced since then, admittedly. It attains a speed of 15 m.p.h. It is served by one of the most efficient Corps in the Service. It still has its mechanical defects; chief among them the frequently breaking “track.” It still forms a large target for artillery which receives special training in dealing with it. Moreover, one thinks with misgiving of the unfortunate tank gunner, cooped up within its stormy interior, who is expected to register direct hits on enemy positions and troops.

The only real testing ground for the new tank is the actual field of battle. Until then everything is in its favour. It moves over unstricken country. It is in a position to ignore the protests of other arms. Granted that it has come to stay—at any rate until the next war—troops must be found to accompany it. Tanks can raid, may advance. They cannot hold; they have difficulty in successful reconnaissance. The problem of the mechanized infantrymen is still to be solved.

It may prove insoluble. The use of vehicles for the infantry may have to be confined to the transportation of troops to the fighting zone. Bunch infantry together, herd them into machines of whatever power and design for covering ground, and they at once become targets. The enemy gunner and airman commence to lick their lips in anticipation of the slaughter.

Here might well be found the basis for reconciliation between the extremes. Have your tanks. Provide your artillery with tractors. The mounted man may prove their best ally. He can advance with speed ; not advertising his coming as does the cross country machine. He can fight mounted or dismounted. In extended order he provides but a small target swiftly offered. He may combine his movements with individual intelligence which is impossible to the mechanical soul-lessness of the tank (this with no meaning detrimental to the crew.) Even the vaunted stopping power of the machine gunner was found to be not nearly so great as was at first claimed on its behalf.

It is a popular fallacy—especially among the ranks of the professional military pressman—that the cavalryman is out of date. Even the earnest student is a little blinded by the sword. He is prone to think of the cavalryman disporting himself on the lines of Meissonnier's battle pictures. No arm can have done more to keep itself in touch with modern developments than the cavalry. Mounted action is regarded as a rare luxury. The veriest trooper knows that practically the whole of his actual fighting must be done dismounted. The horse is just the means to that end.

Everything has been done to facilitate movement. Loads have been cut down to a minimum. It was admirable, of course, that the old-time cavalryman on his horse could boast that he was able to move and subsist, for a time, away from the supply columns. He was complete as he stood. But he could not stand for long ; not if he wished to move as well. This idea has been sacrificed. British warms, blankets, feeds, picketing gear and the rest have been consigned to the M.T. (and how

rarely does the R.A.S.C. fail those who put their trust in its wheels.)

The cavalry unit of the present day is not only the finest reconnaissance medium to date (the aeroplane notwithstanding) it is also a mounted infantry force—however much the purists may shudder at the term—such as never before existed. What more suitable arm to accompany your tanks ; to hold on until the arrival of the infantry ?

The question of the light gun is a difficult one. Few will deplore the passing of the Hotchkiss. Shall we gain—or lose—by the introduction of a new weapon in its place ? Specialists of any kind are a not unmixed blessing when they are actually included in the ranks of a unit. Life becomes too complicated. The Vickers gun must be held, always, as *sans reproche*. The most rabid cavalryman may even consent to its mechanization, as is being done in certain units.

It would be a bold suggestion, one that would be howled down, as like as not, that, so far from a reduction of cavalry, an increase would the better meet the case. Yet consider. Although uninformed as to exact statistics, one remembers meeting the 74th Division of Infantry in France. The most cavalry that were ever included in the B.E.F. were five divisions, British and Indian, plus one independent Canadian Brigade and the Corps Cavalry.

No general, even if he had the whole of that force under his command for a battle could ever afford to have any “cannon fodder” ideas about his mounted men. Time and again, in earmarking this or that division of infantry to lead an attack, a commander was forced to consider the possibility of that division disappearing altogether as a fighting force. He would never have dared to risk losing one brigade, or even regiment, of cavalry. There were no more behind. There must have been occasions—they will occur to the minds of most of us—when a simple “over the top and the best of luck” type of order to the leading cavalry might have changed the whole course of the campaign, opened the gates for the pouring of the surging flood which piled itself up from Loos onwards.

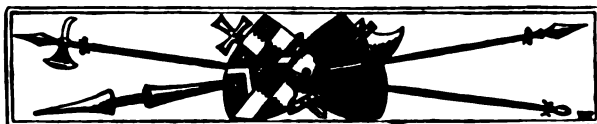
The cavalry had to be saved until those responsible could bet on a certainty, which never came.

The problem is insoluble—in peace. Long may it remain so. It would prove a strange reversal of Fate, if, when the next war should come, we should be confronted by the spectacle of a furious running around—a frenzied harking back to South African days, in the reformation of the old “M.I.”



A LONG MARCH

THE 13th Cavalry of the United States Army has lately completed on change of station one of the longest cavalry marches of recent years. The regiment marched from Fort Russell, Wyoming, to Fort Riley, Kansas, a distance of 625 miles.



AN EYE FOR A HORSE

By CHARLES TREHANE

"THAT fellow Anson really does get my goat," said Cartwright as he and Philips walked back with me from Mess one evening.

"Fancy *him* talking about having an eye for a horse," he went on disgustedly. "Why, he doesn't know a horse from a mule really."

The regiment was stationed in the Punjab, in the middle of the great horse-breeding district of India. We had rather a big Mess at the time, as most of the unattached officers in the cantonment lived with us, and one fellow—a Major Anson—wasn't too popular. It was his own fault; he always knew everything about everything, and though his knowledge of "God's own creature" was really very limited, he tried to impress us all that what he didn't know about horses wasn't worth knowing. It used to cause a good deal of amusement.

"I bet he couldn't recognize one of his own ponies if it was mixed up with a lot of others," went on Cartwright.

"No, I don't suppose he could really," I said, "but he's not likely to let you prove it."

"Wish we could," muttered Philips thoughtfully.

"Well, why not?" said Cartwright eagerly. "He keeps his ponies down in the Big Compound stables and I know for a fact that now there's no polo on he only goes and sees them once a week. I've got a wheeze, Jack laddie, little tickle in the old grey matter. Coming in with me?"

"'Course," said Philips.

"Right," and he turned to me—

"What'll you bet me, Major, I don't prove it—to Anson himself—and you can be the judge?"

"Ten chips, if you like," I said.

"Done," said Cartwright, "and within the next fortnight," he added.

"Righto," I laughed, "only don't go getting yourself into trouble," and I turned in at the gate of my bungalow.

They were a cheerful couple of young devils, Cartwright and Philips, always up to some leg-pull or other. Only the week before there had been an incident which I happen to know they were responsible for.

Some people had made some rather facetious remarks in the Mess Complaints Book, and a certain senior member of the Mess Committee had been very pompous about it; he had stuck up a notice which read—"The Complaints Book is meant for legitimate complaints; humour is deprecated"—which, of course, was altogether too much for Cartwright and Philips.

The next day the book was discovered lying open for all to see with a full-page colour print of a nymph, cut out of the current issue of *La Vie Parisienne*, pasted into it. Underneath were neatly printed the words: "There are no flies on this young lady, but there were two in the butter this morning."

The pompous senior officer had nearly had apoplexy.

However, I had quite forgotten the incident when about a week later Anson came to me. There was a big horse fair being held at Ghorapur, about ten miles away, and he suggested I should go out with him in his car.

"Don't suppose there will be anything much there," he said, "but I want to try and pick up a raw country-bred and train it myself, you know, what! You can help me with the lingo. And young Cartwright wants to come too."

I always find horse fairs amusing and his horse-buying would probably be even more so, as he spoke Hindustani extremely badly, so I agreed to go with them.

The next morning we started off, he and I and Cartwright and a syce that Anson had got hold of, and after half-an-hour's jolting over bad roads reached Ghorapur.

We soon saw signs of the fair. On either side of the road leading up to the ground were booths packed tightly one against the other, past which a brightly—though rather

dirty—dressed crowd continually wandered ; they spread all over the road, meandering slowly along or standing about in groups chattering ; many of them carried freshly-cut lengths of sugar-cane and were biting pieces off the end and chewing them as they walked along.

Anson got a bit ruffled by a small group refreshing themselves from the stall of a *meeta pani walla*.*

“ Awful mob, isn’t there ? ” he said. “ Damn it,” and he jammed on the brakes and just avoided a gaunt old man perched on the rump of a very small cow-hocked donkey, his feet trailing in the dust on either side of it. He seemed to be quite deaf and called forth several pointed remarks anent the use of the highway—with improbable surmises as to his parentage—from our syce. But he went serenely on, looking very idiotic and rather venerable. .

Eventually we got to the fair ground itself and leaving the car started to have a look round.

The general impression was animals and tents. In the centre was a large official marquee and near it four rings roped off in which the various classes were paraded. Dotted about all over the ground were smaller tents, belonging to local Khans or farmers who had come in from the surrounding country for the show. The rest of the ground was covered with horses of every description—brood mares with foals, brood mares without foals, colts and fillies, geldings and stallions ; some well-groomed and in excellent condition, others with rough coats and looking very poor ; in addition, a fair sprinkling of donkeys and here and there the obsequious *bial*.†

We wandered about for some time without Anson being able to find anything that suited him, and he and I were standing with Bahadur Khan, an Indian officer in my regiment, who had joined us, beside one of the big rings watching the Government District Board stallions parading, when Cartwright came up with a rather grizzled old man, his beard dyed red with henna, dressed in dirty white, with a blanket thrown over his shoulder.

* Sweet-drink man. † Indian bullock

"Salaam, Huzoor," said the old man, touching his forehead.

"Salaam," I replied, and we proceeded to indulge in the secretive whisperings with which the buying and selling of horse-flesh is conducted the wide world over.

"The old bird has got a five-year-old gelding for sale apparently," I said to Anson, "and wants you to go and see him."

"Good," said Anson. "Let's go and have a look at him before anybody else gets there," and we accompanied the old man down a long line of mares and foals while he walked at my side enlarging on the merits of his horse.

"No sahib," he said, "has yet seen it, or of a certainty by now it were sold, but doubtless your Honour will like it, for is it not the child of a *panch kalyan*?"*

At last we arrived in front of a roan mare with white points and a skittish foal that scuttled round to her far side as we approached, and standing beside them was the paragon of all the virtues we had come to inspect.

He was rather a dark chestnut with a small star, nibbling at a pile of freshly-cut grass in front of him. He hadn't got a bad head, was a trifle straight in the shoulder and his girth did not exactly remind one of Ormond, but he was well ribbed up, nice and short in the back, and his forelegs looked as if they would stand a lot of hard work.

"Good horse that," said Anson.

"Not at all bad," I agreed. "Let's see him trot."

He didn't turn his feet out and he trotted well clear.

"Suppose you don't think much of him," said Anson, seeing Cartwright's pursed lips.

"Oh, yes," answered Cartwright. "He's rather like that pony of yours, 'Bahadur,' isn't he?"

"My dear boy," said Anson in a superior voice, "I can't congratulate you on your eye for a horse. Why, Bahadur has quite a different . . . um . . . er . . . face."

"Well, I don't know; I've never seen Bahadur, but, anyway, it doesn't matter much," I said to stop the argument.

* A term applied to animals with four white stockings and a blaze; a marking highly esteemed amongst the natives of India.

And Anson proceeded to look into his mouth, though I had a pretty shrewd idea he didn't know the first thing about "ageing."

"I'll buy him," he said, turning to me, "but I don't know much about this rotten lingo, don't yer know. Will you do it for me? Perhaps your Indian Officer could help us, what?"

"I'll try, if you really want me to," I replied. "We shall have to get a vet. to look at him, of course, but that will do later."

"I'll give up to five hundred, provided he's sound."

"All right. Then the game now begins," and I turned to the owner:

"I am afraid," I said, "he is not up to the standard we want . . . he is too small . . . except his head . . . he is not a good horse."

"No," echoed Bahadur Khan, "undoubtedly what the sahib says is true."

The owner shrugged his shoulders. "As Allah knows," he said, "he is a fine horse, but of course (with the expressive turn of the palm of his hand upwards) it is as your Honour wills."

"Yes," I said thoughtfully, "I'm afraid he's not really what we want. I daresay we can find something better," and I started to move away.

"Perhaps the sahib might be foolish enough to give three hundred rupees for him," I heard Bahadur Khan say quietly before he joined me.

And then we wandered slowly off and took deep interest in a brood mare. We had moved on several paces and were studying a very weedy-looking three-year-old with no bone, before the old man again appeared beside me—

"The gelding," he said, "is worth seven hundred rupees, but I will sell him to your Honour for six hundred."

"Six hundred?" I answered, amazed. "If he was a good horse I could not give you more than three hundred."

"It pleases the sahib to jest; but your Honour should not make fun of a poor man," he replied. "I could not sell for one pie less than five hundred—surely a small matter to one of your Honour's substance."

I smiled and we moved back towards the object of our mutual interest.

By this time several little groups of interested spectators had gathered and the serious business of the bargaining now began, Bahadur Khan produced a "broker"—a small weedy-looking individual who appeared from nowhere and proceeded to murmur in an undertone to the owner of the horse.

"Who is this fellow butting in?" asked Anson indicating the new arrival.

"That's the broker, or necessary evil," I replied. "You see, in the East the great principle is to employ as many men as possible on a job that could easily be done without them. It's their solution of the unemployment problem."

"Really," said Anson. "What's he do, anyway?"

"Well, he's supposed to assist both the buyer and seller to come to a mutual agreement. What he actually does is to get a five rupee commission for doing precious little. But, anyway, it is quite an amusing little ceremony. You watch."

The broker was now standing in front of Bahadur Khan and the owner of the horse. With a ceremonial flourish he produced a large silk handkerchief which he spread over his hands and then held them out in front of him. First Bahadur Khan put a hand under the handkerchief and clasped his and then the owner of the horse did the same; the way in which the hands were clasped signifying different amounts of money.

Thus, with secrecy, and due observance of the ritual of the East was the bargain concluded and Anson became the owner of the gelding for four hundred and fifty rupees.

* * * *

The next morning I met Anson in the Mess after breakfast.

"How's the new purchase?" I asked.

"I really don't know. I haven't been down to see him yet. Would you care to come along with me?"

"Yes," I said. "I've got a few minutes to spare before 'Stables.' I'd like to come."

"Do you mind if I come along, too?" said Cartwright,

who had just come in, and we all went off down to the Big Compound.

When we arrived at the stables Anson ordered the gelding to be led out. There seemed to be rather a commotion and a certain amount of whispering among the syces, but eventually the horse was produced.

And what a horse it was !

I hardly understood the full significance of things immediately, but I don't think I shall ever forget Anson's face.

I suppose little incidents slowly pieced themselves together in his brain and he gradually realised what had happened. His jaw dropped and he stood stock still, staring with wide open, gaping eyes.

He saw before him a sort of dual personality—a Jekyll and Hyde horse. If it had been all chestnut with a small star it would have been the purchase of yesterday, while if it had had two white stockings to its forelegs and a big star it would have been his pony "Bahadur."

As it was, it was both ; but the edges of its star and the stockings to both forelegs were a decided shade of *bright mauve* !

I was too astonished to say anything. And then I turned round and met Cartwright's dancing eyes.

"Philips found out that a very strong solution of permanganate of potash dyed white hair a beautiful chestnut," he remarked, "but I never thought it would fade so quickly."

"Well, I'm damned," I said, after a pause. But I paid him the ten rupees. He probably needed it. It must have cost him quite a lot.



FREAK OF NATURE : A THREE-LEGGED COLT

By C. S. G. HAJI, G.B.V.C., Veterinary Inspector, Civil Veterinary Department, Lower Sind Circle, Karachi, India

(Reproduced by kind permission of the Editor, "The Veterinary Journal")

As I cannot find that a freak of nature of this kind has been recorded, this photograph may be of interest to the members of the profession.

The subject is a brown country-bred colt, foaled in September, 1925, in a village near Matli, in Hyderabad (Sind) District. Both the sire and dam are quite healthy and this is a first foal.



The entire near fore limb below the scapula is absent. There is a small fleshy growth attached to the skin over the scapula ridge. The owner refused to have the foal destroyed at birth and it was sent to the Karachi Zoological Gardens, where it remained for some months. The animal is now able to stand for only a very short time, and is now in a Panjrapole, a charitable institution run by Hindus, for old and infirm animals.

70. VIKI
AIRPORT



ONE OF ELIOTT'S LIGHT HORSE

By COLONEL H. C. WYLLY, C.B.

It is a matter of history that while Elliott's Light Horse did not join the British Army in Germany until the operations of the Seven Years' War had been for some considerable time in progress, that newly raised Corps very speedily "got busy," and snatched an individual Battle Honour before it had been more than a very few days in the country.

There was at that time serving in the Regiment a Corporal of the name of George Cæsar Hopkinson, who, having been born in 1738 at Ripon, in Yorkshire, must have been a young man of two and twenty when, in 1760, he embarked with Elliott's for Bremen; of his early service little is known, but he had probably joined the Regiment, when it was raised, as a Gentleman Volunteer.

When in the summer of 1761, the Allied Army marched against Soubise, a British Infantry Brigade, with Elliott's Light Horse and some Prussian Hussars, was directed to occupy some high ground upon the enemy's right, and the French then at once sent fifty men of the *Volontaires de Clermont* to protect this flank. Sergeant Hopkinson was ordered with twenty of his men and some of the Prussian Hussars to attack this body, but Elliott's out-galloped the Hussars and arrived at a small wood into which the French had retired, and at the edge of which was a broad ditch. Elliott's however, was not to be checked, and Hopkinson and his men leaped the ditch, receiving the fire of the enemy in doing so, and took the French officer

and the whole of his party prisoners before the Hussars arrived upon the scene. Lord Granby, in reporting the affair to Lord Bute, is full of praise of the behaviour of Sergeant Hopkinson's men ; he wrote : " The prisoners say that they can't sufficiently extol their behaviour ; not a man taken by Elliott's was plundered, and as a striking instance of their humanity and generosity, one of the French officers, having presented and snapt his piece at a Sergeant of Elliott's who had called to him to surrender, the Dragoon, instead of cutting him down, as would in general have been the case, only seized him by the arm and made him prisoner. Elliott's had three men wounded, one of whom is since dead."

Later on—on the 1st July, 1762—there was an affair near Homburg, in which the Blues and Elliott's distinguished themselves, and which is described as follows, by Lord Granby, who was an eye-witness of all that took place : " I marched, on the 30th June, at night, from Durrenberg to Fritzlar, with the Blues, Elliott's, Sprengel's and Weltheim's. . . . From that point I was to proceed to dislodge M. de Rochambeau's Corps at Homburg by attacking his left, while Lord Frederick Cavendish . . . was to attack his right. When we came near he struck his tents and advanced a little to meet me, but when he discovered Lord Frederick's column he began his retreat. Our cavalry pressed to engage him ; Elliott's led, having the village of Kottsdorf on the right—through the enclosure and charged most gallantly, but Colonel Harvey, seeing the enemy prepared for them, and that, unless the Regiment was instantly sustained, it was undone, followed with rapidity through the village with the Blues, past a rivulet that, with the narrowness of the streets and the proximity of the enemy to them, impeded their forming ; but, as no time was to be lost, charged them with only six or seven men in front. This had the best effect ; their *déroute* was complete had not their infantry lined a little hollow which, at the same time that it saved their cavalry, prevented ours advancing. Thus they continued a very long time charging and manœuvring with such a continuance as did them an honour never to be forgot ; and during this time Elliott's

were extremely useful to the Blues though their ammunition was totally expended.

"I can never sufficiently commend the gallantry and good conduct of the Blues and Elliott's, nor enough express the obligations I have to Colonel Harvey, Colonel Erskine, Major Forbes and Major Ainslie."

Of this affair the *London Gazette* stated that "the situation of the two regiments was at this time very critical; but the mutual support which they gave each other—Elliott's Dragoons by their continual skirmishing with the enemy and the Blues by their manœuvres in squadrons and by their steady countenance—kept the enemy at bay until the infantry came up."

Sergeant Hopkinson—or Troop Quartermaster Hopkinson, as he now was—wrote an account of this action in January, 1825, to his son Edmund, saying that "after a sharp conflict we had drove the French off the ground, but they got a strong reinforcement which caused us to halt when the enemy came forward to renew the action and we were about to retire in our turn. There was an officer, so far advanced before his squadron he commanded, I was tempted to make a dart at him just as our army was about to retire. We instant met, I with my sword in the air, he a pistol. I believe I smote and he fired at the same instant. At the explosion of the pistol my horse reared right up, my Frenchman falling forward from his horse with a split skull. My horse in coming down, one of his forelegs got entangled in the belt the officer had hung over his shoulder to carry his cartridge box, which caused him to plunge to get rid of it, and, in rising up and making a violent effort to get rid of the weight, he went so high as to fall backwards—I fortunately slipped off as he fell. I took to my heels to follow my horse who galloped after our people retreating. Some of the advanced French Dragoons pursued me and I should have been cut down and made a prisoner, had not the Adjutant of the Blues, who was behind one of the retiring squadrons, seen my situation, upon which he lost no time in coming at full gallop, seized me by my right wrist, grasped it tight, clapped spurs to his horse and actually carried me

almost totally off the ground, my feet rarely touching the earth until we came up with our own people, two or three of the French skirmishers firing at us all the way. Luckily none of their balls hit us and we went faster than their horses could follow. I sought my horse which had been caught by Magee, and one of our men had caught the poor French officer's horse, which I claimed and had—he was not more than $13\frac{1}{2}$ hands high; none of their horses were higher and many lower and very slow gallopers—therefore the British cavalry have great advantage over them.

“The Blues’ Adjutant was a Captain Evans, a powerful stout man and a powerful and fine black horse and quick in his movements. The French officer’s uniform was blue faced with white and lappelled down to the bottom. Ours was then scarlet, faced with green, very short coats, white waist coats and breeches, the coats half lappelled, silver lace button holes and silver buttons, two epaulettes with rich bullion and fringe. Helmets silver crest and scarlet head ornament.”

Of Hopkinson’s early rank-service there is no trace to be found at the Public Record Office, but the Muster Rolls show that throughout the first half of the year 1760 he was a corporal in the troop of Elliott’s commanded by Captain David Dundas;* during the last half of that year, and throughout 1761, he was Sergeant, and on the 24th May, 1762, he appears to have been promoted Troop Quartermaster in the Troop commanded by Captain William Child. It would seem that at the end of the Seven Years’ War Hopkinson must have retired, for on the 8th March, 1776, the *London Gazette* contains the announcement “— Hopkinson Gent. to be Adjutant vice Child”; he was promoted Cornet the 25th December, 1778, Lieutenant 3rd April, 1781, Captain 15th December, 1784, Major 10th March, 1794, and Lieutenant-Colonel on the following day, retiring by the sale of his commission on the 14th December, 1794, by which time two of his sons were also serving in the 15th Light Dragoons.

* Afterwards General Sir David Dundas, G.C.B., who drew up the manuals under which the troops of Abercromby, Moore and Wellington were trained.

It will be seen from the above that Lieutenant-Colonel Hopkinson must have been a man of forty years of age when he obtained his cornetcy, and his career was certainly an extraordinary one and remarkable even in that romantic age. He was a man of means and died possessed of considerable property in Gloucestershire, of which county he was a Deputy Lieutenant and J.P.

In 1823 he was granted an addition to his family coat of arms:

“Vert, a Horse’s head coupé argent bridled sable between three cushions ermine tasselled or

“Crest. On a wreath of the colours a dexter arm embowed habited azure cuffs gules (being the uniform of His Majesty’s aforesaid 15th Regiment of Dragoons) the hand grasping a sabre the arm entwined with a laurel wreath all proper and in an escutcheon the word ‘Emsdorf.’”

The additions are the “horse’s head coupé argent bridled sable,” the crest and the word “Emsdorf.” It is to explain the reason for these additions that the letter was written by the Colonel to his son in 1825.

(It will be noticed that the uniform above described is not that of the Emsdorf period, but that of more than twenty years later.)



*OPERATIONS CARRIED OUT BY THE MHOW
CAVALRY BRIGADE ON DECEMBER 1st, 1917*

INTRODUCTORY

ARTICLES published last year in two numbers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL about "The Cavalry at Cambrai" do scant justice to the doings on the 1st December, 1917, of the Mhow Cavalry Brigade, commanded by the late Brig.-General Neil Haig, in the attempt to win back Villers-Guislain ridge, which was part of the large hole made in our defences by the German counter-attack of the previous morning. Below is a copy of General Neil Haig's report on that day's work.

History relates that cavalry on many previous occasions has been called upon, as cavalry, to sacrifice itself in an endeavour to create a diversion to save its own infantry when the latter were very hard pressed. It is possible that the mounted attack by the Mhow Cavalry Brigade on infantry over country which bristled with trenches and wire, was intended to make such a diversion and to gain time. Certainly the attack succeeded to some extent in attaining these objects, for no further advance by the Germans was made in this sector during the remainder of that day and, moreover, parties of Germans, who had spread in rear of our infantry, then holding the broken line on the road from L'empire were driven in. Gouzeaucourt and Gauche Wood had been retaken, but the dismounted attack by the 5th Cavalry Division, to which was attached the Lucknow Cavalry Brigade, ordered for daybreak on the 1st December, had definitely petered out by 8.30 a.m. At about 9 a.m. the Mhow Brigade advanced, mounted, to capture Villers-Guislain Ridge, supported only by the fire of the three R.H.A. batteries of the 4th Cavalry Division. As might have been expected wire determined the limits of advance of both the main mounted attack by the

6th Inniskilling Dragoons three squadrons, and the subsidiary attack by the 2nd Lancers. Moreover, the whole of Lark Spur in X.27, strongly occupied, as it turned out to be, by Germans, separated the two lines of advance.

As regards the subsidiary attack which succeeded in recapturing Kildare Trench. At the Crucifix, east of Epéhy, Colonel H. Turner, commanding the 2nd Lancers, received a report from an officer's patrol that the Willows Road and its vicinity was impassable owing to wire, and he selected at once the line of the road to Honnecourt instead, as that for his advance. He himself followed the 2nd Squadron. In the earlier stages of the gallop the leading squadron was in column of troops, extended, and no wheel to the north was possible, owing to the height and steepness of the bank of Lark Spur. In the later stages, with horses extended and men excited by seeing Germans running ahead, no change of direction was possible. The distance from our infantry front line near the Crucifix, east of Epéhy, to Kildare Trench was about two miles, measured on the map. The going was good and over short grass. The only obstacle met on the way was one communication trench, into which one man and horse fell and stuck there.

Considering the distance covered and the complete absence of cover, the total casualties of five squadrons and a section of machine guns were not excessive in a successful mounted attack on entrenched and till then, unshaken infantry. These casualties were 126 officers and men killed, wounded and missing, and over 200 horses.

OPERATIONS CARRIED OUT BY MHOW CAVALRY BRIGADE ON 1ST DECEMBER, 1917

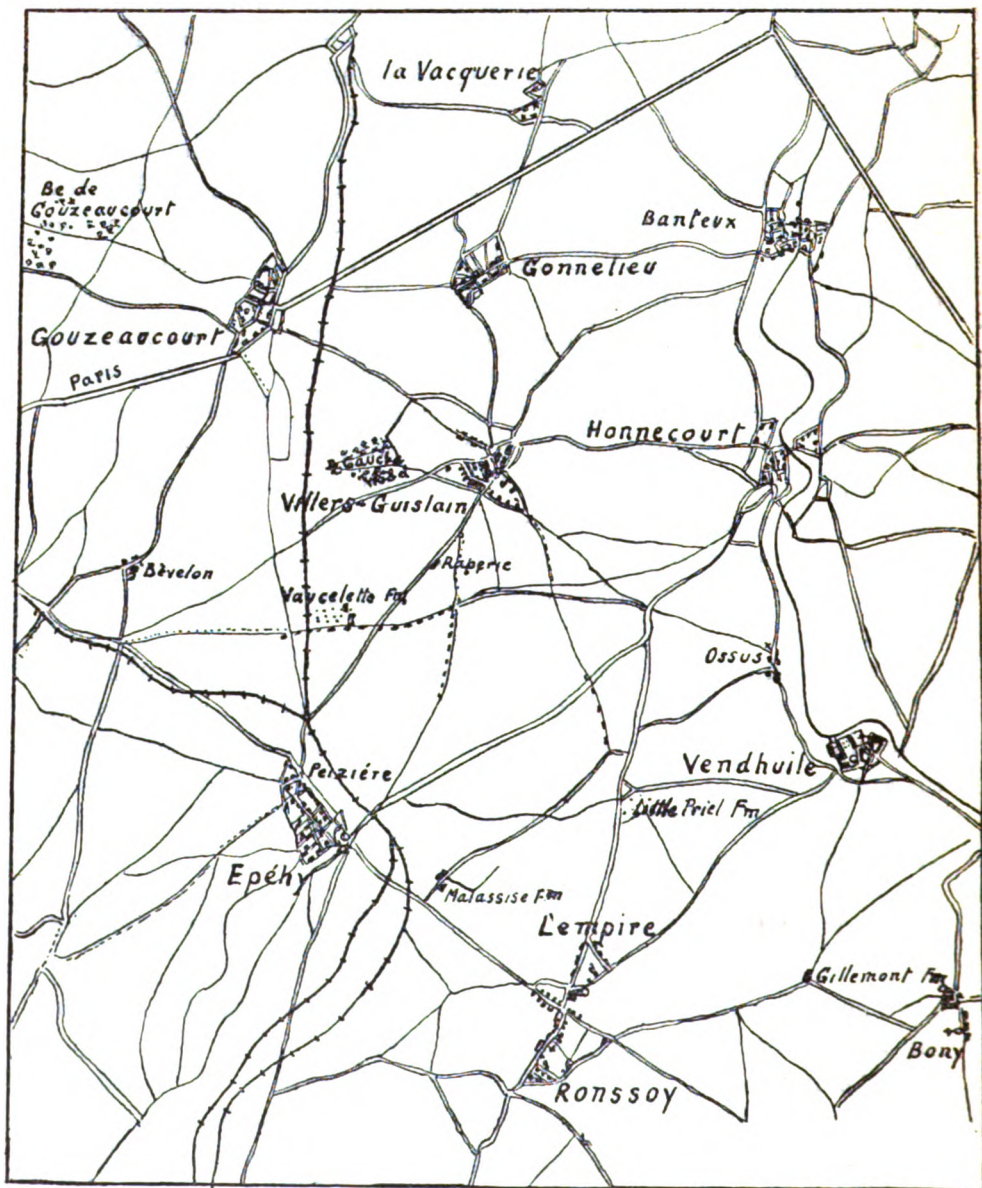
The following Order was received by the Brigade at 2.50 a.m. on the morning of 1st December, 1917 :

“ 4th Cavalry Division Order No. 22. 1-12-17.

Reference 1/40,000 Sheets 62.c. and 57.c.

1. The enemy's line is approximately (Sheet 57.c.) X.29. Vaucellette Farm. R.31.

5th Cavalry Division (with Lucknow Brigade attached) is to attack Villers-Guislain and Gauche Wood to-day at 6.30 a.m., co-operating with 14 tanks. At 6.30 a.m., 6 tanks are to cross a line from Vaucelette Farm to Chapel Hill in



0 1 2 3
Scale of Miles

their advance on Villers-Guislain, and 8 tanks a North and South line through W.12 central (57.c.) for the attack on Gauche Wood.

2. 4th Cavalry Division (less Lucknow Brigade) will assemble West of Peiziere, as below, with the object of taking advantage of the advance of the tanks and seizing Villers Ridge (X.10), (Sheet 57.c).

Mhow Brigade plus one troop Field Squadron, W.30
a. and b.

R.H.A. Brigade W.29 b.

Sialkot Brigade W.29 a, and c.

} Sheet 57.c.

Field Squadron (less one troop) E.5 a.

3. G.O.C. Mhow Brigade will arrange :

(a) To have reconnaissance made of crossings through
a line of our wire just East of Peiziere ;

(b) To keep close liaison with the Tank Attack. .

4. (a) As soon as a suitable opportunity presents itself,
Mhow Brigade will move forward to seize and
establish itself on the Villers Ridge, about X.10.
Measures must be taken to watch the right
flank ;

(b) R.H.A. Brigade will support the advance to and
occupation of the above objective from about
X.19 a. and c. (57.c.).

(c) Sialkot Brigade will, under Divisional Orders, be
moved forward as required.

5. Pack Mounted Sections, C.F.A. will join Brigades
forthwith. C.F. As (less Pack Mounted Sections) will be
with Divisional "A" Echelon, which will remain in present
area till further orders.

6. Signal communications will be established as soon
after the advance of Mhow Brigade as possible to the Ridge
N. of Peiziere.

7. At 6.0 a.m. Divisional Advanced Report Centre will
open near 5th Cavalry Division Report Centre in E.4.d.
(62.c).

Acknowledge.

Issued at 2.0 a.m."

On this, orders were issued for the Brigade to move off at 5.30 a.m. and concentrate in the low ground N. and N.W. of Peiziere. The Brigade was concentrated in this area by 6.30 a.m., and from this hour onwards was under fairly heavy fire (H.E., timed H.E. and shrapnel) and some casualties occurred to men and horses.

The G.O.C. then explained to Commanding Officers the plan of action he proposed in accordance with 4th Cavalry Division Order No. 22, which was for the 2nd Lancers with two machine guns to gallop the Targette Quail and Pigeon Ravines and form a defensive flank East and South East. The Inniskilling Dragoons, as soon as the 2nd Lancers were seen approaching their objective, were to advance down the valley between Quail Ravine and the Beet Factory and establish themselves on the Villers-Guislain Ridge. Six machine guns were placed at their disposal and also one Field Troop R.E.

38th C.I. Horse and three machine guns in reserve.

At 7.30 a.m. reports were received from the officers reconnoitring the wire that exits existed on the Peiziere-Villers-Guislain Road and also on the road running North East from Epéhy.

At 8.10 a.m. the Tank Liaison Officers reported that the tanks had not arrived at their rendezvous and that consequently Lucknow Brigade, who with the 5th Cavalry Division were to have attacked Villers-Guislain and Gauche Wood were not carrying out an attack, but were supporting our infantry at Vaucelette Farm.

On this information it appeared that there was no chance of using the Mhow Brigade to seize the Villers-Guislain Ridge, since the advance to this objective was to have been made on a suitable opportunity presenting itself on the advance of the tanks and the attack on Gauche Wood and Villers-Guislain by the 5th Cavalry Division (with Lucknow Brigade).

At 8.15 a.m., however, an order arrived from the 4th Cavalry Division as follows: "You are to endeavour to push forward towards your objective supported by the Artillery. . . ."

Commanding officers came to Brigade Headquarters and

the fresh situation consequent on the non-arrival of the Tanks was explained.

It was decided that 2nd Lancers should advance by the road running North East from Epéhy, this being less exposed to fire from the direction of Villers-Guislain during the earlier stages of the advance ; one squadron of the Inniskilling Dragoons to follow by the same route as the 2nd Lancers, the remaining three squadrons to advance by the Peiziere-Villers-Guislain Road and the valley between the Beet Factory and Quail Ravine as soon as the 2nd Lancers were seen to be approaching Targette Ravine.

At 8.38 a.m. the 4th Cavalry Division were informed that the Brigade were moving forward at once and that the Artillery had been warned, and a request was made that the 5th Cavalry Division might co-operate and attack Villers-Guislain.

About 9 a.m. the 2nd Lancers, with two machine guns, followed by "C" Squadron Inniskilling Dragoons, moved off through Peiziere and Epéhy villages, the hostile shelling in these two villages at this time being extremely heavy.

The action of the Inniskilling Dragoons, less one squadron, but plus four machine guns and a Field Troop, R.E., may now be dealt with : At 9.35 a.m. the 2nd Lancers were seen moving forward North East of the 14 Willows ; the Inniskilling Dragoons had been waiting for this and the leading squadron, under Captain Bridgewater, immediately moved forward over the railway bridge and down the Peiziere-Villers-Guislain Road. The Squadron under Captain Moncrieff, which accompanied the 2nd Lancers, was to have been the leading squadron of the regiment, but owing to strong enemy forces on their left flank neither this squadron nor the 2nd Lancers were able to enter the valley between Quail Ravine and the Beet Factory.

Consequently Captain Bridgewater's squadron was leading the regiment and had four machine guns with it, whereas it should have been the second squadron and the four machine guns should have brought up the rear of the regiment, but by mistake came in behind the leading squadron.

The leading squadron advanced at the gallop and soon came under heavy machine gun fire from the flanks.

The remaining two squadrons following in line of troop columns in extended order, some 600 yards behind the leading squadron, likewise came under heavy machine gun fire. In spite of this, however, all three squadrons, the machine gun section and Field Troop, R.E., most gallantly continued towards their objective.

The leading squadron, greatly depleted in numbers, continued as far as the Beet Factory when a large force of the enemy were seen to come in from all sides and surround them.

On seeing this and realizing the situation, Lieut.-Colonel Paterson, D.S.O., commanding the regiment, ordered the two squadrons and the Field Troop, R.E., to retire on Peiziere, which operation was successfully carried out. Many acts of devotion and gallantry were carried out during this retirement. The losses were heavy, six officers and ninety-six rank and file of the Inniskilling Dragoons being killed, wounded and missing. Of the section of machine guns complete with personnel, not a man returned.

The part taken by the column, composed of the 2nd Lancers with two machine guns, and "C" Squadron Inniskilling Dragoons with two machine guns may be considered under three headings :

- (a) The advance to the German wire and occupation of the trench and sunken road, known as Kildare Trench, from X.22 to X.28, central.
- (b) The holding and defence of this position.
- (c) The withdrawal after dark.

The 2nd Lancers with two machine guns ("C" Squadron leading, under Major G. Knowles, D.S.O.), followed by "C" Squadron Inniskilling Dragoons with two machine guns, moved off through Peiziere and Epéhy at 9 a.m., and debouched from the latter village by the road in F.1.b. From this point the advance was made at the gallop, "C" Squadron Inniskilling Dragoons being to the left rear of the 2nd Lancers and somewhat on the flank. The formation adopted was column of squadrons in line of troop columns extended.

As the column moved forward at the gallop it very soon came under very heavy machine gun fire from the front (Kildare Trench), from a German outpost position on the right flank about X.27.c.8.0. and from an old British strong point* and trench occupied by the Germans on the left flank about X.27.a. 5.9.

The German outpost on the right flank almost immediately retired, but re-occupied their position on being passed by.

The two leading squadrons galloped Kildare Trench, some horses passing through a gap in the wire, others actually jumping it. This was a narrow belt of wire† put up the night before by the Germans. A few men led by Lieutenant Broadway crossed Kildare Trench, got through the wire on the other side‡ and followed in pursuit of the hostile garrison who had started to retire as the leading squadron reached the wire. Lieutenant Broadway had already killed two Germans with the sword when he was treacherously killed by a revolver shot by a German officer, who raised one hand in token of surrender, keeping the other behind his back. This German officer was immediately killed by a lance thrust from a man following Lieutenant Broadway. This small party then returned to the position occupied by the remainder of the regiment and "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons.

The position occupied was from X.22.c.9.1 to X.28 central, "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons being on the left flank.

Fifteen Germans were killed with the "Arme blanche" and twenty to thirty knocked over by rifle and machine gun fire when retiring from the position. Three light machine guns were left in the position by its retiring garrison, estimated at from 50 to 100 men of the 418th Regiment. Two prisoners were captured.

Lieut.-Colonel H. H. F. Turner, commanding 2nd Lancers, was killed just after crossing the first belt of wire, West of Kildare Trench.

* Referred to later as Limerick Post and Communication Trench.

† There were three or four parallel lines of wire, only about 18 ins. high.

‡ The wire on the east side was old British wire and impassable for horses, but there was a passage through it and steps up to the passage revetted in the parapet.

The horses of the two leading squadrons 2nd Lancers, and of the leading troop of "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons were got under cover in Kildare Lane.* There was no room for the remainder and they had to be sent back to Peiziere suffering heavily on the way from machine gun fire.

The position now was as follows: A German position had been captured and was occupied by about 200 men, 2nd Lancers, 36 men Inniskilling Dragoons, 4 machine guns, (11th Machine Gun Squadron), and in addition there were 169 horses in the position, which greatly interfered with the movement of the garrison and the evacuation of the wounded.

THE HOLDING AND DEFENCE OF THE POSITION GAINED.

Lieut.-Colonel H. H. F. Turner, 2nd Lancers, having been killed, the organization and defence of the position devolved on Major G. Knowles, D.S.O., 2nd Lancers.

He disposed his force as follows: From Right to Left, "D", "A", "B" and "C" Squadrons, 2nd Lancers, "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons, two machine guns on either flank, one of each sub-section facing forward and the other to the rear.

"D" Squadron, 2nd Lancers, pushed out a post to the Right flank and got into touch with the 1/6th King's Liverpool Regiment.† This afterwards proved of great value in getting up ammunition and bombs, evacuating wounded and eventually facilitating the withdrawal at night. The infantry assisted materially in the evacuation of the wounded. On the extreme left flank "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons occupied Kildare Post and a sap head running out a short distance from it. This sap head was commanded on three sides from a ridge, under 100 yards distant, and the whole trench was enfiladed to the South from this spur. To hold this, the flank nearest the enemy, a post with a machine gun, was pushed out on to the ridge. The machine gun officer, Lieutenant R. Oakley, and all the men soon became casualties. The machine gun had to be withdrawn, and it was not possible after this to

* Should read in Kildare Trench.

† Holding cutting on road from L'empire near Little Priel Farm.

leave the sap head. Owing to lack of space the sap head could only be occupied by two machine guns, two Hotchkiss rifles and a few men. The enemy soon crawled up and enveloped this flank on three sides. Fortunately several boxes of ammunition and bombs were found in the position, formerly a British one, and the machine guns, with a party filling belts, were able to check the repeated attempts of the enemy to crawl through the scrub and rush the sap head.

Unsuccessful in this, the enemy bombed his way down the communication trench from Limerick Post,* this leading into the main trench fifty yards South of the sap head.

A counter bombing party was organized, bombs being fortunately at hand—also many German bombs, which after being experimented with were used. This party was most gallantly led by a corporal of the Inniskilling Dragoons, who killed the leading German. Bombs were, at the same time, thrown with such good effect that one German was blown off his feet above the level of the parapet and the remainder were in such a hurry to leave the trench that they came into the open under the fire of one of the sap head machine guns and were shot down. The enemy did not again attempt to approach the position by this trench.

Further attempts were made to reach the sap head from the ridge, but all were frustrated. Had the enemy been able to gain the sap head the whole length of untraversed trench would have been enfiladed and the position would have been untenable. It was thanks to the machine guns and the magnificent way in which they were served and to the fortunate finding of a considerable supply of ammunition in the position, that this did not occur.

Meanwhile the machine guns on the Right flank had been firing short bursts on the ridge running East of Little Priel Farm, and also on the ridge to the Right rear on which small parties of the enemy were seen.

Shortly after reaching the position a considerable body of

* See note page 51, para. 1, line 4, old British strong point, X.27. a. 5.9.

Germans was seen moving round to the left rear.* Major Salkeld, 2nd Lancers, took his squadron out in skirmishing order to delay their advance and give time for the remainder of the garrison to organize the defence of both sides of the sunken road (Kildare Trench).

The large party of Germans first seen moved Northwards and disappeared, but a smaller party of about sixty was encountered and followed up at the double for about 300 yards, until they took refuge in the Western portion of Kildare Trench† and Limerick Post. Some ten men of this party were seen to fall as the result of rifle fire.

Machine gun fire was opened on the squadron from the position entered by the enemy, and Major Salkeld withdrew his squadron about 100 yards and awaited developments. A firing line of the enemy shortly advanced against this squadron, but withdrew on being fired on, losing a few men. The squadron was then withdrawn to the sunken road,‡ bringing in some wounded from the original mounted advance of the regiment. The casualties in Major Salkeld's squadron in this skirmish were four killed and six wounded.

During the morning, preparations were made by Major Knowles, D.S.O., for a further advance, tracks being cut in the wire on the Western side of the position for this purpose.

Any thought of a further advance had, however, to be abandoned owing to the forced retirement of the three squadrons Inniskilling Dragoons from Linnet Ravine and the precarious position of the left flank.

The Germans brought heavy machine gun fire to bear on the position most of the day and barraged the rear communications with H.E. Notwithstanding this and also heavy machine gun fire from both flanks on the way out and back, a sowar of the 2nd Lancers brought in two messages describing the situation, to Brigade Headquarters. He had three horses shot under him, but nevertheless was ready, and wished, to

* i.e., From South in α 27c to North in α 27a.

† By this is meant the communication trench from Limerick Post to Kildare Post along the 140 contour.

‡ i.e., Kildare Trench.

return to his regiment. Later Lieutenant Smith was able to establish signal communication with Brigade Headquarters.

THE WITHDRAWAL FROM THE POSITION.

Orders to withdraw from the position were received from G.O.C. 155th Infantry Brigade* by Captain Whitworth, 2nd Lancers, who twice went through a very heavy barrage of H.E. to give this Brigade information as to the state of affairs in Kildare Trench. The withdrawal was rendered difficult† owing to the congested state of the sunken road, 169 horses being in it—some of them wounded—and owing to the narrowness of the road only one horse at a time could be led out, as the only exit was from the Southern end of the position.

The covering of the retirement was entrusted to "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons, who most ably carried out their task. Veréy lights were fired frequently from the sap head and successive covering positions were taken up until all the wounded and horses had been withdrawn.

Major Knowles, D.S.O., was wounded during the advance to the position, but notwithstanding this conducted the organization and defence of the position. No praise is too high for the conduct of all ranks during the whole operation.

The total casualties were :

		<i>Killed.</i>			<i>Wounded</i>			<i>Missing</i>			
		B.O's.	I.O's.	I.O.R's.	B.O's.	I.O's.	I.O.R's.	B.O's.	I.O's.	I.O.R's.	
2nd Lancers	..	2	1	5	1	1	42	1	1	48	102
			B.O's.	O.R's.		B.O's.	O.R's.		B.O's.	O.R's.	
"C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons	-			1	-		5	-		5	11
Section 11th M.G. Squadron	..	-		2		1	9	-		1	13
											126

* Holding cutting on road from L'empire.

† After orders were received about 5 p.m., it was dark. It took two hours to get the horses out of Kildare Trench by its southern exit on to the road to L'empire. The withdrawal was unmolested.

OPERATIONS BY 38TH C.I. HORSE ON 1ST DECEMBER, 1917.

At 10.10 a.m. the G.O.C. Mhow Brigade decided to send two squadrons 38th C.I. Horse to the support of the 2nd Lancers and "C" Squadron Inniskilling Dragoons.

Two squadrons moved off through Peizieres and Epéhy closely followed by Brigade Headquarters and the remainder of the Central India Horse. Just as the leading squadron had moved off a non-commissioned officer of "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons came in with a report of the situation; on this the two leading squadrons were halted in Epéhy and an officer's patrol was sent off to try and find a more southern route than "fallen tree" road, by which it might be possible to go mounted to the assistance of our troops in Kildare Trench. The patrol reported having come under heavy machine gun fire and that it would be impossible to advance mounted. On this "D" Squadron, dismounted, under the command of Lieutenant Page, was sent off with the object of gaining touch with the troops in Kildare Trench and connecting up their left flank with the infantry posts in rear. The right half squadron advanced up to a little South of X.20, central, where they were held up by heavy machine gun fire, and had to remain there till after dark, being unable to advance or retire.

The left half squadron advanced up to about X.26.b.6.0, where it took up a position.

About 11.45 a.m. a mounted patrol of two men was sent to ascertain if the Western portion of Kildare Trench* was occupied by the enemy. This patrol galloped up to the trench and crossed it, pretending not to see the Germans, who let them go by. They then turned about and galloped back under heavy machine gun fire and rifle fire. They reported that the trench was strongly held by Germans and that they had seen at least one machine gun and what looked like automatic rifles.

At 11.30 a.m. G.O.C. Mhow Brigade conferred with G.O.C. 166th Infantry Brigade and arranged to lend him two dismounted squadrons of the Central India Horse to assist him in an attack he was making on the Meath-Catelet Line at 1 p.m.

* See footnote to page 54, para. 2, line 4.

Captain Daunt and Lieutenant Woodhouse, commanding "A" and "C" Squadrons, then went to confer with O.C. 1/5th King's Own Regiment.

The attack took place at 1 p.m., after very slight artillery preparation, the objective of these two squadrons being the Western portion of Kildare Trench.*

The attack was made over the open. A small trench in front of Kildare Trench was entered and its occupants driven out and back to the main trench in rear. The attack was then held up by heavy machine gun fire and no further advance was possible.

Of the six British officers with "A" and "C" Squadrons and half of "D" Squadron, which also joined in the attack, Captain Cameron, M.C., and Lieutenant Pinney, were killed, and Lieutenants Woodhouse, Page and Milner were wounded.

At 2.15 p.m. an order was received from 4th Cavalry Division ordering the Lucknow Brigade to attack the Raperie† from the West and Mhow Brigade to endeavour to obtain possession of some of their original objectives and the Raperie from the South, with the whole brigade dismounted. One battery East of Epéhy was to come under the orders of the Mhow Brigade.

The 4th Cavalry Division was informed that the total available force in the hand of G.O.C. Mhow Cavalry Brigade consisted of two weak squadrons, Inniskilling Dragoons, one squadron C.I. Horse and two machine guns.

The G.O.C. Mhow Cavalry Brigade then informed Lieut.-Colonel Browne, commanding 38th C.I. Horse, of the attack planned for 3 p.m., and directed that the two squadrons in advance about X.27, central, should co-operate in this attack and that they should be supported by one squadron C.I. Horse.

O.C. Inniskilling Dragoons was informed that in case of success in this attack, the remains of his two squadrons would act mounted.

At 3 p.m. no attack appeared to develop on the left flank and as the two advanced squadrons of the C.I. Horse were under

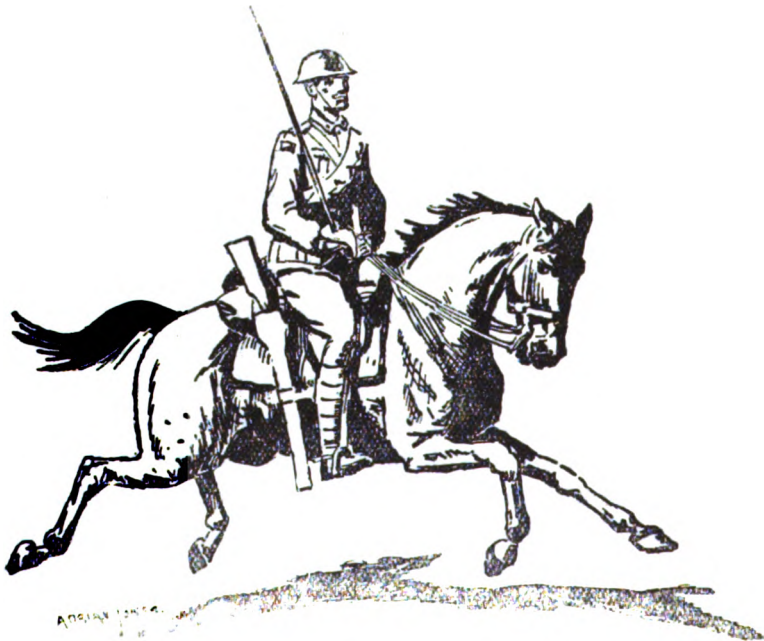
* See footnote to page 54, para. 2, line 4.

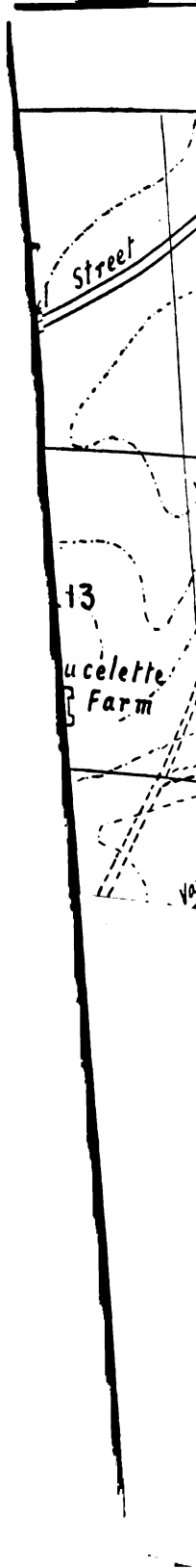
† The Beet Factory, shown on map in π 14.

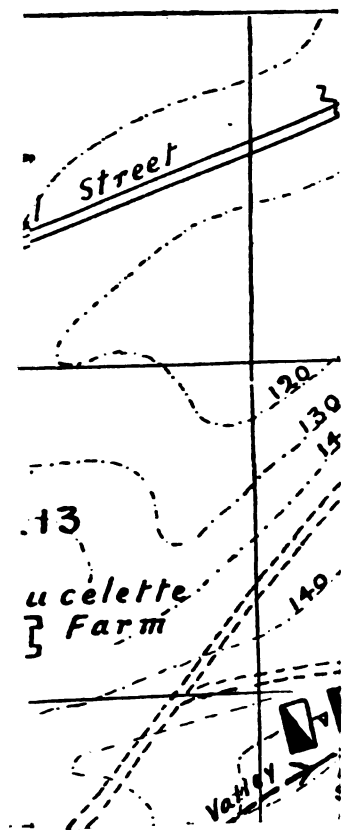
heavy machine gun fire and unable to advance, the squadron of the C.I. Horse in the hand of the G.O.C. was not sent forward.

At 6.5 p.m. permission was obtained from G.O.C. 166th Infantry Brigade to withdraw the three advanced squadrons of the C.I. Horse. The withdrawal was successfully carried out, but before retiring an Indian officer and some other ranks had been buried and all other killed and wounded brought in.

Too much cannot be said of the spirit and conduct of all ranks of the Central India Horse throughout the day.







CUTTINGS FROM HISTORY

(1) Extract from XVth (The King's Hussars) Historical Records.

"Another Regimental order of the period, dated February 17th, 1806, may perhaps here be quoted as showing the peculiar character of the "amusements" of the British soldier of a hundred years ago :

"The Commanding Officer has observed that in some of the rooms the men have amused themselves with throwing herring-guts against the ceiling. If any such irregularity is again observed, the room will be fresh whitewashed at the expense of the men occupying them."

(2) Extract from XVth (The King's Hussars) Historical Records.

"On October 22nd of this year (1849) an order was received that one squadron of the Regiment was, as an experimental measure, to be mounted entirely on geldings ; the left squadron was selected for this purpose, and a year later—on October 1st, 1850—certain tests were carried out which are described as follows, in Captain Nolan's book, 'Cavalry: Its History and Tactics': 'Before I left India, some very interesting trials were made at Madras, by order of the Commander-in-Chief, General Sir George Berkeley, the object of which was to test the capabilities of the troop horses, as well as the relative merits of entire horses and geldings for the purposes of war. Three trials were made. The first with two Regiments of Native Regular Cavalry, one of stallions, one of geldings. The next with two troops of Horse Artillery. The third, and last, with two hundred English Dragoons (15th Hussars), one hundred riding stallions, and one hundred mounted on geldings. This

squadron marched upwards of eight hundred miles—namely from Bangalore to Hyderabad, where they remained a short time to take part in the field days, pageants, etc. They then returned to Bangalore, by forced marches; only one rest day was allowed them, and the last six marches in were made at the rate of thirty miles a day. They brought in but one led horse; stallions and geldings did their work equally well, and were in equally good condition on their return. The question was, however, decided in favour of the latter, because they had been cut without reference to age, and only six months before the trial took place.”

(3) Exchange Values during the Peninsular War.

A Field Marshal	..	..	..	60 men.
Generals	..	..	..	40 „
Lieut.-Colonels or Majors..	..	..	..	8 „
Captains	..	..	..	6 „
Lieutenants	..	..	..	4 „
Cornets	..	..	..	3 „
N.C.O's	..	..	..	2

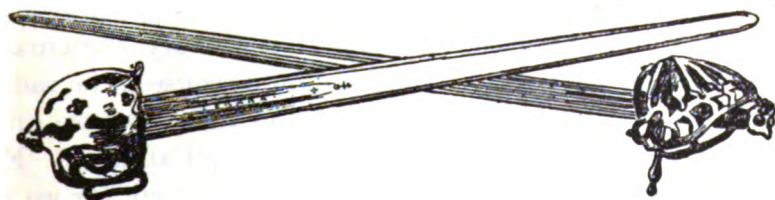
(4) A Child Warrior.

William Cornwallis Eustace; born 27th September, 1783; gazetted to a Lieutenancy, 32nd Regiment *a few hours after birth*. Appointed to his father's Staff at the age of 14. Present at Battles of Ross, Vinegar Hill and Wexford at age of 14½. Went through the Peninsular War. Appointed Major-General, 1830; Lieut.-General, 1841; General, 1854.

(5) Extract from Records of the Inniskilling Dragoons, from “Grose's Military Antiquities.”

“According to this authority, trouble about pay arose respecting the Inniskilling Regiment of Dragoons, who for a long time had received no pay but subsisted themselves at

their own expense.' At length, A.D. 1694, a great number of both officers and soldiers, unable to procure any payment though repeatedly promised by General Ginkle, surrounded the coach of the Lord Lieutenant Capel when going in State to St. Patrick's Church, and declared that if they did not in a few days receive what was due to them, they would use force to obtain it. The Lord Lieutenant promised them redress and threw out his purse with thirty guineas in it, to one of the soldiers, who contemptuously threw it back into the coach through the glass window. As Queen Mary was Regent, the King being in Flanders, an account of the matter was sent to her. Whereupon she ordered a thousand pounds to be paid to the officers and men out of her Privy Purse, promising that the remainder should shortly be paid, the demands being then settled by a Board of Officers. In the year 1702, two thousand pounds more was paid which was all they got for their pay from the year 1689. A very small portion considering they were then a Regiment of nine troops."



*"Three things are men most likely to be cheated in,
a horse, a wig, and a wife."*

(Benj. Franklin.—Poor Richard, 1736.)

BEASTS "OF WHATEVER DESCRIPTION"

By CAPTAIN H. BULLOCK, I.A.

ONE can hardly help sympathising with the unfortunate troop-horse's annoyance at finding that, in the eyes of the Law and the words of the Army Act, "the expression 'horse' includes a mule, and that the provisions of this Act shall apply to any *beast of whatever description* used for burden or draught, or for carrying persons, in like manner as if such beast were included in the expression 'horse,' " But if the noble animal went further into the matter, he would find that he has no cause to be aggrieved, for Military Law has always been jealous of his dignity, and watchful of equine interests. Indeed, so long ago as the time of King Richard the Second, was not the horse's sterling worth realised, for when that king laid down his code of military law, the almost invariable punishment for an offending man-at-arms was deprivation of his "horse and harness" ?

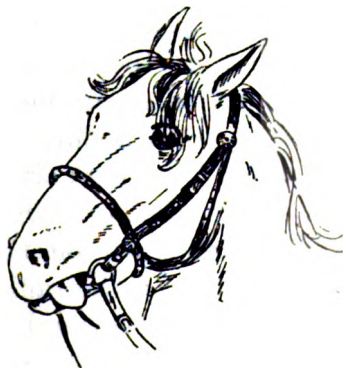
Later, Henry VIII's "Army Act" gives a glimpse of the cavalry drill of the period, enacting that "every horseman at the first blast of the trumpet shall saddle or cause to be saddled his horse, at the second to bridle, at the third to leap on his horse back, to wait on the King, or his Lord or Captain." Even those horses who were enemy aliens were protected, for we read that no man should "take any horse or horses, ox or oxen, in any country won or pacified, from any man going to plough, or any labourer." This code also, continued the punishment of forfeiture of horse and harness.

In the Archbishop of Canterbury's library at Lambeth Palace, there may be seen a manuscript of Lord Mountjoy's "Lawes & orders for the warres and Martiall Law in the Kingdome of Ireland," in 1600. In these, the tradition is continued; and it is ordered that "no soldier do sell, or lay to pawn, his

horse or hackney nor any part of his furniture arms or apparel, on pain of death." Any inhabitant "in Town or Country," who bought or received in pawn any of the above from a soldier, was likewise punishable with imprisonment and forfeiture of a sum up to double the value given. Further, any horseman losing his horse or hackney "by neglect or any other Lewdness," whereby he was unable to discharge his duties, was punished by being made to serve as a pioneer till his horse was recovered. At that time, and for long afterwards, the pioneer in the Army was looked on as one of the lowest of the low—a menial, in fact.

To multiply examples of what has been a recognised practice since the Middle Ages would be tedious. One more may be quoted, however,—from the Articles of War governing the forces engaged in the suppression of Monmouth's rebellion in 1685. There we find an almost identical provision which may be given *verbatim* :—

"If any Trooper or Dragoon shall lose or spoil his Horse . . . by negligence or Gaming, he shall remain in the quality of a Pioneer or Scavenger, till he be furnished at his own charge, with as good as were lost ; And if he be not otherwise able, the one half of his Pay shall be deducted and set apart for the providing of it till he be refurnished."



VERY REGULAR CAVALRY

By F. J. HUDLESTON

JUST as, in the Charge of the Light Brigade the Crimean War gave to history one of the most glorious events in the annals of cavalry, so did it in the shape of the Bashi Bazouks produce one of the most comic corps that has ever yet been mounted.

The most alarming thing about the Bashi Bazouks was their name; it seems to suggest action of a very violent nature, accompanied by curious oaths. But alas! these two words—they are really the Turkish *Bash Bazuk*—mean in plain English “Rotten Head.” And the title is not inappropriate. They were a set of cut-throat scoundrels and ruffians who, at the beginning of the Crimean War, distinguished themselves by committing every kind of atrocity round about Varna. General Yusuf, who had commanded the Irregular Cavalry in Algeria, was ordered to raise a corps of them. He boasted that he would “lick them into shape with the bastinado.” They were the scum of the Near East. The French commander, Canrobert, briefly defined them as *cette vermine*. Their arms were varied, muskets, blunderbusses, bamboo spears, krisses, yataghans, and horse-pistols about two feet long; these went well with their headgear; some wore the burnous, others the fez, or a Crusader-like steel helmet or an enormous lambs-wool cap. Everybody knew when they were about, as the stench from their camp made itself smelt for miles; it would have taken gallons and gallons of rose-water to camouflage it. Their chieftains, the Higher Command, lay on their backs all day smoking and scratching themselves, the rank and file gambled with white pebbles in lieu of dice. General Yusuf led them on the expedition to the Dobruja, but half of them declined to

be led and ran away, most of the remainder died of disease, for, being fatalists, they refused all medical aid. The French gave them up as a bad job, nor were we more successful than the French.

The Englishman who took over the task that Yusuf had abandoned in despair and disgust was General Beatson, who had won great distinction in the East India Company's service. He was "impetuous to a remarkable degree." Once in Central India, seated at breakfast with his officers he suddenly and most impetuously "made a smart cut with his sword" at the helmet of one of them. The latter, not unnaturally, asked why? Let us hope he was satisfied with the reply: "I only wanted to find out whether or not your helmet was sword proof." One cannot but applaud this professional zeal for detail, but supposing the General had wanted to find out if one of his subordinates was wooden-headed or not? Early in 1852 this gallant officer appeared at a ball in the Hôtel de Ville, in Paris, clad in the uniform of the Nizam's Cavalry. The French ladies were most enthusiastic. *Quel bel uniforme ! mais quel bel homme aussi ! Qui est-il ? Je crois qu'il est le Sultan, ou le Grand Mogul.* Another light-hearted lady-reveller hazarded the conjecture "that he was a new candidate for the Presidency of the Republic."

The general was a bit of a fire-eater. Before his thirty-five years with the Bengal Army he had fought in the Peninsula with the Spanish Legion, under General Sir de Lacy Evans. Early in the Crimean War, having gone to headquarters with no appointment he joined in the charge of the heavies "for fun." In October, 1854, the Duke of Newcastle, then War Minister, directed him to form a corps of Bashî Bazouks. They were styled officially Irregular Cavalry—the adjective suited them admirably. The first instructions a young English officer received from his Colonel on joining the corps, were "Take off those big boots, lie down on the sofa and have a pipe; you must learn to smoke in the Bashîs." Nor were they regular even in what they smoked; "the Turkish chibouque, the Indian hubble-bubble, the short clay pipe, the long German

meerscham, the mild Havannah, the Levantine cigarette, all were there." But the Colonel had sound views in some respects, he set his face sternly against such pedantry as accounts. "It's an Irregular Force and no red tapeism is wanted," and he frankly admitted that he spent the day "eating a little, drinking a little, smoking a little and sleeping a great deal"—hence, no doubt, the sofa. He was also opposed to Parades: "it won't do to work them too much." "Why?" "They'd kick if you did." "What—the men or the horses?" "Both, I expect; they are not accustomed to it." Having let off this remarkable military maxim, Colonel M—— covered his face with a bit of gauze, and settled himself to sleep.

However, they did have occasional parades—here is an account of one: "The parade began. It was rather difficult to see the squadrons for tobacco-smoke, as every other man was smoking a short chibouque; but when a portion of the matutinal pipes were concluded, the scene became a little clearer. I thought it a funny sight. All who wished were talking, all who wished were smoking, some horses had an objection to standing with their heads to the front and, as they could not find space for longitudinal position in the ranks, had either come forward or fallen into the rear." The Colonel eyeing his men with pride, gave the order to advance: "the cry was taken up by each Yuzbashee at the head of his squadron, others repeated it, and amidst the most frightful yelling the advance took place. More screaming out commands and the walk was successfully changed into trot, canter and gallop; after which no further orders could be given. The men got excited, they jostled each other, all order in the squadrons was lost, confusion reigned supreme and the Bashi Bazouks were in their glory. They halloed, they yelled, fired their pistols and went faster and faster," and only came to a halt apparently at the word of command: "Matutinal Pipes No. 2."

This training took place at the Dardanelles which the Corps never left. This was noticed by Palmerston, who wrote in July, 1855: "Beatson's Horse (as the force was now called) are of no use at the Dardanelles, not being sea-horses, so why

not transfer them to Eupatoria ? ” Why not ? Well, chiefly because Lord Raglan had flatly declined to have anything to do with them. His successor, Simpson, for once showing real common sense, writing home to Lord Panmure, observed “ It will be considered a disgrace to us to have such ruffians in our pay, and I can only protest against having anything to do with them. They will be found a set of marauders, setting all order and discipline at defiance, and Beatson will be an independent leader so long as his band will abstain from murdering him. I feel truly ashamed of our retaining such plunderers in British pay.”

All this was very distressing to that remarkable character, Lord Stratford de Redcliffe, the British Ambassador at Constantinople. The Crimean War was *his* war, the Bashi Bazouks were his pride. The Turkish governor at the Dardanelles reported that these Irregulars took what they wanted from the bazaars and omitted the slight formality of payment. His Lordship, greatly distressed, requested General Beatson to investigate this charge. The General replied officially that he would make full inquiries and, if he found any of his men guilty of such misdeeds, he would hang them ; on the other hand, if he found no one guilty of them, he would hang the Turkish governor. Lord Stratford, as the modern muse of history would say, “ went off the deep end,” into, one may assume, the Bosphorus. The upshot was that Beatson, who was with the greatest difficulty restrained from sending Lord Stratford a challenge to a duel, was sent home. He was succeeded by a General Smith, “ a sincere Christian ” but, in spite of this, generally known from his lugubrious countenance and his sepulchral voice as “ the man that killed his mother.”

The officers of this motley force were an odd *olla podrida*. Many, like that “ military gent,” Colonel Newcome, had “ come from Hindoostan,” being in fact elderly Indian officers “ with disordered livers ” ; one of the most efficient “ had been gazetted out of a cavalry regiment at the Cape as a deserter. He had applied for two months leave of absence to go lion shooting in Central Africa. He did not return for seven years ” ; these

had been real *Wanderjahre* for he had perambulated the world, travelling light, taking with him nothing but a comb, a tooth-brush and a cheque book. The comb must have come in useful when he joined the "Bashis" for heavy beards seem to have been *de rigueur* in this remarkable corps. They must have set off the uniform, designed by General Beatson. This, according to an officer who wore it, "looked peculiar," as Mr. Jingle said of the dress coat of the Pickwick Club. Beatson himself, late of the Gorgeous East, wore a very gorgeous uniform, which looked "as if gold were the material, cloth the braiding." His officers wore a dark green cloth frock coat, fastened with hooks up one side of the chest, totally without collar of any kind, a beading of gold lace up one side, small brass buttons up the other side, of the chest. The breeches were scarlet with a broad rich gold stripe running down the side of the leg; patent leather jack-boots with large brass spurs, and a peakless cap of scarlet cloth with a gold band and braiding completed the outfit. Surely George IV, that artist in uniforms, never thought of anything more flamboyant. It is curious that two famous literary celebrities, Whyte Melville and Richard Burton, wore this uniform. The latter had no great reverence for Lord Stratford; he said of him, and it would not be impossible to justify the epigram, that the "Great Eltchi" (as Kinglake nicknamed him) "gained a prodigious name in Europe—chiefly by living out of it." But Burton was incorrigible; he actually alluded to our ally, the Sultan, as "Humpty-Dumpty."

Beatson may have had his faults, but many, no doubt, will sympathise with his distaste for red tape and official regulations. Before he was sent home a rumour got about that it was intended to "make the corps into a regular army, to put men and officers into strict uniform, to carry on the service by cut and dried rules, and destroy that feeling of independence, of self-reliance, and of noble chivalry which now exists among its members." The General collected his officers, English and native, in a large marquee. Like Old King Cole, he called for his pipe, "a very thick and splendid cherry stick, at least eight feet long, with a costly amber mouthpiece," and, after

smoking and meditating in silence for some time, he addressed the assembly. He mentioned the scandalous rumours I have already quoted, and ended with the magnificent peroration: "Now, all of you, look at me. Do *I* look like a man who would do all this? Is this the sort of dress (here with an oratorical gesture, like the Wedding Guest, he 'beat his breast') *that* sort of man would wear? Are these the kind of uniforms (here he glanced proudly round) by which *that* sort of man would be surrounded? Do we *look* like a regular army? Do our very horses appear as if they had gone through the humdrum lessons of a riding school? No. This is an Irregular Force. I have been accustomed to Irregular Forces. And I hereby promise you that so long as I am at your head, so long as you follow me, whether as now over these quiet plains, or later, against the serried columns of the Russians, Irregular you are and Irregular you *shall* be. And now let those stand forward who have said the reverse. I'm damned but I'll see whether their word or mine will be believed."

The effect was amazing; nobody stood forward; nay, more, we are told that "even pipes were laid aside." Is there in military history any other instance of a Commanding Officer's speech having had the same remarkable result?

The "Bashis" never met the serried ranks of the Russians; indeed they do not appear to have done anything at all except to maintain by pillage and rapine the proud reputation which they had so speedily won for Irregularity.



PREJVALSKY'S WILD HORSE

By G. M. VEVERS, Superintendent of the Zoological Society's
Gardens, London

THE interest which surrounded the Mongolian or Prejvalsky's Wild Horse at the time of its discovery in 1881, and which was subsequently revived on the importation of the first live specimens to Europe twenty years later, has again been re-awakened by the presence of a breeding pair of these rare members of the equine family at the Zoological Society's Gardens in Regent's Park.

Both animals are from the Duke of Bedford's herd at Woburn and are descendants of some of the original animals which were imported by Carl Hagenbeck in 1901.

The first we hear of the discovery of this Wild Horse is from a paper by the Russian Poliakoff who, in 1881, described it as a new species from a skin presented to the traveller Prejvalsky by the chief magistrate of Zaisan, who in turn had obtained it from some Kirghiz then engaged in hunting wild camels in the desert of Dzungaria.*

The leading Zoologists of the day were inclined to throw cold water on Poliakoff's claim that the skin represented a hitherto unknown and distinct species of horse, and at least one, taking into consideration certain of its semi-assinine characteristics, suggested that it might be an accidental hybrid between a feral horse and the Tibetan Wild Ass or Kiang. This theory was definitely shown to be unsound by Professor Cossar Ewart, who, in 1902, actually crossed a male Kiang with a Mongolian pony mare and succeeded in producing a hybrid differing from Prejvalsky's horse in many respects. Two years later the point was finally settled by the Woburn animals themselves as several of them bred offspring true to type.

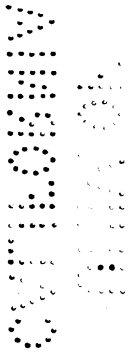
* It has been suggested that *Equus equiferus* of Pallas is identical with *Equus przewalskii*, but the figure given in his "Reise durch verschiedene Provinzen des Russischen Reichs," 1771, is unconvincing and the description of the mane and tail does not agree with that of *E. przewalskii*.



Fig. 1—Prejvalsky's Wild Horse

[Photo. F. W. Bond]

Photograph of the mare presented to the Zoological Society of London by the Duke of Bedford in 1927.



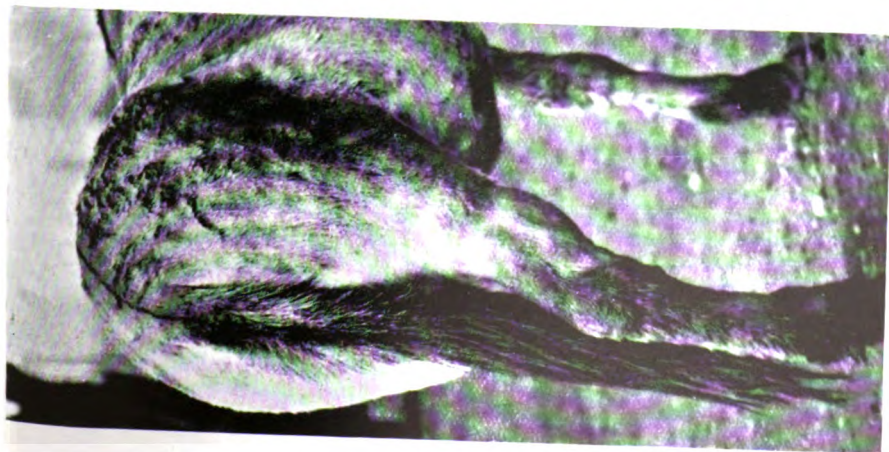


Fig. 2 [Photo F. W. Bond]
The Hindquarters of Prejvalsky's Wild Horse—Showing the characteristic disposition of the long and short hairs on the tail. The dorsal stripe is also seen.



Fig. 2a

Head of Prejvalsky's Wild Horse—Showing characteristic hog mane, absence of forelock, and white nose.

(From a photograph taken in the Zoological Gardens, London, by F. W. Bond).

Prejvalsky himself, when he presented the original skin to the Russian Academy of Science, designated it as that of a Tarpan, and from subsequent investigations it would seem that in the true sense of the word he was correct and that *Tarpan* (a Tartar word meaning real untameable wild horse as opposed to *Muzin*, a feral animal), is a synonym of the wild horse which bears his name. It would appear, however, that the word Tarpan has been very loosely used by Zoologists during the past 150 years, in designating several different types of semi-domesticated and feral horses from Central Asia and much confusion has arisen in the literature of the subject. This confusion was not lessened by the occurrence of three distinct types of horse in the first herd imported by Hagenbeck, for these had been collected by Kirghiz from three separate districts in the region of the Mongolian town of Kobdo and some of them showed certain differences in colour which suggested that there had been some interbreeding with domesticated stock. One of these types, however, seemed to be quite distinct from all the known domesticated breeds and agreed in the main with the original description of Prejvalsky's horse. This variety came from the neighbourhood of the Zagan-norr Lake, about 100 miles from Kobdo, and it is to this type that the pair now living at the Zoo belong, the mare being the more typical example of the race.

In appearance they are medium-sized ponies with rather large and clumsy heads which are almost straight when seen in profile and show little or no modelling. The general colour is dun, which becomes lighter under the belly. The nose is white. The legs from the knee and hock downwards are black as are the tips of the ears and the long hairs of the tail. There is a dark stripe along the centre of the back and traces of striping on the upper parts of the limbs. The mane is short, erect and black in colour. It stops abruptly between the ears and there is no forelock. It is in this respect and in the way in which the hair on the tail is distributed, that Prejvalsky's horse differs from *Equus caballus*. If the tail is examined carefully it will be seen that the long hairs only grow from the lower third of

the dock instead of the whole way down as in the ordinary horse, and that the upper part gives rise to short light hair of a much finer texture. Chestnuts are present on all four legs and there is an ergot on each fetlock. The hoofs of this horse are long and resemble those of an "Arab" rather than those of a cart-horse. They are exceedingly timid and suspicious animals and are quite untameable. Milne, the present Head Keeper of Zebras and Asses at the Gardens, who was formerly in the service of Professor Ewart, and who has a large experience of the species, states that he has never known a Prejvalsky's horse which could be handled and that although he once succeeded in throwing one and putting on a bridle, it would not allow itself to be mounted and resisted every attempt to break it in. Their cry is loud and much shriller than that of any domesticated horse.

The part played by Prejvalsky's horse in the ancestry of the modern domesticated breeds will probably always be a matter of discussion but a comparison of photographs of living specimens, or, better still, the living specimens themselves, with reproductions of some of the drawings and sculptures from the Palæolithic cave-dwellings of France, certainly goes a long way to prove that horses which, in general appearance were indistinguishable from Prejvalsky's horse, actually roamed the west of Europe in prehistoric times, and it is not improbable that their blood still runs in some of our pedigree stock to-day. Out of the bone breccia of Solutré, however, the French palæontologists have discovered a second species of horse of a much lighter build than the Prejvalsky type, and there are other cave drawings and engravings which would seem to show that Palæolithic man had several other species to breed from. It is highly probable, therefore, that the modern horse is not the outcome of continued breeding from one or even two species, but it is rather the result of the crossing and re-crossing of a number of primitive species of which the only one existing at the present day in anything like its original form is the Tarpan or so-called Prejvalsky's Horse of Central Asia.



Fig. 3

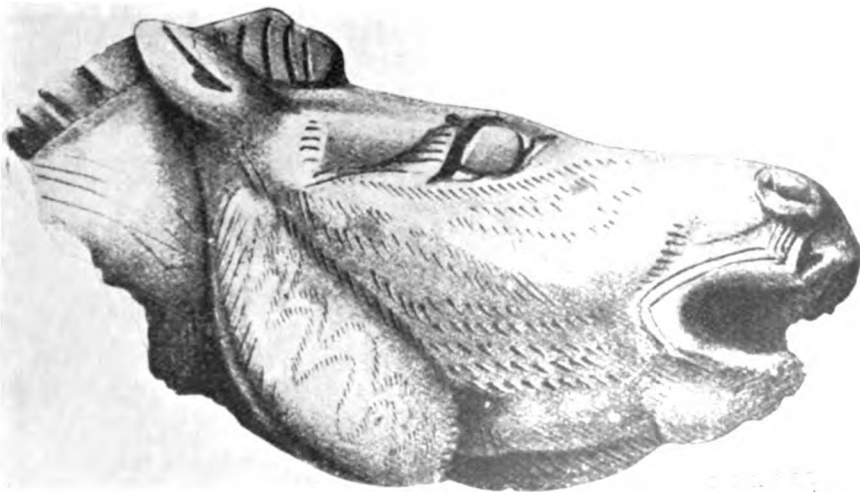


Fig. 3a

A Head-study of Prejvalsky's Wild Horse compared with a reproduction of the head of a horse carved in Reindeer antler from the Cave of Mas d'Azil, showing striking resemblance of form. (The carved head is from the Piette collection now in the Musée de Saint Germain, and is after Piette).

TO MY
AFFECTION

ACTION ON 8th MARCH, 1917, AT ADEN

BEFORE I begin to describe the action on the above-mentioned date it will be as well to give in brief the situation at Aden as it had been for some time beforehand.

In July, 1915, part of the weak Turkish Yemen Army Corps under Saiyid Pasha, with Headquarters at Sanaa, made a sudden, though not quite unexpected, descent on the Lahej delta, the name given to the flat sandy plain North of Aden itself. This force, with a number of Arab levies, advanced as far as Khor Maksar, about four miles from Aden in the middle of the isthmus and there remained. They dug a few trenches but advanced no further. The fear of the big fortress guns in Aden stopped, it is said, their further attempt to seize Aden and its very considerable wealth and supplies. Incidentally I heard these guns were only sited to fire out to sea ! It is open to doubt if the garrison of Aden at that time could have kept out a determined attack by this force of Turks, some 3,000 men and twenty-five guns, had they cared to risk an attempt. The loyalty and staunchness of the local population was also much open to doubt and not worth a severe test.

An S.O.S. was launched by the wireless station and cable lines for reinforcements. In consequence, General Young-husband's brigade, *en route* from India to Egypt, was disembarked in a hurry to deal with the situation. This brigade drove out the Turks from Khor Maksar and retook Sheikh Othman, a large Arab town on the mainland end of the isthmus. This had been looted by the Turks during their advance, though no serious damage to buildings had been done.

Situated as it is, Sheikh Othman obviously controls the road to Aden from the landward side, so it was decided to put it in a state of defence, and so keep the Turk at a respectful distance from Aden and its crowded shipping. This decision caused the establishment of what was known as the Aden

Field Force, which remained in being till some time after the Armistice. It was a heterogeneous force, whose units kept constantly changing, with the exception of the cavalry, which remained until the force was broken up in 1919.

After the recapture of Sheikh Othman, General Young-husband's brigade left for Egypt, its place being taken by Indian regiments sent from India including Headquarters and two squadrons of the 26th Light Cavalry. From September, 1915, an active defence was maintained, no forward movement being permitted by the authorities, troops being more urgently needed in other theatres of war.

The Turks, on being ejected from Sheikh Othman, fell back towards Lahej and constructed an extended line of piquets, ranging from five to eight miles distant from our trenches, which were constructed in the form of a half moon round Sheikh Othman, with a few advanced posts. Thus the intermediate ground became the permanent battle field or skirmishing ground of the opposing forces. This portion of ground was flat on the whole with patches of acacia scrub and a few sand hills.

Naturally the two squadrons of cavalry were used constantly for patrol work, as also the Aden troop, consisting of fifty horsemen and fifty camelmen, mostly of Indian birth.

It became the fixed policy in Aden to try and inflict as much loss as possible on the Turks, without drawing on a general engagement. In this way it was hoped to wear them down, as only scanty reinforcements could reach them from Sanaa. Every morning, well before dawn, cavalry patrols started out to watch and report any movement in the Turkish piquet line or push back any enterprising parties of the enemy who ventured too near our entrenchments. Frequent patrol actions took place between our cavalry and enemy patrols, which consisted usually of camelmen with some infantry in support. Over 200 such actions took place in all at Aden, which usually resulted in the Turks withdrawing to their piquet line and so to safety. If they were in too great strength, artillery and infantry help was called for.

In the early part of 1917 a six-inch gun on a motor tractor arrived in Sheikh Othman, which could shell some of the Turkish piquets from our defences. To give this gun a target, other than a piquet, a portion of the cavalry were sent on a turning movement to threaten a flank, and endeavour to lure parties of the Turks from their piquet line. Spotting for the gun was done by a kite balloon section. Such an occasion happened on 8th March, 1917. To the West of the Wadi Kebir is an open flat sandy plain with a few acacia bushes dotted about, which was chiefly the scene of the above action. The general plan was to draw the Turks out of Waht, possibly into the open, and give the six-inch gun a target. Incidentally Saiyid Pasha was supposed to be visiting Waht that afternoon, so it was hoped his troops would be extra zealous ! Accordingly, " C " Squadron, only fifty strong that day, half Jats and half Rajputs, was ordered to make a demonstration West of the Wadi Kabir in the direction of Waht, in the hopes of enticing the Turks out of their piquets. This squadron left Sheikh Othman at 3 p.m. in the afternoon. The squadron crossed the Wadi Kabir about a mile above Bir Ahmad and had proceeded about another mile North-West, when a scout brought back the information that a party of a dozen enemy, mounted on camels, each man carrying a rifle, was about one mile ahead and moving swiftly towards Waht. " D " Squadron (Punjabi Mahomedans), dismounted, was meanwhile holding a position about one and a half miles North of Bir Ahmad astride the Wadi Kabir, to prevent the Turks coming down from Waht unseen and intercepting " C " Squadron's line of withdrawal. At this point the Wadi had high steep banks and was about sixty yards wide, with plenty of high acacia bushes in the vicinity.

I was with " C " Squadron and, on receiving the scout's information, gave the order to gallop in an extended line and endeavour to intercept and capture the above enemy patrol. After a four mile chase, this patrol was headed away from Waht and rounded up. They offered no resistance as we were too strong, so we made them dismount and took their rifles.

Immediately we made them mount again, and had the leading rope of each camel held by a sowar. By gestures we indicated what would happen should they try and bolt !

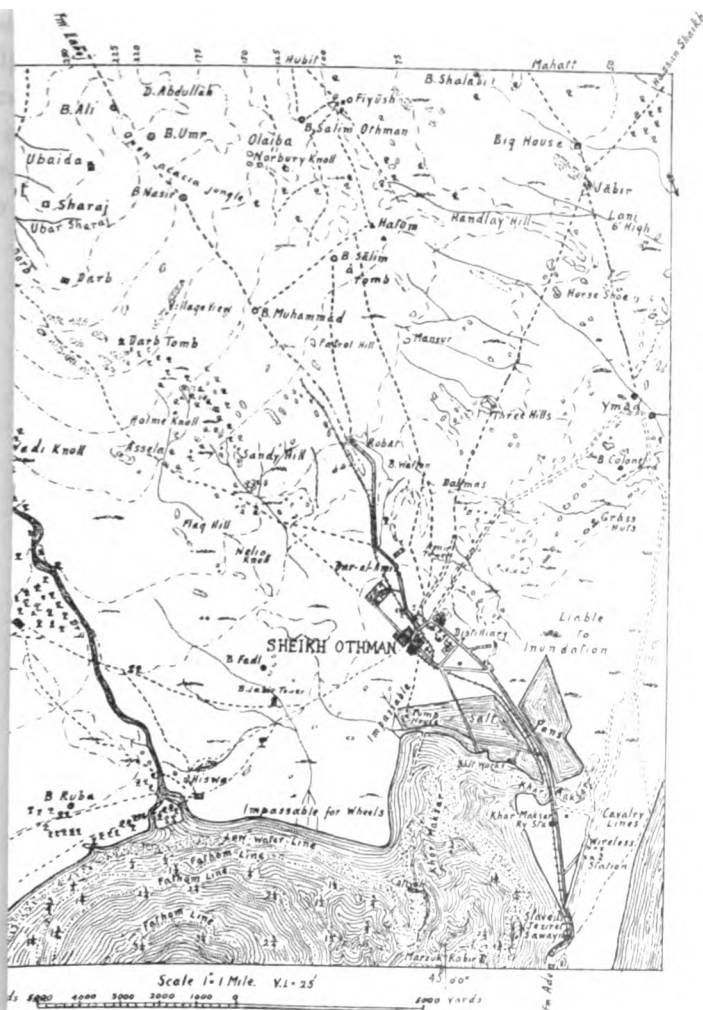
The six-inch gun had now been firing slowly for some minutes, but at what we could not see, as it was growing dark.

It was now time for "C" Squadron to withdraw, which we began to do, with the prisoners, at a trot. We had proceeded on our way for about half a mile, when rifle fire was heard from the direction of the Wadi near where "D" Squadron was waiting. Events had happened exactly as we had expected. The Turks had thought to cut us off by advancing concealed down the Wadi, but "D" Squadron was quite ready for them.

I had to think quickly what to do and decided to leave the prisoners under a lance-dafedar with a section, with orders to escort them straight back to Sheikh Othman, proceeding by Hiswa at the mouth of the Wadi Kabir. It was now nearly dark, though there was a moon. With the remainder of the squadron I galloped to reinforce the Punjabis who, judging by the volume of the rifle fire, were having a merry scrap with the Turks in the Wadi.

It was difficult to see much or far, and I was anxious lest we should bump into a large number of dismounted Turks instead of "D" Squadron, as I could not tell at first the exact positions of either. However, the direction of rifle flashes helped us, so we soon found the Punjabis and joined in the fray. The shooting of the Turks had been very wild, only two men being slightly wounded. The Turks were now quite held up, though the opposing forces were only 100 yards apart.

Orders were soon received from Headquarters, Sheikh Othman, for the force to withdraw, which by this time included some infantry in support, though they did not come into action. This was quickly effected, as the Turks had no mounted troops. The whole force arrived back in Sheikh Othman about 9 p.m., where to my great relief I heard the enemy camel patrol was safely in the cage. The lance dafedar had done well. As the result of this action the Turks were reported to have had



nine men killed and thirty wounded, so we felt we had the best of the exchange.

The cavalry in Aden had many similar actions, varying from small patrol encounters to two squadron demonstrations and fire fights. Casualties were not heavy from bullets, but were so from climate, as the heat from May to September is appalling in the Lahej Delta.

Aden was a complete side show but certainly full of useful experience for junior officers, N.C.O.s and patrol leaders.



THE ROYAL NORTH-WEST MOUNTED POLICE
NOW
THE ROYAL CANADIAN MOUNTED POLICE

The following description of this well-known Corps consists mainly of an address entitled "The R.N.W.M. Police in Peace and War," delivered to the Alberta Military Institute at Calgary by Colonel G. E. Sanders, C.M.G., D.S.O., late a Superintendent in the R.N.W.M. Police. Certain additions and omissions have been made for the purpose of this article by Lieut.-General Sir A. C. Macdonnell, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., also at one time a Superintendent in the R.N.W.M. Police. Both officers are graduates of the Royal Military College of Canada.

THE present Royal Canadian Mounted Police comprises the former Royal North West Mounted Police and Dominion Police, which were amalgamated in February, 1920. The North West Mounted Police were first raised in October, 1873, their jurisdiction being then restricted to the North West Territories of Canada. The title of Royal was conferred by His Majesty in 1904. Colonel H.R.H. The Prince of Wales and Duke of Cornwall, K.G., K.T., G.C.S.I., G.C.M.G., G.C.I.E., G.C.V.O., G.B.E., M.C., is the Honorary Commandant of the Corps. The Corps has as its Badge a Buffalo Head with the Motto "Maintiens le Droit," and boasts of two battle honours, "North West Canada, 1885"; "South Africa, 1900-01."

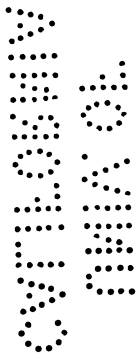
The uniform (Dragoon) is scarlet with blue facings; the headdress being, in summer a Stetson hat, in winter a Yukon fur cap. In winter, also, short fur coats, fur mitts, mocassins or felt boots are worn, a special dress being issued to those serving within the Arctic Circle. The force is armed as a cavalry regiment, plus a Colt revolver issued to all ranks, with a certain number of Vickers, Maxims and Hotchkiss machine guns, and is trained both as a cavalry regiment and as an armed frontier constabulary. From its inception the standard aimed



CPL. MOUNTED POLICE. (OLD MEXICAN SADDLE).

The Police now use the Universal Saddle.

NOV
1914



at has been great practicability and self-reliance ; every Mounted Police Division (equivalent to a small squadron), being a self-contained unit, with its own artisans, ready to go anywhere, build its own bridges, erect its own barracks, etc. No one can serve long in the Mounted Police without becoming a handy man.

The first Commissioner and Organizer of the N.W.M.P., 1873-1876, was Lieut.-Colonel (afterwards Major-General Sir) George A. French, Royal Artillery, Inspector of Artillery and Commandant of the School of Gunnery, Kingston, Canada, an Irish Imperial Officer of great ability, then on loan to Canada. The first Assistant-Commissioner was Lieut.-Colonel James Farquharson Macleod, late a Brigade Major with Sir Garnet Wolseley's Red River Expedition (Riel Rebellion, 1870), Canadian Militia Officer, who for his services with the Red River Expedition received a Brevet Lieut.-Colonelcy and a C.M.G. The original No. 1 of the N.W.M.P. was the late Lieut.-Colonel A. H. Griesbach (an old 15th Hussar and Cape Mounted Rifleman), at that time Sergt.-Major Riding Instructor to "A" Battery at Kingston. He became Regimental Sergt.-Major and later Sub-Inspector and Adjutant to Colonel French. In the Rebellion of 1885 he was made a Major, and retired in 1903 with the rank of Lieut.-Colonel, after having been a Superintendent for many years.

The circumstances which led up to the formation of the Mounted Police were in brief as follows: The Dominion Government, in 1869, two years after Confederation, assumed the administration of all the Hudson's Bay Company's territory, much of which, particularly the Southern portion of what is now Alberta and Saskatchewan, was an unknown land. This change led in a few months to the first Riel Rebellion of 1869, which was quelled by the Red River Expedition, under Lord (then Colonel) Wolseley. At the same time the completion of the Union Pacific Railway, the lawlessness which accompanied the settlement of Western America, and the constant wars against the Indians carried on by the United States immediately South of us, created a serious situation in the border States, and similar

troubles were feared in Canadian territory. The worst type of Western ruffians were trading whiskey to the Indians and causing all kinds of crime. In March, 1871, Lieutenant W. F. Butler, of the 69th Regiment, made his report on the "Great Lone Land," one clause of which reads: "As matters at present rest, the region of the Saskatchewan is without law, order, or security for life or property. Robbery and murder for years have gone unpunished. Indian massacres are unchecked even in the close vicinity of the Hudson's Bay Company's posts, and all civil and legal institutions are entirely unknown." Next year Sir John Macdonald sent up Colonel Robertson-Ross, Adjutant-General, to investigate. His report showed that these whiskey traders from the United States were debauching the Indians and "that no attempt had been made to assert the supremacy of the law, and the most serious crimes had been allowed to go unpunished." His report recommended a chain of military posts of from 50 to 100 men each, at various points throughout the West. Further reports of bloodshed and disorder from the West, led to discussion in Parliament, and Sir John Macdonald decided that a mounted constabulary force, organized on similar lines to the Royal Irish Constabulary, should be raised to maintain order.

The Act establishing the N.W.M.P. was assented to on 20th May, 1873, but it was not till a shocking Indian outrage at Cypress Hills in June, 1873 had roused public opinion in the whole of Canada to the seriousness of the situation, that the work of recruiting the Mounted Police was immediately proceeded with.

Lieut.-Colonel George A. French, R.A., Inspector of Artillery and Commandant of the School of Gunnery, Kingston, was appointed Commissioner, and, in October, 1873, 150 of all ranks were sent to Fort Garry, where they wintered. During the winter, another 150 were recruited in Toronto, and joined the first contingent at Dufferin in Southern Manitoba, in June, 1874. Under the amended Police Act of that year, the strength of the force was as follows: Commissioner, Assist. Commissioner, 6 Inspectors, 12 Sub-Inspectors, 2 Surgeons, 1 Paymaster, 1

Quarter-master, 1 Veterinary Surgeon, and 300 N.C.O's. and men, divided into six divisions, designated by the first six letters of the alphabet. The scarlet uniform was adopted, as the Indians, not only our side of the line, but in the States, distinguished what was British and what stood for British fair dealing by the colour of the uniform ; and the Hon. Frank Oliver, who has known the West from early days, states that for nearly half a century through Canada's great plains the red coat of the Mounted Policeman was the visible definite assurance that Right was Might. A red speck on the horizon was notice to both weak and strong, honest and dishonest, that the rule of law prevailed, while experience taught white men and red that law meant evenhanded justice as between man and man without fear or favour ; as R. W. Service puts it in "Clancy of the Mounted Police" :

" In the little crimson manual it's written plain and clear,
That who would wear the scarlet coat shall say good-bye
to fear ;
Shall be a guardian of the right, a sleuth-hound on the
trail ;
In the little crimson manual there's no such word as
fail."

The force was designed to carry out duties of both a civil and military nature. The Mounted Police Act took the place of the Army Act, and it provided for Regulations and Orders which corresponded with K. R. and O. The procedure was in many respects simpler, but the punishments were sometimes much more severe than under the Army Act, as many offences committed by a constable would be far more serious than if committed by a soldier.

A history of the R.N.W.M.P. can, like Cæsar's Gaul, be divided into three parts :

- (1) The first period, from 1873 to 1884, when this Western country was for the greater part of the time practically uninhabited, and the force was engaged in introducing law and order, pacifying and making treaties with the natives and suppressing lawlessness ;

- (2) The period between 1884 and 1905 (the date of the formation of the Provinces), when settlers were pouring in and when additional, different and more arduous work was entailed ;
- (3) The period since the formation of the Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan, when for a time the work increased greatly, but was decidedly more prosaic than in the earlier periods, except in the Yukon and the unorganized territories.

The first period might well be called the Golden Age of the Force. It entailed a life of hardship and adventure and attracted a class of men to whom such an existence appealed, such men as have spread the British Empire all over the world and who belonged to Kipling's "Lost Legion," which

"Split in a thousand Detachments
Is breaking the road for the rest."

As I have already stated, the whole force was assembled at Dufferin in June, 1874, to prepare for the famous march of some 800 miles to the West. It was armed with Snyder carbines and Adams revolvers, about half of the Snyder ammunition being loaded with buckshot. The artillery consisted of two of the latest pattern 9-pounder M.L.R. guns, and two small howitzers. The advance and rear guards carried lances. The uniform consisted of scarlet Norfolk jackets without facing, brown leather belts, bandoliers and haversacks, white helmets, breeches of steel grey cloth, and brown jack boots. Officer's breeches were of yellow Bedford cord. In undress the round forage cap (pill box) was worn. Officers and sergeants carried swords.

A terrific thunderstorm lasting the whole of one night caused a stampede of the horses, and delayed the start ; it took many days to recover the animals, some of which were found thirty-five miles away. The start was made on the 10th July,—a most imposing spectacle, the column measuring from one and half to two miles when closed up. The six divisions were distinguished by horses of different colours, bays, greys, blacks, chestnuts, etc. ; 2 field guns, 2 mortars, 308 horses, 142 oxen, 93 cattle, 73 wagons, and 114 ox carts were included



ON THE WAY TO CHURCHILL.



PATROL CROSSING ICE. HUDSON BAY COUNTRY.

TO MIMI
MIMILIAO

in the column. By the middle of September, the force had reached its destination, the junction of the Bow and Belly Rivers. A description of the march would necessitate another article, but in order to give some idea of its nature, I cannot do better than quote from Colonel French's report :

"Tied by no stringent rules or articles of war, but only by the silken cord of a civil contract, these men by their conduct gave little cause for complaint. Day after day on the march, night after night, on picquet or guard ; and working at high pressure during four months from daylight until dark, and too frequently after dark, with little rest, not even on the day sacred to rest, the force ever pushed onward, delighted when occasionally a pure spring was met with. There was still no complaint when salt water or the refuse of a mud hole was the only liquid available, and I have seen this whole force obliged to drink liquid which, when passed through a filter, was still the colour of ink. The fact of oxen and horses failing and dying for want of food never disheartened or stopped them, but pushing on, on foot, with dogged determination, they carried through the service required of them, under difficulties which can only be appreciated by those who witnessed them.

"The broad fact is apparent that a Canadian Force, hastily raised, armed and equipped, and not under martial law, in a few months marched vast distances through a country for the most part as unknown as it proved bare of pasture and scanty in the supply of water. Of such a march, under such adverse circumstances, all true Canadians may well be proud."

Colonel Macleod, the Assistant Commissioner, was left with 150 men and established Fort Macleod. Posts were also established at Fort Saskatchewan, Shoal Lake and Swan River. The following additional posts were later located at Fort Walsh (which became headquarters), Battleford, Calgary, Prince Albert, Qu'Appelle, etc., and around each post small settlements soon started. The work of the Force consisted mainly of suppressing the trading of whiskey to the Indians and establishing friendly relations with them. So successful were they that within a year one of the leading Blackfoot chiefs, spoke

thus before his tribe at a conference with Colonel Macleod : " Before you came the Indian crept along, now he is not afraid to walk erect." The advance of settlement in the Western States of America was accomplished with the utmost lawlessness and bloodshed and cost the U.S.A. a heavy price in money and lives. The wisdom of the Canadian Government in using a semi-military force, whose duties combined the establishing of law, order and British justice, as well as the suppression of hostile action on the part of white or native, has been abundantly shown. The Mounted Police were able to make promises and to see that they were carried out, a most important matter in dealing with Indians. Broken promises were the cause of all the trouble with Indians in the United States. The important fact in this period of the history of the R.N.W.M.P. is, that the way for settlement was made safe in Western Canada without anything approaching disorder. It was accomplished without bloodshed and without giving rise to any feeling of injustice or unfair treatment on the part of the Indians. The Rebellion in 1885 was due to causes quite different from those which contributed to the Indian troubles in the United States.

In 1881, the Marquis of Lorne, then Governor-General, made a memorable tour through the N.W. Territories. The whole responsibility of his trip rested on the shoulders of the Police ; he was taken under Police escort some 2,072 miles at an average of thirty-five miles a day, and only parted with it at Fort Shaw in Montana. His Excellency was accompanied by a staff of all branches of the Service, who were instructed to criticize and report. The following are his remarks on returning to Eastern Canada :

" The Dominion, through her mounted constabulary, is showing herself the inheritors of their traditions. She has been fortunate in organizing the Mounted Police Force, a corps of whose service it would be impossible to speak too highly. A mere handful in that vast wilderness, they have at all times been ready to go anywhere and do anything. They have often had to act on occasions demanding the combined individual pluck and prudence rarely found amongst any soldiery, and

there has not been a single occasion on which any member of the force has lost his temper in trying circumstances or has not fulfilled his mission as a guardian of the peace. Severe journeys in the winter and difficult arrests have had to be made in the centre of savage tribes, and not once has the moral prestige which was in reality their only weapon, been found insufficient to cope with the difficulties which in America have baffled whole columns of armed men. I am glad of the opportunity to name these men as well worthy of Canada's regard and as sons who have well maintained her name and fame—inheritors of British traditions."

The last years of this period of the Force's history saw the completion of the Canadian Pacific Railway across the prairies to the mountains. The army of several thousand men which this work necessitated, and the accompanying influx of settlers began to place heavy burdens and new and more complicated duties upon the Police. The Golden Age of the force was fast disappearing, and it was being brought more and more into touch with modern civilization and its corroding influences. In connection with the building of the railway, the following extract of a letter to Colonel Irvine, Commissioner of the Force, from Sir William Van Horne, might be of interest: "On no great work within my knowledge, where so many men have been employed, has such perfect order prevailed. On behalf of the Company, and of all the officers, I wish to return thanks."

During the second period in the history of the Force, between 1884 and 1905, all the problems of settlement had to be dealt with—troubles between whites and Indians, the policing of the towns, the patrolling of the boundary, the enforcing of the Liquor Law and the hundred and one odd jobs which devolve on police in civilized communities. Many of the men who had been in the ranks during the first ten years, proved unequal to the trials and tribulations of these new conditions, not because they were not capable, but mainly on account of the uncongeniality of the change which had taken place. Many had joined to get away from civilization and its many temptations, and were perhaps better soldiers than they were police-

men. These were the men who could sing with much feeling the chorus of the old police song :

“ Then pass the tea and let us drink to the
Guardians of the Land,
You bet your life it's not our fault
That whiskey's contraband.”

For work on the prairies, or in the northern forests and rivers, their equals cannot be found to-day. Resourceful and undaunted under all circumstances, they would overcome any obstacle and they left behind them a high tradition of honour and loyalty to their Corps. Their troubles and gradual disappearance from the force during the years 1886 to 1890 was the cause of much uneasiness and sympathy on the part of both officers and men. Personally I had many reasons to deplore their lot, particularly in the case of one of them who on two occasions saved my life. Drill, training and the tightening up of discipline during this period was, from necessity, given ever increasing attention. Few constables could get through their training at headquarters in less than six months, and the standard for N.C.O's became very high, none being promoted without a special course and a severe examination.

The second Riel Rebellion, or what is known as the North-West Rebellion, started in March, 1885. As early as July, 1884, the police had reported the arrival of Riel from the United States, and that his object was to raise trouble. From that time until the actual outbreak, the Government was informed of every move. As long as the agitation was confined to the half breeds it was not serious, but when it was found that the Indians were being tampered with, the Police were reinforced up to 200 men along the North Saskatchewan, and a new Post was established in October, 1884, at Carlton, a few miles north of Riel's headquarters, at Batoche. Early in March much excitement was manifest among the half breeds, and Indian runners were very active. On the 14th March, Superintendent Crozier wired that the Rebellion might break out at any moment, that the Indians would join in, and that reinforcements should be sent. On the 18th March, Com-

missioner Irvine with eighty-six men left Regina for the north. Arriving at Prince Albert on the 25th, in spite of efforts by Riel to intercept him, next day he proceeded to Carlton, some forty miles, accompanied by about fifty civilians, who had volunteered for service. The same morning a party of police and civilians came in contact with the rebels at Duck Lake. The Rebellion had begun.

Twelve civilians and police were killed in this engagement and eleven wounded. The snow at this time was from two to three feet deep on the level, and it was well nigh impossible to travel off the beaten trail. It was owing to this that the police suffered so many casualties. On the 24th March, orders were received placing them under General Middleton's command. He had not reached Winnipeg at that time. This, as it turned out, was an unfortunate move for the police and for the country. The General's first orders to the police were not to move and that when he arrived (which was not to be for some months later) the half breeds would lay down their arms. As I was at that time acting in the capacity of a Staff Officer to Colonel Irvine, I had full knowledge of all the orders received. Except in the North, the police managed to keep the Indians quiet throughout the Rebellion, in spite of strenuous efforts to make them rise. Apart from the column of troops under General Middleton, which started from Qu'Appelle, the Police formed the backbone of the columns under Colonel Otter from Swift Current, and General Strange from Calgary. A history of this Rebellion cannot be given in this paper, but it is certain that the Mounted Police bore the brunt of it, and that the treatment they received from the General in command, was, to put it mildly, unfair. It is well known now, that if the Police had been given a freer hand and their experience and knowledge made more use of, millions of dollars would have been saved the country.

The result of the Rebellion left the Police with increased responsibilities in pacifying those who had lately been in revolt and restoring the sense of security that had hitherto prevailed. The Government realized that an increase in the strength was necessary, and the force was recruited up to 1,000.

In 1895, the advance rush of miners to the Yukon decided the Government to send two officers and twenty men to keep order. By the time of the big rush in 1898, the Police, largely reinforced, were well in control of the situation. Their record in maintaining law and order in this mining camp has been often told, sometimes in the form of romantic fiction, but it is a matter of historical fact that they well maintained their past reputation under circumstances which proved too much for many Government officials.

The South African War, which broke out in 1899, found the N.W.M.P. taking their part, although as a corps they lost their identity; 290 officers and men went to the front, a larger representation than any other permanent Corps in the Dominion. After the first Canadian contingent sailed in October, 1899, an urgent request was made for Canada to supply mounted troops and the Mounted Police were called upon to form the first of these, known as the 2nd Battalion (1st Regiment Canadian Mounted Rifles), commanded by Commissioner Herchmer with Lieut.-Colonel Steele (a Superintendent) Second in Command. All the officers excepting three juniors, and nearly all the N.C.O's and the men were Police or picked men off the large Western ranches. They were the first mounted troops from Canada to reach South Africa, and had a record for service and special scouting which was unequalled by any other Colonial corps. This regiment after suppressing the Rebellion in Cape Colony took part in all the battles from Bloemfontein to the capture of Pretoria and in the fighting east of the latter place. In addition to the above the Mounted Police supplied to Strathcona's Horse the Commanding Officer, the Second in Command, Adjutant, Quartermaster, 2 Squadron Leaders, 3 Captains, the Regimental Sergt.-Major and over 40 N.C.O's and men; to the 2nd Regiment C.M.R., the Adjutant; 1 Squadron Leader, 2 Officers and 31 men, 24 being specially selected N.C.O's; and to S.A. Constabulary, 4 Officers and 38 men, and to the 5th Regiment, C.M.R.'s the O.C., Adjutant, Assist. Adjutant, Quartermaster, 1 Squadron Leader and 31 N.C.O's and men. The Commander of Lord Strathcona's Horse, the late



FORT McPHARSON IN THE FAR NORTH.
Mounted Police and Indians.



THE
CITY OF
CALIFORNIA

DOG TEAM AT FORT CHURCHILL, 1914.

TO VIRU
AIRBORNE

General Steele (then a Superintendent in the Police), had reached Halifax with the 2nd Battalion, 1st C.M.R., of which he was Second in Command. He was called from there to assume the organization of this famous regiment. The Mounted Police assisted in its organization, and so it might be said that Lord Strathcona's Horse is an offspring of the N.W.M.P. or, at least, a distant relative.

In 1901 their Royal Highnesses the Duke and Duchess of Cornwall and York visited Canada, the Mounted Police taking charge of their safety from Winnipeg until they embarked at Victoria, and furnishing the necessary Royal Escorts. A review of the force was held at Calgary followed by a great Indian gathering. Shortly after the Boer War, the sphere of Police operations was extended into the Athabasca, to the North as far as Herschel Island in the Arctic, also North East about Hudson's Bay. In August, 1905, the Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan came into existence, and an arrangement was made for the employment of the Force within their borders until the 1st April, 1911, later extended to 1916.

The third period of the Force's history, from the formation of the Provinces to the present day, was a more prosaic one. Until 1916, when the policing of the Provinces was abandoned, the force was more and more split up each year to meet the increasing tide of immigration flowing into every part of the West. Where two or three men were on detachment in the past, one had now to do their work., and the year 1911 was marked by the freezing to death of Inspector Fitzgerald and his patrol of three men between Fort McPherson and Dawson, one of the most recent of the many tragedies in the history of the force. This was only one of the many difficult journeys that the Police are still carrying out in the Arctic and unorganized territories. The fate of Fitzgerald's patrol brought home to the people of Canada the realization of what the work of the Police was like in the Northern hinterland. The gallant Fitzgerald, who had risen from the ranks and had a wonderful record of service, was the last of his patrol to succumb, first having written with a charred stick on a paper found in his

pocket, his will in the fine words: "All money in despatch bag and bank, clothes, etc., I leave to my dearly beloved mother, Mrs. John Fitzgerald of Halifax. God bless all. F. J. Fitzgerald, R.N.W.M.P."

As an example of the work in the more settled portion of the country, the following report from Corporal Hogg speaks for itself: "International Boundary Line, North Portal. On 17th instant, I, Corporal Hogg, was called to the hotel to quiet a disturbance. I found the room full of cowboys, and one, Monaghan, or 'Cowboy Jack,' was carrying a gun and pointed it at me, against Sections 105 and 109 of the Criminal Code. We struggled, finally I got him handcuffed and put him inside. His head being in bad shape I had to engage the services of a doctor who dressed his wound and pronounced it as nothing serious. To the doctor, Monaghan said that if I had'nt grabbed his gun there would have been another death in Canadian history. All of which I have the honour to report. (*Signed*) C. Hogg, Corpl." The Officer's note is "during the arrest of Monaghan the following property was damaged: door broken, screen smashed, chair broken, field jacket belonging to Corpl. Hogg damaged, wall bespattered."

The outbreak of the Great War in 1914 found the Force anxious to go overseas as a unit, but the Government would not consider this, and increased their strength by 500 for work in Canada, as fears were at the time entertained of raids from pro-Germans in the United States. It must also be remembered that there were some 175,000 German and Austrian settlers in the prairie provinces. One unit of the Police was, towards the end of the war, permitted to go overseas, but prior to that some 500 men retired or bought their discharge in order to serve. Two of those who left in this manner were Michael O'Leary, V.C., of the Irish Guards, and Lieut.-Colonel Pearkes, V.C. The total contribution to the Great War was, Western Front: 12 Officers, 726 Other Ranks; Siberia: 6 Officers, 184 Other Ranks. Two ex-Officers became Major-Generals and four became Brigadier-Generals.

The Mounted Police have now taken over, in addition to their

former duties, the duties of the Dominion Police in all parts of Canada ; as a consequence they are styled the Royal Canadian instead of the Royal North West, Mounted Police. The old members resent the change of name, but they are glad to believe and know that they are carrying on the grand old traditions of the past.

In conclusion, it may be pointed out that freedom from political influence, for many years at least, was a great benefit to the police as well as the fact that if a criminal had to be secured, no false ideas of economy were allowed to stand in the way. Let me repeat what I have said in the beginning, that this fragmentary and somewhat sketchy account of the Police only pretends to show in a general way the work the Force has done, and so point out the usefulness of a semi-military corps as part of the defensive forces of the Dominion and of the Empire. I have worn the King's uniform for thirty-five years of my life, twenty-seven of these being in the R.N.W.M.P., under practically active service conditions. During all that time I was ever conscious of the fact that we were doing good and useful work for Canada and the Empire. When I retired it was with a deep regret, and the feelings of Kipling's " Galley Slave " :

" God be thanked—what'er comes after, I have lived
and toiled with men."



A BEAU SABREUR OF REVOLUTIONARY FRANCE

By PERCY CROSS STANDING.

"KILMAINE, being an excellent cavalry officer," said the Comte Montholon in his memoirs written at St. Helena, "had coolness and foresight: he was well fitted to command a corps of observation detached upon those arduous or delicate commissions which require spirit, discernment, and sound judgment. He rendered important services to the army of which he was one of the principal generals, notwithstanding the delicacy of his health. He had a great knowledge of the Austrian troops; familiar with their *tactiques*, he did not allow himself to be imposed upon by those rumours which they were in the habit of spreading in the rear of an army, nor to be dismayed by those heads of columns which they were wont to display in every direction, to deceive us as to the real strength of their forces."

Nearly twenty years older than his future leader Napoleon Bonaparte, Charles Jennings Kilmaine was born at Dublin in 1750, of an old Irish Catholic family. His father took him to France when he was only fifteen, and at that tender age enlisted him as a trooper in the celebrated old Hussar regiment of Lauzun. Its colonel was the famous but ill-fated Biron, and under him the boy served in the army of Lafayette in the War of American Independence. It is on record that Biron was so pleased with his gallantry in action that he promoted him *sous-lieutenant*. Kilmaine and many of his colleagues imbibed such Republican ideals whilst in America that they hailed the Revolution of 1789 with delight. In that year he became captain of his troop, and it was thanks largely to his personal example that his hussars, or most of them, remained with the Colours.

Kilmaine was *chef d'escadre* during the early campaigns of Republican France, serving with the army of Dumouriez in the fighting that terminated in the conquest of Holland. On

the stricken field of Jenappes "his hussars repeatedly charged the Austrians, driving them *sabre à la main* along the road that leads from Mons to Valenciennes; and so delighted was his general, the unfortunate Dumouriez, that in the moment of victory he named him colonel; but this nomination was not confirmed by the Minister of War. However, he was soon after gratified by the brevet of *maréchal-de-camp*, which made him in rank second only to a lieutenant-general."

It was in the melancholy period immediately following Jenappes that, thanks principally to departmental neglect and peculation, "the Cavalry of Kilmaine were destitute of boots, saddles, carbines, and even sabres"; no fewer than 6,000 horses died from lack of forage! In these circumstances, it was again Kilmaine's initiative and personality that held his men together.

After the fall of Dumouriez, Kilmaine led the advance guard of General Dampierre's army in the Spring campaign of 1793. In the fighting of 1st/2nd May the gallant Irishman had two horses killed under him, while for a whole week he "never had his boots off nor returned his sword to the scabbard" (!). Dampierre was slain and the French routed in the battle of 8th May near Condé, and Kilmaine "as an active Cavalry officer" covered their retreat. Events now moved swiftly and disastrously for the Republican Army. The Allies under the Duke of York reduced both Condé and Valenciennes. Only under pressure was Kilmaine himself induced to accept (temporary) command of the Army of the North, as he said: "I wish that another more skilful than myself should take the great responsibility of leading the troops of the Republic." On 7th August, 1793, he found himself obliged to evacuate his position at the Camp of Cæsar before the advance of the Duke of York's Army. He was not pursued.

Incredible though it may sound, Kilmaine was now denounced to the Convention and languished for a twelve-months in prison at Paris, not regaining his liberty until after the fall of Robespierre! In this he was lucky to escape the

death by guillotine of such brave soldiers as General Custine, General Houchard, and his former Colonel, Biron. . . . He was free to assist Pichegru in the defence of the Convention against the mob on 22nd May, 1795. Next came his meeting with the young General Bonaparte, and incidentally his return to the leading of cavalry. For he accompanied Napoleon in his march across the Alps and greatly distinguished himself at the battle of Castiglione.

Another charger was killed under him in a spirited affair of cavalry in the vicinity of Mantua in October, 1796—for the veteran Austrian Alvinzi attempted the relief of the equally veteran Würmser in that fortress, the active siege of which the French Generalissimo committed to Kilmaine. "General Kilmaine," wrote Bonaparte to the Directory, "who commands the two divisions which press the siege of Mantua, remained on the 29th in his former position, and was still in hopes that the enemy would attempt a sortie to carry forage into the place; but instead they took up a position before the gate of Pradello. The brave Kilmaine made his arrangements for an attack, and advanced in two columns; but he had scarcely begun his march when the enemy evacuated their camps, their rear having fired only a few musket shots at him."

Bonaparte now placed him in command of all his cavalry, with headquarters at Vicenza, and at their head he played a substantial part in the victory of that name over Alvinzi. A great sortie from Mantua took place in December; "but," reported Bonaparte, "General Kilmaine made him return as usual, faster than he came out, and took from him 200 men, one howitzer, and two pieces of cannon. This is his third unsuccessful attempt." The fortress held out until 4th February, 1797, and there is a touch of Irish humour in the way Kilmaine notified it to Paris: "I thought it necessary to announce this circumstance because General Bonaparte, who is occupied in Romagna annihilating the troops of His Holiness, may probably have been ignorant of this fact when his courier departed."

In the ensuing April, by the judicious use of his cavalry, Kilmaine compelled the capitulation of Verona: "in every way he aided Napoleon most efficiently in these operations which preceded the capture and subjugation of Venice; and thus gave his great leader a thousand causes to admire and appreciate him during those campaigns which were so disastrous to Italy but so glorious to France."

Thirty-four regiments of cavalry were included in the *personnel* of the French Army designated for the invasion of England in the early months of 1798. While the gallant Desaix was to lead the left wing of this embattled host, Kléber was to command the right and Kilmaine the centre. Nearly a score generals of divisions (Berthier, Macdonald, Victor, Masséna, Ney, Marescat, etc.) and forty-seven brigadier-generals were to be engaged, a thousand transports were prepared at Dunkirk, Brest and elsewhere, and excitement ran high. After having carried out a meticulous survey of the coasts of France and the Netherlands, Kilmaine reported to the Directory at Paris in April. The principal command of the "Armée d'Angleterre" was conferred upon Kilmaine, *vice* Desaix; Bonaparte himself stood aloof, it being understood that all his sympathy and ambition were concentrated upon an expedition to Egypt.

On 12th April, Kilmaine and Bonaparte both met the Directory in conference; but "a council of war never fights," and, as is well known, the invasion of England did not take place at all and a half-hearted attempt upon Ireland ended in utter failure. All of this was naturally a source of bitter chagrin and disillusionment to Kilmaine. As a Brussels newspaper of that period phrased it: "We are assured that, in the event of the French Republicans being able to make a successful descent upon Ireland, the Belgic youth will be employed in that country under General Kilmaine, who, being a native of it, will there have the command of the French and Irish forces." It was not to be.

General Kilmaine was by this time suffering from "a deadly malady," the precise character of which is not, how-

ever, definitely stated. Nevertheless, it is alleged that the Directory desired to confer upon him, and not upon Napoleon, the command of the expedition destined for the Land of the Pharaohs. Failing this, they nominated him to the Command-in-Chief of the army which was despatched to the invasion of Switzerland in 1799. Naturally he accepted with enthusiasm ; but again, alas ! the fates proved unkind. At this time his illness took a turn for the worse, and he had the mortification of seeing another—it was Masséna as a matter of fact—appointed to the leadership of the Army of Switzerland.

This Franco-Irish *beau sabreur* had not yet completed his fiftieth year when he passed away on 15th December, 1799—"at the very moment when the triumphant elevation of Bonaparte was opening up to his comrades in arms a long and brilliant career of military glory " An appropriate memorial was raised to his name and fame, and his obsequies were distinguished by more than the customary "honours of war."

It is surely one of the oddest coincidences of Napoleonic history that the three great soldiers who must have figured first in his creation of Marshals at the inauguration of the Empire—Kilmaine, Desaix and Kléber—were all snatched away by death before their leader had attained to the supreme authority. To render this tragic coincidence the more remarkable Desaix and Kléber fell on the same day of the same year—14th June, 1800—the former on the glorious field of Marengo, the latter by the hand of a native assassin at Cairo. Desaix, like Kilmaine, was renowned for his brilliant leadership of cavalry, whilst his chivalrous disposition procured for him the pseudonym of "Bayard of the French Republic."

One of the General's staff officers, d'Arbois by name, writing what we should nowadays call "propaganda" in the Paris press of August, 1798, stated that "the eagerness with which our troops, both by sea and land, await the moment when, under the brave Kilmaine, they will engage the English, is the best pledge of our approaching success and the ruin of our enemies." On the other hand, certain British newspapers referred in uncomplimentary terms to "Paddy Kilmaine and his followers."

REMOUNTS IN THE CANADIAN WEST

By S.S.M.I. (W.O.II) W. C. ROBERTS, Lord Strathcona's Horse
(Royal Canadians)

IN approaching this subject it would be as well to explain to the reader, that the vast extent of the Dominion with its divers ways and customs, renders it extremely difficult to discuss this question from the viewpoint of all. Ideas that exist in the Eastern and older Provinces, certainly do not prevail, nor would they find favour, in the West, and *vice versa*.

This may appear somewhat irrelevant to the subject in hand, but nevertheless it doubtless has bearing on the manner of procuring remounts, and the type obtained by the Canadian Department of National Defence.

Being with a regiment stationed in the West, naturally one's ideas will run on such conditions as prevail in that part of the Dominion.

There are no remount depots in Canada from which supplies could be drawn as required, neither is the system of "boarding" horses in vogue. Although the former has from time to time been suggested, doubtless the small number of remounts required annually, makes an establishment of this nature a luxury that cannot be afforded. The Western Provinces of Canada are, as yet, so prolific in horses as to render the question of boarding unnecessary. The procuring of remounts for the mounted branches of the Canadian Service is therefore left almost entirely to individual districts.

Unfortunately, the supply of the required article has in past years been meagre, for although horse breeding, or to be more exact, horse raising, is very extensively carried on in the West, seemingly little care has been taken to produce any particular

type, certainly not the type required for cavalry use. It is extremely gratifying, however, to realise that this is a condition that appears to be passing, due to a very great extent to the stimulation to correct breeding created by His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales on his ranch at High River.

The Department of Agriculture has also made great efforts to encourage the ranchers and farmers to produce a suitable and serviceable type of horse. Some two years ago this Department went to the trouble and expense of travelling a horse (incidentally a troop horse) throughout the Province with the object of showing the farmer the type that would command a fairly good price. In addition to this, to encourage the keeping of thoroughbreds, and to assist in the elimination of scrub stock, a grant of \$500.00 per annum is donated to the owner of a thoroughbred stallion serving suitable mares, a stipulation to this grant being that stud fees shall not exceed \$15.00 for common mares or \$25.00 for thoroughbred mares. When one considers that the average price paid for an army remount is \$150.00, and compares this with the \$50.00 to \$75.00 that the ordinary saddle horse commands, the wisdom of a little care and trouble from the point of view of the rancher becomes apparent.

The usual procedure adopted in the purchasing of remounts is to form what is known as a "purchasing board" consisting of the Officer Commanding the Unit for which the remounts are required, the District Veterinary Officer, and one other Officer. The District Veterinary Officer in submitting his annual estimates, makes provision for the number of remounts he thinks will be required by Units in his District for the forthcoming year. He, himself, is a most unique gentleman, being personally known and hail fellow well met to the majority of ranchers and farmers in his locality, and moreover, being a person of keen discernment, he usually knows where he can lay his hands on a few suitable horses. To a great extent he is helped in this respect by the annual Non-Permanent Militia Camps. The bulk of militiamen in rural units are either farmers or ranchers and invariably bring their own horses to camp.

No doubt tacit arrangements and preliminary bargainings for future purchases are frequently made by the D.V.O. at his camp inspection of horses.

It is now stipulated that the potential remount must be broken, that is, sufficiently quiet to allow of proper "vetting." In addition to this, it has been found that with entirely unbroken horses, many go unsound during breaking, due no doubt to the abnormal strain and jar that muscles and tendons are subjected to during the display of "bucking" which this type will persist in, not to mention the personal discomfort of the personnel told off for remount training, and the consequent increase on the Parade State of men in hospital.

The only warranty asked for, or given, is that the animal must remain sound for twenty hours after joining, obviously to prevent unscrupulous dealers from "doping" the horse for the purpose of sale. Four to six-year olds, about 15.3, are usually asked for, of a type as near that of the lightweight hunter as possible.

All animals purchased for the Department of National Defence are segregated until a mallein test has been carried out by a representative of the Department of Agriculture. Apart from the ordinary precautions, this is done with a two-fold purpose, firstly, to protect the person from whom the animal is purchased, who would be compensated for its destruction, and, secondly, to have immediate knowledge of any area that might contain glanders cases.

A considerable sum of money and time was spent by this Department some years ago, in an endeavour to completely eradicate this disease, an effort that happily was quite successful, and this condition all horse lovers sincerely hope will remain.

It must be borne in mind that the majority of Western horses are range bred, and even after being broken, rarely see the inside of a stable or know what a feed of grain is, until, in our case, they join the regiment, so that the damage which can be caused by injudicious feeding or working during their first months of service, and the care necessary to prevent this, can

readily be appreciated. In passing it may be a point of interest that for all their wild untamed youth, these horses after being broken, become quite docile, and stable vices are practically unknown.

Training is carried out on much the same lines as at home, with certain modifications necessitated by climatic conditions. The long cold winters and lack of facilities makes the schooling of the remount joining in the autumn a long and arduous job. Those purchased in the spring get away to a better start and are well on the way to being the finished article before the bad weather arrives, although conditioning these takes longer, particularly if bought after a hard winter. A little lungeing, quiet handling, and even backing, will be carried out for the first couple of weeks, more with the idea of building the horse up than any serious effort at schooling.

It can hardly be considered an exaggeration to say that the majority of our horses are unusually heavy in front, with a thickness behind the jaw that makes that magic condition of balance and collection increasingly hard to obtain. Free jumping in the lane and over the grid with lots of free movement, assists greatly in getting their heads up and a little more weight on the hocks. Although there is the old slug, the greater proportion are quite responsive and quickly learn to answer the leg, which shows that the Canadian horse is not entirely bad, and what faults he has, can be put down to accident of birth, which, as Mr. Jorrocks would probably remark, "aint no fault of his."

Our establishment of horses, and men for that matter, is very limited, roughly seventy riding horses including officers' chargers being the strength of a squadron. Considering that the purchasing of remounts usually means the casting of an equivalent number of older horses, it will be seen that the horses left for normal training are sadly depleted. In addition to our own regimental training, a great deal of which, by reason of the short term of service, is devoted to recruits, a certain amount of time must be given to the training of non-permanent personnel at the various schools and courses held during the

year. Really the *raison d'être* of the Canadian Permanent Force is to act as a School of Instruction for these Non-Permanent men. It can be easily understood that if this training is to be carried on, our limited establishment will not allow of remounts being retained for schooling as long as might otherwise be deemed advisable.

Also this training of recruits and militia makes a certain amount of unwitting abuse to horses unavoidable, and the necessity for constant retraining is one with which we are always faced.

Usually we expect horses that are bought in the spring to be fit for the ranks by the following winter, and those coming in the autumn, by the following summer. Even this short period may have to be decreased by letting some of the more advanced supply the number required for other training.

Doubtless our training of remounts is more hurried, and not so complete, as might be desired, but when the imperative necessity for other, and what is considered by some more important, training, is taken into consideration, coupled with a realization of the climatic drawbacks, much I feel sure, will be forgiven that otherwise would receive condemnation.



TO THE
ARTILLERY

ACCIDENTS—BY FLOOD AND FIELD

By MAJOR J. GODDARD

THERE are occasions when, irritated by some seemingly superfluous admonition in the Regulations or by some apparently common-sense precaution stressed in Orders, the harassed soldier will consign Regulations, and all who draft them, to perdition with soul-satisfying vehemence. Yet, not infrequently, the neglect of the obvious measure enjoined in the offending paragraph has, at some earlier time, been the cause of a disaster entailing avoidable loss of life. There is many a precept written in letters of blood.

Among the rules laid down for the conduct of cavalry on the march are certain ones to be observed in passing rivers. For instance, that fords should be marked out by stakes, both the up-stream and down-stream limits of the passage being so determined; that the stakes should be long enough to be easily seen, and marked so as to show any rise of water; that they should be roped together at the top; that the nature of the bottom should be ascertained—and so forth. Again, it is recommended that emergency landing-places be sited down-stream of the crossing, in case men should be carried away; and that every possible use be made of boats or rafts for the transport of kit. Such precautions may seem obvious; but the records of two famous cavalry regiments may be cited to draw attention to disasters which are directly attributable to neglect of them.

At the conclusion of the Afghan Campaign of 1839 the 16th Lancers were in march back to India and, leaving Rawal Pindi on 3rd December, the regiment arrived at Jhelum, on the river of that name, on 11th December. At this town there was a ferry, where some thirty flat-bottomed boats had been

collected for the transport of troops and baggage if required ; but the river was reported to be fordable a mile and a half above the ferry, and the Brigadier appears to have thought that the passage could be effected more easily by the ford than by the ferry. At the point in question the Jhelum is about 400 yards wide and the current is rapid. The ford itself, half-moon shaped and bending sharply from the centre towards the southern bank, had been staked out with bamboos ; but for some reason the tops of the canes were hardly visible above the stream—possibly this was due to a rise in the level of the water. The fact remains that the marks were anything but obvious, nor does the regiment seem to have been warned of their existence.

Captain Hilton, of the 16th, was sent across the ford to report on it ; and he returned to say that he had ridden over and back without difficulty, the water being only up to his horse's knees. The Brigadier then sent word for the regiment to cross, and it moved into the stream in column of threes.

The advanced guard passed safely over ; but the head of the main body lost direction when about 100 yards from the further bank, at a point where the shoal bent suddenly up-stream. The leading files were edged off it by the swift current and, in a moment, more than fifty men and horses of the leading squadron were swept away down-stream into deep water. A terrible scene ensued. The men did not know which way to turn ; the horses became restive ; the rear squadrons, closely locked up, pressed upon the leading one, throwing more men off the track. To make matters worse, at this precise moment a number of baggage camels which had been trying to cross higher up-stream, parallel to the 16th, were also carried away and, sweeping through the second and third squadrons, knocked more men and horses off their feet into the racing river. After a few minutes, which seemed an agony of time, someone struck the true track of the ford and the remainder of the regiment was brought over to safety.

Once ashore, everyone rushed to the assistance of the men and horses who were struggling in the water. After much

exertion, most of them were rescued lower down the river ; but when the roll was called, Captain Hilton, ten men and twelve horses were reported missing. A number of the men owed their safety to the very baggage camels which had contributed to the disaster, for they clung to the unwieldy brutes and were towed ashore by them ; none of these animals appear to have been lost. The bodies of Captain Hilton and of six of the troopers were recovered during the day and were buried on the river-bank at nightfall ; the other four were never seen again.

A most unnecessary risk was taken in sending the regiment, fully accoutred, across a deep, uncertain, ill-defined ford, of unstable footing and known danger ; and the risk, already great enough, was increased by sending a parallel column across the river at the same time, and still further augmented by the "close up" formation adopted. The loss of life might have been diminished immensely if the boats had been used to take the kits, for most of the men were weighed down by their equipment ; while it might have been avoided altogether if the crossing had been made by boat entirely. The operation was not one which called for speed at any cost.

A week later the same regiment crossed the River Chenab. Warned by the recent disaster, the kits were ferried over and the horses ridden bareback across the stream ; and this time there was no untoward incident.

Just forty years later a similar disaster befel a squadron of the 10th Hussars, and again it happened on the North-West Frontier. During the Afghan Campaign of 1879 a small expedition was sent out from the camp at Jugdulluck to operate against the Khurgiani Tribe, assembled near Futtehabad, the column consisting of one squadron of the 10th Hussars and one squadron of the 11th Bengal Lancers. This force was to leave camp on the evening of 31st March and, crossing the Cabul River, make a night march to catch the elusive tribesmen at dawn. The point at which the river was to be passed was selected by the Staff, and it is said that the dangerous nature of the crossing was well known to them ; unfortunately, the

regimental officers were in entire ignorance of it, nor were they specially warned.

The ford upon which the column was directed was at the head of a stretch of rapids, where the wide river, swollen by the melting snows, lashed its black and icy waters to foam among a welter of jagged rocks. Just above these rapids a shoal of boulders and gravel thrust itself out into the stream and wandered crookedly towards the opposite bank, and by following it on an "S" shaped course men and horses might come safely to the other side ; but the current ran at six miles an hour, and the bottom was none too good. Woe betide the creature that lost its footing on the way ; certain death was waiting for it in the hungry rapids below ! To such a place the column came at half-past nine on a dark and cloudy night, when the dim and fitful moonlight served but to confuse the sight and to throw the sombre shadows into deeper relief ; and to help it on its perilous passage there was nought but one Afghan guide, furnished by Headquarters.

The only orders concerning the passage of the river seem to have been to "trust the guide and keep well closed up." Following these instructions, the squadron of the 11th Bengal Lancers, in half-sections, took the water first and crossed without mishap ; but all the while the racing stream was edging the tail of the long column closer and closer to the lower limit of the ford. Immediately in rear of the squadron came two baggage mules of the Bengal Lancers, and then the leaders of the 10th Hussars, hugging them close in the darkness. At the bend of the shoal the mules lost their footing, were swept off their legs, and vanished down-stream ; the leading files of the 10th, following these wretched beasts, missed the turn and went straight over the edge. Before anyone could perceive what had happened the whole squadron followed and, in a few seconds, every man, except the rearguard, was fighting for life in the freezing, raging torrent. The tragedy cannot be better described than it was in the report of the rear-point, the two men of which returned to camp, when all was over, to tell of the disaster. The senior said :—" We don't know

how it happened, but we were riding down the bank in rear of the column. We were talking and watching the squadron filing across the ford in half-sections, when suddenly they all turned their horses to the right, galloped down-stream and disappeared without a sound." Such a terribly graphic description cannot be excelled.

The squadron leader, his trumpeter, and a few of the leading files seem to have struggled across somehow, and for a while the full magnitude of the disaster could not be realized. The regimental call was sounded to recall the lost men, but in vain; most of them were gone for ever. In the darkness it was impossible to see much, and the noise of the torrent drowned the cries for help; but even so, a certain number of men dragged themselves, or were helped, ashore lower down stream. A number of horses regained the bank from which they had started and, riderless, with kits and saddles dripping, returned to proclaim disaster to the wondering camp. Though many were good swimmers, the men had no chance. They were all heavily clothed for the night march, laden with their accoutrements and ammunition, and furnished with the next day's rations in their haversacks; most of those who escaped contrived to do so by ridding themselves of their equipment while in the water. The toll of the tragedy was heavy; one officer, forty-six non-commissioned officers and men, and fourteen horses were lost that night; but all the bodies were subsequently recovered, some of them as much as sixty miles down the river.

Several magnificent acts of gallantry were performed, and doubtless there were many more that went un-noted, save by the Recording Angel. In particular, one officer—Lieutenant Charles Greenwood—was awarded the medal of the Royal Humane Society for rescuing a trooper who was sinking in a bed of quick gravel. It is a melancholy consolation to think that even a sudden, sinister, cold-blooded disaster such as this can provide occasion to show that the spirit and comradeship of British officers and men will always rise superior to Death—and the fear of it.

IDEAS ON BREAKING POLO PONIES

Reprinted from a pamphlet by LIEUTENANT-COLONEL
G. W. HOBSON, late 12th. Royal Lancers

I CONSENTED to write this Pamphlet not because I set up to be a better horseman or to know more about the business than others—probably of modern methods I know far less—but because for the past thirty-eight years I have been making polo ponies with, certainly many failures, but with a certain number of successes. Failures and successes together do give experience. They used to tell me at School that *experientia docet*, and I am only hoping that, by telling you what experience has taught me, it may in any detail or part be of some use to you to help and prevent you making mistakes which have proved disastrous to myself.

About this game of Polo, I want to say how unfortunate I consider it is that it has become of late years so much more a rich man's game than it used to be. But one hears from all sides that nowadays young fellows won't take the trouble or time to make their own ponies, and I want to say to you all that if you do take that time and trouble your Polo need cost you very little or possibly you can make a bit above your expenses. At any rate you will be able at a small cost to mount yourself to compete, and successfully to compete, with the best mounted men in this or any other country. My remarks all refer to one pony at a time: if you have several, I strongly advise you to train them at intervals, say, one or two at one stage, one or two at another, and one or two at a third.

The first item is of course providing yourself with a pony, and as Mr. Jorrocks said so wisely, "O who shall counsel a man in the choice of a wife or an' oss, and 'Eavens what a lot of

Rubbish has been written about 'osses ? " None the less, I'm going to dare do it. When I joined, the price of a raw pony was about £25 to £40, now it will cost you £60 to £100 for the Best class. And in this pamphlet I want to divide the purchases into three classes first, the raw unbroken animal: 2nd, the broken and hacked pony, and third, the played and probably spoiled pony: anyway, the one to be bought cheap. Buckmaster says that Polo ponies are born not made, which certainly is to a large extent true, but if you buy an unbroken pony you have not the chance of telling, except by looks and pedigree what a pony is likely to be.

I am going to tell you what to look for and what to avoid.

The nearer thoroughbred a pony is the more likely it is to make into a really first class pony. Polo bred ones are often very easy to make. If you can buy a Polo bred one which is also nearly thoroughbred that is the thing to buy, or the thoroughbred itself. It is no use buying common bred ones for Polo—they seldom justify their existence. In make and shape a perfect-looking Polo pony should be a perfect-looking Racehorse of strong type in miniature. Ninety-nine out of a hundred high-class ponies are also good looking, but in buying your purse may not run to all the qualifications, and in picking a raw pony for looks I would say to you that there are four things you must look at (and cast the pony if it has any of the defects I mention) as a likely Polo pony:—

- (a) Its hocks—if away or cow-hocked—Don't buy.
- (b) Its shoulders, neck, and set-on thereof, if bad—Don't buy.
- (c) Its eye—cast for an ungenerous, pig, or wild eye.
- (d) Feet, for big clumsy feet, or flat feet, in front—cast.

Having got your raw pony you must set about training it. I've always trained my young ponies on the *long reins*, circling, changing, rein back, etc. I've found that in getting them to go with a loose rein a running rein was a great help—my only crabs of the long reins are that they are a certain weight on the mouth even if lightly held,—and the whip. I like the breaking key bit and Mexican bit for use in the stable and I think the

ideal training for a pony is half an hour on long reins in morning : an hour on the Mexican bit or breaking bit in the stable, and half an hour in the afternoon on the long reins again. It is most important to my mind to get salivation or frothing at the mouth which is helped both by the Mexican or key bits. If the pony will not froth of its own accord a little soap rubbed on the bit will help and if it has a really dry mouth and tongue (often due to want of condition or excitability) a little Hazeline cream rubbed on the bit will help. If after riding a pony a short time you find its mouth dry a handful of grass will generally have the desired effect.

Another tip, I think is good, is to hang a stick on the wall by the manger so that the pony can play with it, and put a ball in the manger whenever you have the pony fed and leave it there for a time. Whenever you have the pony out take a ball in your pocket, throw it against its neck and play with it close to its head : needless to say, a blow must be avoided.

No doubt your ponies may start tricks of one kind or another and I will try to deal with them as they occur to me :

- (a) Putting the tongue over the bit.
- (b) Throwing head about.
- (c) Carrying head too high.
- (d) Carrying head too low.
- (e) Opening the mouth.

Now of these I think the most difficult to cure and the one that unless cured early renders a pony perfectly useless for Polo is the first. There are several methods of curing this and I propose to give you the best one first.

- (a) Feed the pony with a plain snaffle in its mouth until it gives it up. It is a physical impossibility to feed with the tongue over the bit.
- (b) If that does not act put the bit higher.
- (c) Tie the tongue down or up.
- (d) Try the Puckle Noseband.
- (e) A gag.
- (f) A half-moon Pelham Gag.
- (g) Tie the bit up to the noseband.

There is only one further resource—Time. But it is useless to attempt to go on breaking a pony till you have cured him of this trick.

2. For throwing the head about both up and down put on standing martingales above and below but allow plenty of play.

3. Pulling the head down, i.e., diving into the bit. The overhead martingale.

4. Throwing the head up: Four sorts of martingales: (a) The Corbet. (b) The Running. (c) The standing and stud nosebands. (d) The standing and plain noseband.

The main thing is to correct the fault at once. I do not recommend any of the above for actual play except the last two: the others are too severe.

You must treat your embryo Polo pony just as if it were to be a hack with this difference: you must always try to get its hocks under it on the long rein. Doubtless you know all about long rein work: I am not going further with it. In due course you will back your pony and get him thoroughly quiet to ride and I only want to say a word here about this: Don't overfeed your animal during the initial stages, but you must recollect this when schooling, and realising he is not fit, do not ask him to over-exert himself and overtax his undeveloped muscles.

When your pony will go quietly, hack him about as much as possible, open gates, etc. Vary it sometimes by getting off to open the gate, stand still and admire the view, give your pony a bit of grass, etc. Meantime accustom him to follow you about, walk and run alongside him both sides, and get him to have perfect confidence in you. Remember a horse's hearing is very acute, and the human voice is the most powerful agent, not only in the preliminary, but also in the later stages of training. By slow degrees you will get a perfect Hack. Or, you may have been able to buy a pony already trained so far and in looking at such an animal with a view to purchase please be guided by the Rules already referred to, even more than in Buying a raw pony. I repeat them: (a) For hocks away or cow hocked, cast. (b) Shoulders, neck and set-on of head, if

bad, don't buy. (c) An ungenerous, pig, or wild eye, cast. (d) For big or clumsy feet, cast, or for flat feet in front. I might add another and most important: for want of quality, cast.

Now you are looking at a hacked pony and presumably you will want a ride. Presuming you know the ordinary things about buying, such as going straight, etc., I am not going to touch on those points, but if you are buying a pony let me just give you this word of advice: don't buy a pony at all, however much you want one, unless on riding it you say to yourself, "Now that is the pony I'm looking for, that's a devil of a nice pony."

When you've made up your mind you like the pony enough, it is a question of price, but again I venture on advice: settle in your own mind what the pony is worth, and bid that and no more. If you don't get it go elsewhere. One of the best judges in England who lately travelled the whole of Southern Ireland—hundreds of miles—only bought two ponies at the end of it all. Ponies are very hard to get if you look for them though a champion may be under your nose all the time. But the gist of all this is: don't buy unless you are really pleased, and don't try to make if the pony has no prospect of being a champion—a bad one eats as much as a good one.

We now consider you've got your hack, whether made by yourself to this extent, or bought made to this point is immaterial, we presume it can move itself at the walk, trot, canter and gallop, and now we want to make it into a Polo pony. When I joined, my old friend Polo Green used to say: "two years to make a pony and ten to make a player," and I don't think it possible for a pony to become a first-class pony a day under two years. Remember that any rushing and impatience, loss of temper, for two minutes only may undo the work of months.

Before any attempt is made to knock a ball about.

Before a pony is even shown a stick or ball except in the stable.

Before you even umpire on a pony.

It should be made word perfect, or should know its ABC.

To summarize its ABC :—

- (1) It should go with a loose rein.
- (2) It should answer to the touch of the reins on the neck, and the weight of the body to right or left at the walk, trot or canter.
- (3) Rein back with a very light touch on the reins.
- (4) Stop on the word "Whoa" from all paces, and by stopping I mean at the faster paces sit down on its hocks.
- (5) Passage to right and left.
- (6) Jump off from the halt if body leaning to right with off fore leg leading and *vice versa*.
- (7) Gallop up and down a fence or side of School with outer leg always leading and turning into the fence or boards.
- (8) Figure of 8.
- (9) Bending.
- (10) Round a single post and turn about to right and left.

Perhaps some of you will smile and say to yourselves or to me "Right, old man, you are describing what a perfect Polo pony has got to do but you are not telling us how to make the blighter do it." Well, my answer would be, first of all (but not necessary in the case of the pony you have hitherto trained yourself). Make friends with it in the way already described but which is so important that I am going to repeat (a) Get its confidence. (b) Don't overtire it or sicken it whatever lesson you want it to learn (and this you must be absolutely determined on previously), make your pupil do it correctly twice, but if it has done it twice without a mistake don't sicken it by asking it to do more. Try to treat your pony a little bit like human beings of very limited intelligence: a horse has a very small brain but a very retentive memory. In fact you can in teaching him treat him always as a Fool. I mean by that that when you ask him to do a certain thing it is long odds against his knowing what you want him to do, therefore you must keep on trying to get him to understand. Have any of you tried to teach a nervous child or had anything to do with

a native in India? Some of you probably have. Personally I'd rather teach the pony but there is not 10 lbs. between the lot in racing parlance, and the one absolute essential in teaching any of them is Patience. After all, confidence must be mutual, and until the animal gives you his confidence you can teach him "nowt" as they say in Lancashire. But in spite of this you must make the animal do what you ask it. *Don't beat it*, just be determined if it *won't*, wait until it *will*, you've a better brain and therefore more determination than the most obstinate animal—you'll only have to exercise patience. Many a time I've said to myself: "How I hate you, I'd like to kill you, but I won't lose my temper with you, but, you miserable brute, you shall give in and I'll wait until you do. Meanwhile I'll whistle a tune to calm myself and to show you there is no ill-feeling."

Now most young ponies in a field are always keen to get to the gate leading towards home, and you can take advantage of this in heaps of ways if you use your own brains and ingenuity against those of the pony. I will explain myself more fully later. We will now deal with the teaching of the ABC.

(1) *To go with a loose rein.*—I have never been able to devise a better method of insuring this than by hanging on with my right hand to the neck strap and saying to myself—Don't touch his mouth. If you have a pony that pulls or leans or is hot you must put the fear of the bit into it in the stable with no one on its back or on the long reins it will then be more amenable to the neck strap, or put the martingale which goes through the neck strap to a stud noseband. That will make the animal come back.

(2) *To answer the touch of the reins on the neck.*—I have already spoken of the tendency of most ponies to go towards the gate. Now with the reins on the neck get the pony in such a position that you know it will head for the gate, then give it the office to do it right-handed leaning slightly to the right at the time. Repeat the performance to the left. It will not be long before your pony fully understands the signal and

will obey it at the walk on a road or elsewhere. Gradually the lesson can be amplified and reproduced anywhere and at any place.

(3) *Rein Back*.—You cannot possibly better the aids in *Cavalry Training* supplemented by the Long Reins. You will quicken the process by getting off the pupil, giving it grass, etc., held against the chest and pressing back by the nose, and if necessary (but not very advisable) you may tap its shins alternately. Reining back is one of the most tiring and at the same time one of the best exercises for the Polo pony. Loins, second thighs, etc., are all called into play and in early lessons quite a few steps back at a time are sufficient. Here again the neck strap is an excellent assistant. When you are just teaching the lesson lean well forward to prevent your pupil getting up.

(4) *Stop at the word "Whoa."*—During a School you have frequent times when you must get off and rest your pony. At this time train it to follow you with the reins on your arm. Stand in front of the pupil and say "Whoa." Run alongside it and do the same, till it understands. Then on its back trot and then canter and gallop it up to an unjumpable obstacle, shout "whoa," throw your weight back and make it stop holding it very firmly between the legs the while. Set it up with its hocks right under it—and four feet together. To get this perfect get a bit of rather slippery steep down hill, apply the aids above and your pony must get its hocks under it or fall down. In Western America the Cowboys water a down hill slide of baked clay and have sliding competitions,—the prize to the longest slider. That is some setting-up—the results are truly wonderful.

(5) *Passage to right or left*.—Again make use of the tendency to go to the gate, and always teach the lesson with head to a fence and towards home, canter across to the right angle fence to change the direction.

(6) *Jumping off with either leg leading from the Halt*.—Possibly this is best done after a short rein back. It takes a lot of patience and perseverance to get it done correctly.

The way I can best describe my method is by saying: Wait until the saddle hits your BTM on the side with which you wish the pony to lead, then kick with the other leg.

(7) *Gallop up and down a fence.*—This is easily taught with ordinary Riding School methods. If you keep close to the fence or boards and turn the pony towards them it must turn on its hocks and raise its forehand also. After a few times if the ordinary aids are applied, the pony will do it naturally. This is the one lesson when to start with you *may have* to use both hands and your whip changing it from one hand to the other to assist the leg. After the idea is learned by the pony it is merely a question of at what speed you can get it done. A very fine School but don't forget it is most tiring.

(8) *Figure of 8.*—When in command of a squadron in India in hot weather I used to make the men do Figure of 8 until I had passed the Figure they had made. Horses put on old figures did the figures very much better than those without tracks to go on. Training Polo ponies is the same, they go much better in a visible track than on an undefined place. If the pony does not change in the centre of the 8 you must pull him up and make him change. Endless practice is necessary before any pony will do this figure perfectly every time.

(9) *Bending posts 8 yards apart.*—This is simply practice and enlargement of the former exercise and can be done at a faster pace. The interval may be shortened to 6 yards as the pony improves and the pace may be increased to Full Gallop. Have two lines of posts and let the pony do it in company.

(10) *Round the Post and Back.*—The intention of this lesson is to get the pony to go full gallop; set up and turn about to either hand—the post is only a visible mark.

N.B.—In any sort of training the pony's inside hock should be right under it. You can always tell this by the way the saddle hits your BTM. In turning about, a perfectly trained polo pony's inside hind shoe should describe a complete circle. I have seen it done in India but it is the highest test you can expect.

The absolute minimum time in which you can get a pony word perfect is a month to six weeks. Lots of authorities place it at three months at least. The longer the better no doubt, and nearly all the really A1 ponies that I have made have had an interrupted training, some with splints, some with sore backs or other causes. It has at any rate prevented their being hurried. But after four weeks' steady training of a pony previously trained to be a hack you can begin to think about knocking a ball about.

Begin by carrying a stick.

I cannot urge too strongly that spurs should not be used in training a pony. A whip may be carried on the near side. But use it as seldom as you can. If it is necessary to give your pupil a hiding give it judicially and let it not be more than three strokes. Let them be good hard ones and then steady your pony down before you recommence any attempt at instruction.

When you are schooling you should carry the stick by the middle, but when you begin swinging it, put the reins on the neck at a walk, hang on to the neck strap and quietly swing your stick but don't let it come quite to the level of the pony's eye.

After you have practised all strokes with the stick you may begin to tap a ball, a Tennis or India Rubber Ball is better to begin on. It makes less noise and does not hurt the pony if it happens to touch it. In beginning to tap the ball always have your pupil slightly on the circle towards the side on which you are hitting. Use the wrist only and cut the ball slightly away from you each time you tap it.

Sit right down in the saddle at this stage and sit as still as if you were 'chasing.

Gradually bring the pony on: replace your India Rubber Ball with a proper one.

There's one thing about this—never attempt to hit the ball if your pony does not go perfectly straight to it. Don't whatever you do, reach out to get the ball, but if you are conveyed away from it go through the motions, hitting at a bit

of grass or anything there instead. Get off your pony at frequent intervals, give it grass or sugar or a piece of carrot, and let it follow you while you kick the ball in various directions yourself.

For a long time you must be careful to hit the ball properly each time you strike at it, keeping the reins perfectly loose.

Remember this—the whole art of playing Polo and hitting a long ball depends on Eye, Timing, and Taking advantage of the pony's weight as well as your own behind the stroke.

Every stroke on the near side the pony's near fore should lead, every stroke on the off the off fore should lead. The ball should be hit almost simultaneously to the pony striking the ground with his leading foot, you then get the whole weight of the pony and yourself behind the blow.

Naturally you lean over to either side as you are hitting, and this is another reason the pony must have the leg that side leading to keep its balance.

Schooling a pony makes the animal specially liable to sore back. Prevention is always better than cure, and here is a prescription that you may find very useful for hardening their backs: 2 oz. Tannin, 2 oz. Sugar of Lead, 2 oz. Powdered Alum, 1 pint cold water: to be brushed off before the saddle is put on and not to be used if the skin is broken.

In tapping the ball you should try to do so nearly as often on the near side as on the off. Don't whatever you do, touch the mouth while you are hitting the ball. Put the reins on the neck.

As a rule it is a good thing to remember in schooling the advice if you can't stop your animal with a hard pull try a lighter one. In giving this advice I am not insulting your horsemanship, as I know as well as Mr. J. that there is no young man who wouldn't rather have an imputation on his morals than on 'is 'ossmanship.

I was much amused to read when writing this pamphlet that the making of a Polo pony was comparatively easy, merely involving Light Hands, Good Temper, Time and Patience.

Those are all biggish things.

Having brought the pony to the stage when we can knock about on it, play any stroke we want to without fuss or bother, we have still a lot to learn, as to this point we have only been going slowly.

We must now increase the pace. In beginning to sharpen up the pony it is advisable again to make use of the tendency to want to go home. Do your fastest work facing *away* from home.

Let your fast work be confined to a very short period, two or three minutes and then dismount. When you restart give another slow lesson before going home.

Before you take a pony in a game it should be able to go fairly fast, knocking about for at least five minutes.

You have now to teach your pony riding off and meeting other ponies. This is best taught in the School. You can get your pony between the boards and another pony and make him push. Afterwards you must do this outside. The other pony must give way. The same applies to meeting other ponies, and it is well to have two to meet if possible and go between them.

Your pony is now ready for a game.

When you put him in a game never let him out for the first three weeks. Umpire on him as much as possible.

If your pony should show signs of pulling don't play him again for a fortnight or three weeks. All the time you are making a pony examine it every day on the bars, under the chin, inside the lips, its teeth, its back, and for girth galls: stop at once if you get any of these till they are cured.

There are certain general rules about training ponies I would like to bring to your notice.

1. Driving on the long reins is a very great assistance.
2. Mouthing in a loose box with the Mexican bit, and the ordinary key bit. Use soap, and if the mouth is consistently dry, Hazeline cream.
3. Any fault in the way your pupil does any exercise must be corrected at once by changing bits, experimenting to a large

extent, and remember, I recommend all severe bits for breaking purposes only. For English ponies to play the ordinary short cheek and snaffle is the best.

4. A good pony should be absolutely between the leg and hands of one piece with the horseman and swung, turned, started simultaneously with his brain and at the lightest indication from the reins or leg.

5. The whole general training of a pony is very much like that of a Recruit, setting him up at Drill, developing his muscles in the Gymnasium, educating him at School, teaching him the use of his arms, resulting in the fully-trained, smart N.C.O. So with your ponies exactly. Their backs and loins develop out of all recognition, their shoulders have been known to come back as much as 1½ inches, all by systematic and progressive training.

By making your grooms massage the muscles that have been chiefly brought into play or which you consider undeveloped you can assist in this developing.

And now we come to the last part of my remarks, and these deal with spoiled or cheap ponies which have played Polo. And we are faced once more with the question of what to buy and what not to buy. Naturally my first advice on the point of make and shape holds good. But in addition, before you think of buying one of this sort :

- (1) Look at the bars of his mouth, inside the lips, chin, etc., to see if these are right.
- (2) Don't buy a pony from a good player who can't play it because you think you may be able to.
- (3) Don't buy a slow pony because you think you may make it go faster.
- (4) Don't buy a pony you know nothing at all about.

If you want a cheap pony, the only way to get a good one is either to buy it raw and make it yourself, *or*

Buy it from a very bad horseman or a beginner, but buy a good-looking one that has possibilities. When you have got it treat it exactly the same as if it were a raw pony, but naturally you can cut out much of the laborious education I have laid down. That will depend on the pony.

If a pony has in bad hands got the trick of shying off the ball you may easily cure this unless the animal throws its head about at the same time. It will be then very hard to cure, and, in fact, is seldom worth the trouble. I recommend for ordinary shying off two rows of balls placed as if the edges of a narrow lane. Ride your pony in between. If it shies from one side it will shy on to the other and by quickly changing your stick you will get a hit somewhere.

Leaning on the bit.—Keep changing bits. Get a twisted or other snaffle and file notches in it.

A Puller.—Running rein and snaffle, Large Gag, Running rein curb. Stud noseband. Rugby Pelham. Examine bars, etc. Better still, turn out and remake from the start.

These devices may cure a badly-ridden pony or an improperly broken one, but nothing will cure the animal that at a certain pace gets a rush of blood to the head. Get rid of such as quickly as may be and don't have anything to do with a pony that directly you drop your hands is off like a shot.

Ponies that turn on their forehand or throw their hind-quarters about are very difficult to cure. Again you must remake. A post in the corner of the School may help you to correct it, but in this case I recommend a long course of Long rein driving. Reining back and circling, pulling the pony round with the outer rein.

If you do buy a spoiled pony it is desirable to restart him for a time on the snaffle only. Many ponies are spoiled by being badly ridden in severe bits.

Teeth are of great importance and should be periodically filed. Cuts on the bar necessitate entire rest and squirting with lysol. Binding with leather and cotton wool is a good precaution against the above, and curb chain galls can be prevented by using leather curb or studded curb chains.

If you get a pony with a one-sided mouth you must get it level before you attempt to put it into a game. As a rule one-sided mouths are caused by players putting their right hand on the reins and hauling the pony round. I have been able to cure a pony by putting the reins in the right hand and

hauling it round to the left, but as a rule it is some sore place that produces the one-sided mouth and once that is healed and the pony restarted it is only a matter of patience to get it right.

A few last words.

Ride your ponies hacking as much as possible as described, not merely loafing along but all the time trying to impart some instruction that will later be useful.

And last of all. Don't waste your time and trouble on bad ponies. Make up your mind in buying whether it is what you want or not, and allow no conversation from the seller to influence you at all. If you can't say to yourself: "This is sure to make a Real Star," don't buy it. Don't satisfy yourself by saying: "This might do."

As Horace said, and I've often repeated to myself in breaking—

Aequam Memento
Rebus in Arduis
Servare Mentem.
—Or briefly, keep calm.



Rien ne vaut poulain s'il ne rompt son lien.

A colt is good for nothing if it does not break its halter.

Cheval rogneux n'a cure qu'on l'étrille.

A galled horse does not care to be curried.

NOTES

"CAVALRY JOURNAL" COMMITTEE

THE Annual Meeting of CAVALRY JOURNAL Committee, was held the Council Room of the Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, at 3 p.m. on 20th October, 1927.

Present: Field-Marshal Viscount Allenby, G.C.B. (in the Chair); Major-General T. T. Pitman, C.B., C.M.G.; Lieut.-Colonel Sir Arthur Leetham, K.C.V.O., C.M.G.; Colonel R. J. P. Anderson, C.M.G., D.S.O.; Colonel F. H. D. C. Whitmore, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D.; Colonel Commandant A. E. W. Harman, C.B., D.S.O., A.D.C.; Captain O. J. Fooks, 14/20th Hussars.

(1) The Statement of Accounts for the year was examined and passed. The surplus of assets over liabilities on 14th October, 1927, was £1,157 17s. 10d.

(2) Major E. L. Hughes was appointed Secretary and Treasurer *vice* Mr. A. Pinhey.

(3) A vote of thanks to the following voluntary contributors during the past year, who were not on the Staff of the JOURNAL, was proposed by Major-General T. T. Pitman, seconded by Captain O. J. Fooks, and carried unanimously:

Colonel E. F. Twist, 13/18th Hussars; Colonel W. F. Blaker, D.S.O., O.B.E., Royal Artillery; Colonel H. A. Croll, V.D., 12th Manitoba Dragoons; Colonel L. F. Page, D.S.O., Royal Canadian Dragoons; Lieut.-Colonel H. V. S. Charrington, M.C., 12th Royal Lancers; Lieut.-Colonel J. N. Gunn, D.S.O., V.D., M.B., M.R.C.S., Royal Canadian Medical Corps; Lieut.-Colonel E. F. Norton, D.S.O., M.C., Royal Artillery; Captain F. Thornton, 16/5th Lancers; Major The Hon. R. A. Addington, 8th K. G. O. Light Cavalry, I.A.; Major K. G. W. Shennan, Royal Horse Guards; Major H. Strachan, V.C., M.C., late

Fort Garry Horse ; Major E. J. Shearer, M.C., 3rd Gurka Rifles ; J. H. W. Knight Bruce, Royal Warwickshire ; Captain R. D. S. Gwatkin, M.B.E., South African Field Artillery ; Captain W. Scot Watson, M.C., Royal Artillery ; Captain A. C. Wilkinson, Coldstream Guards ; Captain C. C. Malden, Royal Sussex Regiment ; Captain Sir Berkeley Pigott, Bart., Adjt., Ceylon Mounted Rifles ; Captain Gilbert Holiday, Equitation School, Weedon ; Captain R. Hartman ; The Editor, The United States Cavalry Journal ; F. J. Hudleston, Esq., C.B.E., Librarian, War Office ; F. I. Pitman, Esq. ; M. J. Paget, Esq. ; A. F. Tschiffely, Esq. ; and Messrs. Robson & Co.

NEW SUBSCRIBERS, 1927

The undermentioned have become Subscribers since the July number :

Major-General A. B. E. Cator, C.B., D.S.O., Comdg. Lucknow.
 Lieut.-Colonel C. P. F. Warton, O.B.E., 2/4th Bombay Grenadiers.
 Major A. K. Digby, D.S.O., Royal Artillery.
 Captain A. H. Peskett, M.C., Royal Artillery.
 Captain D. R. Smith, 9th Royal Deccan Horse.
 Captain J. Berry, 17/21st Lancers.
 Captain H. M. Tullock, Waziristan Scouts.
 Lieutenant B. M. Ede, 4th Hussars.
 Lieutenant H. M. P. Salmon, 3rd Hussars.
 Lieutenant J. G. Morrogh-Bernard, Eastern Arab Corps.
 P.M.C., 5th Armoured Car Company, Shanghai.
 P.M.C., Royal Corps of Signals, Catterick.
 P.M.C., 2nd Battn. King's African Rifles, Tanganyika.
 Officer Commanding, Assam Valley Light Horse, Dibrugarh.

New Subscribers (as above)	..	..	..	14
List Published July, 1927	..	..	..	73
Increase in Trade Subscriptions, 1927	..	..	..	15
				<hr/>
Total	..	..	..	102
				<hr/>

REGIMENTAL ALLIANCE

The King has approved of the 7th Light Horse Regiment, Australian Military Forces, being allied to The Queen's Bays (2nd Dragoon Guards).

Obituary Notices

WE feel sure that all our readers will wish to join us in an expression of very real regret at the news of the death of Colonel W. J. Foster, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., G.S.O.I. at Aldershot, which occurred on Tuesday, the 15th November last, at the Queen Alexandra Military Hospital, Millbank. Colonel Foster received his first commission in the 14th Australian Light Horse, a regiment which is allied with the 14th/20th Hussars, and during the Great War he served with the Australian Imperial Forces in Gallipoli, Egypt and Palestine, for part of the time as Brigade Major of the 2nd Light Horse Brigade. For his services he was awarded the D.S.O. in 1916, the C.M.G. in 1918 and the C.B. in the following year. He came from Australia early in 1926 to this country for special training, commanded from July, 1926, to October, 1927, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade at Tidworth, and was to have attended the Imperial Defence College before returning home again. For the last eight years Colonel Foster had been a greatly valued member of the staff of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, having been our Australian sub-editor since 1920, and he had contributed several articles to our pages, notably one on "The Operations of the Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force," which was published in Vol. XI of this JOURNAL. We would like to offer to our Australian comrades of all ranks our sincere condolences in the death of a very distinguished officer of the Imperial Forces.

It is with great regret that we read of the death on the 29th November, after a comparatively short illness, of Mr. F. J. Hudleston, Librarian at the War Office, an appointment he had held since 1902. Mr. Hudleston first entered the Public Service in the Library at the British Museum, but at the end of five years he became Assistant Librarian at the War Office, where he remained until his death. Many military writers owe a very great debt to Mr. Hudleston and his colleagues in the War Office Library, for he, and they, was and are ever ready to put their special knowledge at the disposal of inquirers on any knotty

or obscure points in regard to military history, procedure and tradition, and in these matters Mr. Hudleston was himself a perfect mine of information. He had been for some years past a valued contributor to the CAVALRY JOURNAL and other reviews and periodicals, and this, our January number, contains probably one of the last papers he ever wrote, dealing in his well-known humorous style with "Very Irregular Cavalry," and we shall miss a most welcome and a very cheery contributor. Only a very short time ago he published a selection of articles contributed to different journals entitled "Warriors in Undress," wherein he described the lives, private and professional, of different commanders, and his last book—"General Johnny Burgoyne"—was published only just before his last fatal illness overtook him.

Mr. Hudleston was created O.B.E. in 1918 and C.B.E. in 1920, in which year he also received from our Allies the decoration of the Legion of Honour.

MAGAZINES

The Editor acknowledges with thanks the receipt of the following Home and Dominion Magazines :

<i>Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps</i>	..	Sept., Oct., Nov., 1927
<i>The Veterinary Journal</i> .. ..	..	Sept., Oct., Nov., 1927
<i>The Military Gazette</i> .. ..	..	Nos. 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21
<i>The Journal of the Indian Army Service Corps</i> ..	..	Aug., Sept., Nov., 1927
<i>The Royal Tank Corps Journal</i> .. ..	..	October, November, 1927
<i>The Royal Engineers Journal</i> .. ..	..	September, 1927
<i>The Ypres Times</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>On the March</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>The Journal of the Royal Army Service Corps</i> ..	..	September, 1927
<i>The Yorkshire Hussars Magazine</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>The Faugh-a-Ballagh</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>Fighting Forces</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>The Argyllshire Highlanders News</i> ..	..	October, 1927
<i>The Strathconian</i> .. ..	..	October, 1927
<i>The Green Horse Journal and Inniskilliner</i> ..	..	July, 1927

REGIMENTAL ITEMS OF INTEREST

7th Queen's Own Hussars

List of events won by the 7th Queen's Own Hussars during the Season 1927 :

Football.—Cavalry Cup.

Racing.—Cheltenham Gold Cup ; one past and one present member of the Regiment rode in the Grand National.

Polo.—Final Subalterns' Gold Cup ; final Cheltenham Spring Tournament ; final Tidworth Senior Cup ; winners of Aldershot Open Handicap Tournament ; winners of Tidworth Junior Cup.

Boxing.—Southern Command Championship ; fourth round Army Boxing ; one representative of the Regiment represented the Army *versus* Metropolitan Police.

Cricket.—Garrison Cup.

Tennis.—Station Tournament Open Doubles, Other Ranks ; Station Tournament Open Singles, Other Ranks ; Area Tournament Open Doubles, Other Ranks ; Area Tournament Open Singles, Other Ranks.

Athletics.—Southern Command Open Three Miles ; Southern Command Open One Mile.

Shooting.—Cavalry Cup, Southern Command.

Southern Command Horse Show.—Open Jumping, 2nd ; Open Jumping, Other Ranks, 1st ; Novices Jumping, Officers, 1st.

2nd Cavalry Brigade Horse Show.—Best Troop, 1st Troop, "A" Squadron.

Garden Competition.—Garrison Cup.

9th Queen's Royal Lancers

Squadron Shield.—The following marks were allotted to Squadrons for the Squadron Shield :

1st "A" Squadron ..	202	3rd "B" Squadron ..	125
2nd "HQ" ..	198	4th "C" ..	116

Troop Shield.—

1st 3rd Troop "A" Squadron	..	..	..	193½
2nd 1st "A" ..	..	..	..	179
3rd 2nd "C" ..	..	..	..	174½

Troop Dismissals, 1927-28.—The following are the results of the Troop Dismissals :

Tie	Lieutenant Hon. D. C. F. Erskine	B.4.	Points	108½
	Lieutenant G. E. Prior Palmer	M.G.1	„	108½
	2nd Lieutenant G. H. Grosvenor	B.1.	„	108

Regimental Journal.—The first edition of the Regimental Journal, "The Delhi Spearsman," was published on 1st July, 1927.

Best Shooting Squadron.—Troop Sergeants and Section Commanders (Crown and Crossed Rifles) :

			<i>Rifle.</i>	<i>Hotchkiss Gun.</i>	<i>Total.</i>
"C" Squadron	..	..	91.88	134.62	226.50
"A" "	..	..	90.01	121.68	220.69
"B" "	..	..	91.01	120.08	211.09
"HQ" "	..	..	94.24	—	—

Boxing.—"HQ" Squadron won the Peto Cup on 15th October, 1927.

Sports.—Inter-Unit Football. The Regiment beat the 1st Bn. The Gordon Highlanders in the semi-final by 1—0, and lost to the 1st Bn. The Loyal Regiment in the final by 3—0.

The Band beat the Signal Troop in the final for the Half Squadron Cricket Cup.

"HQ" Squadron beat "A" Squadron in the final for the Inter-Squadron Cricket Cup.

"HQ" Squadron beat "A" Squadron 6—0 in the Inter-Squadron Football Competition after a replay.

Inter-Squadron Hockey League. Winners "B" Squadron.

Inter-Squadron Cross-Country Run. Winners "A" Squadron.

Polo.—Since April those who have not been home on leave in England have spent the hot weather schooling young Argentines, and latterly preparing the older ponies for the season which has now begun. The Regiment brought twenty-three ponies from Egypt and since we have been here we have bought about twenty more trained ponies, these added to the thirty-seven Argentines brings the total up to about eighty. But it must be remembered that the Argentines are now only

five years old and cannot be played on these hard grounds till they are six.

Our first appearance in Indian Tournament Polo was at Poona in the Poona Junior Handicap Tournament, where three members of the Regiment, Lieutenant J. R. Macdonell at No. 1, Lieutenant-Colonel J. Greene at No. 2, and Lieutenant G. E. Prior Palmer at No. 3, ably assisted by Captain Davidson, R.H.A., succeeded in beating the 2nd Lancers in the final by 3 goals to 2½ (the 2nd Lancers receiving a half). The game was exceptionally fast and the issue was doubtful up to the last moment. Our team which was going to take part in the Open Cup at Poona had to scratch owing to Colonel Campbell Ross's ponies going lame.

In the Chenoy Cup at Secunderabad, a handicap tournament for teams of under eight goal aggregate, the Regiment was represented by two teams.

"A" Team.

	Hcp.
1. 2/Lieut. G. H. F. P. Vere	
Laurie	0
2. Lieut. J. R. Macdonell ..	1
3. Lieut.-Col. J. Greene, D.S.O.	4
Bk. 2/Lieut. G. H. Grosvenor ..	0

5

"B" Team.

	Hcp.
1. 2/Lieut. G. P. F. J. Roberts	0
2. Lieut. F. Flower	0
3. Lieut. G. E. Prior Palmer..	3
Bk. Capt. J. F. Colvin, M.C. ..	1

4

The "A" Team was unluckily beaten in the First Round by the Fattah Miadan Gymkhana Team, but succeeded in getting to the Final of the Subsidiary Tournament, in which they suffered defeat at the hands of the P.B.I.

The "B" Team were more fortunate and after a very hard fight to win the First Round against the 1st H.I.S.T. Lancers, managed to get through to the Final, beating teams of the 7th and 8th Cavalry *en route*. The Final was a desperately hard game against a higher handicapped side, the 2nd Lancers, H.I.S.T., ending in a score of three all at the conclusion of the fourth period.

After the usual five minutes the game was resumed with widened goal posts, and after a thrilling three minutes the

Regiment scored a lucky goal thus winning the first tournament played in India by an entirely regimental side.

7th Light Cavalry, I.A.

At the 4th (Secunderabad) Cavalry Brigade Point to Point Meeting, held on the 12th September, 1927, over a course of about three miles, the Regiment scored the following successes :

Indian Other Ranks Relay Race : "C" Squadron 2nd ; "A" Squadron 3rd.

In the Indian Officers' Race the Regiment secured the first four places out of seventeen starters.

In the Inter-Regimental Team Race, for teams of four British Officers, Lieutenant Baig rode a fine race on "Punch," but, after making pace the whole way round, was beaten in the run in by Captain J. Wilson, 8th K.G.O. Light Cavalry, in an exciting finish. Out of twenty-four starters the Regiment obtained the second, sixth and ninth places, but, owing to the junior member of the team coming down early in the race and being unable to finish, we were unplaced.

At the Poona Horse Show, on 19th and 20th September, 1927, the Regiment took 1st and 3rd places in the Indian Other Ranks Jumping, and 3rd place in the class for Troop Horses.

Owing to the heavy toll which sickness has taken in the Regiment, the polo prospects for the coming season are very poor and great difficulty is anticipated even in raising teams to represent the Regiment in the various tournaments.

15th Lancers, I.A.

H.E. The Commander-in-Chief in India paid a visit of inspection to the 2nd (Sialkot) Cavalry Brigade in October last.

On the 21st of that month a Torchlight Display was given by the N.C.O's and men of the 15th Lancers, which His Excellency, Colonel A. E. S. Scott, Officiating Commanding, 2nd (Sialkot) Cavalry Brigade, and most of the ladies, officers, N.C.O's and men of the garrison attended.

The programme comprised the following items :

Fanfare (Regimental Trumpeters), Section and Individual Tent Pegging, Vaulting, Torchlight Lance Drill, Physical Training (Recruits), Musical Ride, Khattack Dance and a Miniature Drama, entitled "A Frontier Raid."

The plot of the latter event was as follows: A village of the N.W. Frontier is raided by a gang of dacoits, who set fire to the houses and carry off a Bannia and his assistants. They are surprised by a mixed force of Infantry and Cavalry, the latter of whom bring off a successful mounted attack completely scattering the raiders. The Bannia is rescued, the leader of the raiders captured and led in triumph through the village.

By kind permission of the Commandant of the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Sikh Pioneers, the Band of that Regiment played during the evening and greatly contributed to its success.

18th K.E.O. Cavalry, I.A.

The Regiment proceeded to Camp at Bostan for Autumn Training from 20th September to 15th October.

The Regiment entered one team for the Quetta Senior Open Tournament, which they won defeating the Staff College in the final by 7 goals to 4.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

“The Journal of the United Service Institution of India.”
July, 1927.

The opening article deals with air lines of communications, mainly from the point of view of troop-carrying aircraft. The author appears very optimistic about the possibilities of air-ships, although he acknowledges that they are only in the experimental stage. (It is interesting to compare his views with those of “Neon” in “The Great Delusion,” which, incidentally, have never really been refuted), and he appears a little premature when he says that, because the Vickers’ troop-carrying aeroplane has been used in Iraq, “it has proved its worth under the acid test of actual war conditions.” The troop-carrier has obvious potentialities and limitations; still, the views of the author, although possibly optimistic, are interesting.

Then there is a good account of the crossing of the Piave, from which operation several sound lessons are drawn. Another article recommends that officers should acquire the “examination habit.” In to-day’s stern competition, it is a habit that that is rather thrust upon one: but there would seem to be some danger in the author’s advice. Although it is the lot of most officers to sit for several examinations, the last thing one wants to get is the narrow, crammed, “examination habit.” Wideness of reading, and the “splashing of ink” on all kinds of subjects would seem to be a better training for the modern examination than the acquiring of the habit recommended by the author.

There are other good articles on Japanese infantry training; Lewis gun platoons, in which the author recommends an organization akin to that of the cavalry squadron—sabre troops and

a light automatic troop ; desertion ; battalion intercommunications ; training of the auxiliary force in India ; schools of instruction ; and, finally, a distinctly interesting attempt to outline the control and staff duties of a mechanized force.

“Canadian Defence Quarterly.” October, 1927.

This periodical maintains its very excellent standard. There is a brief but most interesting account of the battle of Cambrai, 1917, given as a lecture by Lord Byng, in which he explains the inception of the scheme, outlines the preparations and the actual fighting, and deduces some very valuable lessons. Admiral Sir Reginald Custance writes on “The Theory of War.” He discusses the general aim of war, differentiating between political and military aims, strategy and finally, the military objectives. “I have no intention,” he concludes by saying, “to attach undue importance to theory, which is a good servant but a bad master. Theory is less important than experience which makes use of it. But when arranging to co-ordinate the work of the Navy, Army and Aery a common logical theory of war in accord with English conditions is the only safe foundation on which to build.” There is a historical account of the Canadian operations in October, 1918 ; an entertaining article on naval episodes in the Great War ; a very interesting reminiscence of the North West campaign in 1885 against the Indians and half-breeds, a campaign probably little heard of to-day in this country ; a further instalment of the Notes on the History of the Pacific Station ; and other minor articles of value.

“The Fighting Forces.” October, 1927.

The most valuable and interesting article in this volume is one on petrol supply in the field, as this is an aspect of the problem of mechanization which, as the author points out, does not appear to receive sufficient attention. He deals with the present and future possibilities of supply from the source to the consuming vehicle. General MacMunn writes interestingly on “Afghanistan, India and the Bolshevik menace” ;

while one, "Basilisk," soliloquizes as a Gunner on uniformity being the enemy of progress. Like too many anonymous soliloquies, this is a very one sided and prejudiced view as to the cramping of initiative in the regimental officer by official doctrines and regulations. "The economic stimulus," we are told, whatever that may mean, "rests only with the regimental officer," and not with the staff officer. One wonders how, why and when Basilisk's grapes went sour !

Other interesting articles and stories go to make up a distinctly good volume.

H. G. E.

"Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps."

Major T. J. Mitchell's Man-power and the Medical Service in relation to some of the Principles of War is the most interesting article in the August number of "The Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps." It contains some very significant statistics, especially those headed "What the Medical Service meant to an Army in France." From these it appears that the percentage of wounded returned to duty was 80.7, and of sick returned to duty 93.3. The R.A.M.C. has no battle honours, but these figures are surely as good as one. "Possessed," by Colonel F. Smith, is an entertaining story of witchcraft on, apparently, the West Coast. The heroine, Tiesa, remarks naively, "God made me so men like me—that is not my fault. Too, plenty men wanting me." This last statement is, on the whole, true of all heroines—in fiction, and (very) occasionally also, in real life. Noticeable articles in the September number are Tenth Cavalry Brigade Combined Field Ambulance Operations in Palestine, September-November, 1918; and The Forecasting and Control of Cholera Epidemics in India. Another article is accompanied by a radiogram of the inside of a gentleman who was so unfortunate as to swallow his false teeth; this is so very alarming that I really cannot dip deeper into this particular number; it has in fact given me what the movies call "the heejee-beejees."

F. J. H.

The October number of the "Journal of Army Historical Research" has an interesting article on "The Mystery of Walker's Ear." The criminal amputation of this magistrate's ear, presumably by soldiers, caused a great turmoil in Canada between the Army and the Civil Power. Sir C. Firth continues his studies of Cromwell's Regiments, about many of which there are unfortunately only fragmentary records. It is stated that it is proposed to reprint the Army List of 1740 at a price of 5s. and as there are at the present time twenty-four cavalry regiments, whose lists appear in this book, it seems that regiments should apply for copies.



FOREIGN MAGAZINES

In the July-August number of the "Revue de Cavallerie," General Boullaire continues his discussion, commenced in an earlier issue of this journal, on "*la groupe de reconnaissance de corps d'armée dans la prise de contact*," his intention being to so place his subject before his readers as to enable them thoroughly to envisage the situations with which he deals, worked out over a country with which the majority of French officers are probably tolerably familiar. In the article contained in this issue the writer considers, first, the "*prise de contact*" while moving in immediate proximity to an enemy, and, secondly, the re-gaining of contact after an action has been broken off. Those who are engaged in studying our own Official History of the early days of the war, should not fail to read the very interesting and detailed account of the work of General Abonneau's Cavalry Corps, the 4th and 9th Cavalry Divisions, in Belgium on the 17th, 19th and 20th August, 1914. The writer makes a very good point at the close of his paper, where he remarks that while in those early days of the war the French cavalry had hardly considered the question of dismounted action, the regiments of these two divisions had already during those three days on more than one occasion engaged the German infantry with success in the fire-fight.

The September-October number of this Revue opens with a paper by a Colonel of infantry on "Cavalry and Cyclists"; he writes with real enthusiasm on the possibilities of the co-operation of the two in the field, but rightly observes that "*it est indispensable de confier sa conduite à une très bonne main.*" An article on the work of the Russian Cavalry at the outbreak of the war, is based upon and is in the nature of a review of two works which have recently been published, and is of interest as showing in this the first portion of the article, the strength, armament and dispositions of the Russian cavalry in the years prior to the war, and its movements on mobilization.

A discussion has lately been opened in the "Allgemeine Schweizerische Militärzeitung" as to whether the mounted *personnel* of a machine-gun company should be armed with a rifle or a revolver. In the number dated 15th September, a writer pleads strongly for the rifle, claiming that the late war has made it absolutely clear that every arm must provide its own security, that small bodies, such as machine gun companies, cannot expect under all conditions to receive infantry support and protection, that such must provide their own *Schutz* and that only a rifle armament can effectively furnish this.

In the September-October issue of the "Militärwissenschaftliche Mittheilungen" there is a long, and apparently to some extent an official, account of the fighting in Italy in 1917; this is mainly a number given up to the general consideration of mountain warfare, and it is illustrated by some photographs which give a good idea of the extraordinary difficulty of the ground fought over about the Monte Grappa.

Of special interest to English readers is an article in the October number of "Wissen und Wehr" describing the army of Soviet Russia. The government of that country has declared with no uncertain voice that peace-loving Russia *must* stand ready for war with capitalist England, and the writer of this paper makes it clear that the breaking off of diplomatic relations by the British Cabinet in May last is everywhere in Russia acclaimed as a sign that such war is now inevitable. The writer describes the Russian army, its strength, *morale* and dispositions; and then proceeds to show that, from the Russian point of view, that country must fight sooner or later in order to pursue the ancient policy bequeathed to her by Peter the Great, of establishing ports on the open sea-board. By the fortune of war Russia has lost many of her frontier possessions, which—with the exception of Bessarabia which is now included in Roumania—have all now become self-governing, independent states. Russia has surrendered her former ports of Wyborg, Helsingfors, Riga, Libau and Reval, and the writer sympathises with Russia in the view—for which there is no doubt something

to be said—that the regaining of at least *some* of these harbours is for Russia a matter of life and death.

“The Schweizerische Monatsschrift” for September and October contains two articles which will well repay perusal and study; one deals with the German advance on Liège in August, 1914, and is evidently based on official sources, describing the course of events in considerable detail; there are in the account many references to the hostile attitude of the Belgians towards the invaders, but there appears to have been scarcely sufficient discrimination between the attitude of *private* individuals and the ordinary military operations of bodies of Belgian troops, small and large. The other article is a tactical study of the contact-action fought on the 22nd August, 1914, between the 3rd French Colonial Division and the VI. German Corps about Rossignol, St. Vincent and Tintigny.

H. C. W.

In the October number of the “Cavalry Journal of the United States,” there is a very interesting article well worth close study, on the “Russian Cavalry in East Prussia,” written by General Radus-Zenkavicius, now Chief of the Lithuanian War College, who was a Brigade Commander in the Russian Army. The Russian Cavalry failed to obtain the necessary information, did not maintain contact either with the enemy or with their own infantry, and neglected to protect the flanks of other arms. Their failure was chiefly due to the incapacity of the cavalry higher commanders. Another interesting article is “The French Ecole Supérieure de Guerre,” which explains the system of training of officers for the Staff.

Further data from the Russian point of view in regard to the Cavalry battle at Volchkovtsy is given. This should be read in conjunction with the Austrian version (“The Cavalry Action at Jaroslawice”), published in the July issue of our CAVALRY JOURNAL.

“A Remarkable Ride” describes how a Mexican pony, fourteen hands high, trekked “115 miles in 2 days, carrying 215 lbs. for 70 miles and 175 the remainder.”

RECENT PUBLICATIONS

“The Campaign in Mesopotamia, 1914-1918.” Official History of the War. Vol. IV. (H.M. Stationery Office, Adastral House, Kingsway, W.C.2.) 15s. net.

The fourth volume of this series, written by Brig.-General F. J. Moberley, completes the history of the Mesopotamian Campaign, in which we employed no less than 889,702 officers and men against about half that number of the enemy. In October, 1918, the ration strength of our force was 414,000, but only 25 per cent. of these were “fighting troops.” Our casualties were 92,501. The student of war will have to decide whether such an effort in this side-show was justified or not? Did this campaign prevent hostile penetration into India, thus allowing India’s man-power to be preserved as a great reserve for the conflict in other theatres?

It was not only in Palestine that the Cavalry “came into their own.” A study of this book will show that this arm not only took a large part in, but completed, the successes of this campaign. At Ramadi, Khan Baghdadi and Sharqqat, it was the successful action of the mounted troops, who placed themselves across the enemy’s line of retreat, that forced his complete surrender. Shock-action “die-hards,” too, can point their finger at an example of highly successful shock-action, i.e., at Tuz Khurmatli, where two troops of the 13th Hussars charged a Turkish position, from a distance of 500 yards, capturing 40 men and 5 machine guns.

If the situation in Trans-Caucasus and Trans-Caspia may have been confused to the ordinary individual in Mesopotamia at the time, the Official History makes it clear that the situation was no less confused and chaotic to the highest authorities. The pages devoted to the formation of, and the carrying out of, our policy in the neighbourhood of the Caspian Sea, and to

the events that occurred there, form most interesting reading, and might almost be taken as pages of a novel.

This Official History confines itself to the facts of the campaign, and generally avoids criticism. Clear maps and several photographs are provided.

O. J. F. F.

“Official History of the War.” Volume III. “Military Operations: France and Belgium.” By Brig.-General Edmonds and Captain G. C. Wynne. (MacMillan, 12s. 6d.)

This third volume deals with the period of operations after the line from the sea to Switzerland had been more or less stabilised, inclusive of Neuve Chapelle, and the second Ypres, but exclusive of the Aubers Ridge and the Festubert fighting.

The main feature which dominates the narrative is the almost decisive influence exerted in this period by the scarcity of munitions. It was a period, too, of improvisation: men, officers, staffs and material, all were in a somewhat experimental stage.

The authors deal with the depressing attempts at local offensives at the end of 1914, and trace the beginnings of the definite study of trench warfare conditions, emphasizing the apparent dislike of digging with which the average infantryman was imbued. They pass on to give a very clear picture of the battle of Neuve Chapelle. Tactical surprise was almost completely achieved, and a real success was only missed by the loss of direction of one battalion and the failure to cut the wire on the extreme left of the position attacked. It is doubtful, however, how far real success could have been exploited with the limited munitions and reserves available at the time.

A considerable part of the book is devoted to the first gas attack at Ypres, which was only really an experiment on the part of the enemy, since they had no large forces to exploit any possible success; but the narrative paints a vivid picture of the moral and material effect produced by the introduction of this new weapon.

Perhaps in some ways the most interesting portion of this volume is the brief history of munition production in this country. The authors show quite clearly that the great industry, finally built up, was really due to the early efforts of the War Office, and not to the magic wand of a politician. A study of the facts proves how grossly unfair were the contemporary attacks made on Kitchener and the War Office for the shortage of all types of munitions, and General Edmonds appositely quotes, *à propos* of this, the Russian's remark when General Stessel was being tried for the loss of Port Arthur: "We are trying, not the defender of Port Arthur, but the Russian people."

One cannot praise this volume too much. General Edmonds has an astonishing knack of including great detail, and yet producing a narrative of intense interest, which has been well and fully illustrated by Major Becke's excellent maps.

"The Two Battles of the Marne." Foch, Joffre, Ludendorff and the Ex-Crown Prince of Germany. (Thornton Butterworth).

The title of this book is rather misleading. Joffre and the Crown Prince deal with the 1914 Campaign; Foch devotes most of his space to the history of the unification of command of the Allies; and Ludendorff gives a general sketch of the war to show the inner causes of the German defeat.

Joffre's account is disappointing. It is rather sketchy, and adds nothing to what is already known, while it suffers considerably in places from lamentable translation. Its chief interest lies in the comparison between his views as to the causes of the German defeat and those of the Crown Prince. Joffre considers that the German failure was due primarily to the Army Commanders and von Kluck in particular, since they acted quite independently of H.Q. and of each other; the Crown Prince, on the other hand, places practically the whole blame on the shoulders of von Moltke, and maintains there was no failure on the part of the Great General Staff. Moltke was in an eternal state of vacillation, and completely misappreciated the situation. Much of the sting of the Prince's

accusation is removed, however, by his own showing that the Army commanders sent back practically no information to H.Q. on which Moltke could base an appreciation. Though interesting, the Prince's account reads rather like a case of being wise after the event.

Foch traces the history of the unification of command from Kitchener's first instructions to French up to the 1918 crisis, and shows clearly how much the Allied cause suffered from lack of centralised control; and he emphasizes the importance of the hastened arrival of the American troops in 1918.

Ludendorff's contribution is perhaps the most interesting, as he shows again, as he did in his War Memories, the division that existed between the Army and the Politicians. He considers that the war might have been won for Germany by an earlier application of the ruthless submarine campaign, while he attributes defeat largely to the effect of Allied propaganda, and the timely arrival of American troops. There are perhaps two outstanding points of interest in this account: firstly, the importance which Ludendorff attached to the famous Lansdowne letter; and, secondly, the influence the 1917 Flanders fighting had on the whole German plan. The extreme critics of those offensives on the Western front should take to heart Ludendorff's words here. "Unfortunately," he writes, "due to the situation in the western theatre of war, and especially on account of the battle of Flanders, which raged without cessation from June until November, I was in no position to dispatch sufficient German troops to the Italian front to bring about a conclusive decision there."

Though this book is of decided interest, readers who expect to find much new light thrown on the history of the war will be disappointed.

"Great Captains Unveiled." By Captain B. H. Liddell Hart.
(Wm. Blackwood & Sons, Ltd.)

In this book, Captain Liddell Hart deals with Jengiz Khan and Sabutai, Marechal de Saxe, Gustavus Adolphus, Wallen-

stein and General Wolfe, and in these studies the author is at his best.

He traces the history of Jengiz Khan and his follower, Sabutai, during the amazing foundation of the Mongol Empire, outlines the very thorough organization which they introduced into their armies, and demonstrates very clearly the extraordinary results that can be achieved by a very mobile army comprising really only one arm. Perhaps the known facts of these campaigns are a little meagre as a foundation on which to base the author's many interesting deductions but, as he points out, there are many lessons of value to be obtained from a study of these men; and in view of the recent remarks of the C.I.G.S. on the subject, this critical study is a very timely contribution to military history. The author's analysis of Saxe as a military prophet, though interesting, is not so convincing. It is true that, as he points out, one can prove the prophetic instinct of this amazing soldier from his "Reveries on the Art of War," but it is almost equally easy to take extracts to prove him a completely false prophet. He was, at any rate, a very original thinker, and this study of him may give the reader an appetite to read the very entertaining *Reveries* for himself. The reviewer would recommend the reader of Captain Liddell Hart's book to compare his views of Saxe with the other delightful study of him in "Campaigners Grave and Gay."

The essay on Gustavus is excellent. It is an extraordinary thing, as the author points out, that, although modern warfare may be said to have started with this soldier, there is no really good English literature on the subject. Both in organization and tactics he was the founder of modern war, and Captain Liddell Hart gives a clear and interesting outline of his successes and failures.

To anyone interested in the personal and psychological sides of history, the figure of Wallenstein—"the enigma of history," as the author calls him—looms large. His rise from being a poverty-stricken Protestant to the position of practical dictator of the Catholic Empire, displaying extraordinary military

powers, and amassing an apparently inexhaustible reservoir of wealth is a most fascinating story. "In the whole of history," say Captain Liddell Hart, "no parallel exists to the strange career and strange mentality of this many-sided genius, compound of Julius Cæsar, Bismarck, and x —an unknown quantity. Wallenstein is unique."

He ends with an account of Wolfe's life and work. So much has been written on this subject that perhaps this study has not quite the same interest as the others in this book ; but the author rightly emphasizes the great value that can be obtained by a study of Wolfe's operations and letters for formulating principles for any combined operations.

The book, as a whole, is a very valuable contribution to modern military studies, and one of real interest to any historical reader.

H. G. E.

"Field Marshal Sir Henry Wilson, Bart., G.C.B., D.S.O."

By Major-General Sir C. E. Callwell, K.C.B. (Cassell.)
2 Vols. 42s.

While all officers will welcome the opportunity of studying the life of one of the most distinguished soldiers of modern times, it is felt that the publication in the form selected by Major-General Callwell is a grave literary mistake.

We feel sure that had Sir Henry been alive, he would never have allowed his private diary to be made public. The author tells us that it had been Sir Henry's intention to write his own memoirs, and doubtless such a wonderful diary would have been the greatest assistance to him in doing so, but its publication verbatim during the lifetime of all those who are mentioned in it has done infinite harm both to the memory of a great soldier and to the Army as a whole.

To those who like to "peep behind the scenes" during the Great War and the years which followed it, no work that has yet been published gives a clearer idea of the method in which the strings were pulled. Sir Henry Wilson's view of the great drama may be compared to that of an assistant stage manager.

He could read all the actors like a book and speaks his mind very freely in his private diary, blaming the perpetrators of every mistake but never failing to give praise where praise was due. The two outstanding performances in Sir Henry's life which will go down to history, were, firstly his share in the preparation of the B.E.F. prior to 1914, which enabled that "contemptible" little army to take the field as it did, and, secondly his determination throughout the war to maintain good relationship between the French and ourselves, no easy task considering their great temperamental difference. Personal ambition may have influenced his actions to a certain extent, but during the whole war his one object was to do his best for the allied cause.

The second volume makes sad reading. As the years go by after the war we find Sir Henry getting more and more at loggerheads with the politicians.

One cannot help feeling that much of this is the fault of the politicians themselves. Though peace had been officially declared, the military situation of Europe could not be set aside and it seems that politicians and soldiers should have continued to work hand in hand as they had done in the war, until such time as the world had recovered its normal aspect. It is a pity that they appeared to resent interference by one whom, as C.I.G.S., they looked upon as a soldier pure and simple.

It is interesting to note that Henry Wilson who made a very poor show with his books at school and failed three times for Sandhurst, very soon developed one of the biggest military brains of the century.

"A Postscript to the Records of the Indian Mutiny." By Lieutenant-Colonel G. H. D. Gimlette, C.I.E. (Witherby.) 10s. 6d.

It is almost refreshing during a period like the present, which is flooded with "Great War" literature, to find a newly published book on that old time but, never to be forgotten, subject, The Indian Mutiny.

The few remaining survivors of that great revolt will read Colonel Gimlette's work with the greatest of interest, for although the various episodes described have all been written about before, this is the first time that any attempt has been made to publish a complete record of the rebel regiments and their subsequent fate.

For students of Indian Military History, and especially those connected with the Native Cavalry of to-day, this work will fill a long-felt want as a book of reference, and although the majority of the regiments whose doings are chronicled, have long since ceased to exist, the Native Cavalry as a whole are bound to be interested in the evolution of their own branch of the Service.

"The Army and Sea Power." By Major R. B. Pargiter and Major H. G. Eady. (Benn.) 10s. 6d.

Books on sea power are many, and most soldiers have probably in their time read one or more of them; but this latest addition to the list deals with the subject from an angle different alike from Mahan's classic works and from General Callwell's and General Aston's valuable studies on the interdependence of land and sea operations. The authors' main aims are first to stress the great services rendered by the British Army to the British Navy in the defence of those bases without which no battle fleet can hope even to keep, much less to command, the sea routes and communications, the nerves and muscles of our Empire. These bases have always been vital to our navy, even in the days of sailing ships; they are still more so to-day, when fleets require fuel, ammunition, and stores of all kinds to a greater degree than ever before, and when adequate docking and repair facilities must always be within easy reach. The immediate protection of these bases by the navy is only possible at the sacrifice of its mobility and offensive power; the burden has therefore perforce to be undertaken by the army, and absorbs at the present time one-fifth of our available military strength, split up between no fewer than thirty defended ports. It is of course true that such garrisons

can only provide temporary security against sea attack, and that the ultimate fate of the ports must depend on the issue of the struggle for supremacy at sea ; but the garrisons have always played, and will in the future again have to play, a vital if not highly spectacular role in that struggle, and occasionally, as in the case of the epic siege of Gibraltar in the War of American Independence, have contributed a famous and heroic page to history.

The second service rendered by the Army to the Navy takes the form of assistance in the capture of the hostile maritime bases by means of combined operations. Thus in the Wars of the Spanish Succession and of American Independence and during the French Revolution we fought for the Mediterranean harbours of Gibraltar, Malta and Minorca ; in the Seven Years' War and in the Revolutionary and Napoleonic epoch we laid hands on West Indian islands ; while the eastward route round the Cape and by way of Egypt had also to be secured. These operations form a unique chapter in military history ; no other nation has carried such enterprises out so frequently or on so great a scale ; and despite many set-backs and more than one downright disaster, they have been on the whole a source not only of profit but of legitimate pride. Many of these combined operations are narrated in detail in this book, and though the soldiers and sailors engaged in them have not always seen eye to eye, nor acted towards each other as good friends and comrades should, the majority of them reflected credit on both services and proved fertile in results, both immediate and ultimate.

The third service rendered by the army to the fleets was the assistance given to them in their task of enforcing the economic blockade of an enemy, and particularly in the Great War, in their control of the world's coaling stations and coal supplies, which enabled effective pressure to be brought to bear on neutrals in the form of " Bunker control."

It will be seen that there is much that is novel in the treatment of the subject of sea power and the army's share in ensuring it adopted by Majors Pargiter and Eady, and much

of value in the lessons which they have drawn from their study. It may be added that the book is admirably written, enlivened here and there by quaint extracts from old histories and records, and illustrated by adequate maps. Soldiers and sailors too may be recommended to study it, and assured in so doing of both pleasure and profit.

E. W. S.

“ Will Civilisation Crash ? ” By Lieutenant-Commander J. M. Kenworthy, M.P. With an Introduction by H. G. Wells. (Benn.) 10s. 6d.

England at the moment teems with Fat Boys, who want to make our flesh creep. Lieutenant-Commander Kenworthy is the latest and (in a purely Pickwickian sense only), of course, the fattest of them. The pages of his book are full of prophecies of wrath to come. The Balkan peoples are going to fly at each others' throats once more. Russia is about to start a Red crusade ; China is working up to a new sense of her nationality ; Japan, seeking an outlet for her surplus population, is to take the leadership of Asia in a westward drive, in which India, unified and freed from British tyranny by a new Gandhi, will join. France and Germany will before long resume their age-long battle for the Rhine. Italy is about to enter on a new path of imperialism in North Africa. Turkey intends to seize her first opportunity of retaking Mosul. Central America is to be the scene of a conflict between the United States and Mexico, and the peace of South America too is little less precarious. Finally the whole future of civilisation is to be jeopardised by a naval war between Great Britain and the United States, with Japan joining in on one side or the other. In fact, we are in for a bad time, in the course of which Mr. Wells, together with a number of “ charming young people in pretty wraps ” whom he saw bathing last summer, are going to suffer painful deaths through inhaling diphenyl chloroarsine.

It seems to us odd that two gentlemen who rightly believe that wars are mainly caused by “ fear and suspicion ” should themselves be so fearful and suspicious of every nation in the

world, including their own ; but if this book really has any effect in postponing or rendering impossible the world-war which it declares to be impending, no one will have more cause to be thankful than the soldiers, who, however "ruthless, insensitive, and dull-witted" Mr. Wells considers them to be, will have to fight in it, and presumably undergo the same fate—or worse—as he foresees for himself and his young friends.

We see no reason why, like Saul, Mr. Wells and Lieutenant-Commander Kenworthy, we should not also be among the prophets ; so here goes. It is our firm conviction that there will be no great world convulsion for forty years. By this time the author, his introducer, and we ourselves shall have no direct personal concern in the matter, and shall presumably have something better to do than to discuss the value of our respective prophecies—even assuming that our destinations in the next life are to be the same.

E. W. S.

"Horse-Lovers." By Lieut.-Colonel Geoffrey Brooke ; illustrated by "Snaffles." (Constable & Co.) 12s. 6d. net.

That Lieut.-Colonel Geoffrey Brooke has embarked on fiction should not surprise those who have read "Horse-sense and Horsemastership." Our thanks are due to the author for giving us further details of the doings of Mr. "X" and his horse in such a very readable form, though unfortunately Mr. "X" is out of the story for the greater part of the book.

The author's name is sufficient guarantee that all the details of hunting and horses will be correctly described ; failure in this respect so often spoils books of this type. Further, the story is so full of useful hints on everything connected with horses, that we cannot help feeling that this book will be really useful both to the initiated and the novice, even though they usually have little appetite for fiction. Hunting, chasing, training, buying and selling all get their share ; the description of a steeple-chase in verse brings back memories of Masfield's "Right-Royal" ; a graphic account of *the* hunt of the season is made far more real and easy to picture by means of the map at the end of the volume.

The characters are well drawn and are "live" people. Diana Gibson, the heroine, is a charming person, almost too perfect; it would have been a relief if she had said "D—n" occasionally. The hero, as might be expected, is a Cavalry Officer. Those who are looking for romance have not been forgotten, though we are glad to say that the "sob-stuff" has been kept well in the background. Sir Joseph Potts, the profiteer, is perhaps a little overdone. He seemed to go out hunting very largely for the love of the thing, and not merely for what it would bring him socially. Can he really have been such a very unpleasant character? It is true that Marmaduke Muleygrubs is shown as a similar type, but then he did not hunt.

Numerous delightful sketches are scattered about the book and add greatly to the liveness of the characters. Each chapter forms a story by itself and many will read better the second time. Like the works of Surtees, therefore, this book is well worth keeping at hand to beguile an odd half-hour and is not one of those to be read, and then thrown away and forgotten.

"Where Cavalry Stands To-day." By Lieut.-Colonel H. V. S. Charrington. (Messrs. Hugh Rees, Ltd.). 5s.

The series of three articles under this heading, which have appeared in previous numbers of this journal, have now been published in book form. We make no apologies for drawing the attention of our readers to this handy volume, which contains a summary of the history of Cavalry from the time of the Greeks up to the present day, together with a reasoned statement on the necessity for the retention of Cavalry and its probable role in the future.

This book will be of value for reference to any student of Cavalry or of war, and, being in a handy form, can be easily carried about. We think, however, that the statements and arguments would have been easier to follow, had more paragraphs been used, particularly in the first chapter.

“The ‘Mechanization’ of War.” By V. W. Germaines (a Rifleman). (Sifton Praed). 8s. 6d.

In this book Mr. Germaines has set out to prick the tank bubble, as “Neon” has attempted to discredit air power. The book therefore comes as a pleasant interlude in the stream of literature which implies that the tank has revolutionized war.

A well-balanced foreword by Major-General Sir F. Maurice introduces a book which the author claims “is to show that the causes of victory and defeat go deeper down than the presence of a few hundred tanks, and that success is to be attributed less to the machines than to the conditions under which they were used, and the manner of their using.”

As an advocate the author has marshalled his facts well, and the uninstructed reader might almost be convinced of the futility of tanks. He points out that the German army in March, 1918, carried out, without the aid of tanks, one of the most successful offensives in the war, and our tanks did little to stop it. The tank supported offensive of Cambrai was stemmed and then neutralized by non-mechanized troops. Enormous casualties were suffered by tanks even in their most successful attacks. These and many similar arguments form the basis of some clever special pleading. To the initiated it is overdone, but that is to be expected.

When, however, the author attempts constructive proposals he is not so convincing. Breaking away almost entirely from his main theme he discusses army organization of the future from an almost purely infantry point of view. His revised Cardwell system is hard to follow, but does not seem suited to produce an expeditionary force of fully organized and trained formations as opposed to a mere collection of units.

Taken as a whole the book is thoroughly readable. It bears evidence of wide reading and considerable thought.

“The Staff and the Staff College.” By Brevet-Major A. R. Godwin-Austen. (Constable). 21s.

To Major Godwin-Austen belongs the honour of writing the first book on the history of the Staff College. It is apparent

that he has made an exhaustive study of his subject and that he has acquitted himself well. It is certainly time that the nation should learn more about the history and object of the College, which has at times been mistaken for a girl's school and for Broadmoor Criminal Lunatic Asylum. The reviewer has even heard it called "The Headquarters of the British Fascisti" !

It will be of interest to learn that the Staff College was originally founded in 1799 by a Cavalry Officer, namely Major-General Gaspard le Marchant, who having served in the Queen's Bays, 16th Light Dragoons and 7th Light Dragoons, was killed at Salamanca whilst leading a Heavy Cavalry Brigade. Le Marchant was in fact the originator of our military education. The College was first located at High Wycombe, then at Sandhurst, where it formed the Senior Department, and finally in its present building at Camberley, in 1862. At first the Duke of Wellington was a keen supporter of this College, but when the long years of war came to an end in 1815, his interest in it flagged and it faded into oblivion. The Crimean War, which awoke the nation to the realities of war once more and to the fact that we had no trained staff, brought a fresh lease of life to the College, and the latter, thanks to the influence of the Prince Consort and the Duke of Cambridge, became for a short while an active factor in army education. In the early seventies a set of rising young officers was gradually coming into prominence, chief among these being Wolseley. One of their objects was to give a more practical training to the College students. The Duke of Cambridge had, however, now turned his mind against all reform and against the Staff College in particular. A famous saying of his may be quoted here "Staff College Officers! I know these Staff College officers. They are very ugly officers and very dirty officers" ! Wolseley had a very difficult problem in overcoming such prejudice and in uprooting the antiquated training system, but by degrees a more practical curriculum was brought into being. It is curious to read that the policy had hitherto been to train a student to be more a technical officer than a useful

all round Staff Officer. It was sufficient for the *p.s.c.* officer to be able to tie the various military knots, pitch a tent correctly or know the intricacies of logarithms and Euclid, etc. It was not till 1885 that the study of mathematics was abolished.

The author gives a good description of the present day life and training at the College, which should be of use to any officers contemplating going there. Nor does he confine himself to the "working side" alone—he gives us a short history of the Drag, which was founded in 1871, and describes some early runs. The Drag still remains a most important factor in the student's life and it may be said that the College provides better facilities for sport of all kind than any other military station.

The Foreword of this book is written by General Sir George Milne. His advice is apt and sound: "Let them (the officers) read this book which will appeal not only to Staff College students, past, present and future, but also to the whole of the Army and to the few civilians who still maintain an interest in our military forces."

Major Godwin-Austen, who writes in a very lucid, interesting and humorous style, deserves the congratulations of the Army and we trust that his book may help to dispel the criticism that "the Staff College is a Forcing House for Unpleasant People."

O. J. F. F.

"Sporting Prints of the 18th and early 19th Centuries." By F. Gordon Roe. (Published by The Connoisseur, Ltd.) 21s.

There is no doubt that an increasing interest is being taken in sporting prints and pictures and that many of these, which had been put away in lumber rooms, have now been brought forth and command high prices. Therefore, Mr. Roe's book coming at the present time is a most useful guide, which will be a great help to those, who wish to learn more about this interesting subject. The records of a large number of sporting artists are given in the text and some of their works are illustrated by coloured plates, of which there are forty-eight besides

two monochromes. The author begins with John Wootton (born 1686, died 1765), who was a popular horse and landscape painter in his day. Twenty-two artists are represented by plates in this book, J. Pollard taking first place with twelve, and Alken and G. Morland having six each. Eighteen are devoted to hunting scenes, eleven to racing, five to coaching, six to shooting, two each to fishing and skating, four miscellaneous and one to golf. The latter entitled "To the Society of Goffers at Blackheath," and painted by Lemuel Abbott in 1790, must be one of the earliest of golfing pictures—certainly the clubs illustrated seem prehistoric.

The selection of the prints to accompany this work must have been a difficult problem, but it has been well done and we extend our congratulations to the author and publishers of this fascinating book.

O. J. F. F.

"These Men thy Friends." By Edward Thompson. (Alfred E. Knopf.) 7s. 6d.,

Although this book is stated to be a novel, yet those who had the misfortune to be in Mesopotamia in 1916 and 1917, will recognise that it recounts the experience of one, who had more than first-hand knowledge of the hard fighting of those years. The author gives us, not so much a diary of events, as a diary of men's thoughts during those strenuous times. The carnage at Hannah and Sanniyat was not recorded in the official despatches, but all in Mesopotamia knew and wondered whether such a waste of man-power in a side-show was worth the candle—just to try and save a beleaguered force, which in an optimistic way, had wandered off into the blue without any reserves behind.

The author certainly makes his characters express many apt remarks, although some of them are somewhat cynical; yet it may be said that the book in general contains a true expression of men's feelings at that time. He certainly shows a deep feeling of sympathy for those, who considered themselves to be nothing but "cannon fodder" to feed the Turkish weapons. The book opens with an amusing account of the journey of the

hero up the Tigris in a pre-historic P. boat, treats of the fierce struggles for the attempted relief of Kut and the capture of Baghdad and ends with the battle of Istabulat. Those who are still unacquainted with the miseries of the early days in Mesopotamia will have their eyes opened to the realities of war in a fever and fly-ridden desert country, if they read this well-written so-called "novel."

O. J. F. F.

"Famous Sporting Prints—IV—Coaching."—(Published by *The Studio*.) 5s. net.

The fourth volume of this excellent series of sporting reproductions, which are produced by the Blackmore Tintex method, is well up to, if not above the standard of the first three volumes. F. G. Kendall contributes a foreword which gives a historical summary of coaching in Great Britain.

The prints contained in this volume take us back to the slower-moving age, when people had more leisure and were not so hurried about in high speed motor cars. They may be said to illustrate the days of Dickens' novels. The first three prints are after James Pollard, perhaps the most celebrated of coaching artists and are entitled "North Country Mails at the Peacock, Islington," "The Royal Mail starting from the G.P.O." and "Approach to Christmas." "The Stage Coach" after Samuel Jones, represents one of the Day Stages in George IV's reign. Plate V by the Havells depicts "The Blenheim with its Team of Greys" and is the most picturesque of the series. "Under Weigh without a Pilot," after Charles Newhouse, reminds us of the fact that even coaching was not without its dangers. Plates VII and VIII, painted and engraved by C. C. Henderson, illustrate the etiquette of "dipping whips" as coaches pass each other, and a race between rival coaches.

We add that all those interested in the sport of bygone days should add these four volumes to their library. It is to be noticed that *The Studio* gives us a hint of more volumes of this series to come—the more the better.

O. J. F. F.

“Field, River and Hill.” By Eric Parker. (Published by Philip Allan & Co., Ltd.) 10s. 6d. net.

This is a collection of sketches, all of which will delight those interested in the countryside and sport. The author evidently writes “from his heart” and he has certainly infected the reviewer with his enthusiasm. Although the book is chiefly devoted to shooting and fishing, yet there is plenty of variety and the author contrives to bring in some delightful descriptions of the countryside. He puts forward a new theory as to the reason why salmon will take a fly at one time and not at another—he explains “how two Thames trout were caught on the same cast without a hook in either of them” and—“how a friendly robin would perch on his outstretched fishing rod.” The sketch entitled “Netting the lake at Kneller Hall,” which describes how the fish were rudely ejected from their musical home might be brought to the notice of the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals. Stranger even than this are his experiences of “hunting weasels with a pack of harriers.”

“Field, River and Hill,” which is written in a light and very pleasant style, is a book that can be read at one sitting or one that can be picked up for a few minutes reading only. In either case the sketches should absorb the interest of the reader. There are eight excellent reproductions of etchings by Winifred Austen, who is a master in the art of depicting bird and animal life.

O. J. F. F.

“Pandour Trenck ; An Account of the Life of Baron Franciscus von der Trenck, 1710-1749.” By Major Oskar Teichman. (John Murray). 10s. 6d. net.

Few men have led a more hectic life than Pandour Trenck. At the early age of seven, having already miraculously escaped death on three occasions, he accompanied his father on a campaign against the Turks. Being an extraordinary child with a contempt of danger beyond his years, it is not surprising that he developed qualities of lust and savagery only equalled by the troops he led.

After serving some years in the Russian Army, Trenck returned to Austria and raised a corps of "Pandours" or irregulars for Maria Theresa, with which he served throughout the War of Austrian Succession. His methods were as irregular as his men. One morning Trenck and his stalwarts appeared before the town of Deggendorf. The inhabitants were awakened by the "clashing of cymbals" and "the deafening noise of their Janisary band," whilst the Pandours with blackened faces advanced singing their war song. So terrified were the good Deggendorfers that the town was surrendered without a blow being struck. Surely the strangest mode of attack since the Fall of Jericho.

After thirty-nine years of life packed full of incident, Trenck died in tragic circumstances, having first obtained admittance to the Order of Capuchins as a lay brother.

It is interesting to note that Major Teichman was prompted to write of Trenck's exploits by information discovered whilst collecting notes for some articles on Frederick the Great's Cavalry for the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

The author has evidently been to a great deal of trouble to verify his facts and is certainly to be complimented on producing so interesting a volume.

C. C. W.

"The Yeomanry of Devon, 1794-1927." By Engineer-Commander B. Freeman, R.N. Edited by Earl Fortescue, K.C.B. (St. Catherine Press). 10s. 6d.

Histories of what used to be called the Auxiliary Forces are always interesting, and this particular volume contains some very good reading, particularly in the biographical sketch of Lord Rolle, who was so closely associated with the Devon Yeomanry. He coughed down Burke, was the hero of the Rolliad and told Brougham that he had the greatest contempt for him. There are many curious details in this book. We are told of the "Association Troops," e.g., the Chudleigh Troops, who volunteered to serve only in one parish—the very delightful parish of Chudleigh; of the Yeomanry being called

out from time to time to prevent looting at wrecks, once almost an industry in the West Country ; and of a duel at Teignmouth in 1804, then apparently, as later, the home of hot-tempered young bloods. There is one most interesting topographical note and that concerns the close resemblance between Porlock Bay and Suvla Bay. The book contains some admirable portraits and plates. For one who has lived in the West Country it is delightful to be perpetually coming across such fine and familiar old names as Acland, Courteney, Buller, Chichester, Carew, Sillifant, Templer and so on. But I regret to have to add that I searched in vain for the name of Thomas Cobley, where, too, are his friends, William Brewer and Daniel Stewer ?

F. J. H.

“ The Oxfordshire Hussars in the Great War (1914-1919).” By Adrian Keith-Falconer. (John Murray). 18s.

The author of this book calls it “ essentially a war book.” So it is ; and the introductory chapter, concisely written and carefully prepared, gives an admirable send off for the chapters that follow.

The early history of this famous Regiment is much the same as many other Yeomanry Regiments. It has, however, this distinction that when the general disbandment of Yeomanry Regiments took effect in April, 1828, the Wootton Troop, which was first raised in July, 1798, and united with Lord Churchill’s Regiment in 1818, was among the troops accepted by the King in March, 1828, for renewal of service without pay or allowances.

The author makes a strong point of this and very naturally laments that this unpaid patriotism did not prevent the loss of its place in the table of precedence of the Yeomanry Cavalry ; and, in consequence, fate ruled that this distinguished corps was to be amongst those to be disbanded for a second time ninety-four years later.

The Oxfordshire Hussars served on the Western Front from September, 1914, till the end of the war, and hold the record of being the first territorial unit to leave the British Isles for the theatre of war, though not actually the first to land in

France, the London Scottish and the Honourable Artillery Company having arrived in advance of them.

On arrival at Dunkirk the Regiment was attached to the Royal Naval Division :—this well-conceived combination naturally originating under the guidance of the then First Lord of the Admiralty, who was at that time an officer in the Oxfordshire Hussars.

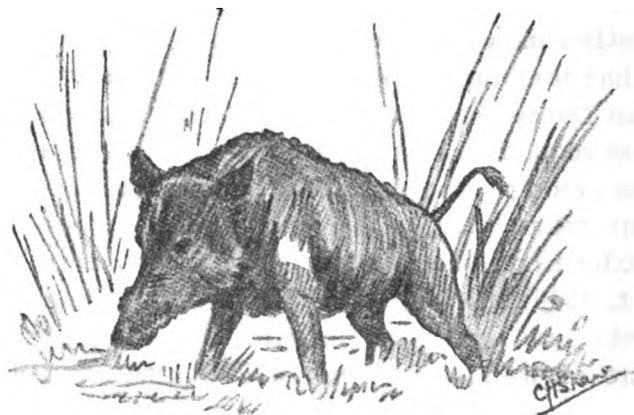
Early in October they took up a line to cover the detraining of French Cavalry at Hazebrouck, and eventually the Regiment joined the 4th Cavalry Brigade, 2nd Cavalry Division.

The narrative contains the important roll of the Regiment in the 2nd Battle of Ypres, Loos, Vermelles, also the Somme ; and the following chapter continues with Arras, Guillemont and Cambrai.

The prominent part taken by the Oxfordshire Hussars at Guillemont Farm is well known to all who occupied the trenches in front of Epehy. The Germans attacked the Farm on 20th May, 1917, and were repulsed with heavy losses. The engagement is well described.

The book contains brilliant traditions to hand to posterity and the County of Oxfordshire should be grateful to the author for recording, so well, the services of their premier territorial unit in the Great War.

F. H. D. C. W..



SPORTING NOTES

RACING

THE AUTUMN MEETINGS

The second October Meeting opened in brilliant weather. The chief event of the first day was the Champion Stakes of a mile and a quarter, in which Colorado was opposed by Asterus and Embargo. Few people anticipated the defeat of the favourite, and 11 to 4 on was freely laid, but in the event Asterus beat him fair and square by half a length, Embargo six lengths away third. Many people considered it to be a false run race, but though the pace was not great in the earlier stages, Colorado appeared to have had a bit more than he cared for at the finish, and it is probable that in Asterus he was taking on a high class horse. Embargo was looking magnificent and yet was quite unable to make any impression on the other two.

* * * * *

On the Wednesday, of course, interest was mainly centred in the Cesarewitch—there were thirty starters. Lightning Artist was a hot favourite at 4 to 1, with St. Reynard, Bois Josselyn, Eagles Pride, La Douairiere and Masked Ruler all well backed.

At the bushes Lightning Artist was prominent with St. Reynard and Nevermore well in the picture. Coming down the hill the favourite weakened and St. Reynard came on with the race apparently won. Suddenly Eagles Pride appeared on the scene and strongly ridden by Dines caught the leader in the last stride and won by a head. Nevermore, two lengths away was third.

* * * * *

The Select Stakes, to those who appreciate jockeyship, was a joy to watch. Carslake on Weissdorn sitting very still, with his horse perfectly balanced, and yet putting every ounce of his great strength into his finish, Beasley on Insight adopting more vigorous methods but riding with great power and judgment, and Childs on Endowment waiting with agonising patience and then bringing his horse with a perfectly timed rush to be beaten two short heads when most jockeys would have been beaten two lengths.

Tom Cannon, Watts and Webb at their best could never have given a finer exhibition than this.

* * * * *

The Middle Park Stakes generally gives a line to next year's classics, but owing to various causes the field was a very moderate one and the race was.

won by Lord Derby's Pharamond, a colt that is probably a stone behind the best.

Friday's racing was interesting in that it showed us, what is probably a really high class two-year old in The Hermit II, a bay colt by McKinley—Halpine, belonging to Mr. A. K. Macomber and bred in France.

He had to give a stone or more to each of the five other runners, one of them being Peace and Plenty, a filly that had already won a couple of useful races.

In the race he was never out of a canter and won as he liked. On this form and on looks he is probably the best youngster seen out this year.

Twenty-one horses faced the starter for the Cambridgeshire, and for the second time in the history of the race the result was a dead heat, the other occasion being in 1867. Weissdorn maintained his position as favourite to the end, Inca being second in demand at 7 to 1, with Fohanaun quoted at 100 to 12, Orbindos at 100 to 8, Silver Lark and Caporal at 100 to 7 and Insight II at 100 to 6. Nearing the bushes Silver Lark, Insight and Orbindos were most prominent with Sun Yat-Sen, Inca and Medal well in the picture.

In the dip Insight got the better of Orbindos, and the majority of the spectators were so wrapped up in the duel between the two that they failed to notice Medal and Niantic, who had suddenly appeared on the scene, fighting out a thrilling finish on the stand side. When the numbers went up, it was seen that Medal and Niantic had run a dead heat, with Insight a neck away third. Weissdorn was beaten before the bushes were reached, and eventually finished last with the exception of Kitty III who was pulled up. The starting prices were 20 to 1, 25 to 1, and 100 to 6.

* * * * *

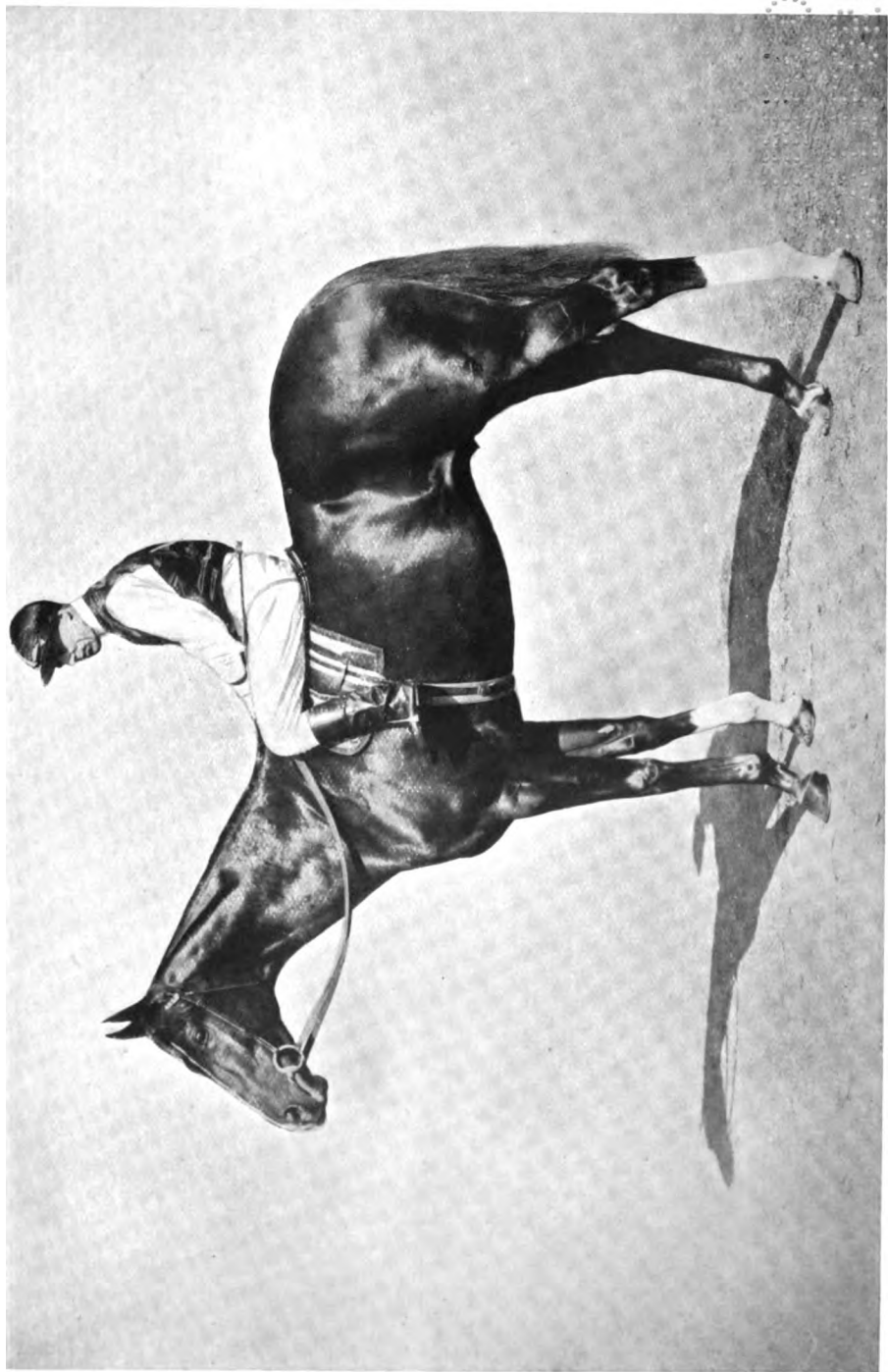
The other outstanding event of Wednesday's racing was the defeat of The Hermit II by Falko. Many people were inclined to decry the colt after the race, but the Aga Khan's son of Phalaris and Cry Help is a very taking youngster and went down to the post in a way that made experienced race-goers wonder whether any two-year old we have seen this year could concede him 15 lbs.

On the Friday, Falko ran last behind two moderate opponents, but he came into the paddock very nervous and dripping with sweat. He had obviously been upset by his previous race, so the form probably amounts to nothing. It is to be hoped that the effect of two hard races within forty-eight hours will not permanently affect him.

* * * * *

THE DONCASTER SALES

There appears to be no shortage of money available for the purchase of good class yearlings, and there was no falling off in the averages as compared to last year.



CALL BOY (C. ELLIOTT UP)
Winner of The Derby

By permission of Clarence Hatley

2000

The following are the best prices realized :

f by Friar Marcus—Honora ..	10,000 gs.	Lord Dewar.
c by Buchan—Coney ..	9,000 gs.	Lord Woolavington.
c by Son-in-Law—Love Oil ..	8,500 gs.	Mr. F. Leach.
c by Swynford—Salamandra ..	7,200 gs.	Mr. S. H. Darling.
f by The Tetrach—Bettyhill ..	7,000 gs.	Captain Gooch.
f by Buchan—Tete-a-Tete ..	7,000 gs.	Sir C. Hyde.
c by Phalaris—The Sphinx ..	7,000 gs.	Mr. F. Darling.
c by Diligence—Credenda ..	6,500 gs.	Sir C. Hyde.
c by Papyrus—Lady Peregrine ..	6,100 gs.	Sir L. Philipps.
f by Bridge of Earn—Black Gem..	6,000 gs.	Lord Woolavington.
f by Tetratema—Tut Tut ..	6,000 gs.	Sir H. Cunliffe-Owen.

THE FREE HANDICAP

The weights for this race so often prove a valuable guide to the earlier Classics that we make no apology for giving those as compiled by Mr. Dawkins. The Free Handicap of 100 sovs. each, 25 sovs. forfeit ; for two-year-olds ; lowest weight not less than 6 st. Bretby Stakes Course (six furlongs).

	St. lb.		St. lb.		St. lb.
Fairway ..	9 0	Dark Doll ..	7 10	Overround ..	7 3
The Hermit II..	9 0	Nonn ..	7 10	Norwest ..	7 3
Buland ..	9 0	Take a Glass ..	7 10	Mellin ..	7 3
Gang Warily ..	8 10	Bar One ..	7 10	Arctic Night	
Flamingo ..	8 10	Brown Princess	7 9	gelding ..	7 3
Black Watch ..	8 9	Pondicherry ..	7 9	Philippine ..	7 2
San Marino ..	8 9	Pobieda ..	7 9	Falko ..	7 2
Golden Araby ..	8 9	King Pippin ..	7 8	Puisne ..	7 2
Sunny Trace ..	8 9	Devastation ..	7 7	Soult ..	7 2
Ranjit Singh ..	8 9	Grandace ..	7 7	Killough Castle	7 2
Comedienne colt	8 8	Lucky ..	7 6	Grandmaster ..	7 2
Guards' Parade	8 7	Arch Druid ..	7 5	Kniphofia ..	7 2
Grotesque ..	8 5	Scintillation ..	7 5	Grand Vixen ..	7 2
Garnock ..	8 5	Exeter ..	7 4	Songtime ..	7 2
Toboggan ..	8 2	Orator-in-Law ..	7 4	Silver Wedding	7 2
Scuttle ..	8 1	Grand Pet ..	7 4	Sparkling Dale..	7 1
Nance ..	8 0	Sparkles ..	7 4	Rotherhill ..	7 1
Jurisdiction ..	8 0	Phantasy ..	7 4	The Lawyer ..	7 1
Thackeray ..	8 0	Radio ..	7 4	Quip ..	7 1
Guadiana ..	7 13	Similkameen ..	7 4	Glanreef ..	7 1
Camelford ..	7 13	Ruffler ..	7 4	Pontifex ..	7 1
O'Curry ..	7 13	Master Dabber	7 4	Fleeting Trace..	7 1
Broadwalk ..	7 13	Miscou ..	7 4	Umslopagaas ..	7 1
Pharamond ..	7 12	Somme Orb ..	7 4	La Grande ..	7 0
The Wheedler ..	7 12	Tetrill ..	7 4	Peggy Honora..	7 0
John Silver ..	7 12	Reminder ..	7 4	Caraquette ..	7 0
Maquillage ..	7 12	Helvia filly ..	7 3	Twinkling ..	7 0
Stadacona ..	7 12	Sunny Dell ..	7 3	Tempting ..	7 0
Musical Prince..	7 12	Fire Brigade ..	7 3	Kopje ..	7 0
Yeomanstown ..	7 12	Halim ..	7 3	Speyside ..	7 0
Riverside ..	7 11	Jack Mytton ..	7 3	Briary ..	7 0
Maer Hills ..	7 11	Silver Lute ..	7 3	Buoyant Bachelor	7 0

GOLF

The Cavalry Club Golfing Association held their annual autumn meeting at Prince's, Sandwich, on the 7th, 8th and 9th October.

The attendance was hardly as large as usual, but this was mainly attributable to the weather. It takes a very keen golfer to face the possibility of having to play for three days in driving rain and a high wind over an exposed course, and some who would otherwise have made the journey decided to stay at home.

The final was fought out between Colonel W. H. Nicholls and Captain D. G. Norton and resulted in a win for the latter by 4 and 2. He had a narrow escape in his first match as he only succeeded in beating Brigadier-General T. M. S. Pitt on the last green, but was never in serious danger in his later matches.

The Beaten Player Competition was won by Lieutenant-Colonel D. H. Cameron, who had fallen a victim to Colonel Nicholls in the major event, but made up for his defeat by beating Mr. G. W. M. Lees in the final.

* * * * *

POLO SEASON, 1927

The London season was a bad one spoiled by continuous rain after the middle of June.

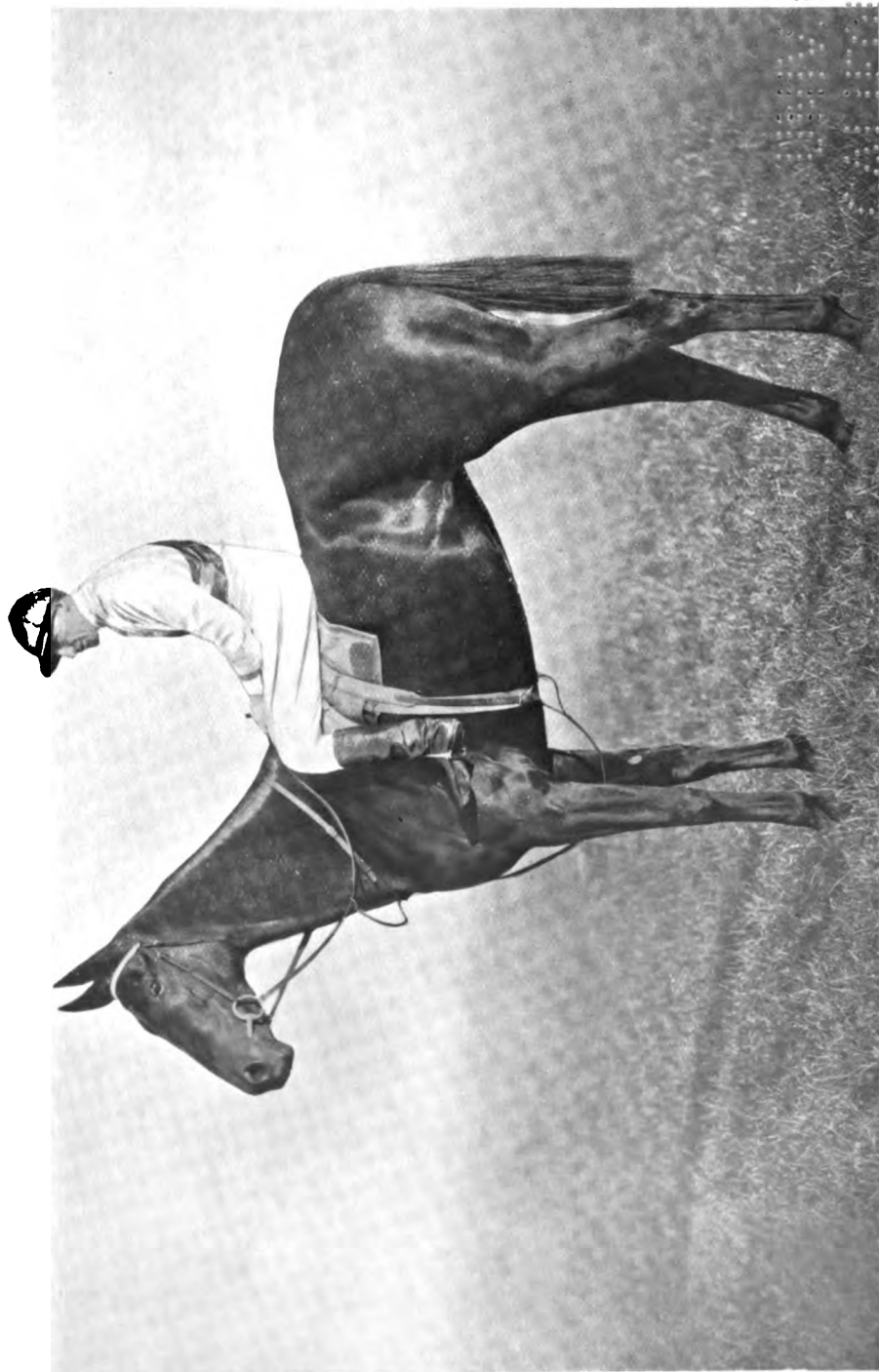
There were only three teams playing in London last year that had any pretensions to being first class, viz., The Hurricanes, El Gordo and Templeton.

Of these, the former comprising S. Sandford, Captain Roark, Commander P. K. Wise and Major I. F. Harrison, won the Champion Cup at Hurlingham and the Open Cups at Ranelagh and Roehampton.

El Gordo scratched for the final of the Ranelagh Open Cup, but Templeton gave the Hurricanes a good game in the final of the Roehampton Cup. The scratching of El Gordo owing to temporary indisposition of one player gave rise to considerable controversy among the Polo Scribes. All teams should of course, have a fifth man for important competitions, dressed and on the ground ready to re-place a casualty.

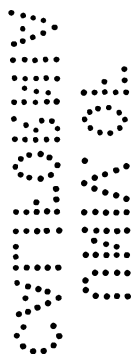
The lower handicapped London teams had plenty of competitions at all three clubs, possibly to the detriment of their play, for these tournaments are now so continuous that mediocre players do insufficient practice themselves and neglect to school their ponies. Consequently little progress is observable. The best of the Low Handicap teams was El Palomar, which included two newcomers from the Argentine, Colonel Casares and his son. They are fine strikers with a good knowledge of the game and Casares Junior may make a name for himself if he works hard enough.

The Country Polo Week at Ranelagh was a failure owing chiefly to the weather. It seems time that the country clubs produced some younger players soon, some of their best performers now approaching three score years if not three score and ten.



By permission of Clarence Hatley

BOOK LAW (H. JELLISS UP)
Winner of The St. Leger



A good line as to the comparative value of military and country polo was given by the match between the S.W. and the S.E. Divisions.

For the former Cheltenham ought to have won on paper, but their team play was bad and they were very badly beaten by the K.D.G's who have a good team, play and hit well.

The K.D.G's further proved their team value by winning the Roehampton Military Handicap Tournament beating the 17th Lancers on handicap.

Soldiers' polo certainly seems on the up-grade at last. The match most talked of was the win of the Royal Artillery over the 17th/21st Lancers in the final of the Inter-Regimental. There are other regiments recently returned from abroad, such as the 11th Hussars and K.D.G's, who have keen and good teams who play the game.

The Cavalry Tour in India is now shorter than it used to be, consequently regiments only just get tuned up to polo about the time they return home, and since the war have been unable to wrest the Indian Inter-regimental from Indian Cavalry regiments who enjoy the benefits of more powerful and permanent regimental polo clubs.

However the Egyptian and Indian Tours do lead to a very great improvement in regimental play, and a development of young players for which we, in England, must be thankful.

Incessant practice of players and schooling of ponies is what is necessary. The 17th Lancers subalterns have improved year by year, and this year have shown as fine a subalterns' team as can ever be remembered. No star players, but thorough good team play on well schooled old ponies, with each of the four players equally able to do his share.

They have worked hard and deserve their success, but it is open to any other regiment to work harder and win both Inter-regimental and subalterns cups.

The Army-in-India team failed, as was generally expected—to bring back the Cup from the U.S.A. They appear however to have played quite well in America, though weather conditions were bad.

In the two matches the Americans rushed things from the start as usual, and though our teams played well in the second match they had neither the ability nor the luck to equalise the scores.

Let us hope that they learned the exact task that lies before us, and that the next team we send over may meet with success.

* * * * *

SQUASH RACKETS THE ARMY CHAMPIONSHIP

The first round of this championship, of which Mr. G. N. Scott-Chad, 1st Coldstream Guards, is the holder, was begun at Prince's Club, Knightsbridge, on 14th November.

The results were as follows :

Captain The Hon. B. M. S. Foljambe (West Yorkshire Regiment) beat Captain G. W. I. Leicester (Cheshire Regiment) by 3 games to none.

T. H. Sweeny (R.E.) beat Captain A. W. M. S. Pilkington (16th/5th Lancers) by 3 games to 1.

The Hon. B. A. A. Ogilvy (Life Guards) beat Captain C. J. Beckett (R.A.) by 3 games to none.

The Hon. N. A. S. Lytton-Milbanke (Rifle Brigade) beat Captain L. D. Shafto (K.R.R.C.) by 3 games to 1.

G. N. Scott-Chad (Coldstream Guards) beat J. P. Johnson (R.A.) by 3 games to none.

W. R. Kennion (R.E.), J. D. Hyde-Smith (R.H.A.), Captain G. Drake-Brockman (Royal Tank Corps) walked over.

SECOND DAY

Major J. C. O. Marriott (Scots Guards) beat J. G. Cowley (R.E.) by 3 games to 2.
J. C. W. Lewis (Welsh Guards) beat Captain R. C. Strachey (Somerset Light Infantry) by 3 games to 1.

Colonel the Prince of Wales beat H. M. A. Sandford (Coldstream Guards) by 3 games to none.

Captain J. N. Cheney (K.R.R.C.) beat L. T. Grove (R.E.) by 3 games to 1.

J. V. W. Kell (South Staffords) beat H. S. J. Bourke (R.A.) by 3 games to none.

Second Round

Scott-Chad beat Foljambe, 9—3, 9—5, 9—3.

Kennion w.o. The Prince of Wales scratched.

Lytton-Milbanke beat Ogilvy, 0—9, 9—1, 9—1, 9—2.

Marriott beat Villiers, 9—5, 9—5, 9—1.

Lewis beat Drake-Brockman, 9—6, 9—1, 9—1.

Smith-Bingham beat Ely, 9—6, 9—6, 8—10, 4—9, 9—4.

Cheney beat Kell, 9—7, 9—8, 9—7.

Hyde-Smith beat Sweeny, 6—9, 3—9, 9—7, 9—1, 9—2.

Third Round

Scott-Chad beat Kennion, 9—7, 9—0, 9—7.

Lytton-Milbanke beat Hyde-Smith, 5—9, 9—6, 9—6, 9—6.

Marriott beat Lewis, 9—7, 9—0, 6—9, 9—3.

Cheney beat Smith-Bingham, 9—3, 9—5, 5—9, 10—8.

Semi-Final Round

Scott-Chad beat Lytton-Milbanke, 10—8, 9—4, 9—5.

Marriott beat Cheney, 7—9, 9—6, 10—8, 1—9, 9—4.

Final Round

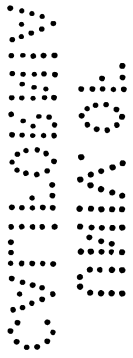
Scott-Chad beat Marriott, 9—0, 2—9, 9—6, 9—2.

Thus for the third year in succession, Scott-Chad became Army champion. It will be seen that Major Marriott won one game from him in the Final.



By permission of Clarence Hailey

SPRIG (T. LEADER UP)
Winner of The Grand National



He succeeded in winning one from him last year. These are the only two games that Scott-Chad has lost during the three years the competition has been in progress, a really astonishing performance.

THE HUNTERS IMPROVEMENT AND NATIONAL LIGHT HORSE BREEDING SOCIETY

At a meeting of the above held during the third week in November the following announcements were made :

London Shows, 1928.—The Army Council and the National Pony Society have accepted the invitation of the Council to hold their Spring Shows in connection with the Society's 44th Annual Exhibition at the Royal Agricultural Hall on 28th and 29th February and 1st March, 1928.

The schedule of the Hunter Section of the Show has been approved. Prizes value £1,300 will be distributed in fourteen classes, covering each phase—Produce Groups, Young Stock, Made Hunters and Jumpers. Judges and Veterinary Inspectors have been appointed and the programme for the three days determined.

The exhibition class to show the types of horses required in the Army will again be an integral item of the Show.

The details will be on exhibition during the three days and fully paraded on the afternoon of the Wednesday.

The total of the grants authorised by the Council for the official conduct of the various phases of its activities on behalf of Light Horse Breeding in 1928 amounted to £1,950.

CAVALRY FOOTBALL ASSOCIATION

The Annual General Meeting took place at the Cavalry Club on Friday, 18th November.

The following Committee was appointed for the current season : :

Colonel Commandant J. Blakiston-Houston, D.S.O., Chairman.

Captain J. B. McKay, 7th Hussars.

Captain T. G. Upton, 11th Hussars.

Lieutenant T. B. Barton, 17th/21st Lancers.

Captain S. P. Keyworth, Royal Horse Guards, Hon. Secretary.

The draw for the season's competition is given below.

First Round

- Match " A." 17th/21st Lancers v. King's Dragoon Guards.
 „ " B." The Queen's Bays v. 11th (P.W.O.) Hussars.
 „ " C." 16th/5th Lancers v. 7th Q.O. Hussars.
 „ " D." The Life Guards (1st and 2nd) v. 3rd/6th Dragoon Guards.
 „ " E." Royal Horse Guards v. 10th Royal Hussars.
 Byes : Royal Scots Greys, 14th/20th Hussars, 13th/18th Hussars.

Second Round

- Match " F." Winners " A " v. Winners " B."
 „ " G." Winners " D " v. Winners " C."
 „ " H." 14th/20th Hussars v. Royal Scots Greys.
 „ " I." Winners " E " v. 13th/18th Hussars.

Semi-Finals

- Match. Winners " G " v. Winners " I."
 „ Winners " H " v. Winners " F."

The first-named teams in the First and Second Rounds have choice of ground. Kick off will be arranged to allow of an extra half-hour being played in the event of a draw.

Referees and Linesmen in First and Second Rounds will be mutually arranged between regiments in accordance with Rule 22, and in the Semi-Finals and Final by the Hon. Secretary.

The First Round will be completed by 31st January, 1928.

The Second Round by 29th February, 1928. Re-plays in First and Second Round in accordance with Rule 17.

One Semi-Final will be played at Aldershot on Saturday, 17th March, and the other at Tidworth on Wednesday, 21st March.

The Final will be at the Command Central Ground, Aldershot, on Wednesday, 28th March.



BEAM (T. WESTON UP)
Winner of The Oaks

by permission of Clarence Hatley

THE CANADIAN INTERNATIONAL TEAM, NEW YORK, 1927

We have received from Canada an interesting account of the performances of the Canadian team at the "Royal" Show at New York and the "Royal" at Toronto.

Lack of space prevents us from giving the whole of it, but the following extracts will be of interest to many readers.

In 1926 the arrangements were of a very haphazard order, neither riders nor horses being selected until the last moment, and these were actually changed during the progress of the Show.

This year a team of three, consisting of Major R. S. Timmis, Captain S. C. Bate, and Captain L. D. Hammond (all of the Canadian Dragoons) was selected and assembled at Stanley Barracks, Toronto, five weeks in advance. Three horses, Bucephalus, Golden Gleam and Sergeant Murphy were chosen, with three others as reserves. Only the horses named could be considered up to International form as the others were insufficiently trained. A careful programme of gradation was arranged and strict rules as to training and exercise were laid down.

The horses were not jumped for over a week after assembling, but were schooled, balanced and muscled up. Three to four hours a day were spent in the open and in the school. Ample walking, collected trotting, reining-back, etc., were resorted to, and after a week a series of baby jumps were negotiated, to muscle up the horses. No jumps of over four feet were used until the last week of October, and not until then were the fully-extended broad jumps used. No great success was expected with the second horses, as the National is no place to take green or unconditioned horses to. The team was extremely fortunate in that it had no accident with its first horses—it had really no reserve horses and no spare rider.

Against this the U.S. Army Team had twenty horses which had been schooled for six months at the Cavalry School and six carefully selected riders. Several of the horses had cost large sums and were of the type that would do credit to any winning hunt team at our "Royal."

Canada thus had long odds against her and it was impossible to enter in more than two classes a day. Considering all things she did extremely well to gain nine ribbons. She won the best Individual International Military event and only missed the International Team Trophy by one slight mistake. The following are some of the results :

Open Class (48 Entries).—U.S. Army 1st ; Canada 2nd, 3rd and 4th.

Officers' International (30 Entries).—Canada, Major Timmis on Bucephalus 1st ; France 2nd ; and Poland 3rd.

Teams of Three Jumpers.—Canada was 5th, being beaten by Poland and three U.S.A. Teams.

International Team Trophy.—Poland 1½ faults; U.S.A. 3; Canada 5; France 14. Bucephalus was a trifle unlucky in just displacing the bar at the Triple In-and-Out with a light touch, which counted 4 faults against him. Poland, on the other hand, appeared to touch two bars without displacing them. This, however, is all the luck of the game.

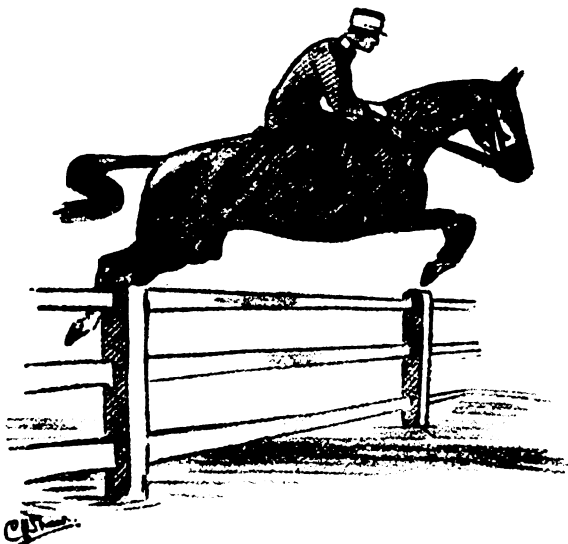
TORONTO "ROYAL" RESULTS TO DATE (21ST NOVEMBER, 1927).

Open Performance (101 entries from U.S.A. and Canada).—After the first three horses running off twice, resulted as follows: 1st, Bucephalus (Major Timmis, R.C.D.); 2nd, Reo (Mr. Frank Hodgson); 3rd, Neil McNeil (Dr. Temple); 4th, Brian Boru (Colonel Victor Sifton); 5th, Golden Gleam (Captain S. C. Bate, R.C.D.); 6th, Lady Byng (Mr. Paul Higgins).

Officers' Open Jumping (25 entries).—1st, Golden Gleam (Captain S. C. Bate, R.C.D.); 2nd, Sergeant Murphy (Captain L. D. Hammond, R.C.D.); 3rd, Cush (Lieutenant G. B. Elliott, G.G.B.G.); 4th, Paymaster (Major W. L. Rawlinson, G.G.B.G.), 5th, Limerick (Lieutenant W. J. O'Connor).

Officers' Chargers.—1st, Captain J. Wood, R.C.D.; 2nd, Captain S. C. Bate, R.C.D.; 3rd, Major W. Baty, R.C.D.; 4th, Colonel W. F. Eaton, 2nd Dragoons, C.M.

Troopers and N.C.O's Mounts.—1st, Trooper Nesbitt, R.C.D.; 2nd, Trooper Walters, R.C.D.; 3rd, Sergeant W. G. Tamlyn, R.C.D.; 4th, Sergeant Costello, R.C.D.; 5th, S.S.M. J. Copeland, D.C.M., R.C.D.



2000



J. L. Marchmont.

Digitized by Google

Killed at Salamanca on the 22nd July 1812. Aged 49.

1. The first part of the paper discusses the importance of the study of the history of the English language. It is noted that the English language has a long and rich history, and that the study of its history is essential for a full understanding of the language. The paper then discusses the various factors that have influenced the development of the English language, including the influence of other languages, the influence of social and cultural changes, and the influence of technological advances.

2. The second part of the paper discusses the importance of the study of the history of the English language. It is noted that the English language has a long and rich history, and that the study of its history is essential for a full understanding of the language. The paper then discusses the various factors that have influenced the development of the English language, including the influence of other languages, the influence of social and cultural changes, and the influence of technological advances.

3. The third part of the paper discusses the importance of the study of the history of the English language. It is noted that the English language has a long and rich history, and that the study of its history is essential for a full understanding of the language. The paper then discusses the various factors that have influenced the development of the English language, including the influence of other languages, the influence of social and cultural changes, and the influence of technological advances.

4. The fourth part of the paper discusses the importance of the study of the history of the English language. It is noted that the English language has a long and rich history, and that the study of its history is essential for a full understanding of the language. The paper then discusses the various factors that have influenced the development of the English language, including the influence of other languages, the influence of social and cultural changes, and the influence of technological advances.

5. The fifth part of the paper discusses the importance of the study of the history of the English language. It is noted that the English language has a long and rich history, and that the study of its history is essential for a full understanding of the language. The paper then discusses the various factors that have influenced the development of the English language, including the influence of other languages, the influence of social and cultural changes, and the influence of technological advances.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

APRIL, 1928

*A GREAT CAVALRYMAN**

By BREVET-MAJOR A. R. GODWIN-AUSTEN, O.B.E., M.C.,
The South Wales Borderers

HE was a great cavalryman. Yet somehow the nation that honoured him and set up a dreadful memorial to him in St. Paul's Cathedral, seems so quickly to have forgotten the services it applauded.

His skilful leadership and gallantry were the glory of a great victory in which he gave his life and their memory has never faded. Fortescue† has given him full measure ; Fraser‡ tells a story every schoolboy should read. But if you can find his memorial, in a dingy corner, over the northern door to the crypt in St. Paul's, and can discern the figures composing the tableau, one of them may puzzle you. It is the figure of a lad in uniform, wearing the coatee of a bygone day, with a scroll in his hand ; and Britannia is gazing on him benevolently and persuasively, with her left hand on his shoulder, while with her right she is pointing to the record below the effigy of the hero whom the monument perpetuates.

* A more comprehensive account of the foundation and early days of the Royal Military and Staff Colleges may be found in "The Staff and the Staff College." (Constable & Co., Ltd.).

† "History of the British Army," Vol. X.

‡ "The Soldiers whom Wellington led." Edward Fraser.

The inscription is hard to decipher so we will explain the lad's identity. He is a Sandhurst cadet, and Britannia is seeking to inspire him with emulation of the career of the soldier to whom the memorial is dedicated. And if you seek diligently in the history of the Royal Military College, you may discover a footnote :

The College was founded by the Duke of York (Commander-in-Chief), at the instigation of Colonel Le Marchant, who was killed at Salamanca in 1812.

Just that and nothing more.

And because there is nothing more ; because the memory of this, his greatest achievement, seems to have faded, it seems worth while recalling it, for most of us have passed through Le Marchant's College.

John Gaspard Le Marchant started his career heavily handicapped. He was a Channel Islander and he had a French name, a foreign accent, no influence, few friends in England and slender means. He was truculent, and his troubles began at school where he was bold enough to take on the school bully in a fight in which only one boy took his part ; Sidney Smith, conqueror of Acre, a comrade in every sense for the Headmaster said he and Le Marchant were the biggest dunces that had ever been there.

He joined the 1st Royals in 1783 and began badly. Whilst awaiting embarkation at Dublin for Gibraltar he lost £250 in a gambling house and would have lost his commission too had not the Regimental Paymaster been a staunch friend who lent him the money on the condition that he never touched a card again, a promise faithfully kept. But repayment was a difficult matter ; he dared not disclose a gambling debt to his father and was hard put to it to save from his scanty pay to reimburse his generous creditor. So the rowdy young devil, leader of every ensign's escapade, kept aloof from the rest and shunned the mess and became unpopular ; his brother officers finding fruitful occasion for insinuation and comment, his friend the Paymaster not yet having reached Gibraltar, and playful shameful speculation grew into conviction until his friend arrived and quickly set suspicion at rest. Ill-health necessi-

tated a brief return home, and during his leave he incurred his father's marked displeasure and cheerfully added to his own burdens by becoming engaged.

After another short spell at Gibraltar, Le Marchant, finding his prospects of promotion small, purchased a cornetcy in the Inniskilling Dragoons. On joining them he found a sorry state of affairs; the officers were not on speaking terms with their Commanding Officer. He wisely refused to have anything to do with a lack of subordination which shocked his high sense of duty and, in consequence, was chosen to command the escort furnished by the Regiment attending His Majesty King George III on his journey from Dorchester to Weymouth where the regiment was quartered. The Sovereign, on seeing so junior an officer in command, enquired the reason and on learning it, promised to promote Le Marchant on the first occasion which should offer itself. He redeemed this promise immediately a vacancy for a Lieutenant arose in the Queen's Bays and, profiting by this opportunity, Le Marchant shortly purchased his troop. In 1793 he was ordered to join the Duke of York's contingent which was serving with Hanoverians, Hessians and Austrians against the French.

His active service abroad impressed him daily with a sense of our military shortcomings. His commander was a "mild and amiable General, under whom excesses were daily committed with impunity"; a masterpiece of geniality and indecision. In such circumstances, Le Marchant could do little more than ensure that his own command at least was raised to the highest pitch of efficiency. A letter home says:

"I am almost every day busy in examining the country. Some days since I discovered a weak post that was not guarded, by which our outposts might have been cut off. It was rectified immediately."

Of the efficiency of our troops in general he formed a poor impression. He writes:

"I hope in time we shall be esteemed by our friends the Austrians, who are, at present, as superior to us as we are to the train-bands in the city."

So far as he and his troop were concerned he was very highly esteemed for his leadership in a minor engagement in

co-operation with the Hanoverians and Hessians under the Count of Hohenzollern, who specially mentioned his services in an order of the day, in which he expressed himself as :

“ Happy and honoured to have had him to command troops that showed as much spirit as intrepidity.”

In 1794 he purchased his majority in the 16th Light Dragoons and joined them at Weymouth, where he found himself once more in attendance on His Majesty, who, so far from having forgotten him, welcomed him warmly and “ honoured him with repeated kindnesses both in public and private.” His circle of influential friends widened but he was determined that strenuous personal endeavour should be the true foundation of success and set himself to turn to useful account the lessons learnt on active service. He devoted himself first to the improvement of our swordsmanship, for he had been shocked by the numerous carelessly self-inflicted wounds sustained by officers and men. Serious foot wounds were common, whilst horses were often terribly hacked and gashed about head, neck and shoulders by the clumsy brandishings of their riders. Le Marchant, aided by the ablest swordsman in the Allied Armies, perfected himself and formed a “ demonstration troop.” He invited other corps to co-operate but his invitation was declined, partly from laziness and :

“ Partly from the influence of the *old* officers, whose ages and inaptitude for such an exercise naturally excited a disrelish for such an exhibition.”

So it was necessary for him to appeal to higher authority for approval of his new system, which he embodied in his *Treatise on the Sword Exercise* which became an official manual, while Le Marchant was ordered to begin a course of instruction immediately, and was later instructed to tour throughout the country supervising the application of his methods. Amongst others the Prince of Wales “ condescended to be instructed by him in the Exercise, and presented him with a richly mounted sword in token of his appreciation.”*

* This, of course, was in the days when “ Prinny ” was the truly beautiful “ Prince Florizel,” depicted by Gainsborough ; long before he “ let loose his belly which now reaches his knees.”

Dissatisfied with the existing pattern of sword, which amongst other defects, was far too cumbersome, Le Marchant designed one of a new pattern, which was approved by the Master General of the Ordnance, who presented him with a sword of honour. His energy and enterprise was rewarded by promotion, without purchase, to a Lieutenant-Colonelcy.

Difficulty seems to have arisen in discovering a vacancy, for he was transferred first to Hompesch's Mounted Rifles, thence to the 29th Light Dragoons, and finally to the 7th Light Dragoons.

Le Marchant was, by now, certainly possessed of powerful influence, but it was influence created by his own persistence. For influence unfortified by merit he had no use. His opinion in this regard is worth recording :

“ A few persons may have got on by accidentally falling into the way of men of powerful interests, possessing weak minds and less knowledge than those they take by the hand ; but the instances are few, whilst, on the other side, generally all those who make any figure, or fill high situations, possess genius and superior acquirements.”

Le Marchant found himself in command of the 7th Light Dragoons, for Lord Paget, his senior, was enjoying a lengthy period of leave. He immediately set about instituting vigorous reforms. A historian describes them as “ unpalatable to both officers and men, from their severity and the personal exertions by which they were attended,” and one can well believe this to be true when we hear that “ three or four days in the week he regularly assembled in his room all such officers as were desirous of learning, and explained to them the principles of Field Movements.”

His ideas were in such marked contrast to Lord Paget's that when the latter returned he was greeted by the troops on parade with loud cheers, which were quickly silenced by his Lordship, who expressed his entire approbation of Lieutenant-Colonel Le Marchant's conduct whilst in command, observing that the men were proving the necessity for the strictest discipline by their present insubordination, which he considered a personal insult to himself.

On his relief from command Le Marchant seized the opportunity provided by additional leisure to prepare a series of treatises, the subject matter of which had been in his mind for some time. He had already written *A Plan for Preventing Peculation in the Foraging of the Cavalry*, and he followed this by *The Duty of Cavalry Officers on Outpost*, which was ordered to be published officially, but, curiously enough, it seems never to have been set up in type, nor was the MS. subsequently traced. Another literary enterprise, the utility of which can hardly be questioned, was *An Elucidation of Certain Points in His Majesty's Regulations for Cavalry*.

Yet Le Marchant was not content. He saw our national peril and our inadequate means of meeting it. The futile manœuvrings in the Netherlands had shown him our lack of competent leaders and staff officers and the inefficiency of excellent material, due to complete absence of training. In America, Lexington, Bunker's Hill, Princeton and Saratoga stood to our discredit. In Ireland, to quote Ralph Abercromby, the Army was "in a state of licentiousness which must render it formidable to everyone but the enemy." Le Marchant saw, in fact, that, as Sir Herbert Maxwell has said, "Except in India . . . the British Army had earned the contempt of all nations."

And he saw the reason; the state of idleness into which national indifference to our Army had allowed its officers unconsciously to fall. And he knew that no out-pouring of memoranda, pamphlets and treatises would mend matters, that education of officers in their professional duties was the only remedy; so he prepared at first a scheme for regimental schools but soon rejected it as too narrow a conception.

He was touring the country, inspecting classes engaged in learning the new sword exercise, when the conviction that nothing less than a comprehensive national establishment for the military instruction of officers and embryo officers would meet the situation forced itself upon him. He began preparing his schemes directly his coach set him down.

Like most desirable projects, Le Marchant's was not a

unique conception : others had submitted similar though less far-reaching schemes. The Duke of Richmond, a Cabinet Minister, had prepared one which had been rejected. General Jarry, a French Royalist *émigré* possessing considerable influence at Court, and a protégé of Dumouriez, had also advocated a school for officers, and his plan, though warmly applauded by Lord Auckland, had perished too. If schemes fathered by a Cabinet Minister and by Dumouriez, who was regarded almost as a military oracle, were cast aside, there seemed little chance for Le Marchant's. And indeed it seemed fated to follow the rest into oblivion when the Commander-in-Chief, who had welcomed its author's previous contributions so warmly, met this one, submitted in January, 1799, with the words :

"I have no wish to discourage you, yet I can hardly recommend you to sacrifice your time and talents to a project which seems so very unlikely to succeed."

Yet Le Marchant was undaunted. He returned to the charge, revised his scheme, supported it by detailed estimates, meticulously costing each item, and, within two months, laid it again at his Chief's feet, proving conclusively that no considerable expense to the public was involved. This second attack was successful ; His Royal Highness was won over.

Le Marchant's scheme was for a Military College organized in several departments :

The First Department, a school, more or less on the lines of West Point, for the general education of boys from 13 to 15, who would not necessarily enter the Army.

The Second Department, for cadets who had passed satisfactorily through the First Department, and who wished to obtain commissions. Attached to this was *The Legion*, consisting of 200 soldiers' sons, from 13 to 15 years of age, organized into four companies. These lads were to be considered effective soldiers, borne on the establishment of their regiments, and to receive military education with a view to their becoming "intelligent non-commissioned officers and made capable of filling with credit even staff situations in the several

Corps of the Army." They were further to provide the means of practical training in command for the cadets of the Second Department, by "exemplifying what they have at first acquired in theory."

The Third Department, a College for the improvement of officers of over four years' service, to fit them for Staff employment.

Winning over the Commander-in-Chief was only to capture the first line of defence, for the expenditure involved required Cabinet approval. But the Duke did all possible within his discretion and arranged for Le Marchant to establish a Staff School at High Wycombe on the lines of his proposed "Third Department." Jarry was to be Chief Instructor, Le Marchant Commandant. This College opened on 4th May, 1799, with a class of twenty-six officers, of whom Le Marchant wrote: "I never saw officers more desirous of learning." So Le Marchant had started our Staff College, and had scarcely completed its organization when he was recalled for foreign service. The expedition was abandoned, however, and, after some months, Le Marchant returned to High Wycombe to find everything there at a standstill; nothing further having been done towards the completion of his scheme. Still he persisted, offering to give his services gratuitously till the institution should be finally established, seeking personal interviews with Ministers, his part in which he would rehearse for the whole night beforehand. As a result, all defences were gradually subdued, Mr. Pitt won over, and a Royal Warrant published officially approving the Staff School already provisionally established, under the name of the Senior Department, Royal Military College. A Committee was appointed to consider the details of the remainder of Le Marchant's scheme. This Committee considered the First Department unnecessary and rejected the establishment of the *Legion*, because "the measure might prove injurious to the Service at large by leading to frequent promotions from the ranks." They advocated the establishment of a College for cadets on Le Marchant's lines, and its erection on Bagshot Heath "which admits of the buildings

being so placed as to avoid a neighbourhood injurious to the morals of the cadets."

In March, 1802, a Royal Warrant approving a Junior Department of the Royal Military College was published and arrangements made for temporary accommodation at Great Marlow until the buildings near Sandhurst should be ready. On 17th May, sixteen young "gentlemen cadets" joined, and Le Marchant's triumph was complete. He had definitely established professional education for officers. He had overcome prejudice, triumphed where others with far rosier prospects of success had failed and had done so by sheer perseverance. "Perseverance," he said, "is the only sure road to success."

Le Marchant lived at High Wycombe and supervised the working of both Departments of the Royal Military College; a task occupying his time to the full.

In 1811 he was promoted Major-General, and that summer visited Sandhurst where, on a barren heath, he saw the accomplishment of his dreams maturing. To him it was the realization of his life's effort; to his son, who accompanied him, "It was like the establishment of an infant colony in some American desert," in "a spot that bore every mark of having been condemned, by nature, to perpetual solitude and sterility." Le Marchant pictured himself ending his days in charge of the institution he had created, both Departments concentrated together as he had planned.

Within a week he received a letter acquainting him that "his situation at the College was incompatible with his rank in the Army, and he must therefore expect to be immediately removed." Orders quickly followed appointing him to the command of a Heavy Cavalry Brigade for service in Portugal.

As some seventeen years had elapsed since his services in the field, Le Marchant, before sailing, asked his friend the Marquis of Anglesey, to furnish him with any hints that more recent experience might suggest. He received this excellent counsel:

"The best advice that I can give to a Cavalry General is to inspire his men as early as possible with the most perfect confidence in his personal gallantry. Let him but lead they are sure to follow, and I believe hardly anything will stop them."

For a while no opportunity arose for putting this advice into practice. But Le Marchant's thoroughness administratively and tactically was as evident during quiet campaigning in Portugal as it had been in the Netherlands. Shortage of supplies often reduced the horses to a ration of oak leaves which, as his historian mildly observes, are "a fare very ill-suited to constitutions formed in the luxury of an English stable." Le Marchant deeply resented this inadequacy in the supply arrangements, sharply reminding his Commissary that:

"In providing for Cavalry, the supply to the horses is of as much, if not more, consequence than provision for the men, as the latter are inefficient to the Service unless their horses are well fed."

But of his men's welfare he was equally regardful. At the end of the hardest day's march he would take no rest till he had seen that all were properly provided for. We are told "He absolutely identified himself with his Brigade in which he appeared like a parent amongst his children."

And what a magnificent Brigade to command: 4th and 5th Dragoon Guards and 3rd Dragoons. Sir Thomas Picton says, "I always feel easy when General Le Marchant's men are between me and the enemy; they do their duty and can be trusted; and I heartily wish the rest were like them."

Their chance came. On 22nd July, 1809, Wellington's manœuvres to bring Marmont to battle about Salamanca and Marmont's counter-moves—always just a little too subtle—came to an end. Marmont had committed himself, reached out just too far. Wellington, peeping through his glass whilst he breakfasted, "stumping about, munching," peeping again. "By God! that'll do!" Then, to his Spanish attaché, "Mon cher Alava, *Marmont est perdu!*"

Sir Stapleton Cotton commanded the Cavalry and Le Marchant was ordered personally by the Duke to "Charge in at all hazards" when the French were hotly engaged. Just as in that tangle we have all experienced before a review, order and counter-order followed in quick succession. Stapleton Cotton's instructions to Le Marchant for his attack omitted the line of advance. Le Marchant asks, "In which direction shall I face, Sir?" Cotton, excited, flushes, loses his temper

and angrily, sneeringly thunders, "To the enemy, [¶]Sir!" Le Marchant's hot blood boils. His face blazes, and he flings high words at his superior; then, seething inwardly, rides to the head of his Brigade. For the crucial moment has come, the leading infantry brigade, stealthily outflanking the French left, has pressed on dangerously far; has become isolated from its supports and is in grave danger of counter-attack, while clouds of smoke and dust obscure its view. Suddenly a roar of cheering and rumble of hoofs to the left rear and the brigade swings round to meet a mounted attack; the smoke rolls back and reveals the Heavy Dragoons, Le Marchant in advance of all, grim, merciless. On they thunder, crashing down like an avalanche as the trumpets blare the "Charge," this flaming leader at their head: through a regiment of Frenchmen, hacking, hewing; another forms to meet them, but is shattered before its square is formed. Le Marchant is fighting like a private; they say he accounted for at least six Frenchmen. Swords are blunted by killing; the Heavy Brigade has lost all order but it is through, through them all; the French, utterly shattered and routed, scatter wildly. Wellington turns to Cotton, "By God! I never saw anything more beautiful in my life. The day is *yours*!"

The charge spent, his Brigade gloriously dispersed in man-to-man combat, Le Marchant, with a few men in hand—about half a squadron of the 4th Dragoon Guards—came across a few infantry reforming in the edge of a wood. Instantly he charged at full gallop and drove them back amongst the trees. But he sways in his saddle; reels, falls; a ball, entering his groin, has broken his spine.

They carried him away; laid him down by the olive trees. Their leader who had written, "I am determined to rise to the head of my profession, and nothing but death shall stop me." So true, for, though he never knew it, there was promotion to a very high post awaiting him had he lived to take it.

Yet he went joyously, with a high heart. His son once asked how, under heavy fire, he maintained such composure and complete mastery over himself. This was the simple answer:

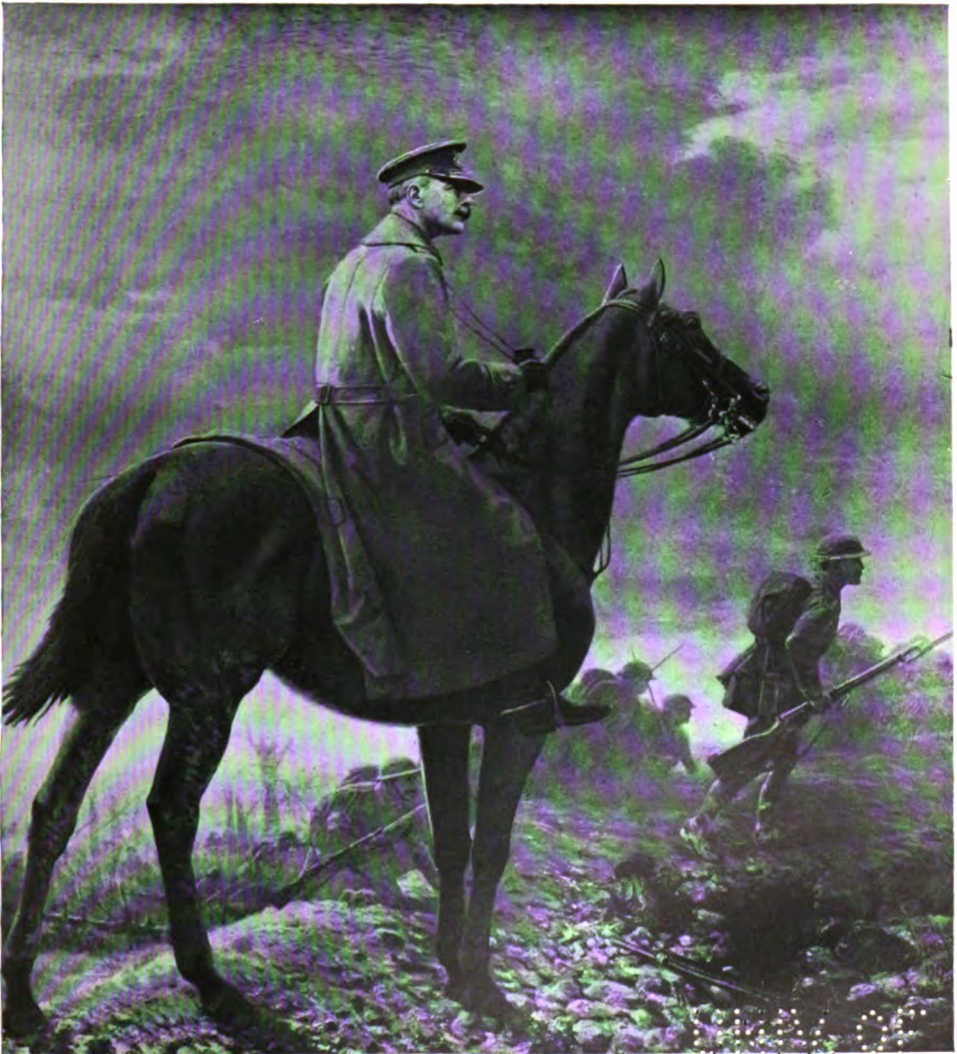
"I never go into battle without subjecting myself to a strict self-examination; when, having, as I humbly hope, made my peace with God, I leave the result in His hands with perfect confidence that He will determine what is best for me."

*THE LATE FIELD MARSHAL THE EARL HAIG,
K.T., G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O., K.C.I.E.
D.C.L., LL.D.*

AN APPRECIATION

"DOUGLAS HAIG"—the name by which the late Field-Marshal had endeared himself to and impressed his personality upon all British soldiers, requires no further words to emphasize the deep and crushing blow which the Empire, the British Army, and, indeed, the world, has sustained in the passing of so great a soldier, so splendid a man, and so perfect a gentleman.

The tributes that have been paid to his work and his memory by all the leading journals, newspapers and individual men of mark in the world leave little to be said that would not immediately savour of plagiarism. But we in the Cavalry looked on Douglas as our own, and, moreover, he looked on us as his. Single-minded, purposeful, determined, he had all those characteristics of which the Cavalry spirit is the emblem. Logical in his deductions, sure in his decisions and quick in execution, all those qualities combined with years of continuous study, produced the man who, through good and evil days, eventually emerged the victorious general commanding the largest force that the British Empire has ever put into the field. Of all these things the Cavalry may be justly proud. Honours, rank and glory were showered upon him, and he valued these only for the reflection they bestowed on those who had served under him. But the Cavalry had a still more tender and more loving association with their great chief. One can see him now, ever ready to discuss in the most sympathetic manner with young and old alike any subject connected with soldiering or sport



From the painting by Captain Adrian Jones, M.V.O.

**Field-Marshal EARL HAIG, K.T.,
G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O., K.C.I.E., D.C.L., LL.D.**

in any of their respective branches, and one trait which was always so pleasing in his character was that he never failed to keep in touch with those who had been his friends in younger days, and who had fallen far behind him in the race of life. A keen and generous sportsman, a brilliant polo player who led the teams of the 7th Hussars and 17th Lancers to many victories, a fine man to hounds, well-known in Warwickshire in former days, a good shot, and an expert fisherman, he certainly proved that the student-soldier and the best class of sportsman were entirely compatible in one personality. The devotion of his life after final victory, as is so well known, was given to the welfare of those who had served him and their dependents, and to the dependents of those who had fallen for their country.

It may truly be said that General Sir George Luck struck the first note of the renaissance of the professional cavalry soldier, but it was Haig's task, so brilliantly executed, to bring the Cavalry, both British and Indian, to the state of efficiency they had acquired at the commencement of the Great War. We know that to the day of his death he maintained that Cavalry still retained their value, and refused to acquiesce with any theorists who declared that there was no place for Cavalry on the modern battlefield.

It must be a joy to all of us to remember that his last years were spent in the country of his birth,—the country he loved so well—in the home of his forefathers, presented to him by the nation as a small token of their deep gratitude and admiration. And now, at the foot of the hill on which his home of Bemersyde stands, the remains of a great soldier lie in peace, in the beautiful grounds of Dryburgh Abbey beside those of Sir Walter Scott. Sir Walter, in his writings, ever pictured the soldier as “preux chevalier, sans peur et sans reproche,” and if ever there was a soldier who so nearly reached the ideal portrayed, it was our glorious leader and comrade, whose tomb now rests adjacent to the Scottish bard and author.

W. E. P.

23rd February, 1928.

NERY, 1914

The Journal of the Royal Artillery has devoted nearly the whole of its October number to a most interesting article on Nery by Major A. F. Becke.

NERY has always been looked upon as a cavalry "affair," but as "L" Battery played such an important part and as the action ended in the capture of the first German guns in the war, there is no doubt that none is better qualified to deal with the subject than Major Becke, an artillery officer, who since the war has been employed in the production of the official history.

The interest in this article when compared with the many others which have been published on the same subject, lies in the fact that Major Becke, with all the official records at his disposal, has really been able to get at "the other side of the picture" and this latest article is written to a great extent from the German point of view.

The article was originally offered to the CAVALRY JOURNAL and it was with great regret that it had to be refused on account of its length, for it would have been necessary either to devote an entire number to it, or else to divide it up in serial over several numbers. In the latter case it was felt that the interest would be lost before it was completed.

It is proposed to give for the benefit of those of our readers who do not see the "Artillery Journal," a short summary of the article, leaving out the British side of the question, which has already been dealt with in a previous number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.*

* Article by Major General T. T. Pitman, CAVALRY JOURNAL, April, 1920.

The order of battle of the 4th German Cavalry Division who attacked our 1st Cavalry Brigade on the 1st September, 1914, was as follows:

G.O.C.	..	..	Lieut.-Gen. O. von Garnier.
3rd Cavalry Bde.	..	..	Colonel Count von der Goltz.
2nd Cuirassiers	..	..	Lt.-Col. von Knobelsdorff.
9th Uhlans	..	..	Lt.-Col. Count von Schmettow.
17th Cavalry Bde.	..	..	Maj.-Gen. Count von Schimmelmann
17th Dragoons	..	..	Lt.-Col. Baron von Heyden-Rynsch.
18th Dragoons	..	..	Captain von Anderten.*
18th Cavalry Bde.	..	..	Colonel von Printz.
15th Hussars	..	..	Major von Zieten.
16th Hussars	..	..	Lt.-Col. Paul Ludendorff.
1st Horse Artillery			
Abteilung†	..	..	Captain Winckler.‡

At the opening of the war, the 4th German Cavalry Division, forming part of Marwitz's IIInd Cavalry Corps, advanced through Belgium to clear the way for the advance of the First and Second Armies towards the line Antwerp-Brussels-Charleroi. In this advance there were several sharp fights with the slowly retiring Belgian Army. Amongst these engagements perhaps the most notable was the fight at Haelen on the 12th August, in which the 4th Cavalry Division was hotly engaged, four of its regiments being badly mauled.§ As well as taking part in the fight the division on this day covered no less than thirty miles.

On the day of Mons, the 23rd August, Marwitz's Cavalry was halted on the Schelde, thirty miles to the N.W., guarding against an imaginary British advance from Ostend, Dunkirk and Calais.

* Captain von Anderten took over command on 17th August, as the previous C.O., together with his Adjutant, was killed on 12th leading an attack at Haelen.

† It was organized in three 4-gun batteries.

‡ The previous C.O., Major Wagner, was killed at Le Cateau on the 26th.

§ The losses suffered at Haelen were as follows:

2nd Cuirassier Regiment	..	6 Officers	71 Men	270 Horses
9th Uhlans	..	4	100	250
17th Dragoons	..	8	159	165
18th Dragoons	..	6	138	163

Early on the 26th they struck into the centre and left wing of General Smith Dorrien's force, holding the Le Cateau position. After Le Cateau, the B.E.F. withdrew in a southerly direction, but the First Army (covered by Marwitz's Cavalry) swung away south-westwards. As the Second Army continued to follow Lanrezac's Army a widening gap was created between von Kluck and Bülow and this gap happened to cover the front on which the B.E.F. was retiring. On the 28th von Kluck, bumping into the French Sixth Army, met with feeble resistance, and thinking that the B.E.F. had melted away, and that final victory was in sight, pushed on at a pace which was almost that of a hunt.

The responsibility of protecting von Kluck's left flank on the 30th August fell on Marwitz's Cavalry Corps. Hostile troops had been reported to be at Noyon and the 4th Cavalry Division pushed on to cover von Kluck's advance from this direction, but no serious action with the retiring enemy took place. The three Cavalry Divisions halted for the night to the north-west of Noyon.

The distance marched so far had been considerable, the main body of the 4th Cavalry Division had covered at least 400 miles in the twenty-three days that had elapsed since its detrainment at Aix-la-Chapelle. Heavy as had been the demands already made upon it, the Division no longer fresh or at full strength was about to be much more severely tested.

THE B.E.F. ON THE 30TH AND 31ST.

The battle of Guise, the fighting on the Somme, and von Kluck's south-westerly advance, had so relieved the direct pressure on the B.E.F. that Sir John French ordered his army to halt and rest on the 29th, provided all the formations were south of the line Vendeuil-Ham-Nesle.

G.H.Q. Operation Order No. 12, issued at 6.15 p.m. on the 30th, directed that on the 31st the Cavalry should protect the left flank, moving down the right (or western) bank of the Oise. The order then allotted billeting areas to the various

formations; to the Cavalry Division, the area Rivecourt-Bazicourt-Sarron (on the right bank of the Oise), etc., etc.

The order placed certain areas at the disposal of formations for passing the night, all or part of which they might occupy as convenient. It did not fix the front to be held, or the boundaries between which formations would be responsible for protection. Such instructions were likely to lead to misconceptions and to the rather amateur wording of this particular order, much of what happened on the 1st September can be directly traced.

On the 31st the 1st Corps crossed the Aisne, while the IIInd Corps pushed on to Crepy en Valois and the IIIrd Corps halted at and near Verberie.

Actually the Cavalry found that most of its billeting area was already occupied by Sordet's French Cavalry and only the 2nd Cavalry Brigade could be accommodated on the right bank of the river. The 4th Cavalry Brigade and Divisional Headquarters billeted close to Verberie in the 4th Divisional area, and General Briggs, commanding the 1st Cavalry Brigade, was informed that the village of Nery, belonging to the IIInd Corps, was not occupied and that it could be used by his brigade. General Briggs, however, was not informed that the IIInd Corps was not using any of the villages in its area west of Crepy, or that the outposts of the IIInd Corps and of the 4th Division did not more than cover their own billets and did not join up. Thus Nery lay in a large gap between the above formations and was not covered, as General Briggs naturally assumed it was, by a general outpost line.

THE GERMAN CAVALRY ON THE 31ST AUGUST.

It was intended that Marwitz's Cavalry should move against the left flank of Larenzac's Army, and on the evening of the 30th von Kluck ordered them to cross the Oise on the 31st, moving above Compiègne, and, ignoring the B.E.F. and Manoury's Army, to push forward in the direction of Soissons.

The 4th Cavalry Division led the advance of Marwitz's Cavalry. On the evening of the 31st, the 9th Cavalry Division

came under fire, undoubtedly from the outposts of the 4th Division blocking the roads in front of Verberie. Marwitz promptly ordered the 9th Cavalry Division to attack Verberie and force a way through. But the 9th was completely exhausted and action in the darkness in the forest against an enemy of unknown strength, whose position could not be defined, was practically impossible, and the worn-out division bivouacked on the main road and awaited the dawn before delivering any attack.

Marwitz was quite out of touch with his 4th Division, which was swallowed up somewhere in the forest to the east. The 4th Cavalry Division had spent the night of the 30th to the north-west of Noyon, and during the 31st pushed on down the valley of the Matz, reaching the Oise at 10 a.m. Here, in order to shorten the column, the regimental and first line transport and the light ammunition column were left behind, a decision that was to be bitterly regretted the next day. At dusk the Aisne was crossed and the division plunged into the forest of Compiègne. Hour after hour the long column wended its way under the trees in the darkness. Men fell asleep on their tired horses and then woke up some time later to find themselves in a different squadron or among an unfamiliar regiment, but still the advance went on. Gradually they passed out of the forest and, turning westward down the Automne valley, the main body reached Bethisy St. Martin at 4 a.m. on the 1st September.

In the meantime von Kluck had altered his plans and decided to move south and attack the B.E.F. The march of the 4th Cavalry Division was resumed after a short halt, slowly the column debauched from the Automne valley and climbing up the winding road on the left bank they reached the top of the plateau and sent out patrols to reconnoitre.

The 17th Brigade relieved the 3rd Brigade on advanced guard and hardly had the relief been carried out when a patrol reported that a British force was bivouacking in Nery and was resting there uncovered and unsuspecting. This was too good a chance to lose. An order was at once issued to deploy in the

direction of Nery. The 17th Brigade was given the duty of covering the left flank and it was also responsible for the protection of the guns which were coming into action immediately on its right.

To cover the attack the three Horse Artillery Batteries, with the Guard's Machine Gun Battery on their left, unlimbered in a long line on the edge of the ravine, between five and six hundred yards from the eastern edge of the village. Under cover of their fire, the 3rd Cavalry Brigade was to advance from the direction of Bethisy, against the British left, the attack against the other flank being entrusted to the 17th Cavalry Brigade. In this brigade the 18th Dragoons was to be deployed for the attack, whilst the 17th Dragoons was held back at le Plessis Chatelain, partly to act as a support and partly to cover the open left flank. The 18th Cavalry Brigade was kept in hand as divisional reserve. As soon as the guns unlimbered they opened a heavy and devastating fire on the exposed bivouacs of the Queen's Bays and "L" Battery. Then a few minutes later the whole of the Guards Machine Gun Battery came into action and swept with withering bursts of fire the now confused and struggling mass in the open bivouacs to the south of the village.

The effects of the surprise, however, soon passed away in the absence of any immediate attempt to rush the position. The defence hardened, a few resolute men took charge and reorganized a really effective resistance, guns were brought into action, the outskirts of the village were occupied, machine guns opened up from points of vantage, and a counter-attack was delivered. The 4th Cavalry Division had stumbled on a hornet's nest.

The attack by the German right on the north-eastern end of Nery was entrusted to the 3rd Brigade, 9th Uhlans and 3rd Cuirassiers, the former regiment being on the right. Just as this attack was starting, Colonel Ansell's two squadrons swept up and drove home a counter-attack against the right of the German line. The 3rd Brigade came to a standstill and a fire fight broke out. Doubtless the mist hid not the strength

but the weakness of Colonel Ansell's force, and the German line suffering somewhat heavily, the British numbers were exaggerated. This bold and well-conceived action of the British 5th Dragoon Guards threw the 3rd Brigade on to the defensive for the rest of the day and materially assisted in the successful defence of Nery.

The German guns continued firing with undiminished violence and covered by this bombardment the squadrons advanced by rushes against the village, but the defence was stubborn and the fire of the defenders was accurate, it tore gaps in the ranks of the assailants and several of the leaders were shot. It was not to be the easy victory that had been expected at first.

The 18th Brigade were ordered to advance and support the 3rd and 17th Brigades, which were suffering considerable losses. The Brigadier ordered the 16th Hussars to make a mounted attack. This was carried out in four waves, but after traversing nearly a thousand yards the regiment was brought to a standstill by an impassable ravine.

The 15th Hussars also attacked at the same time as its sister regiment the 16th, and they actually reached the head of the ravine leading down into Nery, but here they were forced to dismount and continue the attack on foot.

By this time the British reinforcements were rapidly approaching. A hostile battery* was observed unlimbering to the westward. The led horses of the Hussars were quite unprotected and it appeared to be impossible to advance and so Colonel Ludendorff regretfully ordered his men to remount and retire.

General von Garnier hearing that British troops were both at Bethisy and Crepy determined to break off the fight and retire in an easterly direction. The situation was momentarily growing more critical. The sudden attack on the 1st Cavalry Brigade had failed and the position of the 4th Cavalry Division was rapidly becoming extremely dangerous."

If the above account of the action of the 4th German Cavalry

* "I" Battery, R.H.A., which had come up with the 4th Cavalry Brigade.

Division is studied in conjunction with the action of our first Cavalry Brigade, as given in a previous number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, it will be seen that although the attacking force was nearly double the strength of the defenders, the former had been on the march for twenty-four consecutive hours, and had already suffered heavy casualties in a previous engagement, whereas the defenders of Nery had had a complete day's rest on the 30th and an easy day on the 31st, followed by a good night's rest.

Such was the plight of the 4th Cavalry Division when they started their retirement, having lost all their guns and being practically out of ammunition, that they would have been an easy prey for a British Cavalry Brigade launched in pursuit, but the B.E.F. it must be remembered were finding the greatest difficulty in carrying out their retreat, with von Kluck close on their heels and all available cavalry were required to act as rear guard to the various divisions, and the 1st Cavalry Brigade had definite orders for the 1st September. As soon, therefore, as they could get on the move after the engagement they marched south-west to take up their allotted position.

We will now follow up the 4th Cavalry Division in continuation of Major Becke's narrative, but before doing so it will be interesting to study the British and German casualties at Nery, as given by the respective official authorities.

THE LOSSES AT NERY, 1ST SEPTEMBER, 1914.

German.

Killed		Wounded		Missing or		Total.
Officers	O.R.	Officers	O.R.	Prisoners		
				Officers	O.R.	
3	16	3	38	6	96	162

The casualties of the 17th Dragoons are not included in the above, not being available. Presuming them to be the same as its sister regiment the 18th, then the total casualties suffered at Nery by the 4th Cavalry Division were 188 all ranks.

Horses.—No totals are given by the individual regiments

but the weakness of Colonel Ansell's force, and the German line suffering somewhat heavily, the British numbers were exaggerated. This bold and well-conceived action of the British 5th Dragoon Guards threw the 3rd Brigade on to the defensive for the rest of the day and materially assisted in the successful defence of Nery.

The German guns continued firing with undiminished violence and covered by this bombardment the squadrons advanced by rushes against the village, but the defence was stubborn and the fire of the defenders was accurate, it tore gaps in the ranks of the assailants and several of the leaders were shot. It was not to be the easy victory that had been expected at first.

The 18th Brigade were ordered to advance and support the 3rd and 17th Brigades, which were suffering considerable losses. The Brigadier ordered the 16th Hussars to make a mounted attack. This was carried out in four waves, but after traversing nearly a thousand yards the regiment was brought to a standstill by an impassable ravine.

The 15th Hussars also attacked at the same time as its sister regiment the 16th, and they actually reached the head of the ravine leading down into Nery, but here they were forced to dismount and continue the attack on foot.

By this time the British reinforcements were rapidly approaching. A hostile battery* was observed unlimbering to the westward. The led horses of the Hussars were quite unprotected and it appeared to be impossible to advance and so Colonel Ludendorff regretfully ordered his men to remount and retire.

General von Garnier hearing that British troops were both at Bethisy and Crepy determined to break off the fight and retire in an easterly direction. The situation was momentarily growing more critical. The sudden attack on the 1st Cavalry Brigade had failed and the position of the 4th Cavalry Division was rapidly becoming extremely dangerous."

If the above account of the action of the 4th German Cavalry

* "I" Battery, R.H.A., which had come up with the 4th Cavalry Brigade.

Division is studied in conjunction with the action of our first Cavalry Brigade, as given in a previous number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, it will be seen that although the attacking force was nearly double the strength of the defenders, the former had been on the march for twenty-four consecutive hours, and had already suffered heavy casualties in a previous engagement, whereas the defenders of Nery had had a complete day's rest on the 30th and an easy day on the 31st, followed by a good night's rest.

Such was the plight of the 4th Cavalry Division when they started their retirement, having lost all their guns and being practically out of ammunition, that they would have been an easy prey for a British Cavalry Brigade launched in pursuit, but the B.E.F. it must be remembered were finding the greatest difficulty in carrying out their retreat, with von Kluck close on their heels and all available cavalry were required to act as rear guard to the various divisions, and the 1st Cavalry Brigade had definite orders for the 1st September. As soon, therefore, as they could get on the move after the engagement they marched south-west to take up their allotted position.

We will now follow up the 4th Cavalry Division in continuation of Major Becke's narrative, but before doing so it will be interesting to study the British and German casualties at Nery, as given by the respective official authorities.

THE LOSSES AT NERY, 1ST SEPTEMBER, 1914.

German.

Killed		Wounded		Missing or		Total.
Officers	O.R.	Officers	O.R.	Prisoners		
				Officers	O.R.	
3	16	3	38	6	96	162

The casualties of the 17th Dragoons are not included in the above, not being available. Presuming them to be the same as its sister regiment the 18th, then the total casualties suffered at Nery by the 4th Cavalry Division were 188 all ranks.

Horses.—No totals are given by the individual regiments

but in a divisional report on the fight the horse casualties are given as 232 (148 killed, 6 wounded and 78 missing).

Guns.—Of the 12 guns, 8 were left on the field and the other 4 were abandoned later on in the wood north of Ermenonville.

	<i>British.</i>				
	Killed.		Wounded.		Horses.
	Officers	O.R.	Officers	O.R.	
1st Cav. Bde. Hqrs...	1	—	—	—	—
Queen's Bays	1	8	8	31	150 app.
5th Dragoon Guards..	1	7	2	11	60—80
11th Hussars	—	—	—	2	2
“L” Battery	3	20	2	29	150
R.H.G. (4th C.B.) ..	1	—	—	5	7
1st Middx. (19th Inf. Bde.)	—	—	1	—	1
	—	—	—	—	—
Totals	7	35	13	78	370-390
Total casualties, all ranks, 133.					

THE ESCAPE AND THE RESULT.

Withdrawal of the 4th Cavalry Division.

It was nearing 9 a.m. when General von Garnier reluctantly came to the conclusion that the fight must be broken off at once. He issued orders for the troops to withdraw to their led horses behind le Plessis Chatelaine.

After it had remounted, the Division moved off north-westward, the General wishing to regain the shelter of the forest and re-establish touch with the other Cavalry Divisions. But fate willed otherwise, and the adventures of the Division were by no means over for the day. As the Automne was neared a report was received that the British were on the other side and directly afterwards shots rang out from the edge of the wood. The crossings appeared to be strongly held and ammunition to force the passage was no longer available. The direct way of escape northwards was blocked and so the Division swung away eastwards in an endeavour to locate and so work round the British flank. But almost immediately

another report was received that the British were in force to the eastward, at Crepy en Valois, so this plan was clearly hopeless.

The bold manœuvre was now the only one that offered a chance of success, to strike southward in the direction of the old objective, Rozieres, in the hopes of gaining touch with the other two divisions. But unfortunately delays occurred in traversing the unreconnoitred country. They had great difficulty in avoiding the British 5th Division. In the village of Duvy the adjutant of the 2nd Cuirassier Regiment and another officer were taken prisoners by a party of the South Irish Horse. And so the march proceeded for mile after mile. On reaching the heights near Rozieres a halt was called, the men dismounted for a time, and units which had become somewhat confused and intermingled were sorted out. After the regiments had mounted again they were drawn up in mass just to the north-west of Rozieres. The time must have been about 3 p.m. A long halt was now considered to be essential, for both men and horses had had great calls made upon their strength and physical energy and they had suffered considerably from lack of water and food and from the heat of the sun. The halt altogether lasted about two hours and during this time the large number of wounded were attended to. Oat sheaves were brought to the horses, but having been twelve hours without water, they could not be induced to eat. This does not mean that they were incapable of further effort, for, as the sequel shows, they responded willingly and gallantly enough to further heavy calls on their powers of endurance.*

After varied experience the 4th Cavalry Division had at long last reached its objective—Rozieres—but it was no longer

* The war has again provided numerous examples of the courage and resolution of the horse. In November, 1917, in the operations in Southern Palestine, on more than one occasion the horses of the Australian Light Horse Brigades went for more than fifty hours without water. The horses of one regiment had their saddles on for forty-eight hours, and during this period it was impossible to water the animals. In September, 1918, in the pursuit through Galilee, the 4th Cavalry Division covered eighty miles in thirty-four hours without off-saddling, but nevertheless the Division took part in the capture of Damascus on the 1st October.

in a condition to act effectively. Instead of being well placed behind the flank of a retiring and dispirited army, it was itself encircled and hemmed in by hostile divisions. Naturally, on its arrival at Rozieres it had hoped to link up with its sister divisions, but as the hours dragged on General von Garnier realised that his division was isolated.

The British IIIrd Corps report centre was actually established at Beaulieu farm, only a mile distant from where the 4th Cavalry Division were formed up in mass. The cavalry were seen and the British guns were about to open fire on them when it was decided that they must be French, and the mistake was not found out until after they had moved on out of sight, for the mass of horsemen began retiring and soon was completely screened from observation in the wood and a real chance to avenge Nery had been lost.

Possibly on account of some misunderstanding, liaison was not maintained between the advanced guard and the main body, and soon afterwards the main body itself broke up into at least two parties. Whilst the 18th Dragoons, who were accompanied by the four guns, rode southwards from Rozieres towards Droiselles, part of the main body, including a large party of the 3rd Brigade, entered the Bois du Roi, whilst another detachment consisting of the Hussar Brigade and the Guards Machine Gun Abteilung, branched off into the wood to the east of Droiselles. Quite out of touch with one another, these parties remained all night in the Bois du Roi and the neighbouring wood, whilst British columns marched by on either side to Nanteuil (5th Division) and to Baron (4th Division) without discovering them. It was only the shortage of ammunition that prevented the cavalry from making a surprise attack on the marching columns. Situated as they were that night, encircled by strong hostile forces, the full seriousness of the position was appreciated, and a strict order was issued that men were to speak only in an undertone. After this experience their relief may be imagined when, late on the morrow, the advanced guard of the First German Army came up and released them. For them at any rate the adventure was over.

THE SOUTHERN PARTY.

We must now turn to the party that had broken away southwards (space does not admit of our giving Major Becke's narrative in full). The 18th Dragoons who had gone south with the four guns, bumped into the 17th Dragoons and part of the 3rd Brigade, only to lose them again later on in their wanderings, which were continued practically throughout the night, slipping across the open unobserved they plunged into the great forest of Chantilly. Moving along a narrow woodland track, men, horses and guns were almost at once engulfed among the trees and dense undergrowth. Half of the column becoming detached were left behind at Versigny. These were collected together by General Schimmelmänn, and working down the valley, the column managed to reach Ermenonville. Here occurred another of the extraordinary incidents of this extraordinary day. The 4th Divisional Ammunition Park, which had halted the previous night at Ermenonville, and hearing rumours of German Cavalry, decided at 4 p.m. to retire to Damartin. On reaching Damartin, however, definite orders were received to return to Ermenonville. The lorries were reversed and the return journey was at once undertaken with the result that on arrival at Ermenonville they sailed right into the village before they became aware that it was for the time being in German hands. But the contents of the captured lorries were fortunately quite valueless to the German Cavalry. Nor, owing to the lack of ammunition and the dangerous situation in which Schimmelmänn's column was placed, could the pursuit of the escaping drivers be pushed home. It was indeed rapidly abandoned and the lorries were left on the road untouched. After this event the Division moved into the wood and remained concealed the whole of the following day.

During the forenoon of the 2nd, a party from this column re-entered Ermenonville in search of food and narrowly escaped capture by the British Cavalry who, co-operating with the rear guard of the 19th Infantry Brigade, tried to round them up. The Germans, however, cleverly eluded the attack and slipped

back into the wood to the north. Then, owing to the retirement having to be continued, it was considered impossible in the short time still available to search the large wood with its thick undergrowth, and the operation was abandoned. The British rearguard thus narrowly missed rounding up Schimmelmänn and his column. But the trial was then over for, shortly after the British had withdrawn, touch was obtained with the German advanced guard.

Schimmelmänn's column joined up with von Garnier's detachments from the Bois du Roi and Heyden Rynsch's Dragoon column was the only one not accounted for. To it, therefore, we must now return.

This column had halted on the evening of the 1st on the forest track inside the wood. Darkness was falling but around the horizon the glow of the British bivouac fires was visible, stretching on a great arc from Nanteuil, through Baron, to Borest, thus giving the impression that the column was already surrounded by overwhelming numbers.

For the moment, however, the enemy apparently was quite unsuspecting, but the situation was decidedly critical, and it was necessary to be prepared if events should turn out unfavourable. The Colours and guns had to be disposed of. An easily recognisable spot was selected, and here the regimental Colours were hidden, and, so as to render the guns useless in the event of capture, it was decided to remove and bury their breeches. A most untoward incident then occurred. Suddenly there was a blinding glare and a deafening crash. What had happened? Actually one of the guns, which had been loaded when the fight at Nery concluded, had been accidentally discharged. Hardly had the reverberations among the tree trunks died away, when the full effect of this disaster was realised. The hiding place was no longer secure. The brigade could not risk another encounter under such conditions and reluctantly Colonel Heyden Rynsch gave the order to advance. The Colours were taken from their place of concealment, but it was decided not to take the guns any further.

The column passed through Ermenonville, which was

deserted. Scarcely daring to breathe, the horsemen passed through the place. Another wood, the main forest, now opened in front of the column and swallowed it up. Men lost all idea of time and distance. They rode on half asleep, but always haunted by the possibility of suddenly blundering on the enemy and harassed by the uncertainty of how long the horses would hold out. Finally they reached a well-wooded park, within fifteen miles of the forts of Paris. The horses were watered in ponds and the weary men lay down and slept, each man beside his horse with the bridle wound round his arm or leg.

It was high noon on the 2nd before the sleepers awakened, but even now no unnecessary movements were allowed. To cover the resting column some officers lay out in the shelter of the undergrowth near the Plailly road. Motor cyclists, patrols and occasional small units, all of them French, passed along. Never before had the 18th Dragoons spent such a strange anniversary of the surrender of Sedan.

In the afternoon, a long and heavy column of French troops was seen moving southwards in the direction of Paris (it was the 56th Reserve Division retiring). And so the column spent another night of suspense, heartened only by the knowledge that the enemy were evidently in full retreat.

When the 3rd September dawned no sign of the enemy could be seen, an officer's patrol was sent out and at 8.30 a.m. touch was gained with the advanced troops of the 1st German Army.

Major Becke continues his narrative with an interesting and distinctly amusing account of a sudden exodus of British G.H.Q. from Damartin during their dinner on the evening of the 1st September. A Uhlan officer belonging to the 4th Cavalry Division, who had been thrown from his horse, was found hiding in a ditch by an Army Service Corps officer, who was motoring to Damartin and within a few miles only of that place. Such was the consternation caused by this proof of the proximity of German Cavalry, that the whole of G.H.Q. rapidly took to their motor cars.

The article concludes with some interesting comments on the Nery operations.

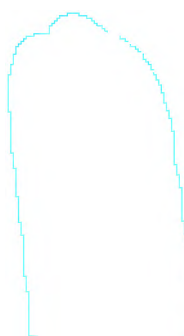
One of the lessons that is to be learned from Nery is the general consternation that is caused by hostile cavalry suddenly appearing behind what is believed to be the general outpost line.

Again, it is interesting to speculate what would have been the result if the 1st Cavalry Brigade had moved off from Nery at the hour originally intended. In this case the 4th Cavalry Division would have found Nery unoccupied, and no fight would have taken place there. But what would have been the effect on the retreat of the B.E.F., if a quite intact and fairly fresh German Cavalry Division had been free to move about among the unsuspecting retiring columns ?

Further, it is clear that in any chance encounter of this description, into which the element of mutual surprise is bound to enter, the opening advantage will always lie with that force which is on the move. In this case the 1st Cavalry Brigade was stationary and it was the 4th Cavalry Division that was on the move. The initial advantage, as well as that of preponderating numbers and of a better position, all lay with the German Cavalry. But von Garnier did not possess indefinite time for his task ; and a stout defence, combined with a masterly handling of machine guns, and a prompt and bold counter-offensive, kept the fight alive and the enemy fully employed until reinforcements arrived and settled the fate of the day. In Nery, as in all dangerous operations, one had to act, not think.

But the real importance of the Nery operations is far greater and its significance far deeper. As a result of its handling in the fight at Nery and its weariness resulting from the adventures after the fight, the 4th Cavalry Division was relegated, from the 4th September (inclusive) to perfunctory right flank-guard work in co-operation with the IVth Reserve Corps. Indeed, the 4th Cavalry Division was refused in the Oise valley behind the German right. As a result, early on the fatal 5th September, Gronau's Corps blundered across the front of Manoury's re-organized army. If the 4th Cavalry Division

Handwritten text on the right edge of the page, possibly a page number or reference.



L SITUATION

1st AUG - 1st SEPT 1914

9 C.D.

oNesle

K. K. II

3d/VII

Roye

2 C.D.

Ognolles
start 2 a.m.

4 C.D.

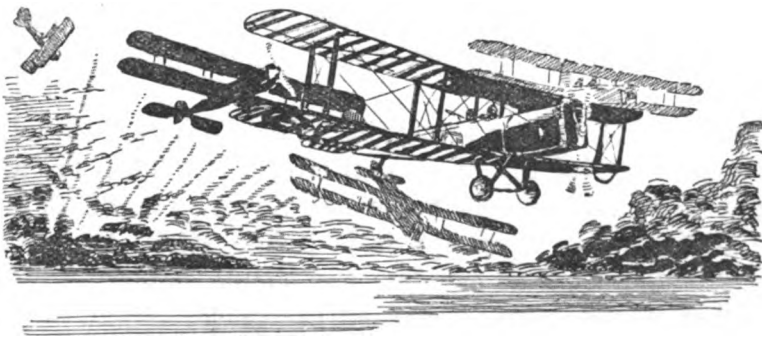
Beaulieu o 3 a.m.

verse

had been a fresh and effective fighting formation, capable of bold reconnaissance work, Manoury's Army in position would have been discovered on the early morning of the 5th. As it was a radical change came over the operations. The invading flood of the German hosts reached high water mark. Then came the turn of the tide. As a result of the advance of the B.E.F. into the ever widening gap between the First and Second German Armies, a hasty retreat was decided on, and as the invaders turned back sullenly from the Marne and streamed northward across the valley of the Aisne, it became clear that France, and with her, the allied cause, was indeed saved.

With the loss of the Marne died all hope of an early success. So in this sense the battle of the Marne may be regarded as the decisive battle of the war. For never again, in all the four long years of fighting that were to come, were the German armies to be so near an overwhelming success.

The ruin of all their hopes at the Marne was largely due to the failure to locate in time the threat that menaced von Kluck's open right on the 5th September as he rushed southwards. This failure may be traced directly to the fight at Nery."



IN VINO VERITAS

BY "FORRARD, ON"

"ARE you glad to be home again, John?" said my uncle, and indeed I was. The grass and the rain were very pleasing after an immoderate helping of sand and sunshine. The question found me sitting in a country house dining-room; the port had done its first journey; the candle light, the old pictures, the furniture, produced an atmosphere of mellow dignity and comfort. I was very contented. My eye took in the room and rested on an oil painting of Ziethen. You may know it. The General riding a skewbald charger, his pipe flung in the air and in the background his Hussars pressing forward in answer to his famous signal to charge. It was an old favourite of my uncle's, who was a keen cavalryman and in his day had commanded a brigade with distinction.

"Yes, that takes my fancy too, John," said he.

"I wonder what our friend would have to say about the cavalry nowadays. Bit of a problem, eh? Fill up your glass, young man, and let's hear what the younger generation thinks about it!"

"Well, you're in for something, Uncle James," said I.

"Good," replied my uncle vociferously. "Then fire ahead. The papers would have one believe cavalry's on its death bed!"

"Yes," said I, "perhaps it is if one sticks to the strict dictionary definition of cavalry, but should one?"

"What d'you mean?" barked my uncle.

"Well, Uncle James, I don't know what you understand by cavalry, but I look on it as essentially the mobile arm of the Army—an arm where speed is the main thing and armament comes second—rather like what cruisers are to the fleet. I

don't think nowadays we can afford to regard cavalry merely in terms of men on horseback."

"Are you for mechanizing the cavalry? Is that what you are getting at?" said my uncle, and I marvelled at the old man's restraint. "Because if so, where's the money coming from, eh? How's Winston going to find the brass?"

"He can't and he won't," I interposed, "but what if they abolish another regiment or two or cut down the squadrons perhaps and at the same time add a bit more on to the Tank Corps? Do you, as an old Cavalryman want that?"

My uncle made it abundantly clear that he didn't.

"The way the whole thing strikes me is this," I continued. "We, the established agents of military mobility, are being gradually superseded partially through our own lack of enterprise, partially through circumstances over which we have no control. In a few years' time, if things go on as they are at present, the mobile forces of the army will be in two camps. On the one hand there will be the cavalry regiments (such as still remain) reduced to a state of tactical inefficiency by reason of reductions in establishments quite incompatible with the rôle expected of them and to a state of moral inefficiency by reason of the hopelessness of the outlook with which they will be faced. On the other hand, there will be the Tank Corps or the mechanized corps (or whatever other name they may give it), rapidly developing, yet still in its infancy, both as regards its knowledge of the rôle expected of it, as regards the design and tactical employment of its various machines and as regards the traditions and *esprit de corps* of the units of which it is composed."

I paused for breath and found my uncle regarding me somewhat sadly.

"Well, John," he said, "you've drawn a pretty melancholy picture I must say. But what are you going to do about it, eh? Fill up your glass—perhaps it'll help!"

I took his advice. I'm not eloquent by nature, and, besides, my uncle happens to keep rather a good brand.

Suddenly inspiration came to me. I seemed to see red—red as the colour of the port I was drinking. “Why won’t they reorganize the cavalry,” I demanded, “instead of breaking it up and creating something new in its place? It’s damned wasteful what they’re doing. They’re wasting traditions, *esprit de corps*, some of the finest military material they’ve got, and why? Simply because nobody will face a proper comprehensive reorganization of the mobile arm as a whole.”

“But you’d always want a separate corps to manage all these new-fangled machines, wouldn’t you?” said my uncle. “A sort of corps of specialists, eh?”

“Bunkum,” I replied, “Why most of your so-called specialists know very little more about a tank than I do, and certainly nothing I couldn’t very quickly learn. No! It’s mobility as a whole that we’ve got to specialize in, whether it’s derived from four-legged horse power or mechanized horse power, and mobility is the very thing it’s always been the job of the cavalryman to study.

“What’s the mobile arm wanted for? What degree of mobility can you expect to get in this or that type of country? What organization of your mobile forces is most suitable, having regard to finance and to the various theatres you may be called on to fight in? Those are the questions that have to be answered—that have always had to be answered—and they won’t be answered to-day by a mere mechanic any more than you could expect a mere mechanic to understand the art and sense of manœuvre or to possess the instinct for winning a scrap. Mind you, I don’t say the cavalry isn’t to blame for the present state of affairs. I think it very largely is. We’ve shown a sad lack of imagination in the past and now we’re reaping the reward. We’re looked upon either as idlers who *don’t* take any interest in our job (and spend all our time in sport) or else as idiots who *can’t*!

“There’s never smoke but there’s fire, and there may be some justification for this sort of view, but as applied to the arm as a whole it’s neither fair nor true. There are just as many keen soldiers in the cavalry to-day as ever there was, though

I'm bound to say they haven't had much to encourage them lately."

"Well, that's all very interesting," commented my uncle, "but let's have your constructive proposals. How would you reorganize the cavalry if you had the chance?"

"Ah," said I, "I'm afraid that's a thing a junior fellow like me is hardly qualified to talk about. It depends on so many things which one doesn't know about, but I've got my own ideas on the subject for what they're worth."

"Let's have 'em," said my uncle, once more pushing over the port, and once more I succumbed.

"I think," said I, "that the basis of any re-organization should be that cavalry's chief job to-day is reconnaissance and protection. Eyes and ears with which to penetrate the enemy's screen and a screen which the enemy's eyes and ears can't penetrate. I don't admit for a moment that these are cavalry's only rôles, but in my opinion they are the most important for the moment."

My uncle nodded agreement and I continued.

"What's wanted, then, in order to carry out this dual rôle? First, something really rapid, such as motor bikes and armoured cars, which can get us timely warning of the enemy's first movements. They'll only be able to function in theatres where there are roads, and even then they'll soon get held up, but the mere fact that they've *been* held up will be valuable information. Next we shall want some form of cross-country mechanized vehicles—slower and noisier than the motor bikes and armoured cars, but not dependent on roads. They won't be so easily held up, and (given some mechanized artillery to help) they'll have considerable power of penetration. Finally, we shall want the horse—slower still and very vulnerable, but still the quickest means of reconnoitring some types of country such as present obstacles to our present cross-country machines—either natural ones in the shape of woods, rivers and mountains, or artificial ones in the shape of tank mines or other anti-tank devices.

"Now comes the knotty problem of deciding the proportion in which these ingredients are wanted.

"It depends on mechanical developments. It depends on the theatre of war. But the governing factor at the moment is neither. The governing factor is £.S.D. !

"Ask 'how many tanks can I have ?' and the answer is 'how many squadrons or regiments will you scrap ?' "

"And what," asked my uncle, "is the answer to that ? "

"My answer is 'devil a one,' " said I, " but I don't see why we shouldn't try to get enough money to mechanize our head-quarter wings, say :

Group 1. Signallers with R.T. tanks and motor bikes ;

Group 2. Transport with administrative personnel in Morris Six-wheelers ;

Group 3. M.G. troop of twelve light tanks and an A.C. Troop of eight A.C.'s."

"How about that for a start ? " "You can add an Anti-tank weapon when its produced."

At this moment the clock struck eleven, and my uncle rose from his seat. "So that's your solution, is it? Mechanize the headquarter wings, eh? Well, why in the devil couldn't you have said that an hour ago? You know, John, you want to get more of a move on. That's what Ziethen would have told you," and he shook his finger at the picture. As we made our belated departure from the dining-room to join the ladies I reflected that that indeed was the message Ziethen would have had for cavalry to-day: "Get a move on!"



BRITISH WOMEN SOLDIERS IN WAR

By CAPTAIN E. W. SHEPPARD

THE above title not only sounds better, but is also more accurately descriptive of the subject of this article, than the balder and more general "Women in War" which might well be—and possibly has been—utilized for one of the more lurid and sex-conscious novels now cluttering up booksellers' shelves.—not that even the history of women soldiers in war is entirely devoid of what publishers' dust jackets—which now chastely overlap any book, however unchaste its contents, and are usually decorated with choice examples of that fulsome self praise technically and expressively known as "blurb"—would term "sex appeal."

There comes to the mind for instance, the adventures of those gallant young women—perhaps it would be more accurate to say young women addicted to gallantry—who, clad in male attire, accompanied the French in Spain and who, in the case of the unfortunate army defeated by Wellington at Vittoria, were as numerous as to make it, to use the expressive term of one of its officers, "a perambulating brothel." Most of them fell into the hands of the British, but what they thought of—or whether they had occasion particularly to notice—"le flegme britannique," is not recorded. Again, there was the case of the young English lady of title who fell a victim to love for Charles von Konigsmarck—one of an 18th century family of sheik-like tendencies—and rode out to war with him in the guise of an A.D.C., with the not wholly unexpected result that one fine day the warrior was recalled from his morning stroll by his landlord, who rushed up to him crying, "Sir, Sir, strange things are happening; your aide-de-camp is being confined." Again who does not know the charming but possibly apocryphal

18th century ballad of "pretty Polly Oliver," who "as she lay musing in bed" decided on the spur of the moment "to 'list for a soldier and follow her love" only to lose him in battle. As, however, "she was crying beside his cold corse," she caught the fancy of a passing general, who being informed by Polly that she was "no soger lad and nothing but a maid," "kissed her full kindly and made her his wife," so that she henceforth "lived in contentment on forty thousand pounds a year."

But though pretty Polly Oliver herself is, one imagines, a legendary figure, her story may very well have been based on fact. History tells of more than one member of her sex who about that period went to the wars disguised as a man, (though the end of the tale is usually less romantic and less fortunate), and it is with these rather than with the accepted heroines of war, such as Jeanne d'Arc and Agostina, the Maid of Saragossa, that we propose here to deal. There are points of similarity in all their stories. The original cause of their assuming buff coat and breeches, for instance, is almost always—a lady novelist would guess it at once—a MAN, and generally a BAD MAN—as the old ballad puts it :

"She was poor but she was honest,
Victim of a bad man's whim,
First he loved her, then he left her,
Which was most unkind of him."

These young women, however, instead of assuming, as did the bulk of their sex similarly situated, the sympathetic but lachrymose rôle of the "Girl he left behind him," pursued the deserter from their charms, bent on recapture or revenge—perhaps synonymous terms, from the point of view of their victim. They generally succeeded at all events in coming up with him, only to find in too many cases that he had consoled himself with some other siren, or that his imagined fascination had lost its power over them, thus proving once more the truth of Stevenson's dictum that "to travel hopefully is a better thing than to arrive." Generally, too—though not always, as we shall see—discovery of their sex wrote a somewhat ignomi-

nious "finis" to their service in arms, and reduced them either to the ranks of an even older profession, or to other little less ignominious and precarious means of livelihood. A pitiful end, for many of them were handsome and attractive, and all of them plucky creatures deserving of a better fate.

The earliest in time and practically the best known of them was Mistress Christian Kavanagh, who was born in 1667 the daughter of a public-house keeper in Dublin. Inheriting the tavern at her father's death, she married the waiter, one Thomas Welsh, and was one day horrified to learn that her husband had disappeared and was believed to be murdered. Actually he had merely enlisted in Orkney's Regiment of Foot. Mrs. Welsh, receiving a letter from him from the Army in Flanders, resolved to disguise herself as a man, enlist, and endeavour to find him. She took the shilling in a marching regiment, sailed with a draft for the Low Countries and arrived just in time for the Battle of Landen. Hardly had the firing opened than she was wounded by a musket ball above the ankle, which necessitated her spending the next month in hospital. Her next adventure was to be captured by the French while out with a foraging party; she was, however, exchanged after ten days' imprisonment. No sooner had she rejoined her regiment than she fell in with a sergeant whom she interrupted while endeavouring to "carry the fortress by storm," the said "fortress" being a young and pretty burgher's daughter of Gorkum; a duel resulted, and both combatants twice wounded each other before they were separated by the guard, but our young woman, to judge by her own account, comes off the better. For this escapade she was discharged from her regiment, but so enamoured does she seem to have become of a soldier's life—also her husband was still to seek—that she re-enlisted in Hay's Dragoons—now the Scots Greys—and remained with it throughout the siege of Namur and up to the conclusion of the Peace of Ryswick. The next few years she seems to have spent at Dublin; the outbreak of the War of the Spanish Succession saw her back once more with the Dragoons. She took part in several minor actions, but her

next wound was received from a comrade while she was in the act of looting a pig-sty ! At the storming of the Schellenberg she was again hit by a ball between the bones of the hip and narrowly escaped discovery of her sex while in hospital. She returned in time to fight at Blenheim, at the end of which battle she at last found her "perfidious" husband—caressing a Dutch woman ! Tears, sighs, recriminations, promises of amendment were rapidly exchanged, and at last Mrs. Welsh, crying with a little variation of the stock phrase for these occasions, "I cannot be a wife but I will be a brother to you," expressed her resolve to remain as a soldier—and did so. Not however for long, for another wound in the head received at Ramilles led to the recognition of her sex by the surgeon who attended her. As soon as she had recovered she was of course discharged from the army, but granted permission to follow it as a sutler ; a new marriage with her husband was celebrated ; "all our officers were invited and we were with great solemnity wedded and bedded" as she puts it. She remained, however, as plucky and as combative as ever ; she brought food to her man in the trenches, quarrelled with and broke the leg of an officer who had ill-treated a civilian in Ghent, and when the Dutch woman with whom her husband had been consorting venturing to re-appear, attacked her with a knife and cut off her nose. Soon after she lost her husband at the siege of Mons, and re-married with a grenadier named Jones, who died from wounds received in action at St. Venant. After the conclusion of peace our heroine returned to Dublin, contracted a third marriage with a Sergeant Davies, and after many vicissitudes of fortune secured admission with him to Chelsea Hospital, where she died in 1739 at the age of seventy-two (but according to another version in 1775 at the age of 108), and was buried in the Hospital graveyard.

The story of Phœbe Hessel, though no doubt authentic enough in broad outline, contains a number of doubtful details, and therefore need be only briefly dealt with. She was apparently born in 1713, and according to one story followed a soldier named Golding of the 2nd Foot, with whom she had fallen in

love, into the army, enlisting in 1728 in the 5th Foot, serving five years in the West Indies, and returning to Europe to take part in the Battle of Fontenoy. If this story is true, she must have been early transferred to another regiment, since the 5th were neither in the West Indies nor at Fontenoy. In this battle she is said to have been wounded in the arm, and on her recovery, was sent to Gibraltar, where she found her old lover. After their return to England they married and lived together happily for twenty years, till Golding's death. On her marriage with her second husband, William Hessel, she moved to Brighton, lived despite frequent monetary difficulties, to over one hundred years of age and was buried in the old churchyard at Hove, where her grave is till to be seen. Other versions give quite different but more obviously inaccurate details of her career. All that one can be sure of as regards Mrs. Hessel is that—unlike Mrs. Harris—there was some "sich person," that she fought and was wounded at Fontenoy, lived at Brighton to a great age, but often in straitened circumstances, and was buried there.

Our next female soldier is Hannah Snell, who, born at Worcester in 1723, met in London, married, and was deserted by, a Dutch sailor, and enlisted as a soldier at Carlisle in the 6th Foot, in the hope of finding him—but how is not clear. Her experiences here were rough enough, and she was unlucky enough to attract the favour of a young woman of whom her sergeant was enamoured, which only increased the difficulties of her position. Fear of discovery by an acquaintance who had enlisted shortly after induced her to desert; she tramped to Portsmouth, joined the Royal Marines, and went to sea on board the sloop "Swallow," one of Admiral Boscawen's fleet bound for the East Indies. Storms and narrow escapes from shipwreck, fighting at Mauritius and on arrival in India, at the sieges of Areacopang and of Pondicherry—all these fell to Hannah Snell's lot, and in all she seems to have acquitted herself with credit. An experience familiar to many readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be recalled by the statement that when in the trenches she was often "obliged to sit or stand near middle

deep in water." Wounded in both legs and in the groin and fearing discovery, she took upon herself to act as her own surgeon for the latter wound, and was fortunate enough to make a perfect cure of it, while still undergoing treatment in hospital for the former. On the return of the fleet she underwent a further period of desertion, being wrongfully accused of stealing a shirt, and suffering twelve lashes on her bare back as a punishment, while her failure to grow a beard exposed her to the jeers of her comrades, and got her the appropriate nickname of "Miss Molly." None the less her secret remained undiscovered ; her good nature, courage and spirit of good fellowship soon won her the affectionate respect of her fellows ; and it was not until she had served her full five years, returned home to England, and taken her discharge, that she finally disclosed herself to her former comrades as a woman—a revelation which immediately called forth from several of them offers of marriage ! Her latter days were peaceful enough ; after a series of appearances on the stage, she was recommended to the Duke of York for a pension and granted £30 a year, which for a woman in her station was in those days probably an adequate provision.

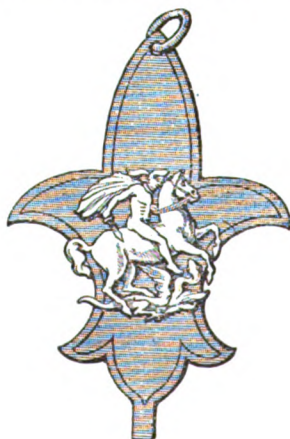
More unhappy was the career of Mary Anne Talbot, who, born the illegitimate daughter of a nobleman of that name in 1778, and entrusted to the guardianship of an officer of the 82nd Foot, was carried off in his train to San Domingo and there enrolled against her will as a drummer boy in the regiment, under threat of being sold into slavery if she refused or proved refractory. With the 82nd Foot she joined the Duke of York's Army in Flanders and was twice slightly wounded at the Siege of Valenciennes, and then succeeded in escaping and deserting to Luxemburg. Here she took ship in a French privateer, which sailed down the Rhine, and put to sea, only to fall after a few weeks a prize to Howe's squadron. Mary Anne Talbot on being captured revealed her identity but not her sex, and took service as a cabin boy in the " Brunswick," on board which she went through the Battle of the Glorious First of June, being seriously wounded in the thigh and ankle, and detained for four months in hospital. Her next ship, the bomb ketch

"Vesuvius," was captured in an action with two French privateers, and Mary Anne spent eighteen months in captivity at Dunkirk, three of which were rendered more stringent following on the ill-success of an attempt to escape. On being released she engaged for a voyage across the Atlantic on board an American ship, but an attack by a press-gang while she was on shore in England led to her spending some nights in confinement and her sex was revealed; she was at once discharged from her employment and from the Navy. The story of the rest of her short existence is a sad one enough; constantly in hospital by reason of the after effects of her wounds, and unable to secure any gratuity or pension from the Admiralty, she was only kept alive by charitable gifts eked out by the proceeds of various irregular employments, of which the stage was one. When, in 1808, her pitiful little life came to an end, she was barely thirty years old.

The exact dates of birth and enlistment of the "Female Light Dragoon" who served in the 15th under the name of William Roberts are not known, but she remained in the regiment, her secret undiscovered, for over twenty years. An accomplished horsewoman and soldier, she rose to the rank of sergeant, and was then transferred to the 37th Foot in the West Indies, and only disclosed her secret when she was, as she believed, about to die after a long bout of yellow fever. Refused permission to continue serving, she married a Sergeant Taylor, and remained with him all through the war with France, being finally captured with him by the French in 1812, and imprisoned for two years. Her husband dying immediately after their release on the signature of peace in 1814, she retired to live in Manchester on the pension granted to her. She had, according to her own story, served in the East and West Indies, in Flanders, Spain, France and Italy, had marched from the Red Sea through Egypt, and had been twice wounded.

But the most interesting of all these stories still remains to be told. On 18th July, 1865, there died at seventy-one years of age, and was buried at Kensal Green Cemetery, Dr. James Barry, Inspector-General of Army Hospitals. Born in 1795,

he entered the army as a hospital assistant in 1813, and rose through the grades of assistant surgeon, surgeon major and deputy inspector general, retiring on half-pay in 1859. Much of his service was passed at Malta, and at the Cape. Early in his career he had engaged in a duel; he had frequently, by reason of the violence of his temper and the quarrelsomeness of his nature, been guilty of flagrant breaches of discipline, which had resulted in his being placed more than once under arrest, and on one homeward voyage he had proved a highly unaccommodating cabin mate, by insisting on having the cabin to himself when dressing and undressing, and turning or keeping out his companion with the help of a savage dog. Yet he was, according to one who knew him, a skilful and famous doctor, a brilliant talker, and a cultured and agreeable companion. He had at this time risen to be private medical adviser to the Governor General of Cape Town, and before the date of his death had, as we have seen, attained the highest rank then open to an Army Doctor. Yet this brilliant professional man and queerest of characters was revealed after death to be a woman—the grand-daughter, it was said, of a Scotch earl, who had chosen her profession out of attachment to another army surgeon, who predeceased her by a few years only. History surely records few stranger stories and few more noteworthy feats of its kind than that of this lady surgeon, who throughout the whole of a long life kept the secret of her sex, and all but carried it to the grave with her. It is enough to turn any Channel-swimming woman doctor green with envy.



SOME THOUGHTS ON MODERN RECONNAISSANCE

By Major E. G. HUME, 18th King Edward's Own Cavalry

AN endeavour will be made below to put forward the view that in carrying out the mobile rôle of reconnaissance in modern conditions efficiency will be gained by adding mechanical weapons to our Cavalry units and formations as an integral part of that arm, so that not only will really efficient co-operation be ensured, but an organization will be introduced which will facilitate the progressive development of a combined mobile arm ; from time to time as machines improve and conditions alter there will thus be no destructive rivalry between separate mobile arms, but the comparative proportions of "horse" and "machine," as methods of mobility in a combined arm, will constantly be adjusted as efficiency dictates, and at the same time a tactical doctrine for making the best use of their co-operation will be kept up to date.

It is generally recognized that, at any rate, the early stages of future wars will be mobile ; and it is hoped, that such wars will be brought to an end by mobile action and generalship before whole nations become mobilized and wide fronts become pinned down. The organization and methods of employment of the really mobile portions of an army now, therefore, require reconsideration in view of the rapid strides that have been made : (1) In the improvement of mechanized arms ; (2) In the development of Air Forces ; (3) In the delaying power of the modern armament of machine guns and artillery ; (4) In the rapidity with which really large forces can be mobilized and put into the field. The modern developments in (3) and (4) above make it of immense importance that (1) and (2) should be organized and utilized in the most efficient manner possible

so that there may be every chance of a decision being reached at the very outset of a campaign while operations are still mobile.

How is such a decision to be reached ?

Is it possible so to develop an Air Force and a mechanized ground force in peace time that they can be launched into an enemy country with decisive and overwhelming results on the outbreak of war ?—or will reconnaissance, manœuvre, and concentration for a first great battle, be the essential factors ? A battle in which approximately equal forces may be assumed, and where the issue will largely depend on a correct appreciation of the best method of organizing and employing our new weapons. Unless the morale of a nation can be broken by the overwhelming use of gas by a vastly superior Air Force backed up by a very great superiority in mechanized forces, is not the latter alternative more probable ? A decision will still alone be reached by the defeat and annihilation of the enemy's forces in the field, followed up by a rapid occupation of his vital centres of government and industry.

Thus we come to the task of considering ground conditions of a type not very different from the opening phases of the Great War, but complicated by the problem of how best to use the new mechanized arms we possess and those aircraft which can, at this stage, be spared for purely army co-operation purposes.

The results to be gained by adventurous long distance raids by large mechanized columns in the early stages of a war are unlikely to be of such decisive value as to warrant the almost certain putting out of action of a great part of the very valuable available mechanical power ; though such columns may well be used in certain cases, on a limited objective, where an opportunity occurs of seizing quickly some tactical feature ; they must, however, come into hand again with efficiency unimpaired to be of use in their main function as a powerful mobile reserve to co-operate in the battle and to exploit success gained.

The war plan as decided on and developed in peace time may be of a primarily aggressive or defensive nature, but in both

cases it would appear that due regard will have to be paid to keeping in hand the largest possible mechanical reserve for use at the psychological moment in the first great battle. Will not reconnaissance and offensive or defensive flank action be primarily the rôle of the reorganized and mechanically strengthened Cavalry ?

This rôle has now been complicated by the ease with which Infantry, Machine Guns and Artillery can be moved rapidly about by mechanical means by the enemy, and by the general use of Tanks, Armoured Cars, and Aircraft ; it is evident, therefore, that the side which uses these new arms in co-operation with Cavalry with the greatest efficiency will have a considerable initial advantage ; hence the importance of arriving at some definite conclusion with regard to a new organization for our mobile forces, which firstly will ensure that Cavalry, Armoured Cars, and Tanks will be able to co-operate efficiently in the rôle they will together have to carry out ; and secondly, which will facilitate progressive development of a combined Arm.

Assuming that there will be some areas in which, on the outbreak of war, distant ground reconnaissance will be necessary and in which it will also be necessary to prevent such reconnaissance by the enemy, we have now to consider whether these two duties have not, owing to the introduction of new weapons and methods of war become, from a ground point of view, more than ever conflicting ; so that, up to a point, we may require different forces to carry them out, though these forces would in this case have to come broadly under one command and be always ready in every possible way to co-operate with each other as the situation developed.

In considering the rôle of independent reconnaissance the following axioms may be drawn from our training manuals : A mobile force to be effective in carrying out any independent mobile operation must have one primary mission allotted to it, and must be able at all times to move rapidly in any direction in pursuit of the attainment of this object. The movements of such a force must be well directed and must come as a surprise

to the enemy ; this can only be achieved by superior organization and superior efficiency in reconnaissance and communications. No portion of such a force must become pinned down except as part of a definite offensive operation leading directly to the fulfilment of its mission.

In considering this question it may be interesting to follow in outline the first phase of the operations of the French and German Cavalry in Belgium in August, 1914, as an illustration of the kind of situation with which mobile forces may still have to deal on the outbreak of a war ; and then to consider the question of an organization for our Mobile Forces suitable for the modern conditions of mobile war.

* * * * *

OPERATIONS OF SORDET'S CAVALRY CORPS IN BELGIUM,
5TH TO 15TH AUGUST, 1914.

The training manuals of the French Cavalry have been altered considerably since the war. Before August, 1914, it was considered that in a war with Germany masses of German cavalry would precede the advance of their armies and would seek out the French Cavalry and by mounted action strive to defeat and sweep them out of the way ; this view was supported by the manner in which Cavalry were handled in the pre-war German manoeuvres ; the organization and training of the French Cavalry was, therefore, based on this idea. In 1914, French Cavalry Divisions included 400 riflemen cyclists, each brigade had one section of machine guns and all troopers were armed with a carbine, but shock action was what they expected and were trained for. A Cavalry Corps was merely an agglomeration of divisions and had no properly organized Staff, or Corps troops. There was no properly organized transport for divisions ; Cavalry was supposed to live on the country.

In studying the operations in August, 1914, it is necessary to remember that though the French had considered the possibility of Belgian neutrality being infringed by the Germans they did not expect that they would break through the heart of that country. The plan drawn up in February, 1914, directed

that a Cavalry Corps (Sordet's) should in case of mobilization assemble about Montmédy in order to support the IInd Army Corps if the Germans tried an offensive by the Wôèvre ; on the other hand, if Belgian neutrality was infringed by the Germans this Corps was to advance as early as possible into Belgium to meet the enemy columns, particularly those that might advance through Belgian Luxembourg, south of the difficult and wooded ground Houffalize-St. Hubert, to gain information and to delay them. The Third Army was to guard against any advance through Metz and the Fifth Army assembled between Menehould and Retel, was to operate either immediately north of the Third Army in the direction of Thionville and Luxembourg or to advance into Belgian Luxembourg on the line Florenville-Neufchateau. In this latter case, after having gained information and delayed the enemy, Sordet's Cavalry Corps was to retire to the left flank of the Fifth Army and was to cover that flank.

On the 5th August, Belgian neutrality having been infringed by the Germans, Sordet's Cavalry Corps, consisting of the 1st 3rd and 5th Divisions, was moved into the Sedan area and there received the following order from French G.Q.G. :

VITREY-LE-FRANCOIS,

5th August. 19.00 hours.

ORDER No. 23.

Move the Cavalry Corps to-morrow into the region of Neufchateau. Reconnoitre on the front Allert-Martelange-Bastogne-Houffalize-La Roche. Keep in touch on your right with the 4th Cavalry Division, who will move into the Etalle area to reconnoitre the front Allert-Arlon-Longwy-Audun and Le Roman, and who will be under your orders.

Mission.—To find out the apparent contour of the enemy on the Eastern frontier of Belgium ; to find out the extent of the intervals between his various parts ; to delay the advance of the enemy columns if he advances ; to clear the area of enemy cavalry ; to spread the rumour that the whole French Army is following.

The 8th Infantry Brigade and Motor Convoy organized at Mezières are at your disposal . . .

(Actually only one regiment of three battalions materialized).

The Corps Staff was very insufficient, there being only one officer for each branch of the Staff and no liaison Staff Officers. The German detachments which had occupied Luxembourg were said to have been accompanied by Armoured Cars; the French having none, General Sordet improvised two sections of three each with requisitioned touring cars armed with machine guns. Although very primitive and insufficient they are said to have rendered valuable service in supporting reconnaissances, transmitting orders, and in escorting motor convoys.

Sordet's Cavalry Corps crossed the Meuse into Belgian territory on the 6th of August. The next fortnight a series of what seem unnecessary marches and counter marches took place, which appear to have been largely due to the difficulty in getting accurate information; when contact was gained it was not kept, reconnoitring detachments were not sufficiently closely backed up; information therefore usually only concerned enemy reconnoitring detachments and from this information deductions were drawn which later, often proved to be wrong. The Germans are said to have employed a line of machine gun posts supported by infantry and armoured cars as a screen on to which they continually drew the French reconnoitring detachments. It is curious to note that the Germans complain of the same tactics being employed by the French. It would seem probable that the use of fire-power by Cavalry detachments and by Infantry employed with the Cavalry upset the pre-conceived ideas and tactics of both sides. This, among other reasons, which will be discussed later, led to the wearing out of horses and men without an adequate return.

August 6th.—The Corps advanced into the Bouillon area. 1st Division to Paliseul; 5th Division, Bertrix; 3rd Division, and Corps H.Q., Bouillon.

Reconnaissances were ordered by Corps H.Q. as follows:—

1st Division, Bastogne-Houffalize-La Roche.

5th Division, Allert-Martelange.

3rd Division, Marche-Rochefort-Dinant (in the evening).

All detachments were ordered to send in information, positive or negative, to fixed points during the morning of the 7th.

The 4th Division, being in the Etalle area, was on the very southernmost edge of the area for which Sordet's Corps was really responsible and had to reconnoitre right down to Adun ; the object of putting this division from the beginning directly under General Sordet's orders is not very clear.

It is interesting to note that the Corps moved in three more or less parallel columns, each of which was ordered to send out reconnaissances as above. In the evening the 1st and 5th Divisions were in the forward line, Paliseul-Bertrix, with the 3rd behind at Bouillon ; that is, all in a more or less concentrated area with their reconnoitring detachments a very long way out. From a study of the map and from the nature of the operations which eventuated, which turned out to be so different from what was expected, would it not seem that it might have been better to have sent one division as early as possible to push on North-east of Neufchateau, a second division to the area between Rochefort and La Roche and to have established the 3rd Division with Corps H.Q. in reserve, somewhere centrally behind ? The forward divisions would thus have been in a position to back up their reconnoitring detachments and to co-ordinate and confirm the information sent in by them in a really forward area, and they would still, by the depth of their reconnaissance, have been able to retain their mobility, so that by keeping in touch with Corps H.Q. they could at any time co-operate in a combined Corps action if this proved necessary.

It would seem, in modern conditions, owing to the delaying power of fire action on both sides, that such limited dispersion for reconnaissance will not only be possible but will be necessary, the extent being governed by the efficiency and speed of communications, and on the factors of Time and Space ; that is, on the mobility of the forces engaged, so that the power of concentrating for co-operation is not lost. Great assistance may now also be expected from the co-operation of Aircraft.

August 7th.—The Corps was concentrated in the Offagne area facing east. On this date, from information received, the following message was sent to the Grand Quartier General :—

“No activity in the area between St. Hubert and the Luxembourg frontier. On this frontier Bastogne and Limerle are occupied by stationary enemy Infantry. Masses of enemy Cavalry appear to be moving North of Marche towards the North-west, probable direction the Meuse between Dinant and Namur.”

On this latter information, which was unconfirmed later, the Corps commander decided to leave the 4th Division in the Neufchateau area and to move the Corps northwards to attack the enemy cavalry reported to be there. As will be seen later, when following the movements of the German cavalry, this information, which was very misleading, must have referred to reconnoitring detachments of the 9th German Cavalry Division, which was at the time at Louveigne, south of Liège.

The weather was very hot ; the Corps reached the area of Ave-Honnay-Chanly and spent the night there. The 45th Regiment of Infantry (three battalions) at Jehonville. In the afternoon, G.Q.G. having been informed of the Corps Commander's dispositions and intentions, approved of them and added that if a favourable opportunity occurred a vigorous action next day would be a good thing.

The Corps Commander decided to continue his advance Northwards next day, in order to attack the large enemy cavalry force which had been reported in this direction. This report had remained unconfirmed, but he still thought it might be correct, and in order apparently to comply with G.Q.G.'s request for vigorous action, he further decided, if possible, to push on in the direction of Liège. Orders were therefore issued in the evening for the three divisions to march next day by different routes to the Ciney area, where they would receive fresh orders. The 45th Infantry Regiment was to be moved up by M.T. and was to hold the crossings of the Lesse near Rochefort.

Again on this day reconnoitring detachments were pushed

out by all three divisions, the Corps being kept concentrated in a small area South and West of the river Lesse.

August 8th.—The Cavalry Corps arrived in the Ciney area about 11.30 a.m.; no fresh information had been obtained, and the divisions were told to water and feed. The Corps commander held a conference and decided to march on Liège to find out what forces were besieging that place and “to attempt to make a diversion if possible, at least by the use of his artillery.” The Corps resumed its march at 13.30 hours. The divisions marched by three routes in three more or less parallel columns, the country was very close, and reconnaissance therefore difficult. The Corps Commander marched with the centre column which was to direct; a quick forced march was ordered, 9 to 10 kilometres per hour, in order to reach the outskirts of Liège, by 18.00 hours at latest. In spite of every effort the pace soon slowed down, owing to the difficulty of keeping touch between columns, the meeting of enemy detachments, and the heat; by 19.30 hours the main bodies had only arrived about Ouffert-Fraiture and Villers-le-Temple, all the roads to Liège and all the crossings of the Ourthe were found to be barricaded and guarded by the enemy. It was too late to advance further, so, partly on account of the nearness of enemy infantry, and partly in order to get supplies, the Corps retired to the area Clavier-Modave and Durbuy, which were reached late at night. About midnight the following message was sent to G.Q.G.:—

“The Cavalry Corps has marched on Liège. A large body of cavalry was reported but it has disappeared. At nightfall the advanced elements of the Corps arrived in sight of Liège. The Corps is spending the night in the Modave-Clavier area. The intention of the G.O.C. is to continue to-morrow the general mission given.”

Here again we see this movement in three parallel columns. The roads were good but the country was enclosed. A Cavalry Corps in this formation, especially when badly equipped with facilities for inter-communication, must indeed have been an extremely difficult force to keep under control or to bring into

action effectively. Surely, in these days, if such an advance were undertaken, an advanced division responsible for reconnaissance and advanced guard duties, followed by the other two divisions on parallel lines, would mean quicker movement and more control? This move of the whole Corps on Liège without proper previous reconnaissance, seems to have been undertaken largely as a political move to put heart into the Belgians.

The only air squadron with the Corps, that belonging to the 5th Division, was told to reconnoitre the neighbourhood of Liege, but, owing to there being no aerodrome nearer than the frontier this was beyond the radius of the machines.

It may be noted that the main body of the 9th German Cavalry Division did not cross the Ourthe until 9th August, on which day it reached Ouffert.

August 9th.—General Sordet judged that the advance could not be continued now that the enemy had been stirred up, and also as the Corps was somewhat “in the blue” and away from the area which it has been ordered to keep under observation; he therefore decided to get back to a more central position South of the Lesse between Beauraing and Rochefort. Here the Corps would be behind the natural barrier formed by the deep valleys of the Lesse and the Homme. The following message was sent to G.Q.G. :—“All the country South of the Meuse from Dinant to the Ourthe is free of the enemy. The Cavalry Corps is retiring to the South of the valley Lesse-Homme towards Rochefort. General Sordet would like to be informed as to how his Cavalry Corps should be utilised” The following answer was received that evening :—“I approve of your dispositions for to-night. It is imperative that you should find out by your aeroplanes and patrols what is going on to the East of the Ourthe between its source and La Roche. Your patrols should be actively on the watch incessantly. Keep in telephone communication with the 4th Division.”

Here again the Corps is kept concentrated in a small area, and each division is made responsible for an area of distant reconnaissance. Not yet having found the enemy's main body of cavalry, and not being at all clear as to the situation, one

would have thought that the Corps would have explored East and South of the Ourthe and have stayed East of the Homme. La Roche, Marche, St. Hubert and Bastogne are the big road junctions in this area. As will appear later the Corps was now boxed up behind the Lesse and Homme, the crossings of which were rather restricted.

August 10th.—The Corps remained in bivouac awaiting definite news of the enemy. On information received from the North-East (which must have referred to the 9th German Cavalry Division's reconnaissances from Ouffet), General Sordet was about to move the Corps into the Marche La Roche area to back up his reconnaissance there, when news from Neufchateau made him put off this movement. This latter information referred to the 1st Germany Cavalry Corps, which reached Bastogne and Nives on this date.

The Corps had covered 250 kilometres during the last five days. The shoeing was causing much trouble, there were not enough spares; 15,000 shoes were urgently indented for. The transmission of information and the interrogation of prisoners were not being efficiently carried out. The reconnaissances were not pushed far enough out, nor were the patrols properly backed up. The civil telephone system was found to be a very unsatisfactory method of intercommunication. In fact in one case a regiment retired on receipt of a telephonic order which was found later to have been sent by the enemy.

August 11th.—Information was received that an enemy Cavalry Division followed by a large force of all arms, was moving from Martelange to Neufchateau, the Corps was therefore moved to the Offagne area, but no more was seen or heard of the enemy reported. The day was spent—1st Division at Villance, 3rd at Oupont, and 5th at Paliseul. The 45th Infantry Regiment and Corps H.Q. at Maissin. One Cavalry Brigade was left at Rochefort in observation Northwards. Again the Corps was kept concentrated each division being given an area of reconnaissance.

It is difficult to understand, if the information from Neufchateau was good enough to warrant the move of the whole

Corps South, why one division was not sent on ahead to clear up the position about Neufchateau, the rest of the Corps being kept in hand ready to support and co-operate with the advanced division as opportunity offered. It would seem that the results of reconnaissance were so indefinite that no picture of the situation as a whole could be traced out, and that as a result up to this time the Corps Commander was unable to decide on any definite plan of action. The country was of course very thickly wooded and difficult.

Actually on this date, as will be seen later, the 1st German Cavalry Corps reached Laroche and Menil.

August 12th.—Various more or less contradictory reports were received, and the general impression gained from them was to the effect that Neufchateau had been evacuated by the enemy, who it seemed were moving further North (this was correct); the Corps was therefore again moved back South of the Lesse. General Sordet asked G.Q.G. if he might move his Corps to the Left of the Meuse as he thought the enemy were moving North-west, and he was anxious to get out of the cramped position he was in, on to the enemy's outer flank.

August 13th.—G.Q.G. replied that if the Corps were obliged to retire West of the Meuse it should be moved to the Left of the Fifth Army, to the area Marienburg-Chimay. During this day reconnaissances North of the Lesse reported two enemy cavalry divisions in the Marche-St. Hubert-Rochefort area, said to be unsupported by Infantry. This was the first accurate information of importance gained.

August 14th.—The presence of two enemy cavalry divisions was confirmed, they were apparently supported by two Infantry battalions. Enemy Cavalry was also reported to the South, about Redu (presumably a false report), but the size of this force was not ascertained. General Sordet did not like to cross the Lesse to attack the enemy North of it, as the crossings were difficult and he thought he ought to cross the Meuse.

August 15th.—The Corps was moved back early into the Mesnil-St. Blaise area. During the morning the sound of guns was clearly heard. (This was the German 1st Cavalry Corps

attacking the French Infantry on the line of the Meuse about Dinant). The Staff had a lively discussion, some wanted to cross the Lesse and attack the Germans, the crossings were held by Sordet's Infantry, others did not think this advisable owing to the nature of the ground. General Sordet decided to cross the Meuse, in order to keep touch with the Left of the French Army and to maintain liaison with the Belgian Army.

One does not quite know what considerations influenced General Sordet in making this decision, but what an opportunity this would appear to have been to fall upon the flank of the Guard and 5th German Cavalry Divisions.

This completes the first phase of the operations of Sordet's Cavalry Corps. During these eleven days it had done a great deal of marching and counter-marching, but it had accomplished very little in the way of real reconnaissance, or in delaying the enemy columns. General Sordet seems to have expected to meet large masses of enemy cavalry and to attack them mounted, but his reconnaissance, which was not strongly or closely enough backed up, never really found out what was going on behind the German reconnoitring detachments. The equipment, training and methods of reconnaissance of the French Cavalry were not suited to cope with the new situation, so different from what they had expected. The ineffectiveness of the reconnaissance of this Corps seems to have been largely due to the fact that sufficiently strong detachments were not quick at getting out long distances, and establishing themselves in wide areas with the necessary "punch" close behind to enable the situation to be cleared up when definite enemy resistance was encountered.

Can there be a clearer illustration that the above, of the necessity in the modern "Cavalry rôle" for quick and accurate reconnaissance, properly backed up; for good communications; for mobile forces that are organized on really up-to-date lines and trained for elasticity of manœuvre; and for a leader capable of handling and making the utmost use of this arm.

No mention is made by either side of information received from the air during this period; a factor which will, of course, be of very great importance in future wars.

Let us now turn to the action of the German Cavalry in this Northern sector during this period.

* * * * *

OPERATIONS OF THE 1ST AND 2ND GERMAN CAVALRY CORPS
IN BELGIUM 4TH TO 20TH AUGUST, 1924

The German Cavalry in 1914 had the following organization: A division was composed of three brigades, each of two regiments; one Horse Artillery brigade (three 4-gun batteries); one machine-gun detachment of six guns; a wireless detachment, and other divisional troops including a company of riflemen cyclists. Staffs were well trained, and there was a proper Corps organization.

The 2nd Cavalry Corps (Lieutenant-General von der Marwitz) consisted of the 2nd, 4th and 9th Cavalry Divisions, with the 3rd, 4th, 7th, 9th and 10th Jaeger (Rifle) Battalions attached. It was given the following mission:

- (1) To clear the way for the First and Second Armies towards the line Antwerp-Brussels-Charleroi; first having surrounded Liège, the 2nd and 4th Divisions moving North and the 9th Division moving South of that place;
- (2) To delay such Belgian, French or English forces as might be found in Belgium;
- (3) To cut the railway leading North from Dinant and Namur to Brussels.

This Corps concentrated in the Aix-la-Chapelle area. The leading elements of the 2nd and 4th Divisions crossed the Belgian frontier on the 4th August, and advanced to the Meuse North of Liège, they were, however, unable to use the crossings near Liège on account of the forts; bridging was therefore started near the Dutch frontier, but up to 8th August only reconnaissance detachments could cross and these only by swimming and the use of steel boats; after this light bridges were available. The mission given to these divisions was: 2nd Division to reconnoitre North of a line through Wavre and Enghien, 4th Division to reconnoitre South of this line

and down to the line Meuse-Sambre. These two divisions crossed the Meuse on 8th August, and on the 9th reached the Loos area ; from this place their reconnoitring detachments were in touch with the Belgian Army on the line of the Gette. They were definitely kept to this area in order to screen Liège and to delay any enemy advance in this direction. They were held up in this area until 15th August. All sorts of rumours were current during this period as to enemy concentrations taking place behind the Belgian line ; but, being tied down to this area no flank reconnaissance in any strength could be made. These two divisions suffered heavy casualties in trying to break through the Belgian line. Many mounted attacks against Infantry positions were made, but were always broken up by the fire of Artillery, Machine Guns and Rifles. The lesson that Cavalry cannot successfully attack Infantry in position except by the use of manœuvre, surprise and covering fire had not yet been learned.

Meanwhile the 9th Division reached Louveigne, South of Liège, on 4th August and seized the bridges over the Ourthe near Poulseur. From the 5th to the 8th August it remained in this area, sending out reconnaissances towards the line Namur-Dinant. On the 9th August it crossed the Ourthe and reaching Ouffet, spent the 10th and 11th in this neighbourhood reached Stree on the 12th and halted on the 13th August ; it crossed the Meuse on the 14th at Hermalle and joined up with the 4th Division at Thisnes on the 15th August. On this date von der Marwitz was ordered to march on Perwez with these two divisions, while the 2nd Division was to continue screening the First Army.

On the 16th August the leading elements of these two divisions were engaged with the Belgian Cavalry in the Chaumont-Autre Eglise area. The Belgian Army was at this time about Wavre, Tirlemont and Diest. On the 17th August, the First and Second Armies and the 2nd Cavalry Corps (less 2nd Division) were placed under the orders of General von Bülow (Second Army), for a combined operation against the Belgians. The 2nd Cavalry Division was placed directly under the orders

of the First Army to reconnoitre and screen the extreme right flank of that Army.

It will be seen from the above that the 2nd German Cavalry corps was given the mission of both screening and reconnoitring, and that the 2nd and 4th Divisions of this Corps were tied down to a definite area in the first instance, for definite reasons ; they were not therefore able to carry out an independent reconnoitring rôle. Does not this show that the missions of distant reconnaissance and screening are, up to a point, definitely conflicting ? For, in order to screen it is necessary to remain in a definite area, whereas to carry out distant reconnaissance efficiently, absolute liberty of manœuvre is essential. Screening is really another name for *Protective* reconnaissance. If an independent reconnoitring force is stopped on one line, it must be at liberty to move in any other direction that seems to offer more promise of finding out what is going on behind enemy reconnoitring detachments ; it will probably have to fight hard for this information, but will not normally make frontal attacks on positions already held in strength by the enemy. It must achieve surprise, by the use of its mobility ; by efficient reconnaissance it must discover in what area it can best carry out its mission and must strike there by surprise. This can only be done if it is free to manœuvre and is not tied down by protective duties. It must possess the necessary elasticity to be able to avoid becoming pinned down, and must retain its cohesion.

* * * * *

Now to turn to the 1st German Cavalry Corps, which was operating in the area more directly opposed to Sordet's Corps. This Corps (Lieutenant-General Baron von Richthofen), consisted of the Guard and 5th Cavalry Divisions, with the Guard Jaegers, Guard Light Infantry Battalion, and the 11th, 12th and 13th Jaeger Battalions.

The mission allotted to this Corps was :

- (1) To reconnoitre the line of the Meuse from Namur to Mezieres ;

- (2) To find out if the line of the Meuse between Namur and Givet was held by the French and, if so, by what formations ;
- (3) To find out if there were any French forces East of the Meuse.

August 7th.—The Guard and 5th Divisions reached Dekirch and Mersch respectively. The Guard Division reconnoitred the line Bastogne-Martelange. The 5th Division reconnoitred towards Arlon, near which one of its reconnaissance squadrons fought an action with French Cavalry. The horses of these divisions were said to have been unfit, particularly those of the artillery.

August 8th.—Information was obtained that an enemy Cavalry Division was advancing North from Arlon and that enemy cavalry were at Martelange. A detachment, consisting of two squadrons, with a light wireless station and some thirty cyclists, was sent out to reconnoitre the line Namur-Dinant and three separate squadrons were sent to reconnoitre areas South of Dinant.

August 9th.—Information was obtained that no strong enemy cavalry force was in the Arlon area. (The 4th French Cavalry Division must have been somewhere in this direction.) The 1st Cavalry Corps started marching North-west. The Guard Division arrived at Eschdorf and the 5th Division with the 12th and 13th Jaegers reached Rambruck. Two Jaeger Battalions were moved to Wiltz.

August 10th.—The Guard Division crossed the Belgian frontier and reached Bastogne. The 5th Division reached Nives. Patrols from the Guard Division had some skirmishes with French Cavalry West of Bastogne.

August 11th.—A reconnaissance squadron of the 5th Division had a brush with French Cavalry near St. Hubert. Information was obtained that the area South of Laroche was free from enemy, that one enemy squadron was located at Harsin and Marche respectively, and that these squadrons belonged to the 1st Division of Sordet's Corps. (These were part of the brigade left behind by General Sordet at Rochefort when he moved

South.) On this day the Guard Division reached La Roche, and the 5th Division reached Menil, East of St. Hubert.

August 12th and 13th.—On the 12th the Guard Division reached Marche and the 5th Division Forrieres. A halt was made on the 13th to rest horses, overhaul equipment, and to make further reconnaissances. The Guard Jaeger Battalion joined the Guard Division. Many patrol combats took place with the enemy. Wireless communication was established with the 9th Cavalry Division of the 2nd Corps near Huy.

August 14th.—Information was obtained that Assesse was occupied by enemy troops of all arms. Patrols were fired on at Yvoir and Houx, North of Dinant. Two French Cavalry Divisions were reported to be South of Ciergnon. The Guard Division reached Ciney and a mixed detachment from this division, of Cavalry, Infantry and Cyclists occupied Assesse after a fight. The 5th Division reached Achene; a part of this Division were engaged with French Cavalry North of Custinne.

August 15th.—Patrols being unable to cross the Meuse, a reconnaissance in force was directed against Yvoir-Dinant. The Jaeger Battalions were pushed forward under Artillery support, the Cavalry divisions echeloned on the flanks; progress was made against a good deal of opposition and seventy-five men of the 33rd and 148th French Infantry Regiments were captured, this showed the presence of the French 1st and 2nd Corps in the Namur-Givet area. French reinforcements were brought up and the 1st Cavalry Corps was withdrawn to the Achene area, where they were covered by Jaegers. During this day a strong body of French Cavalry was located South of the Lesse and was fired on by reconnoitring detachments.

August 16th-19th.—These four days were spent in this area reconnoitring and "tapping" at the line of the Meuse. The results of these reconnaissances were reported to the Third Army, who were told that the 1st Cavalry Corps proposed to hold the heights East of Dinant until the arrival of the Infantry.

August 20th.—The 1st Cavalry Corps was relieved by the Third Army. The problem now arose whether this Corps

should be employed in the hilly and wooded country South of Dinant, or in the more open country North of Namur and the Sambre. The latter alternative was decided on.

The mission allotted to the 1st German Cavalry Corps was primarily one of reconnaissance. The system followed in carrying this out was to send out squadrons which again pushed out patrols; these squadrons were constantly engaged with enemy detachments, but were seldom backed up closely by strong bodies, the result was that the information they gathered was generally confined to enemy reconnoitring detachments; little real use was made of mobility by the Divisions. It must, however, be remembered that the country was very enclosed and the people actively hostile.

Had there been one or more independent Cavalry Divisions on the extreme Right of the German front in Belgium they might, perhaps, have been able, South of the Dutch frontier, to find a way to outflank the Belgian Army and later to operate very successfully on the outside flank and ahead of the German First Army. It is noteworthy that out of the ten German Cavalry Divisions employed at this time on the Western front, only three, the 2nd Cavalry Corps, were employed on this Right Flank and these were, to a great extent, tied down and their action hampered by orders from higher authority.

* * * * *

An attempt has been made above to show the difficulties that Fire-power had introduced into the reconnoitring rôle, even in 1914; since then the Tank and Armoured Car have been introduced. How is this going to effect the situation? Is it not clear that the only effective method of dealing with fire-power in reconnaissance is to tape down the situation with Aircraft, Cavalry and Armoured Cars, and then to use mobility for manœuvre; and having sensed or created a situation calling for offensive action in order to enable the allotted mission to be carried out, to strike by surprise, with the full co-operation of Cavalry, Artillery, Armoured Cars and *Tanks*? Moreover, it is agreed that Armoured Cars and Tanks are the only real antidote to enemy armoured cars and tanks in a mobile recon-

noitring, that is, *offensive rôle*. Can one not imagine then, the unenviable position of Cavalry unprovided with these weapons, or of these weapons without the co-operation of cavalry, when engaged with an enemy possessing a mobile arm in which both of these are combined and used efficiently in their proper spheres ? And does not this point to the importance of organizing a combined arm for the mobile rôle as early as possible ? It will generally be admitted that the more mobile forces become, the more urgent is the question of communications, indeed, the factor of *control* must limit the degree of mobility that can usefully be employed, so that in considering any reorganization of our mobile arms this matter will require full consideration. It is noteworthy that the Germans were using wireless with their Cavalry with some success in 1914.

A combined Arm of this nature might, perhaps, co-operate in reconnaissance somewhat as follows :

A proportion of Armoured Cars in co-operation with Aircraft would do long-distance reconnaissances until contact was gained, thus obtaining positive or negative information regarding localities well ahead. Some Aircraft would work well ahead of these cars, and some carry out close reconnaissance just in front of them ; other armoured cars would, during this period, work ahead of and in co-operation with the Cavalry advanced guards, thus speeding up their rate of march. When contact has been gained, however, it will no longer be possible for the armoured cars to push on owing to enemy anti-tank measures ; they will then be used to back up Cavalry reconnoitring detachments, as *opportunity* offers. It would seem essential that at least a proportion of them should be armed with an anti-tank weapon. Behind the advanced guard will come the main body of Cavalry, Artillery and Tanks. Meanwhile Infantry, with Machine Guns and Anti-Tank Guns in lorries, will be moving up behind the mobile reconnoitring force, and will form an anti-enemy reconnaissance screen, when and where necessary, under the general orders of the Mobile Force Commander. Thus when a real line of enemy resistance or advance is discovered and taped down by the Mobile Formations, which have been scattered to a

limited extent for reconnaissance ; these, being free from protective duties, will be able to concentrate rapidly in the area in which they can best carry out their mission.

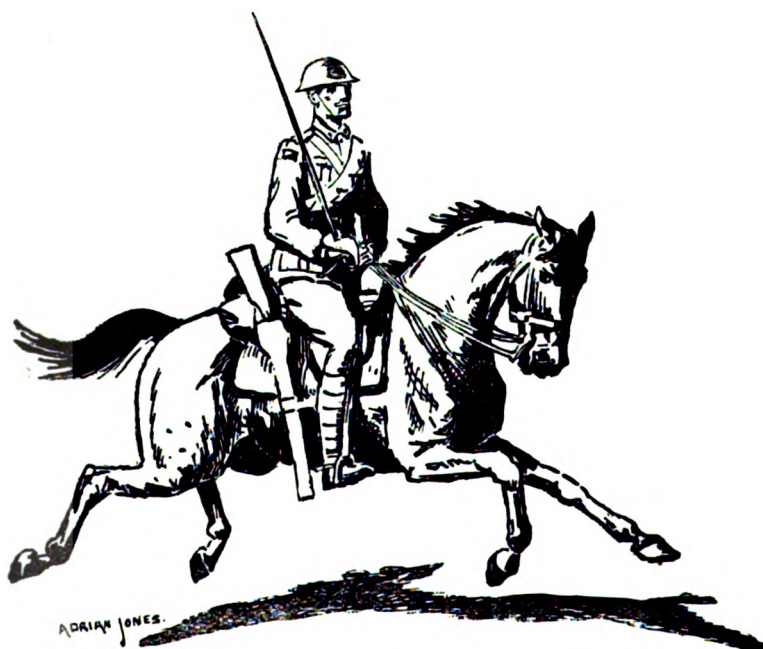
The action of a combined mobile force operating in European conditions, against an equally equipped and organized enemy, has above been considered. There can be little doubt, however, that for war in any theatre the strengthening of our Cavalry with mechanical arms, Aircraft, Armoured Cars, and Tanks, will greatly add to the efficiency and radius of action of the Arm in all conditions of warfare ; and this will particularly be so, if 6-wheeled lorry transport is used, which will enable a great deal of weight to be taken off the Cavalry Horse.

The moving of fire-power over hills, rivers and through forest, where vehicles cannot go, will be a factor in using the mobility of Cavalry in reconnaissance, and often be of great value in pursuit. Cavalry will more and more have to take to the bad ground. It would seem, therefore, that Cavalry machine guns should for the present, be carried on pack horses and thus be able to accompany Cavalry over any country a horse can cross, or a great deal of efficiency will be lost both in developing mobile fire-power where it may most be needed and in the tactics of the Arm. The question of Transport, however, is in this respect quite different ; Transport columns can come along behind in comparatively safe areas, and can be directed to convenient places which have already been made good.

In considering the question of a new organization for our Mobile Forces, are there not overwhelming reasons in favour of reorganizing our existing Mobile Arm—Cavalry—which is backed by centuries of experience in the mobile rôle and which already possesses a tactical doctrine and mode of thought accustomed to deal with mobile action in wide areas ?—rather than creating an entirely new mechanized Arm. Must not organization be the servant of tactics rather than tactics of organization ? Is it not an axiom of almost universal application that the Old must, if efficiency is economically to be retained, gradually and progressively merge into the New ?

If Armoured Cars and Tanks are added to the Cavalry organization, which has been evolved by actual experience in carrying out the Mobile rôle, subsequent adjustments can be made as integration takes place, in the light of experience gained in working in co-operation.

It is essential, moreover, to bear in mind our Cavalry in England, in India and elsewhere abroad. This is a matter of very real importance, not only on account of the question of reliefs for British Cavalry abroad, but in order that all our Cavalry (or Mobile Forces) may form a homogeneous whole; capable of taking the field together, trained and organized on the same basis.



And
sent
are
wol
in t
ove
and
are
The
sur
tha
tac
by
ser
as

w
th
T
fe
o
g

l
s
o

REYNARD THE FOX

His Nature, Craft, and Tactics

BY A. R. HORWOOD, F.L.S. (late of Leicester Museum)

AMONGST wild dog types, Reynard the Fox is the only representative in this country, as the true wild dog and the wolf are extinct. There are differences between the dog and the wolf type, in the skull, and in the eye pupil, which is circular in the wolf, elliptic in the fox. One can recognise the fox moreover by its build, by its short limbs and bushy tail or brush, and its long ears. The foxes, of which there are many species, are nocturnal, hiding in earths by day, and hunting at night. They do not hunt in packs, but separately or in pairs. A fox surpasses both dog and wolf in cunning, but is less intelligent than the former, less fierce, save at the end of a run when tackled by a pack of hounds, than the latter. All foxes live by preying on other animals, and their stealthiness and slyness serves them well in obtaining their prey, as they are sagacious as well as cunning.

Our English fox is generally of a reddish brown colour, with white under-parts. There is black on the ears and parts of the limbs. Its brush is white at the tip, or dark grey or black. The brush is a third of the total length which is about four feet. A fox head or "mask" is broad, and the muzzle pointed or sharp. The fox head is flat. The eyes are set obliquely, giving the sly expression. The ears are erect and pointed.

Long in body the fox is well covered with hair or fur, the limbs being, in proportion, short. The long bushy brush is straight, and when a fox is crouching it sweeps the ground. On most foxes there is a patch of white or ashen-coloured fur here and there, as on the forehead and shoulders, lower back,

towards the tail, and on the outside of the hind legs. There is white fur round the lips, throat and cheeks. Along the inner side of the legs there is a white stripe. The ear tips and feet or "pads" are black. In general colour, reddish brown; the brush is brown, yellow-white internally with a black crest. In size foxes vary much, but usually measure three feet from the muzzle to the insertion of the brush, which is about sixteen inches. They stand fourteen inches high at the shoulder. The male fox is a dog-fox, the female a vixen, and the young are cubs.

When kept in confinement, the fox, however much petted, is suspicious, sly and timid as a rule, and seldom given to forming an attachment for its master, like the dog, and is, unlike the dog or even wolf or jackal, devoid of any sense of gratitude. A fox barks like the dog, or yelps. The bite of the fox may be severe and dangerous. The fox has a very strong and fetid smell. The scent is contained in glands at the base of the tail. This strong scent enables hounds to follow up the fox from drag or trail.

A fox, though nocturnal, has keen sight, and its power of smell is also acute. The vixen carries her young about nine weeks and litters of cubs are to be seen in February or March. When she is feeding the cubs the vixen is both bold and courageous. The fox lives ten to twelve years, if it is fortunate. In the first year a fox is a cub, in the second a dog-fox or vixen, in the third an old fox or vixen. Foxes breed at eighteen months or two years.

No doubt the fox has been given a very bad character. But to the foxhunter all his bad qualities are redeemed by the sport he affords, and a fox that has given a good run stands high in the estimation of the sportsman. Nor is there a more beautiful furred animal in the British Isles, excluding the stag perhaps.

That the fox is built for speed is shown by the round deep ribs, the muscular back, loins, thighs and general outline. Its handsome brush serves several purposes. It is a rudder, enabling the running fox to twist and turn at any stage in a

run. It is also used in jumping an obstacle, such as a bank or wall, when the tail is revolved, giving the varmint the needed impetus to clear seven or eight feet. Foxes climb trees also by aid of the brush.

A fox may be said to be carnivorous and nothing in the way of fur or feather comes amiss to it. Foxes naturally live on hares, rabbits, rats, mice, and moles. In non-hunting areas, as over a great part of Scotland and some other hilly areas, foxes prey on weakly sheep, lambs, grouse, ptarmigan, young roe-deer and wildfowl. Where hunted, foxes feed much on rabbits, leverets, brooding partridges, pheasants and their eggs, invading breeding pens.

Much damage is done in the poultry yard by the fox, and the vixen with cubs. Usually raiding hen-roosts at night, the fox will, however, make daylight attacks on poultry or ducks. In addition to such food, foxes feed on rats, mice (common, long and short-tailed), worms, snails, frogs and beetles. They thus keep down vermin and other harmful animals. If farmers, poultry keepers and game preservers were more careful there would be less destruction by foxes. Foxhunting, instead of keeping down the number of foxes, as in the case of other preserved animals, has the effect, it is believed, of increasing them.

A fish diet is acceptable to the fox, also, near the sea, or rivers containing salmon or trout. Reynard also preys on small birds and animals, and will eat newts and reptiles, as well as fruit and vegetables, failing other food. The fox in Scotland, where it is known as the tod, lives on moor mice, which do much harm to moor vegetation, and in this way it does much good. In France and Italy, where there are vineyards, foxes feed on grapes, and so do much damage. If hard put to it Reynard will eat berries and fruits.

With the utmost prudence, vigilance and patience a fox awaits the proper moment for his depredations and he suits his tactics to the occasion. There is cunning displayed in the choice of an earth at the edge of a wood, but close to some farmyard, where Reynard is able to listen to the crowing of the

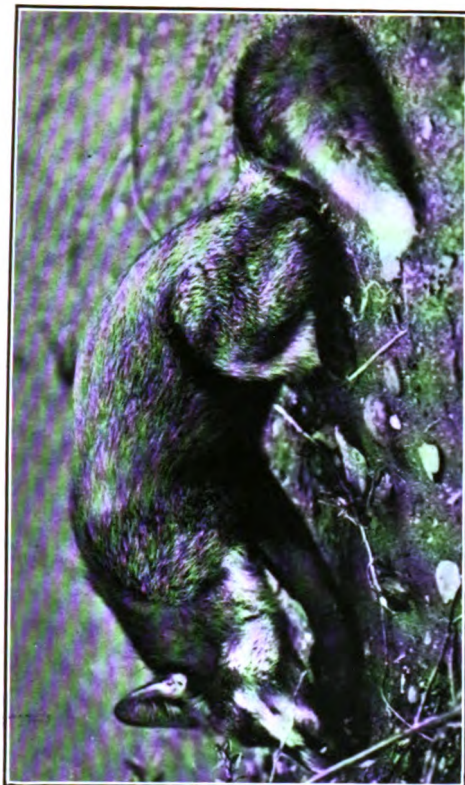
“cock up” of a pheasant, and the cackling of the hens in the farmyard. He creeps along stealthily and his approach is unseen, his attack a surprise, and seldom unsuccessful.

We find in his billet or pellet, the wings of beetles, fur, feathers and small bones. A fox is a wanderer by night and sets out soon after sunset. He will hunt far and wide, until just before dawn, and often travels long distances, especially about Christmas time, when courtship is in full swing. When out a long distance from his earth, often a fox cannot get back before daylight, and sometimes also Reynard is tired and sleepy. He then makes a kennel under a dry gorse bush, or hedge, curling up his tail around his body.

Winter is the breeding season for foxes, and cubs may usually be found during March or even in February in an early season. There is only one litter a year, unless one is destroyed when a second may be dropped. Cub families muster three to six, rarely as many as eight. The vixen seldom goes far from her earth when she is in cub. Therefore, as she is more lethargic generally, save when the cubs are born, she rarely gives long or good runs. It is the dog-fox that makes the famous runs. When the vixen has littered, should her earth be disturbed or discovered, she will carry off the cubs, one by one, to another earth. In nature the vixen is tender and anxious towards her cubs. When a run has been in progress a vixen has been observed carrying a cub in her mouth, thereby risking her own life for her cubs. When first born, cubs, like puppies, are blind. Each is of a dark brown colour at first. They grow all the first eighteen months of their existence, and are not mature until older.

To watch cubs playing about the earths at dusk or early in the morning is a fine picture, for you may then see the dog fox and the vixen playing with the cubs, as a dog with its puppies or a cat with her kittens.

Cubs will display extraordinary activity, bouncing up in the air, playing hide-and-seek, or turning somersaults. It is necessary to watch them to get on the down side of the wind. At other times you may observe the vixen returning to the



Photo—J. T. Newman

FOX FEEDING



Photo—J. T. Newman

FOX CUBS AT THE EARTH



Photo—J. T. Newman

“REYNARD ON THE PROWL”

This Fox hid a Fowl, but came back for it.

earths at dusk, bringing something back in her mouth, such as a rabbit or pheasant, and when there appears to be no danger about the cubs have a fine game, tumbling over each other and tussling over the most toothsome morsels.

Reynard sleeps long and soundly by day, and lies up in a round form, but he is always on the alert and one would imagine he slept with one eye and both ears open so seldom is he, unless surfeited, surprised. But at night he is full of activity, for he then seeks his prey under the cover of the darkness. At repose the fox may stretch out his hind legs and lie on his belly, watching his prey. Foxes seldom lie out except in clear and warm weather unless obliged, after a night's orgy, when a dry place for kennel, under furze or on a tree stump, is selected. In daylight, when they see a fox, crows, magpies and other birds sound the alarm, and jays and blackbirds will also fly above the fox, as will crows and magpies when hounds are running, following the varmint from tree to tree, and so betray his whereabouts to the huntsman.

Reynard, moreover, well displays his craft in the manner in which he makes his earth near his source of food, and in his stealthy mode of obtaining it. As it prowls here and there in search of its prey, the fox listens intently, especially when near the farmyard. Having successfully entered a hen-roost a fox will kill every fowl within reach. He takes those he has killed away one by one, so long as he is undisturbed, and may dig a hole and cover the buried fowl up with earth, or carry it back to his earth, and return for the rest. No food is more relished by the fox than the rabbit; as rabbits are often the keeper's perquisites he is the deadliest foe of the fox.

There are several varieties of British foxes. The lowland fox differs much from the mountain, hill, or fell fox. The latter is known as the greyhound fox, and has great speed and power of endurance. Fell foxes are not easily killed, being hunted on foot, and they are often shot. They will carry off lambs and worry the sheep. Hence fell farmers or dalesmen kill the cubs when they come out to play, lying in wait for them with a gun. They are also trapped and poisoned. Fell foxes make

their earths in rocks, and around the mouth there are remains of all kinds of booty they have taken and devoured. When old enough the cubs go to the moors where they feed on grouse, curlew, dotterel, plover and mountain hares. The mountain fox is red, very agile and fleet. Other local forms are the mastiff fox, and the cur fox.

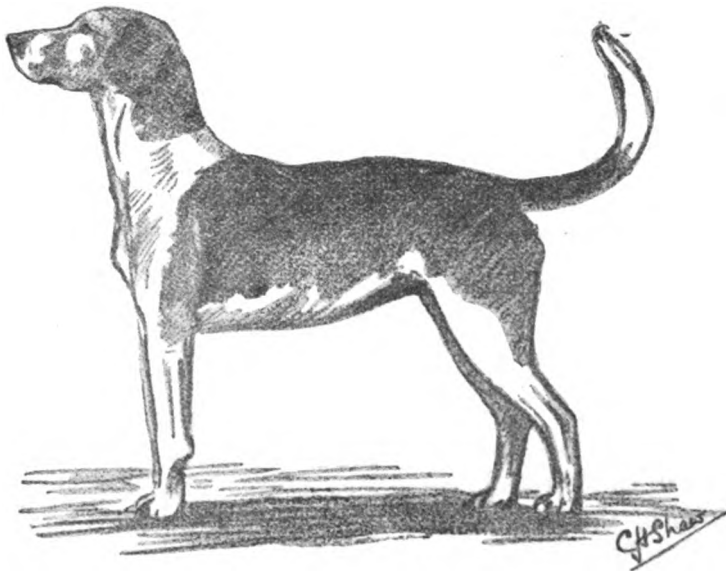
Many and ingenious are the tactics of Reynard when he is hunted. He causes the huntsman more occasion to think than the other animals of the chase, unless it be the hare with its repeated doubles. As a rule the fox makes a point for the nearest earth, where if unstopped he goes to ground, lying low until hounds are drawn off, or the fox terriers are sent down, and he is dug out. Reynard is generally fairly secure when the earths are under a rock or the roots of a tree. If unable to go to ground the fox will adopt all sorts of devices to evade the inevitable—being chopped in the open. In a large number of cases he makes for woodland. There he runs through the thickest, thorniest parts, most likely to hinder the hounds, and so gain respite for himself. His course is straight ahead of the pack, often not very far from the leading hound. When he is tackled Reynard gives a good account of himself, being renowned for his obstinate and desperate courage in extremities.

As may be seen by his devices to obscure all trace of it the varmint knows that he is hunted by his scent, for he will sometimes run along the top of a wall for a long distance, and so bring about a check. He has been known to roll in manure to kill his scent. Reynard also contrives by running down wind, to find out where the hounds and field are, and he will stop to catch a brief glimpse of them and then go on and on. Not infrequently a fox is lost by running intentionally through a flock of sheep, or other stock, their scent obliterating his own. The fox knows the sound and voice of the huntsman, and the meaning of the huntsman's horn. Directly he hears it he is up and away. To obscure his scent a fox will also cross a sheet of water, being able to swim.

As foxes lie up in coverts, these are drawn to find a fox, as nowadays, owing to the time of a meet, 11 o'clock, it is not

possible, except when cubbing, to hunt from the drag or trail of the fox. The coverts foxes like best are warm dry coverts, with shelter from the wind, and preferably those that are quiet and free from disturbance.

Big woods furnish the best foxes as a rule. But some small coverts, of gorse and blackthorn, form good draws. Sometimes foxes lie up also in osier beds. If there are no natural coverts they need to be made. Gorse or furze coverts are the best artificial coverts. These are sown in April, the seed being run in drills, 14 inches apart. A grass field can be ploughed up for this purpose. The grass grows up and protects the young furze plants and forms cover for the fox. Thorn and privet coverts also make good fox coverts.



NOTES ON RIDING IN SWEDEN

By A SWEDISH CAVALRY OFFICER (COUNT C. CSÖN BONDE,
3rd Life Hussars)

AT the request of the Editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL the following lines have been written, endeavouring to give some information on the possibilities of sport on horseback in Sweden and some other items of interest.

We are denied the royal sport of hunting. The climate is not very suitable, the ground being frozen hard before the end of October. But the chief difficulty is the character of the country. The chances of disappearing into and going to ground in our vast woods, where riding is generally impossible, are too much in favour of the fox. A substitute is, however, found in riding to drag-pack. Towards the end of December the ice is thick enough to carry a "field." If luck be good the snow is not long in covering the hard-frozen ground with a soft carpet sufficiently deep to make riding a joy. At this time of year you are able to traverse the country on horseback in almost any direction without being stopped by ground unsuitable for riding. Ditches frequently cause grief, as they are visible only as a slight groove in the snow. After a fall or two both rider and horse grow wary. As a matter of fact, it is astonishing how careful the horses become and how accurately they estimate the width of the snow-covered ditches. Amusing incidents are frequent. The rider who realizes only too late, that his horse preferred to stop a while before taking an obstacle, will find himself landed headlong in a drift of snow. In extricating himself he will get good exercise, at the same time affording the spectators much amusement. At the Equitation School of Strömsholm, drag-pack hunting is arranged twice a week.



I.—JUMPING
(The present Commandant, Major Count Hamilton)



II.—PART OF THE SCHOOL PACK (Winter)

1911
1912

During the first four months the instructors alone are allowed stirrups. This regulation is undoubtedly of great importance as an efficient means of getting the young officers firm in their saddles. During spring and summer drag-pack hunting has to be given up on account of the crops.

Racing was taken up towards the end of the 'seventies. The sport was growing more and more popular, till Parliament suddenly prohibited public betting. This naturally meant death to racing. For years all efforts to effect an alteration were in vain. Racing was considered an exclusively aristocratic sport and the breeding of racehorses (the thoroughbreds being by appearance and character frequently more aristocratic than their owners) consequently ought not to be encouraged. A few years ago betting was again allowed by Parliament on account of the deep interest our farmers and breeders take in trotting matches. The future of racing is, however, uncertain, as our cavalry is being reduced to 40 per cent. of its number. The cavalry officer has meant much to racing, as our steeple-chases and hurdle-races are open (as a rule) only to amateurs. The Equitation School shows great appreciation of the qualities bred by racing in a young officer. At least one of the horses brought to the school by each pupil must be suitable for racing and every officer passing the school is so trained. The first races of the year are generally run in February on ice. Then there is a pause till May, when the summer season begins. In the beginning of October the weather puts a stop to further racing.

As hunting is out of the question and the racing season short we have, of necessity, turned to the more artificial sport. Jumping competitions are arranged indoors if the ground happens to be unsuitable, and this may account for some good results in international competitions.

Another cause of good results we believe to be the thorough equitation to which all our horses are subjected. According to the principles hitherto followed at Strömsholm and by our champion riders a good jumper should be an obedient horse. He is therefore not only trained over obstacles, but is subjected to equitation in order to make him reliable and easy to handle.

The interest in equitation is roused in the young cavalry officer when a pupil at Strömsholm. Formerly equitation only was taught there. According to the principles of riding prevalent in the 'seventies and 'eighties, the horses were never taken outside the covered riding-school. The influence of the Spanish school was strong and the education took no heed of military claims. About 1885 this period happily came to an end. The views of the great Moltke upon the strategic use of cavalry now began to gain influence on our military riding. Slowly but surely it grew clear to those in authority that a cavalry officer must be able to go practically anywhere on horseback. The place to teach him this was the Equitation School. The aim of the school was—and is—to train its pupils as efficient cavalry officers. The different branches of their education were henceforward regulated with regard to the serviceableness of cavalry.

Five horses are as a rule ridden daily by each officer at Strömsholm, two remounts, an older charger* supplied by the School and two chargers of his own, one of which should be a young one (about five years old) to be put in training for the races arranged at the school. In riding the remounts the sound method of breaking the young horse is acquired. The chargers of the Equitation School are well trained in the "haute école" of the Spanish type, as is still in existence in Vienna. On the back of these chargers the young cavalry officer experiences how a thoroughly educated horse moves, and he learns how to give him the necessary impulses by slight imperceptible aids.

One of the horses brought by each pupil to the Equitation School must be well suited for *Concours Hippiques*. They are trained from the beginning of September until April, when their owners are allowed to go in for competitions arranged in different places all over the country. Contrary to the traditions

* Up till a few years ago the thoroughbred stallions of the Government were during the non-serving season (when they did not serve as sires) kept at the School and were daily ridden in the manège by the officers instead of the "older charger." This scheme worked splendidly; it gave the stallions the exercises necessary to make them sweet-tempered, and it provided the officers with riding material of the very best kind.



III.—MOVING OFF FOR THE DRAG ON GLASSY ICE.

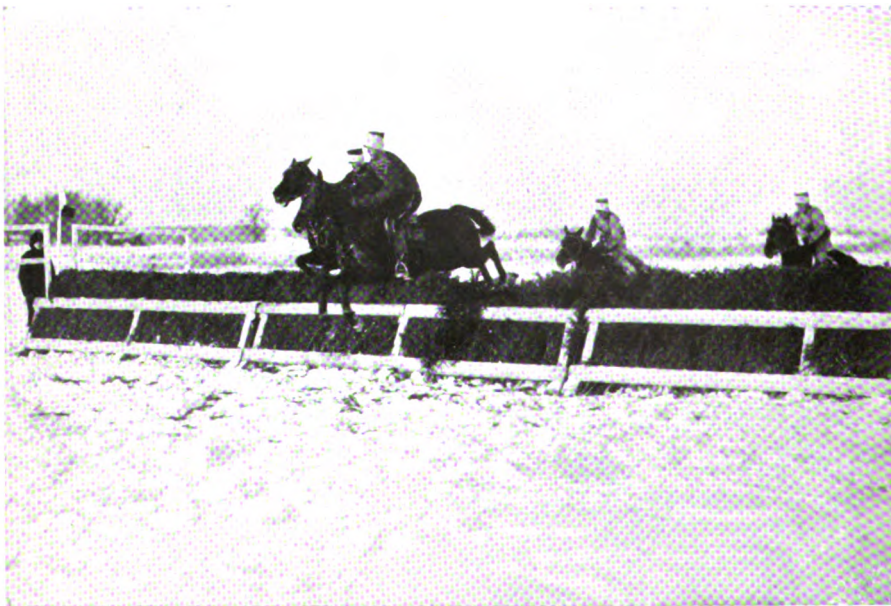
(It is interesting to note that ice provides an extremely good galloping track and no horse has, in Swedish experience, ever broken down in his tendons from riding on the ice)



IV - A CANTER ON THE SCHOOL TRAINING TRACK IN WINTER TIME



V.—FROM A STEEPLECHASE AT THE SCHOOL RACE COURSE



VI.—STEEPLECHASING ON THE SNOW-COVERED ICE ON THE
LAKE JUST OUTSIDE STRÖMSHOLM
(Note the way the Officers have wrapped their mufflers round their heads to
protect ears and foreheads from being frost-bitten)

of Olympia in London, jumping is arranged out of doors. The obstacles and courses are of great variety, differing from year to year. This principle appears to make the horses more obedient and gives them a great experience as to different obstacles. These are built to resemble those encountered during a cross-country ride. Though jumping over a course is an artificial sport, we try to make it as natural as possible.

The interest taken in riding among civilians used to be very slight, but is now increasing year by year. Civilian competitors in races and *Concours Hippiques* are now more frequent. One or two young ladies venture to ride in jumping competitions with obstacles more than five feet high.

Our horses are, with few exceptions, of Swedish breed. It has been rumoured, I believe, that all our best horses competing at the Olympic games have been of German origin. This is, however, not the case. Thoroughbreds, especially stallions, are occasionally imported from England or from the Continent. The racing rules are not favourable to imported horses, as they have to carry more weight, which encourages the breeders to produce good horses in sufficient numbers.

Finally, it may be of interest to the readers of this JOURNAL to give a short description of Strömsholm where the Equitation School is situated. The distance from Stockholm is some eighty miles. The neighbourhood is considered one of the most beautiful parts of Sweden. The manor of Strömsholm was erected in 1668 for the dowager Queen Hedvig Eleonora.

The kings of Sweden have kept a stud here ever since the 16th century. The great warrior, Charles XII, was given his first riding lessons here when a boy. The traditions of horse-breeding and good horsemanship may therefore be considered old and well rooted at Strömsholm.

The unmarried officers are given rooms in the manor, where they take their meals. After dinner they gather in the smoking room where flaming logs in the open fireplace help to keep the winter off. Strömsholm awakens in the heart of every Swedish cavalry officer memories of hard work, and of break-neck dare-devilry—a happy year of golden youth.

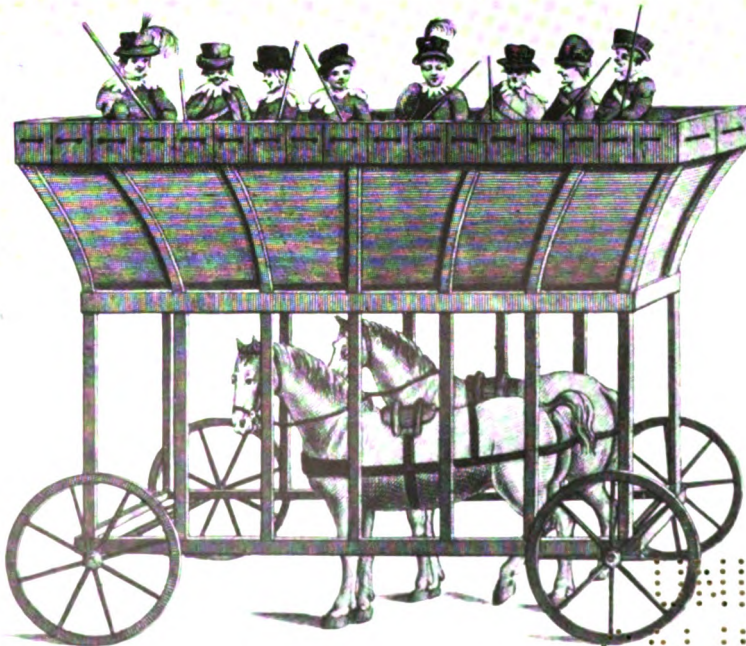
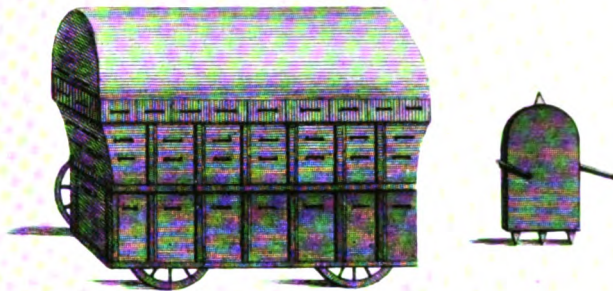
THE ANCESTORS OF THE TANK

By COLONEL J. F. C. FULLER.

THE tank to-day is playing so important a part in the structure of armies that it may be of some interest to enquire into the origin of the idea which underlies this machine, and to trace the efforts made in the past to give it form.

The first tanks to take part in war were those used by the British Forces in France on 15th September, 1916. They were motor-driven caterpillar vehicles, and being bullet proof they enabled their crews to face small-arm fire. The tactical idea underlying their construction was that of protected mobility from which offensive power could be developed, in fact, the same idea which is the root principle of all tactics, since it underlies the action of so primitive a fighter as a man armed with a shield and a sword. The physical energy of the man is the engine, his legs and feet the tracks, his shield the armour, and his sword the machine gun. We thus see that the tactical idea behind both the individual soldier and the tank is the same.

Ever since the wheel was invented, the soldier has carried his impedimenta in some form of cart, and from time immemorial, and especially among nomadic tribes, soldiers have made use of their baggage wagons in the construction of field defences and laagers. Later on, and more especially amongst African and Oriental nations, from the cart evolved the chariot, a fighting vehicle. In Europe, chariots, however, were little used to fight from, and were more frequently employed to convey the warrior to and from the battlefield. In the Iliad we read of Agamemnon:—"He left his steeds indeed, and his brass variegated chariot, and these his servant Eurymedon . . . held apart panting. Him he strictly enjoined to keep them near him against the time when weariness should seize his limbs



Scottish War Carts, 1456.

commanding over many." To Agamemnon the chariot was looked upon as we now look upon the motor car.

More tank-like than the chariot was the rolling tower, an immense wooden structure consisting of several storeys. It was used in siege operations, and moved forward on wheels or on rollers. One of the largest of these, called Helepolis, was built by Demetrius for the siege of Rhodes in 304 B.C. Thirty thousand artificers and workmen were employed in its construction, and no less than three thousand four hundred men were required to move it.

Neither the chariot nor the rolling tower were, however, true tanks. The first, though mobile, offered little protection to its occupants and less to its horses, and the mobility of the second was so low as to render it totally useless in field operations.

The earliest ancestor of the tank, in the direct line, is to be discovered in China in the twelfth century B.C., for in the third of Sun-Tse's "Thirteen Points on the Foundations of Military Art" may be found an interesting reference to a machine which was apparently used as an assault weapon. Generals are exhorted to have these engines ready and well cared for so that the reduction of the enemy's defences may not require more than "about three months." If failure result: "Then prepare again with the ardour and diligence of the ant, and if in the endeavour you lose a third of your force, *be quite convinced that you are an indifferent soldier.*"

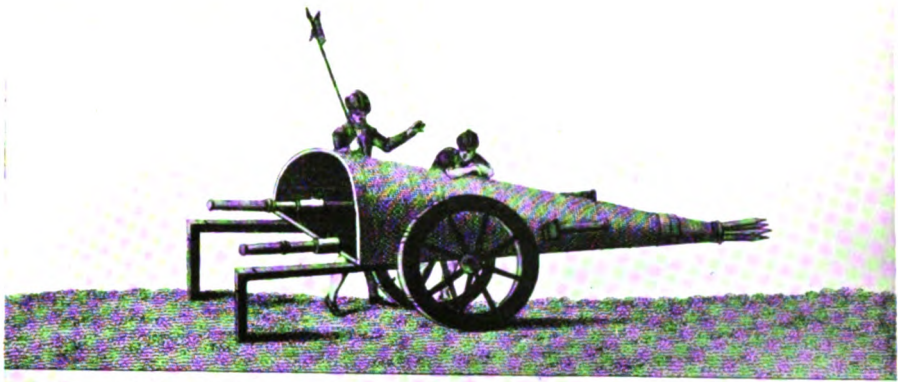
The machine employed was a type of war cart called "Lou." We read: "These carts had four wheels and held about a dozen men. They were covered with leather or untanned hides, and around them was a sort of gallery constructed out of stout timber. On the leather roof, earth was placed to protect those inside from arrows, stones and other missiles. Each of these carts constituted a small fortress, which could be used in attack or defence. They were more frequently used in sieges, but were also employed in pitched battles." They were considered "a rampart against surprise," and when attacked "some were detached to inform the main

body in rear what was happening"; so they must have been fairly mobile.

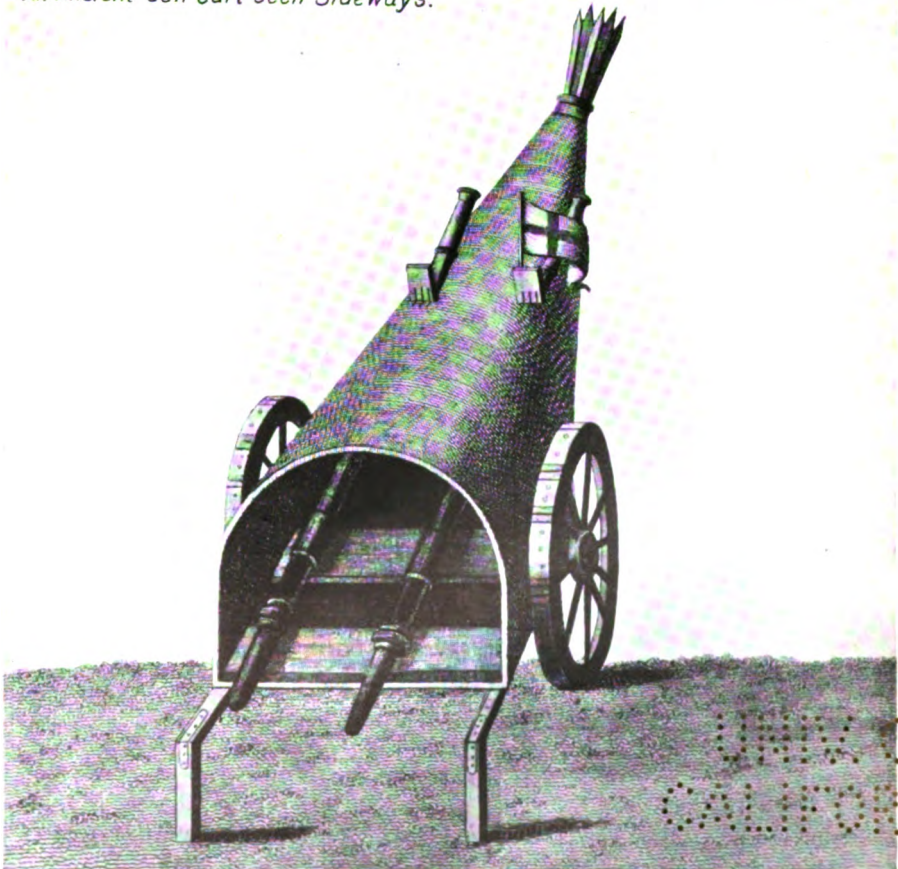
In the West, centuries later, we find Cyrus making use of somewhat similar vehicles at the battle of Thymbra (554 B.C.). Behind his phalanx he drew up a line of wagons upon which towers had been built, and from which bowmen could fire. These fortified wagons could follow up the attack, or form a line of strong points behind which the Persians could retire if their attack were repulsed. Cyrus says: "Forward then, gentlemen, against the foe . . . and if any of them do hold firm, how can they fight at once against cavalry, infantry and *turrets of artillery*."

Besides chariots and war carts, elephants were frequently used in Asia to break an enemy's front. The first time a European army was confronted by these beasts was at the battle of Arbela (331 B.C.), when Darius used fifteen against Alexander. At the battle of the Hydaspes (326 B.C.) Porus, the Indian King, deployed two hundred, which compelled Alexander to make a flank attack, as his horses would not face them. The elephant was, however, a somewhat unreliable form of tank, for, as Arrian tells: "when the beasts were tired out, and were no longer able to charge with any vigour, they began to retire slowly, facing the foe like ships backing water." More frequently than not they broke back in panic and rushed madly through the ranks of the infantry in rear of them.

The next ancestor which we meet with in history is the human tank, or knight in armour. After the decline of the Roman legion, the art of making plate armour was lost, though later on rediscovered, yet from the fifth century onwards to the fifteenth the armoured horseman, first protected by chain and later by plate armour, ruled almost supreme. During the latter stage of this period the making of body armour was reduced to a fine art, but one problem was never solved, namely, that of effectively armouring the knight's horse, which remained far more vulnerable than the knight himself. Against unarmoured or badly armoured infantry the knight was uniformly victorious, until the advent of the long bow, which so frequently dismounted



An Ancient Gun Cart seen Sideways.



An Ancient Gun Cart, viewed from the rear, 1500.

Digitized by Google

him, by killing or wounding his horse, that often he was compelled to fight on foot, as happened at Agincourt in 1415. The work begun by the bow and pike was carried on by the arquebus, and, before the end of the sixteenth century, armour, though still worn, had lost most of its protective value.

Coincidentally with the introduction of firearms we find the re-introduction of the war cart, in order to enable armour of sufficient strength to be carried to counteract the bullet. These carts took the form of mobile fortresses, and in them is to be found another ancestor of the tank, and a near one, since their motive power was internal and not external as in the case of the chariot.

In 1395, Conrad Kyser invented a battle car which was moved by internal man-power; in 1420, Fontana invented another, and, a few years later, Archinger designed a mobile fortress which enclosed no less than a hundred men. As man haulage was both wasteful and cumbersome, a little later on horses were placed inside these vehicles, and in Scotland two Acts of Parliament, dated 1456 and 1471 respectively, were passed concerning their use. In the first of these Acts we read : "it is tocht speidfull that the King mak requiest to certain of the great burrows of the land that are of ony myght, to mak carts of weir, and in elk cart twa gunnis and ilk one to have twa chalmers, with the remnant of the graith that effeirs thereto, and an cunnard man to shute thame."

The substitution of horse-power for man-power was but a poor answer to the problem of mobility, so we find, in 1472, Valturio suggesting that battle-cars should be driven by means of wind wheels, in other words, that muscular energy should be replaced by mechanically generated power. During the period of the Renaissance, numerous attempts are made to perfect the war chariot. In 1482, Leonardo da Vinci writes to Ludovico Sforza : "I am building secure and covered chariots which are invulnerable, and when they advance with their guns into the midst of the foe, even the largest enemy masses must retreat, and behind them the infantry can follow in safety and without opposition." The tactics he suggested were identical to those

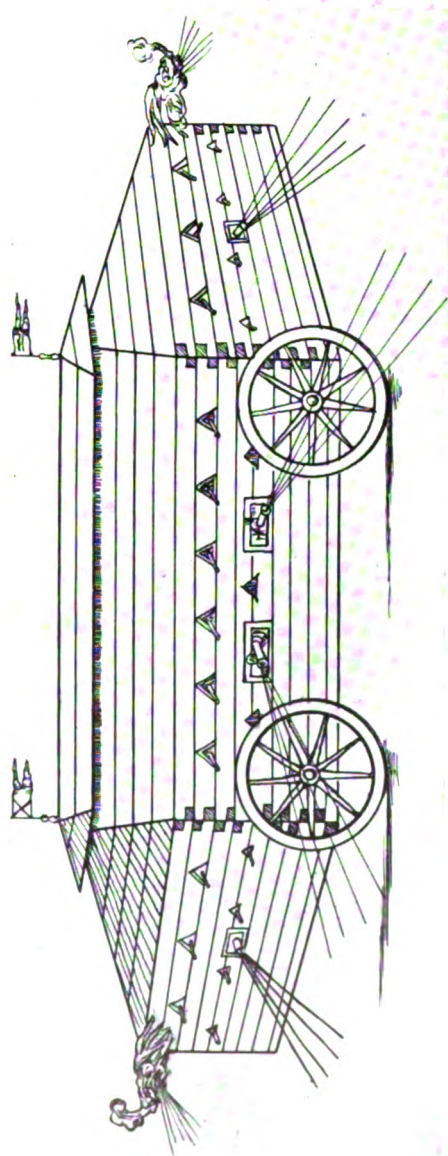
used at the battle of Cambrai in November, 1917. In 1558, Holzschuher describes a battle-car preceded by infantry and flanked by cavalry, and, in 1599, Simon Stevin is supposed to have constructed for the Prince of Orange two veritable land-ships; these consisted in small battleships fully rigged and mounted upon wheels.

As regards these early types of tanks, there is to be found in the Bacon Collection at Lambeth Palace an interesting document which describes one of these machines at the close of the sixteenth century. The writer was probably John Napier of logarithm fame. It reads as follows: "Anno Domini 1596, the 7th of June, Secret Inventions profitable and necessary in these days for defence of this Island, and withstanding of strangers, enemies of God's truth and religion.

"The invention of a round chariot of metal made of the proof of double musket, which motion shall be of those that be within the same, more easy, more light and more speedy by much than so many armed men would be otherwise. The use hereof as well, in moving, serveth to break the array of the enemy's battle and to make passage, as also in staying and abiding within the enemy's battle, it serveth to destroy the environed enemy by continual charge and shot of arquebus through small holes; the enemy in the meantime being abased and altogether uncertain of what defence or pursuit to use against a moving mouth of metal."

The difficulty in all these early forms of tanks was how to move them. In 1634, David Ramsey took out a patent for a self-moving wagon which could be used as a gun carriage, it was worked by foot-power; but it could have accomplished little save the exhaustion of the men who worked it. In 1658, Caspar Schott returned to the Holzschuher type and designed an immense vehicle to be used against the Turks, which, like Archinger's, could hold a hundred soldiers. Little was done for a hundred years, when in 1755, an attempt was made to improve the Valturio type by using wind propulsion, but to no avail.

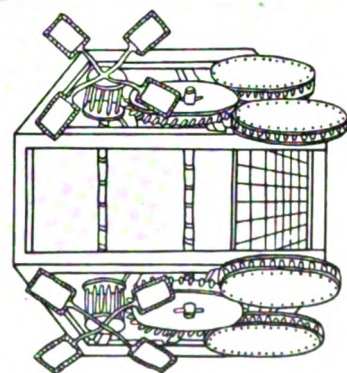
We now enter the period of steam-power, and find the idea



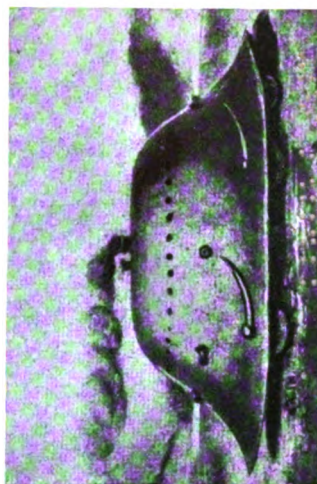
Holzschuher's Battle-Car, 1558.



Battle-Car, 1755.



Valturio's Battle-Car, 1472.



James Cowen's Armoured Traction Engine, 1855.

of protected mobility still holding sway. In 1769, James Watt invented the first practical steam engine, and, simultaneously, Cugnot, a French engineer, produced for the French Minister of War the first steam road vehicle with a speed of about two and a-half miles an hour. At his first public trial he ran into a wall and was locked up in jail for the damage done to it. Cugnot's machine probably suggested to Voltaire the use of such a vehicle, for he makes mention of a somewhat similar machine for military purposes; and Napoleon must have also heard of it for, "when the great general was selected a member of the French Institute, the subject of his paper was 'The Automobile in War.'"

The modern period of tank ancestorship is now entered. Since time immemorial, the difficulty of moving wheeled vehicles over muddy roads and fields was constantly experienced. Two solutions to this problem were attempted. The first by the use of wooden, and, later on, iron rails, and the second by what was called a footed-wheel, that is by a wheel which could lay on the ground a series of baulks, or rails, of wood and pick them up again once it had rolled over them. Such a wheel was patented by Richard Lovell Edgeworth in England in 1770.

The footed-wheel which was the ancestor of the caterpillar or chain track, afterwards to become famous in cross-country tractors and tanks, made but slow progress; yet it is interesting to note that several Boyle steam engines were fitted with footed-wheels for use in the Crimean War, since the roads around Balaclava were seas of mud. Another difficulty which arose during this war, and one which confronted us in 1914, was the storming of the enemy's trench lines. To overcome this difficulty, a philanthropist, one James Cowen, suggested to Lord Palmerston the use of armoured traction engines fitted with scythes. Like the Assyrian and British chariots, their purpose was to mow a lane through the enemy infantry. The idea was, however, rejected as it was considered to be too barbarous.

In spite of the fact that the Boyle engines did useful work during the war in the Crimea, and, in 1858, a Bray traction

engine hauled three 68-pounders and wagons from Woolwich to Plumstead Common, and was well reported on by the War Department, financial stringency was too much for these machines, and they disappeared from the military catalogue.

Though my purpose in this brief study is to enquire into the origin of armoured machines, I must here make a digression, for, except for armoured trains, no armoured vehicles were constructed until the close of the century, yet had it not been for the attention paid to the military transport service the evolution of these vehicles would have been long delayed.

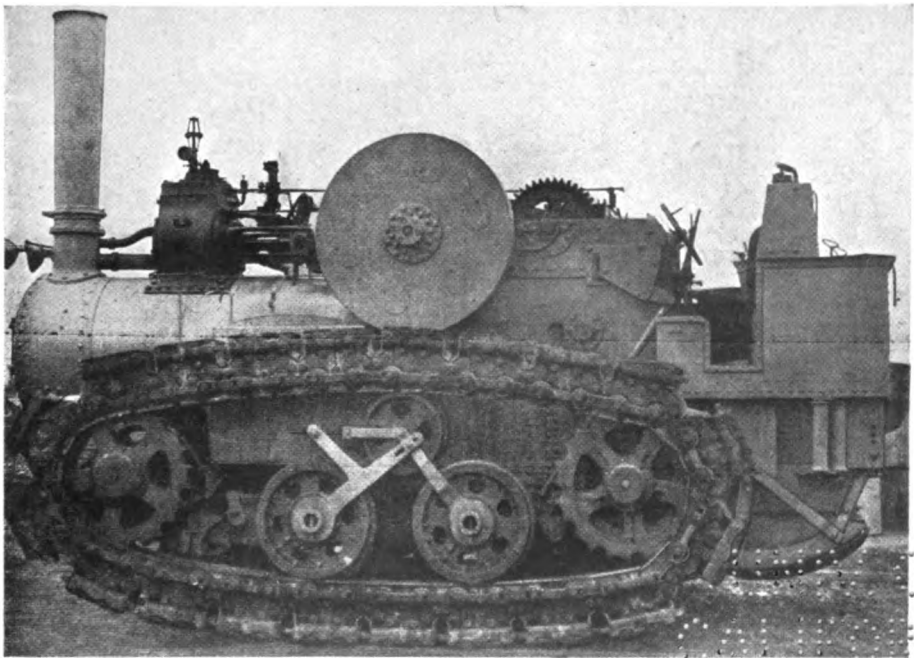
Ever since Napoleon's campaign of 1812 the problem of supply in war had received attention. The rapid growth of railways between 1825 and 1865 to a certain extent solved it. Nevertheless, in the immediate vicinity of the battlefield it was found that the locomotive was of little use. To mitigate this difficulty, in 1870, the Prussian War Ministry bought two Fowler traction engines which were well reported on by Baron von der Goltz, and which were still in use in Germany in the year 1900. During the war they gave rise to the suggestion of constructing armoured traction engines to storm infantry trenches, but the war ended before these could be built.

Shortly after the close of the Franco-Prussian War a variety of military tests were carried out with traction engines, in Italy and France in 1875, in Russia in 1876, and in England in 1877, so that when the Russo-Turkish war broke out this means of transport had become familiar. Altogether the Russians used twelve of these machines during this war, and they effected a considerable economy.

From the early 'eighties onwards mechanical progress was rapid. In 1886 Daimler invented the explosion motor, and by 1894 there were no less than 8,000 traction engines in Great Britain, yet from the military point of view little was accomplished, the only military traction engine trials of interest being those carried out in Switzerland in 1892. In 1898 came the Diesel engine, and that year oil motors were tested out in Austria for the transport of artillery in hilly country. This same year a somewhat belated trial was made with traction



Mercedes Car fitted with Chain-Track, 1908.



Hornsby Chain-Track Tractor, 1909.

Digitized by Google

engines on Salisbury Plain. Little, however, was thought of them, and all the Commander-in-Chief, Lord Wolseley, said in his report was: "The manœuvres show clearly that mechanical traction by means of traction engines is an efficient supplement to animal traction, especially in carrying supplies in rear of an army."

The following year saw the invention of the Simms motor-gun carriage which was partially armoured, and on the outbreak of the war in South Africa, in November, 1899, fifteen traction engines were despatched to the seat of war, and they, as well as others which followed, caused Lord Roberts to suggest to the War Office the construction of armoured road trains. These were built by John Fowler & Co., the locomotives and wagons being protected by quarter-inch steel plate. Six of these trains, I believe, were sent out to South Africa, but what use was made of them I have never been able to discover.

From the year 1900 we enter the petrol age in transport, and though a few military enthusiasts hoped to replace animal by mechanical traction on roads, not many soldiers were interested in this problem. To-day some of the views held appear strange, such as: "Electric ignition is too complicated for use in war . . .," "Benzine on account of its dangerously inflammable nature, can only be used to a limited extent for vehicles used in war." But the standing objection was the fear these machines would cause among the horses. For what was called "courier work" the motor car was considered useless. One writer says: "It is not likely there will ever be any extended use of motor cars for such purposes." Again: "The employment of motor kitchen cars, which has also been suggested, is not worth consideration."

Nevertheless, the year 1900 was a remarkable one in the history of petrol, if only because of "The Thousand Miles Motor Trial," and that Henri Beconnais "the king of chauffeurs set up a remarkable world's record" of "riding at an average of over forty-seven miles an hour." Also were there men of vision in these days: "In the House of Commons on Thursday evening, May 17, 1900, Mr. Balfour said he

sometimes dreamed, perhaps it was only a dream, that in addition to railways and tramways we might see great highways constructed for rapid motor traffic, and confined to motor traffic, which would have the immense advantage, if it could be practicable, of taking the workmen from door to door, which no tramcar and no train could do."

From the year 1900 we enter the modern military age. In 1904 an efficient Daimler armoured car was constructed in Germany. The disadvantage of the wheel for movement on the battlefield was, however, recognized, and this led to various attempts to improve the chain-track machine, such as the Holt tractor, which for agricultural purposes had been in use in America for a number of years.

In 1908, Messrs. Hornsby, wishing to demonstrate the advantage of the chain-track system, fitted a 75-h.p. Mercedes motor car with tracks, and over the sands at Skegness Beach it ran for about five months, and attained a speed of upwards of twenty miles an hour. "As can be imagined, the machine attracted a good deal of attention and it was inspected on several occasions by members of the Mechanical Transport Committee of the War Office." This same year a somewhat similar vehicle was invented by Major Donohue to haul a chain-track gun carriage, and was tried out in the presence of King Edward VII at Aldershot. The year following, a Hornsby chain-track tractor was experimented with at the same place.

From 1909 onwards to the outbreak of the war little notice was taken in military circles of the chain-track machine. Several civil engineers were still working on it and thinking out its military possibilities. Then the war came, and a few weeks after its outbreak, what with fire, wire and mud all forward movement ceased on the Western Front. Once again the problem became one of protected mobility in order to develop offensive power. At first armoured traction engines were suggested, then at length came the tank as we know it to-day; and it solved the problem which had been perplexing the mind of the soldier for over three thousand years.

THERE IS A DESTINY

By **LIEUTENANT-COLONEL ARDERN BEAMAN, D.S.O.**

It was a toss-up. Hounds were carrying the line with a strong cry straight across the low-lying water meadow, which about three-quarters of a mile ahead was traversed by the high banks of the Olney Pill. Which way had the fox gone? There was one bridge where the main road, far on the left, crossed the Pill; and another, equidistant on the right, where the Pill entered into the Lufness canal. Generally a fox which took this line would swing left-handed, even if he swam the Pill, and after crossing the main road, head away through the Ullathorne covers towards Wodemancote and Sheepscombe. Mindful of this fact the hunt staff, followed by almost the entire field, had turned half-left, and were scuttering through the soggy pasture in a race to reach the gap giving out on to the main road. Two men only, either from an intuitive sense or from sheer speculation, turned away from the main body and galloped for the lower bridge by the canal. When they had crossed, single file, the narrow span of strip-studded planking between its handrails, the leader uttered an exclamation of delight; for hounds had carried their line over the Pill and were now towing on a red-hot scent right-handed, on a course which must soon bring them parallel with the Lufness canal.

“We were right, by Jove!” exulted the leading horseman. “The rest will never catch up now—we’ve got the hunt to ourselves. Come on, Allan!”

The other, though equally elated by the situation, made no audible reply. He was a jealous rider; as with old Jorrocks, “foxhuntin’ was the foremost passion of his ’cart”; and had

he found himself placed as he now was, alone, or with any other companion except Tony Allbut, his jubilation would have been extreme. As it was, at this grand, rejoicing moment, with the leading hounds only half a field ahead, the proximity of Allbut spoiled his pleasure and filled his mind with corrosive, bitter feelings.

Together they flew a stiff quickthorn with a ragged, trappy d tch on the far side. Allbut laughed in exuberant delight.

"He'll make straight as a die for Mintwood—five and a half miles of the best. Good enough, Allan, eh?"

That rich, suave, invincibly cordial voice! How Allan Mildmay hated it; how he loathed its owner. He lifted his eyes from the hounds to shoot a glance of distaste at the man on his right. Allbut's boots and breeches were black with mud, the pink coat spattered, the hat roughened by passage through a bullfinch—yet Mildmay had to admit to himself that he made a very viri'e picture of a man. The broad deep chest, the thickset frame, the strong head poised so confidently on those broad shoulders, the ruddy face and clear dark eyes g'owing with dynamic health—all combined to give an impression of unusual power. The horse, too, that Allbut was riding, a lovely free-striding chestnut of perfect conformation and manners, was as good as money could buy anywhere in the kingdom. Allbut had too shrewd an appreciation of the weight of that somewhat nebulous element, "taste," in the code of his neighbours to make any parade about the price of his horseflesh; but it was known that he prided himself on having a stable full of "the best in England"; that he did not hesitate to pay up to four figures for champions and winners at the principal shows. This was an additional cause of exasperation to Mildmay. Instead of being able to enter into the full joy of their eclectic hunt, Mildmay's mind became occupied by comparisons which would always and morbidly present themselves when he found himself near Allbut. Very keenly he felt the insignificance of his own person when in the orbit of the other's magnetic and abounding vitality. Actually, the cousins' ages were the same—thirty-seven. But he, Mildmay, had

already a somewhat shrunken, or, more truly, a shrivelled air; one leg, nearly useless, was encased in a lace-up field-boot; his hair was greying; his face, pinched from much pain, was, too, of a haggard and pitiful greyness. Also, being poor, he had to follow the "foremost passion of his 'eart" on "brilliant screws," defective horses which he smelt out and picked up here and there for a song; which made the number of his hunting days ever a doubtful quantity.

As Allbut had predicted, the line ran straight on for Mintwood with a screaming scent. There was not yet a sign, however far behind, of the rest of the field; not even the spoilsport cars could find a convenient road by which to head the fox on that course. For miles the two galloped on, a little wide and down-wind of hounds, over sound grass enclosures divided by hedge-and-ditches or open, rushy "rhins"—the water channels of that country. It was truly a fox-hunter's paradise, that fair, broad grassland with its stiff, though clean and wire-free, obstacles—the two of them alone, with the hounds to themselves, carrying a great head in loud melodious cry. And yet, fight against the obsession as he would, Mildmay's bitter thoughts took him back from this gay scene to an August day of fourteen years ago.

At that time there was little to choose between Mildmay and his cousin in the matter of physique or of vitality. In fact, it was Mildmay that Mary Grantly had favoured; for she had given him her promise. The two cousins, having come down from Oxford and passed a year or so on the Continent acquiring languages, had entered on their career in old Grantly's chemical works—that world-renowned institution situated just outside Morchester.

Then war came. Mildmay had always had a constitutional antipathy towards his cousin Allbut, but he was bound to admit that the latter never showed him anything but the heartiest good will; and especially, when the two had been rivals for Mary's hand, and Mildmay had won, Allbut's conduct had been manly and sportsmanlike to an irreproachable degree. With the advent of the war came the question by which every young

man was confronted. "To go, or not to go?" Immediately Allbut had made up his mind; a decision which he communicated with great frankness to his cousin.

"I can see pretty well all round this problem," he said, tapping his big forehead with the air of one conscious of clear conceptions within. "It will last for months, probably years. Our goods will be essential. The longer it lasts, the more of our stuff will be required. Don't you see, Allan, it's the chance of a lifetime? There's practically no limit to our scope for expansion. A few years of that will put us where we couldn't hope to be in under thirty or thirty-five years in the ordinary course of business. We'll stay here, Allan, my boy, and make hay."

It happened that Mildmay looked at the problem from an angle of ethics altogether different. Mistaking his silence for deliberation, Allbut continued to advocate the advantages of this God-sent opportunity. *He* could see his way clear ahead now. He would be a rich man at thirty; he would have his seat on the Board of Directors; he would reside in a large country house some way out of Morchester, taking up his position among the local magnates; he would go into Parliament; in due course he would mount into the Cabinet. Allan had the potentiality for all these delectable things too, if now he would strike the hot iron. "Don't you see, old boy," Allbut justified his arguments, "that we couldn't be doing a more patriotic work than speeding up the production of munition materials?"

The next day Mildmay "joined up." He went over to France in a Field Battery; then to Palestine; then on to Mesopotamia, where he finished out the war; and passed some months subsequent to the Armistice at death's door in an enteric ward. He arrived home at last with a shattered leg, a shattered constitution, to find that old Grantly was dead; that Mary was married to his cousin Allbut; and that Tony Allbut was now managing director in old Grantly's place of a concern many times magnified by the war—as Allbut himself had foreseen.

Allbut with the old, suave cordiality, immediately offered his crippled cousin an excellent position in the firm. Mildmay declined; as, in the subsequent years, he coldly rebuffed the other's unflagging cordiality, his offers of mounts whenever Mildmay's own screws were on the sick list, the never-ending gestures of goodwill.

"Poor old Allan!" Allbut laughed to his wife. "He's a sick man—badlyhipped by the war; and can't help brooding on it. But he'll come right in time."

Mary acquiesced, admiring in this, as in all things, her husband's genial, long-suffering magnanimity. She wondered now how she could ever have been attracted by the churlish cousin; but of course that had been just a passing girlish fancy.

Meanwhile, Mildmay had secured a small post as manager to a friend's estate in the neighbourhood; and as the years went by, he watched Allbut making good one by one those items of ambition which he had with such confident foresight outlined at the beginning of the war. Immensely wealthy, and full of buoyant self-assurance, he was a great personage now, not only in the city but in the county itself. Especially among the citizens of all grades he was a popular idol, this most hearty good fellow among good fellows, who had a genial word and a joke for everyone; who was so lavish with his charities to the poor. He was in the city's eyes a *preux chevalier* of industry, enterprise and virtue—the *beau ideal* of a British business man. Smoothly, too, he had fallen into step with the new trend of exalting the horn of our one-time enemies, of seeing in them brothers of the best and most lovable sort. Mildmay smiled sourly when he read those speeches in the local paper, suavely preaching the doctrine of disarmament, an universal family, the folly and madness of wars; censuring in caustic phrase the self-seekers who had flooded the world in blood; utterances in which, as time went on and memories grew more dim, Allbut did not hesitate to suggest the moral credit of having stood firm in *his* faith at a time when pretty well everybody else had gone rabid with blood-hysteria. Mildmay, noting the tremen-

ous applause which greeted these speeches, and remembering his cousin's private confession of faith at the opening of the war, wondered what had become of a public's sense of humour which could so voraciously swallow this stuff from a man whose whole position was founded in bloodshed. "Sheep," he thought, "blind, silly, oblivious sheep!" And so he was not surprised when Allbut was returned to Parliament by Morchester with an overwhelming majority, amid scenes of rejoicing unparalleled in the memory of the oldest elector.

Looking now at that broad, mud-splashed pink coat, he did not for a moment doubt that his cousin would attain the final ambition of getting into the Cabinet. Whatever he did, he did well and thoroughly. As they negotiated an awkward, steep brook with low posts on the far side, Mildmay admitted grudgingly that the fellow was a good horseman; yes, a very good horseman.

A check brought these morbid thoughts—of which Mildmay was ashamed, but which were stronger than himself—to an abrupt end. The leading hounds faulted in a field over which a herd of white-faced steers came thundering as in a charge, and then stood blowing and stamping at the intruders. The two horsemen pulled up, cracked the beasts off with their whips, and stood still to watch the pack make their cast. The hounds swung out fan-wise with noses to the ground.

"Dash it," grumbled Allbut, "if they don't pick it up quick, the rest of them will catch us up."

Already, many fields behind, were specks of scarlet, putting on the pace all they knew to retrieve the initial error.

While hounds were still at fault, Allbut's eye discerned a mongrel dog dash out of a lonely cottage some way in front and scurry along at its utmost beside a hedgerow. He pointed it out with his whip to Mildmay.

"Look, Allan! that cur's got the line. Let's lift 'em?"

Mildmay looked jealously back over his shoulder. It might be rather an iniquitous assumption of authority—but in another five minutes the staff and field would be up, their solitary glory over. "Right ho," he agreed.

Clearing a post-and-rails, they galloped forward, hallooing the pack on to the line indicated by the cur; and quickly had the satisfaction of seeing hounds acknowledge it. But it is one of the well-known and inexplicable mysteries of creation that a fox which has been chased by a cur will thereafter lose the most of his scent. So slow and catchy did the hunt now become that the first flight of followers were already crashing over a double bank only two fields behind when Allbut's eyes were gladdened by a joyous sight. Toiling up a striation of ridge-and-furrow just over the lane ahead of them, he espied the fox—dirty, tail-draggling, completely beaten.

"We'll get him to our own cheek, yet!" he exulted; and racing on, he let out a rousing holloa to raise the pack to view. The lane was bounded by a broad steep dyke and fence, an unjumpable obstacle. The only way across was over a stout, high-hung and locked gate, with the near side poached up into a slippery take-off. For this the two men galloped, Allbut's seven hundred guinea champion reaching it first; but the lovely chestnut's hind feet slithered as he gathered his hocks under for the leap, and Mildmay, just behind, witnessed a very ugly fall. The chestnut's knees rapped hard against the top bar, he somersaulted completely in the air, and horse and rider crashed on to the metallic-ringing lane in a confused jumble. There both lay still, except for a convulsive tremor in the horse's quarters.

"Damn!" cursed Mildmay, his eye on the fox disappearing over a rise. "He's spoilt everything for me, and now he must go and spoil this hunt. Suppose I must stop and pick him up."

But when Mildmay had hitched his horse to the fatal gate and climbed painfully over, he saw that this was the last thing that his cousin would spoil for him.

When he pulled him free from under the dead horse, it was evident that Allbut's spine was broken. The dying man seemed trying to say something, and Mildmay leaned down to catch the last whisper.

"I'm done, old boy . . . look—look after Mary."

Almost Mildmay could have struck the handsome face, as it fell back—and tragically relaxed.

Now there was a great crowd around this still group on the lane. People spoke in hushed voices, in whispers; two farmers were dragging a hurdle out of the fence; some one had galloped off to fetch a car. Mildmay saw a habited lady throw herself on the body in dumb despair; a *tableau* more pitiful than anything he had ever seen. Only thirty-seven . . . and he had achieved everything . . . everything, except, in Mildmay's view, a man's primary duty. As he looked on the few feet of clay that had once been the great Anthony Allbut, the words of another Anthony ran through his mind:

“Oh, mighty Cæsar! dost thou lie so low?

Are all thy conquests, glories, triumphs, spoils,

Shrunk to this little measure?”

“But what good does it do me?” he asked himself with no diminution of the old bitterness; for he had seen in the revelation of those moments that the light of Mary's life had gone out with Tony Allbut's.

Reflecting on the empty, pain-ful years that might yet remain to him, he decided that there is no rational solution to the enigma of Life.



“LA REINE DES ARMES BLANCHES”

By C. C. WALL

A.O. 392/1927. **USE OF THE LANCE.**—It has been decided to abolish the lance as a weapon of war, from the date of this Army Order. It will not be carried on field training, but will be retained by Lancer regiments for ceremonial purposes only. Training in the handling and use of this weapon, other than for ceremonial purposes, will be discontinued forthwith.

THUS runs the death sentence of one of the oldest hand weapons in history.

It is a difficult matter to trace the actual date when the lance was introduced to civilised armies. Like Topsy, it appears to have “grewed”—or rather was evolved—from the primitive wooden pole sharpened to a point at one, or probably both ends. In any case its use can be traced back to the very earliest times, and it is certain that the Assyrians and Egyptians favoured it. The Greeks and Romans also appear to have used this weapon, but its size and weight seem to have been a matter of personal preference dependent on the strength and height of the man, and it was common to both foot and horse.

This state of affairs seems to have continued with little or no change up to the 12th century, when the popularity of the “passage-at-arms,” or “tournament,” as a means of training and sport brought about a little more uniformity.

In 1181, Henry II provided the earliest Act for the organization of the military forces, which among other things, laid down that “All burgesses and the whole community of freemen shall have a wambais,* a chaplet or iron, and a lance.”

* This has no relation to the “wombat,” but was a leather doublet padded with cotton, presumably designed more for protection than comfort.

Writing in 1587, Barnaby Rich* tells us that "Cavalry hath been devided in foure kindes, the first men at armes, themselves armed complet, and theyr horses likewise barbed, and were to give the first charge to discover the squadrons or batalions of pikes. The second launces, lighter armed with corselets . . . The thirde light horsemen, commonly armed with a coat of plate, with a light staffe charged on the theigh . . . The fourth and last called shot-on-horsebacke, but now lately called carbines . . . these carbines may skyrmidge loosely, and delivering theyr volleies are not able to stand any charge, but must retire to the launce for his safety."

By the time Cromwell raised his New Model Army the lance had practically disappeared in Europe, although a light variety of the weapon was still carried by the border men and Scottish cavalry, who used it to good effect against the Parliamentary horse at Dunbar. The Spaniards also used the lance with great success against the English infantry at San Domingo in 1655, where a hundred Spanish lancers put half General Venables' army to flight inflicting many casualties.† But in spite of numerous such examples of its effectiveness Continental armies, in the main, continued to set their face against it. In 1670 Sir James Turner‡ marvels at its unpopularity, arguing that the laying aside of body armour, which was then becoming general, would make the lance more effective than ever.

The introduction of firearms revolutionised the tactics of cavalry, as of all other arms, and to the Germans is accorded the honour of being the first to recognise the value of the pistol to the mounted man. Their method, we are told, met with great success, and was somewhat as follows: rank after rank trotted up in turn to the enemy and discharged their long pistols at them till an entrance was made. This rather sounds like a very early example of the "war of attrition."

* "A Pathway to Military Practise."

† Venables, in his "Narrative" of the expedition complains of a "great want of arms." On requesting a supply from the Fleet, he was "refused by General Penn the loan of one Pike or Lance (tho' the Lances were put on board for the Army to kill cows.)"

‡ "Pallas Armata."

But the British Army was ever conservative, and a contemporary writer declares that "Amongst those who profess arms it is so assured a principle that a troop of spears should beat and overthrow a troop of pistols that whoso seemeth to doubt thereof is taken for a meanly practised soldier." Alas for principle however, we hear little more of the lance in the British service until after Waterloo.

In 1807, Napoleon introduced a regiment of Polish Lancers into the French Army, and these were the forerunners of those who later, at Waterloo, were to give such a good account of themselves against the British, and who so impressed the Authorities, that in 1816 a party of Light Dragoons were sent to Pimlico there to be trained in the drill and use of the lance by Capt. Peters, of the 16th Light Dragoons.

Experiments with the lance had also been carried out by Lord Rosslyn of the 9th Light Dragoons. The result of these labours led the Prince Regent to direct in a General Order, dated the 19th September, 1816, that the 9th, 12th, 16th and 23rd Light Dragoons be armed with the lance and that "these regiments be designated lancers."

Thus was planted that hardy perennial—which from that day to this has never failed to flourish, both in and out of season, in places where professional soldiers foregather—the controversy of lance *v.* sword. It is not the intention of the writer to discourse upon the merits or demerits of cavalry weapons here, but in passing it may be of interest to notice two objections to the lance raised by certain of its detractors. The first was that so little training was needed to ensure its efficient use, that should the occasion ever arise it could be issued to the rawest soldier at a moment's notice together with the admonition to point the business end to the enemy and ride like hell. The second, that the weapon made cavalry too conspicuous, is said to have been immediately replied to by an imaginative genius who invented a telescopic lance, which one may assume was intended to be carried, much as the latest joined recruit carries the field-marshal's baton. This bright thought, it is hardly necessary to relate, was not looked upon with favour,

probably owing to the tendency of such a weapon to fold itself up on impact.

Mercer, in his "Journal of the Waterloo Campaign," tells how he received a lance as a keepsake from a dying veteran of Napoleon's Old Guard, on the day after the battle. The rest of the narrative is worth quoting *in extenso*.

"During the remainder of the campaign, Milward (Mercer's groom) carried it; and on returning to England I even rode into Canterbury followed by my lancer—a novelty in those days. Whilst in retirement on half-pay, it was suspended in my library; but on going to America, in 1823, I deposited it in the Rotunda at Woolwich. On my return, in 1829, the lance was gone. In 1823 or 1824 it seems Lieutenant-Colonel Vandaleur of the 9th Lancers, came to Woolwich to look for a model. Mine pleased him and he took it to St. John's Wood Riding House, where it was tried against others in the presence of the Duke of York and approved of as a model for arming the British Lancers. After a long hunt I at last found it at the Enfield manufactory, spoilt completely, the iron work and thong taken off and the flag gone. It cost me a long correspondence with the Board before I succeeded in getting it restored and put together. When I received it from him who had so long wielded it, the flag was dyed in blood, the blade notched, and also stained with blood; inside the thong was cut Clement VII, probably the number of his troop."

What had actually happened in Mercer's absence was this. Major Vandeleur, then of the 12th Lancers, submitted the lance to the Commander-in-chief, and on the 22nd June, 1827, a Board of Cavalry officers, of which Major Vandeleur was a member, under the Chairmanship of Major-General Sir Hussey Vivian was assembled to examine the weapon and report. The Board considered that this lance was "a weapon infinitely better than that now in use, and which it would be highly desirable should be adopted for the use of the Lancers of the British Army." The weapon had a length of 9 ft. 1 in.; weighed 3 lb. 11 oz., and was "a $\frac{1}{4}$ part lighter than the lance at present in use." The flag attached to it was 2 ft. 3 in. long

by 1 ft. 4 ins. wide, Its adoption as a pattern was finally approved by His Majesty on 24th February, 1829.

It would be interesting to learn the subsequent history of Mercer's keepsake.

The next eighty years or so of the history of the lance are mainly concerned with experiments of weight, length and design, and there is little of a historical nature to record except perhaps the epic charges of the Light Brigade at Balaclava and of the 21st Lancers at Omdurman. The first proving nothing so much as the indomitable courage of the British cavalryman, and the second demonstrating the value of the weapon against a savage or semi-civilised enemy.

During the South African War of 1899-1902, little opportunity was found for acquainting brother Boer with the effectiveness of the lance, and the cavalry were required to operate for the most part as mounted infantry. Various reasons are advanced for this, and one account states that after the first few months' campaigning, our horses were in such poor condition that it was found practically impossible for the lancers to get to grips with the nimble Boer. After hostilities ceased the lance was laid aside for a time, but was later revived and restored to its former eminence as a cavalry weapon.

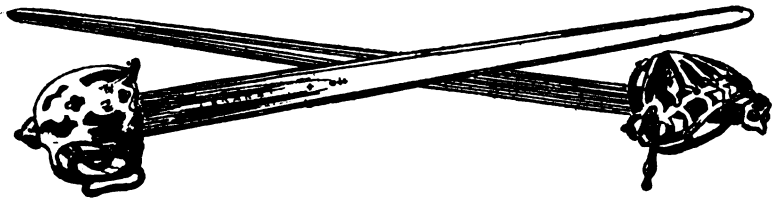
As in South Africa, so in France during the late war. The lancer regiments proceeded to the Western Front on the outbreak of war anxious to tickle the shoulder blades of the German military machine. But after the opening stages few opportunities presented themselves, although full advantage was taken of those that came their way, and several bright little actions, mostly against crack German Cavalry regiments, resulted. Two of these are worth mentioning. On 28th August, 1914, "C" Squadron, 12th Lancers, charged the 2nd Prussian Dragoon Regiment, inflicting some seventy or eighty casualties, and practically destroying it, with the loss of only ten men. In September, 1914, Colonel (now General Sir David) Campbell, with about thirty men of the 9th Lancers, charged and scattered a squadron of the 1st Guards Dragoners, about 120 strong, inflicting severe casualties. Colonel Campbell

in this action is said to have received the only German lance wound inflicted during the war.

In the other theatres of war, probably the most notable, although not—strictly speaking—lance action, occurred at Beersheba in October, 1917 (on which memorable occasion the writer happened to be present), when the Australian Light Horse Brigade, always opportunists, galloped two lines of Turkish trenches, using their fixed bayonets as lances with complete success.

With the cessation of hostilities came the inevitable stock-taking and overhaul of the army “in the light of the lessons learned,” and the Army Order quoted at the beginning of this article is perhaps the natural outcome of the introduction of more scientific weapons.

Lancers can take comfort, therefore, from the fact that, although at the moment they may have nothing better to vent their offensive spirit upon than the harmless but necessary tent peg and the less harmless but equally necessary “pig,” or maybe an occasional cow, history has a happy knack of repeating itself.



POLO IN PEKING

By CHIEN-MEN

ALTHOUGH North China has been in a troublesome and disturbed state for the past few years the foreign residents have managed to keep Polo alive in Peking, which, under the circumstances, can be considered a thoroughly satisfactory and very creditable performance. Particularly so when it is realized that the foreign population is a small one and a fluid one at that.

For players Peking has to rely chiefly on the British and American Legations, their military guards, the Customs Service and a few enthusiastic civilian supporters.

The fact that British and American officers provide the majority of the players is as it should be, for Polo is the soldier's game all the world over—and long may it continue to be so!

The Peking Club ground is an extremely fast, hard-mud one. It is boarded and is almost full size. The Club is fortunate in its location as it is situated on the French glacis within a few minutes' walk of the Legation Quarter, and is easily accessible to players residing in the Native City.

Peking players certainly have a great advantage over those at home, in that, owing to the long spell of fine dry weather, Polo can be played continuously from early April till mid October. Play takes place weekly, on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Saturdays; only a small number of days have been lost during the last two years on account of the abnormally dry summers which have prevailed.

The game is played on China ponies varying from 12.1 to 13.3 hands. Ponies of 14 hands are scarce and not easily

come by. A sound local rule prohibits anything over 14 hands being played.

The China pony is a stocky and somewhat ugly little animal, but is wonderfully stout-hearted and game to the last ounce. They can, however, when the spirit moves them, be as obstinate as the proverbial army mule.

Mongolia is the home of the China pony, from whence they are sent down by dealers, from time to time, to Peking, Tientsin and other large towns. Of recent years, owing to the prevalence of "Civil Wars," few have managed to get down South, Chinese generals having seized the best for their cavalry and other mounted services. (Chinese armies have not yet become mechanized !)

A raw pony, i.e., one just down from Mongolia, is known locally as a "Griffin." A Griffin can generally be distinguished from an older pony by the fact that it will not let an European handle it for a considerable time, being used solely to natives. This is a useful guide when purchasing a "so-called" Griffin. Men of experience with China ponies say that it is a question of smell. Knowing the Chinese Mafoo (groom) one would have expected the China pony to be overjoyed at the chance of a change of atmosphere !

The China pony is at its best at about six years old, it is unusual to find them being sent down from Mongolia at much under this age, they also begin to deteriorate rapidly at from about eleven years. There are, of course, exceptions, but they are few and far between. Their age, however, is surprisingly difficult to gauge with any degree of accuracy.

They are to be found in a wide range of colouring. Brown, black, bay, chestnut, white, dun and greys of numerous tints, many with peculiar spotted and striped markings. The writer has seen several with markings similar to the famous "Tetrarch" and numbers resembling the child's wooden rocking-horse. They have a very short rein and a pronounced thick neck which gives them an ugly, squat and ungainly appearance.

One quickly finds out, often to one's cost, that it takes a little time to become accustomed to the China pony. To put it in a nutshell, they are typical of the country of their birth. Their ways are quite different, in many respects, to those of the home-bred English polo pony. The short neck conveys a feeling of insecurity to the rider, there being little chance of recovery should the animal make a bad fault when galloping. They are apt to stumble if not kept up to the bit and are not so sure-footed as one would expect them to be from the nature of the country in which they are bred.

The Mongols practically live in the saddle and are wonderful horsemen, proceeding from place to place, no matter how short the distance, at a gallop. This possibly accounts for the fact that very few China ponies understand how to trot properly, and it may also be the reason for the stumbling habit, which is very noticeable when they come into foreign hands.

It is curious that though bred in Mongolia where the climate is exceptionally cold, yet they are delicate animals liable to rheumatism and require constant attention and careful stable management.

They are undoubtedly temperamental animals ; a change of ownership, location, surroundings and feeding affecting them to a marked extent.

The price of ponies varies a great deal, being chiefly dependent upon supply, the number of persons going home and selling off their stables and, to a certain extent, the turnover of military units.

Generally speaking, in normal times a well-known "made" pony will fetch about 200 dollars Mexican ; moderate "made" ponies and those untrained but likely to make good ones can be picked up at prices ranging from 75 to 150 dollars Mexican. For practical purposes, of recent years, the Mexican dollar can be taken at about ten to the pound sterling.

From this it will be seen that ponies can be considered cheap in Peking, thereby bringing Polo within the means of the majority and not of the minority as is the case in England to-day.

The average monthly cost of keep per pony in Peking, including a Mafoo's (Chinese groom) wages, is about \$25, exclusive of stabling. Stabling is a difficulty. Good modern stables are practically non-existent, except in the Legations, the military guard's barracks and the Customs compound.

Saddlery, stable requisites and sticks can be obtained locally at fairly reasonable prices.

Chinese bootmakers will turn out quite satisfactory boots at about \$35, if given an old pair or trees to make from. Careful choice should be made of the leather beforehand, Russian and American is chiefly used.

Breeches can be bought from Indian and Chinese tailors cheaper than at home and reasonably well cut; it is always advisable to give them a pair to copy from. Polo helmets and caps are imported from home and are very expensive. They should be brought out or ordered from home.

The monthly subscription to the Club is \$5 per player.

Therefore, considering all the factors, quite fair class polo, though naturally not approaching the home or Indian standards, can be obtained in Peking at a very reasonable "all-in" cost.

Peking is an excellent place for the novice to learn the game. Each year produces several beginners; the more experienced players being always willing to help and instruct. In addition, polo keeps one wonderfully fit throughout the long and trying summer months, which is an important point out here in the very far East. The writer played right through the great heat of a Peking summer in 1926 without feeling any ill effects.

During the season several tournaments are held and an annual match is played against the Tientsin Club. A similar match was played, until this year, against the Hankow Polo Club. These matches are known locally as the "Inter-Port" matches, and are the big events of the polo year in North China.

The writer had the good fortune to play in the Peking team against Hankow in 1926, at Hankow; in what will probably be the last of the series of matches against that Club for many years to come.



A TYPICAL CHINA POLO PONY

Note the ugly head and short thick neck.
The above pony is a weight carrier, the rider's weight being 13 stone 7 lbs.



A CHINA POLO PONY EMPLOYED AS A MILITARY CHARGER

A much lighter pony than the above.

Digitized by Google

"The Affair of Hankow" is indeed a matter to be deeply regretted from every point of view, especially has it been a hard and bitter blow to polo in China. The Hankow Country Club used to be one of the most picturesque clubs in the country, possessing excellent modern buildings, a race course, golf course, tennis courts and a polo ground of turf, which is exceptional for this part of the world. The whole being surrounded by shady tall trees.

As a matter of interest, Peking is 800 miles distant from Hankow by rail; the journey occupying in peaceful times some thirty-six hours. In August, 1926, the Peking Polo Team travelled 1,600 miles to play polo for some forty minutes, spending over six days in intense heat in the train *en route*. Surely this must be something approaching a record? The team got away from Hankow by the last train to reach Peking for a long period and just before the fight with the Cantonese for the possession of Hankow commenced.

China is a country of such vast distances that one embarks on a journey of several hundreds of miles as lightly as if one was running out of town to Brighton for the week-end.

One curious fact strikes the new-comer to Peking in regard to polo; though polo is reputed by many authorities to have originated in the Thibetan-Mongolian area* there are no Chinese players of the game in Peking. The Japanese, on the other hand, would, with a little encouragement, very probably take the game up. Though whether they would develop into high-class players remains to be seen.

The running of a polo club, whose organization and composition is international in nature, is a task entailing great patience and tact. That such a friendly spirit prevails amongst the members of the Peking Polo Club, is, in a great measure, due to their energetic Captain and Honorary General Manager.

* There are a few Chinese scroll pictures to be found in Peking drawn and painted chiefly by Mongol artists, depicting the game of polo as played in early days. The writer has one in his possession, showing four players garbed in heavy and highly coloured robes, mounted on diminutive Mongol ponies. The players carry extremely long sticks shaped at the end like the modern hockey stick.

One definite and final fact remains to be stated. The Club requires more playing members if polo is to continue to flourish in Peking ; it would be an everlasting pity if it was allowed to die out through lack of interest.

In these difficult times through which we are passing in China, everything possible should be done to show the Chinese that, in spite of their Civil Wars, the Foreigner can, and is determined to, carry on.

It is therefore the duty of the younger generation to see that the game of polo is not responsible for any loss of " face " in North China in the future.



THE CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES

By COLONEL J. G. BROWNE, C.M.G., D.S.O.

PART I

THIS force, I am sorry to say, will not be much longer in existence, as the Iraq Levies are being either gradually absorbed into the Iraq Army or disbanded.

The beginning of the force dates from the year 1915, when a few Arab mounted men, drawn from tribes round Nasiriyah on the Euphrates, in the Muntafik Division, were recruited by the S.S.O. Major Eady, of the Indian Army, for duty under the Intelligence Department. The force numbered forty (later increased to sixty), and was called the Arab Scouts. They were allowed to wear their own form of dress, produced their own horses, saddlery, rifles, arms and ammunition, and provided their own shelter both for themselves and their animals. (Photograph No. 1, attached, gives an idea of their appearance.) Their duties were many and various and included reconnoitring for British columns when acting in the area of the Division.

In March, 1916, the Political Officer at Nasiriyah, Major Hamilton, began to recruit a mounted force which was called the Political Guard. This force, besides acting as guard to the Political Officer during his tours of the Division, carried out police duties in the town and district.

The men in this force were paid at the same rates and were enlisted under the same conditions as the Arab Scouts. The strength of this force was also sixty. In June, after the fall of Kut, a corps of guards for river and telegraph line in the area Qurna, Amarah and Basra, was raised. It was divided to correspond to Political Divisions, and acted under Assistant Political Officers.

In June, 1916, the Arab Scouts and the Political Guard were amalgamated and renamed the Nasiriyah Mounted Guard. The strength of the force was raised to 150, and at the end of

the year to 250. By April of this year, the strength of the force had risen to 100, and by the addition of other forces raised by Civil Administrators, to 500 mounted and 400 dismounted men in July. Early in 1918 the force began to improve greatly and soon recruits came forward from all parts.

At the conclusion of hostilities, this force again changed its name from Nasiriyah Mounted Guard to Shahbanas, a name in use in Turkish times, and its duties were to supply the executive needs of the Civil Administration. A memorandum, issued on 8th October, 1918, laid down the organization, administration and pay of this force, and fixed its strength at 5,467. At this time it was intended that the Shahbanas should be the striking force, and, should become the nucleus of the future Arab Army.

As the name Shahbana was unpopular and synonymous with many abuses in Turkish times the name of the force was again changed to the Muntafik Horse. Then, in March, 1919, the whole force became known as Militia, with Major C. A. Boyle, D.S.O., as Inspecting Officer, headquarters being at Baghdad. During this year many important changes were made which all helped on the efficiency of the force.

- (1) A standard uniform was laid down ;
- (2) The force was re-armed with short British .303 rifles ;
- (3) A voluntary system of recruiting was introduced.

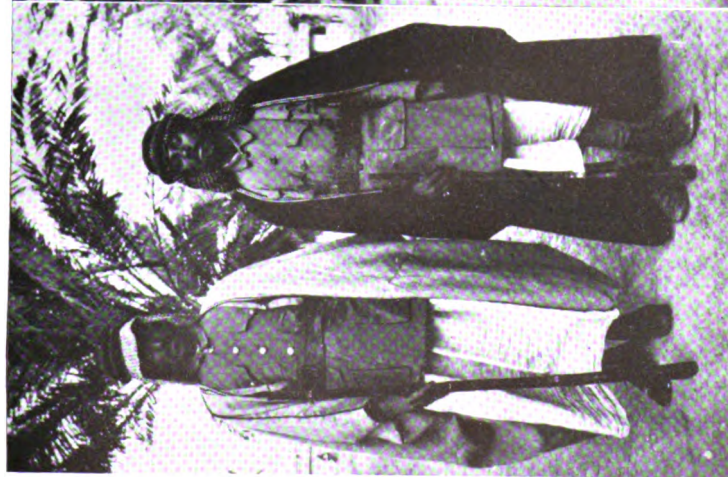
In July, 1919, the name of the force was changed again and the name Levy came into use for the first time. On 1st August, 1919, the Levy and Gendarmerie Orders were published. These defined the control of Levies, the duties of the Inspector-General of Levies, which were limited to inspection and administration, and laid down the establishment and duties of Commandants of areas. By these orders Levies became responsible to three people, namely :

The Inspecting Officer ;

The Political Officer ;

The local Administrative Commandant.

Levy Headquarters began to expand with the increase of the force. "A" and "Q" Branches were formed in September.



No. 1. Early 1916.



No. 2. 1916-1917



No. 3. Late 1917.

1919. The budget was dealt with by the Inspector General, except in the Kirkuk, Sulaimani and Mosul areas, where Political Officers did it. This caused division of control, both financially and administratively. The Force itself was divided into :

- (a) A striking force at the headquarters of the administrative area ;
- (b) District Police, in the Hillah, Diwaniyah and Shamiah divisions to be extended to the other areas except Dulaim, Mosul and Sulaimani.

Certain re-arrangements of units were made at this time. The general results were an improvement in training and strength, and in the latter part of 1919 the total strength of Levies was as follows :

Levies under Levy Headquarters	..	3,075
Levies	} under Political Officers	.. 1,786
Gendarmerie		

On 12th August, 1919, a memorandum was issued on the Arab and Kurdish Levies, thus giving the force its eighth change of name. This memorandum gave administrative details, scale of pay and strength, and under its authority, three Deputy Inspector Generals were appointed. For purposes of command and administration of the force, the country was divided into three Levy Areas, each of which was under a Deputy Inspector General or an Assistant Inspecting Officer with a Staff Captain and an Orderly Officer to assist him. Divisions were as follows :

"A" Area.	"B" Area.	"C" Area.
2nd Euphrates Levy.	1st Euphrates Levy.	1st Tigris Levy.
3rd Euphrates Levy.	Dulaim Gendarmerie. (For inspection only). Diala Levy. 2nd Tigris Levy.	Mosul Gendarmerie. Sulaimani Levy. (For inspection only). Arbil Levy.
<i>Headquarters.</i> Hillah.	<i>Headquarters.</i> Baghdad.	<i>Headquarters.</i> Mosul.

Despite a temporary shortage of British Officers at the time, there was a general improvement in training and organization.

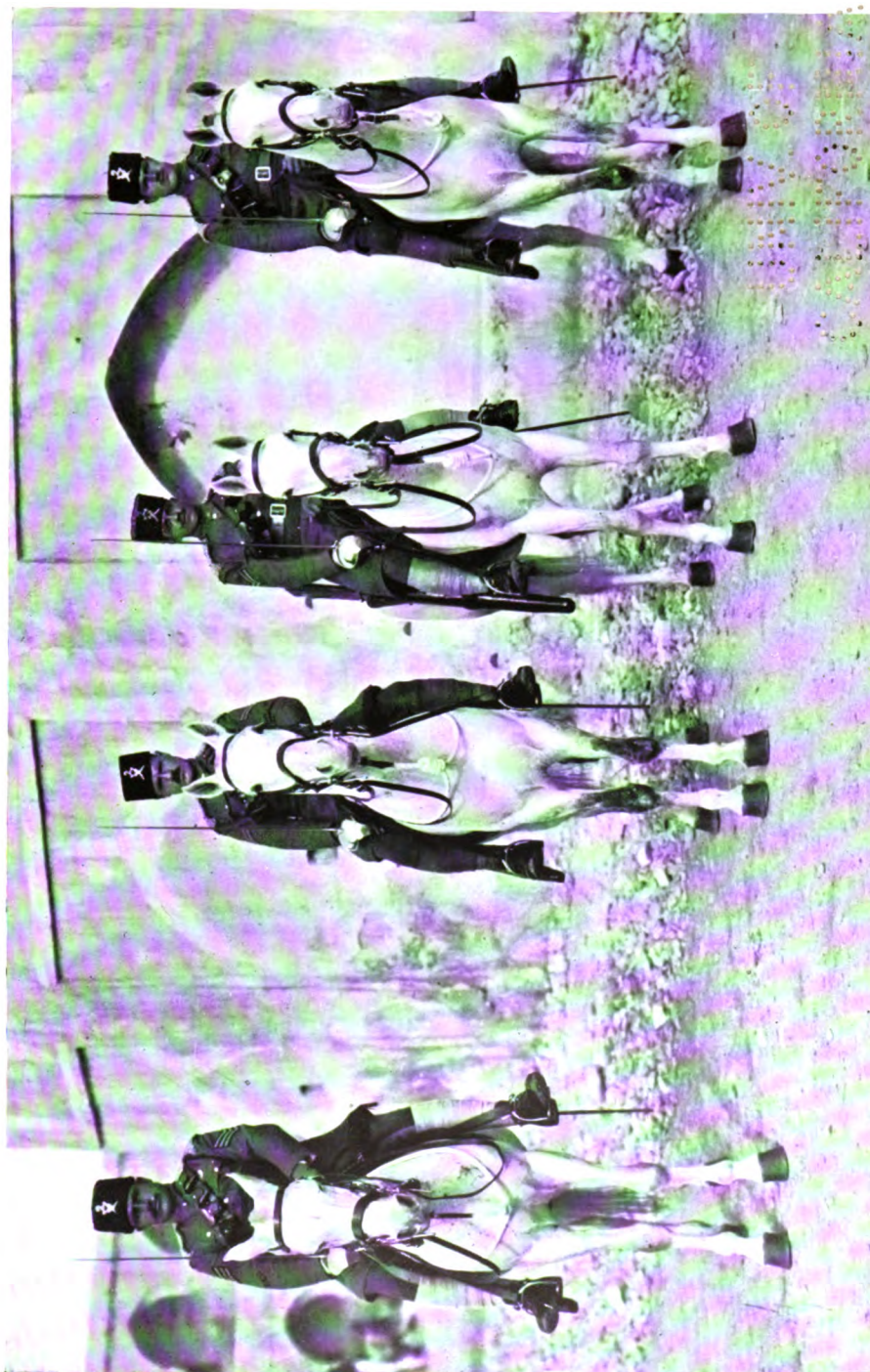
This memorandum also laid down the general circumstances in which levies could be called on. For minor operations the Political Officer could call on them; but if the duty for which he wanted them involved absence from their post for twenty-four hours, permission from the Commandant of the area was required. Also no action likely to involve the force in definite hostilities was to be undertaken without reference to the Military Area Commander. The location of the units of the force, as published in this memorandum, was as follows:

1st Euphrates Levy	..	..	Dulaim.
2nd „	„	..	Hillah.
3rd „	„	..	Shamiyah.
4th „	„	..	Diwaniyah.
5th „	„	..	Nasiriyah.
1st Tigris Levy	..	..	Samara.
2nd „	„	..	Kut.
3rd „	„	..	Amara.
Deir-ez-zor Levy	..	..	Deir-ez-zor.
Mosul Gendarmerie	..	..	Mosul.
Bakubah Levy	..	..	Bakubah.
Kaniqin „	..	..	Kaniqin.
Zobeir „	..	..	Basra.
Kirkuk „	..	..	Kirkuk.
Sulaimani Levy	..	..	Sulaimani.

The organization was mounted levies in squadrons of 100 and troops of 25, dismounted in companies of 100 and platoons of 25.

A memorandum on the training of the levies was brought out in November, 1919. It laid down training on the following lines. Levies were to practice rapid advances and flank attacks, advanced guard and rearguard action, and marsh fighting; in case of trouble in the river areas, work with aeroplanes, armoured cars, and gunboats, and training in mountain and desert warfare was to be carried out.

In a report about this period it was stated that Levies had



Grey Section, 1/2 Regt. 1st Best-turned-out Section. Bagdad Show, November, 1926.

2025

CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES 277

done no night work, or practice in warfare in hill country. March discipline was reported to be bad.

The personnel of this force at this time came from :

Arabs.—These were mainly townsmen, or from settled tribes as the desert tribes did not take kindly to discipline. A few old Arab officers of the Turkish Army also joined up.

Kurds.—Chiefly to be found in the Sulaimani and Arbil Levies and the Mosul Gendarmerie.

Kirkuklis.—(Turkomans) who served in the Kut, Baqubah and Hillah Levies.

There was considerable correspondence during January and February, 1920, on the subject of troops in the Mosul area and the advisability of a striking force at Amarah, and the control of the Sulaimani Levy. The decision about this latter unit was that for the present the Political Officer should control both its strength and its use. The Inspector General being responsible only for equipping it. In March, 1919, the Levies numbered :

24 squadrons of 115 sabres each	2,760
---------------------------------	----	----	-------

17½ companies	2,012
---------------	----	----	-------

and these were divided into :

(a) Striking force :	..	..	19 squadrons
			7½ companies

(b) Police	..	..	4 squadrons
			7 companies

(c) Undefined	..	..	1 squadron
The Sulaimani Levy	..	..	2 companies

In addition to defining the lines on which the training of the mounted and dismounted troops was to be carried out ; the following points were dealt with :

- (a) Pay and allowances. Proficiency pay was fixed at 5 rupees a month. The price of rations was fixed at 15 rupees a month. Horse rations 25 rupees a month.
- (b) The duties of the force were defined.
- (c) The administration, control and discipline of the Levies was to be in accordance with Levy and Gendarmerie Proclamation.

- (d) Regulations were made for certain specified areas, namely Mosul, Sulaimani and Dulaim, where the Political Officers remained in control of the Mosul and Dulaim Gendarmerie and the Sulaimani Levy ; the Inspector General inspecting and advising the Political Officers.

The location of the units as striking force and police was completed by 1st April, 1920. The duties so far carried out by the Levies were to be handed over to the police. The striking force was to be considered as an armed reserve, at the disposal of Political Officers, but under the same regulations as laid down in the memorandum of 12th August, 1919. The squadrons were now definitely to be trained as mounted infantry ; shock action was not considered practicable, nor were they armed or trained to carry it out. In consequence of the decision of the British Cabinet as to the future of Iraq, given on 27th August, 1921, it was decided to transfer the main force of the Levies from the Euphrates area to Kurdistan, and on 1st October, 1921, a scheme was put forward, by which the present force of 21 squadrons 11 companies, would become 21 squadrons, 10 companies and 2 batteries. The Inspector-General in drawing up his proposals strongly recommended the stiffening of the force with machine guns and automatic rifles. This was agreed to as regards Lewis and Hotchkiss rifles ; but the question of Vickers guns was relegated to the future.

By the end of 1921 the re-organization of the Levies according to the proposals of the Inspector-General was completed, as below. The names of the units are now given as they are at the present time :

Mosul Area.

Zakkho	..	2 companies, 2nd battalion.	
Aqra	..	2 companies, 2nd battalion.	
Dohuk	..	H.Q. 5th Regt.	H.Q. 2nd Battalion
		(less 2 squadrons)	(less 2 companies).
Telafar	..	2 squadrons, 5th Regiment.	

CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES 279

S. Kurdistan Area.

Arbil	..	4th Regiment.		
Kirkuk	..	2nd Regiment.		
Sulaimani	..	1st Sqn. Sul. Levy.	1 coy.,	Sul Levy.
Rania	..		1 pltn.	„ „
Chemchemal			$\frac{1}{2}$ coy.	„ „
Halebja	..		1 pltn.	„ „
Kaniqin	..	3rd Regiment.		

Euphrates.

Diwaniyah	..	1st Regiment (less 1 troop).		
Samawa	..		1st Bn. (less 2 coys. and 2 pltns.)	
Rumaithah	.		1 platoon.	
Nasiriyah	..		2 coys., 1st Battalion	
Baghdad	..	1 troop, 1st Regt.	1 platoon, 1st Regt.	
Total strength being :		Mounted troops	..	2,203.
		Infantry	.. ..	2,051.

A comparison of the change of strength in Levies up to date is interesting to see how the force grew in numbers and organization.

	<i>October, 1920</i>	<i>September, 1921</i>	<i>Early 1922</i>	<i>February, 1922</i>
<i>Strength</i>	2,000	4,000	—	5,000
<i>Units</i>	4 $\frac{1}{2}$ Sqdns. Arabs	<i>Euphrates</i>	5 Mtd. Regts.	4 Mtd. Regts.
	4 Sqdns. Kurds	12 Sqdns.	4 Coys. Assyrians	1 Pack Btty. Assyrians
	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ Coy.'s Arabs	3 Coys.	2 Coys. Sulaimani	2 Bns. Assyrians
	1 Coy. Kurds	<i>Kurdistan</i>	Kurds	
		9 Sqdns.	1 Sqn. Sulaim- mani Kurds	1 Bn. Kurds
		2 Coys.	1 Mixed Kurd & Assyrian Coy.	1 Bn. Marsh Arabs
		4 Coys. Assyrians being raised	3 Coys. Marsh Arabs	1 Vickers M.G.C. 1 W/T Section

[This last was the maximum strength reached by the force.

On 17th January, 1922, Levies were placed under G.O. C.-in-C. Military Forces, except for finance and administration. As the result of a discussion on the strength of Levies, the strength and organization, as below, was adopted on 3rd March, 1922 :

- 3 Regiments cavalry.
- 4 Battalions infantry.
- 1 Machine gun company.
- 2 Pack batteries.

The cavalry had no Hotchkiss guns but two Lewis guns were included in each infantry platoon.

To reduce the cavalry from four regiments to three, the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Regiments were amalgamated, and called the 3rd Cavalry Regiment, and the 4th Regiment was renamed the 2nd Cavalry Regiment. In May, 1922, the strength of the force was :

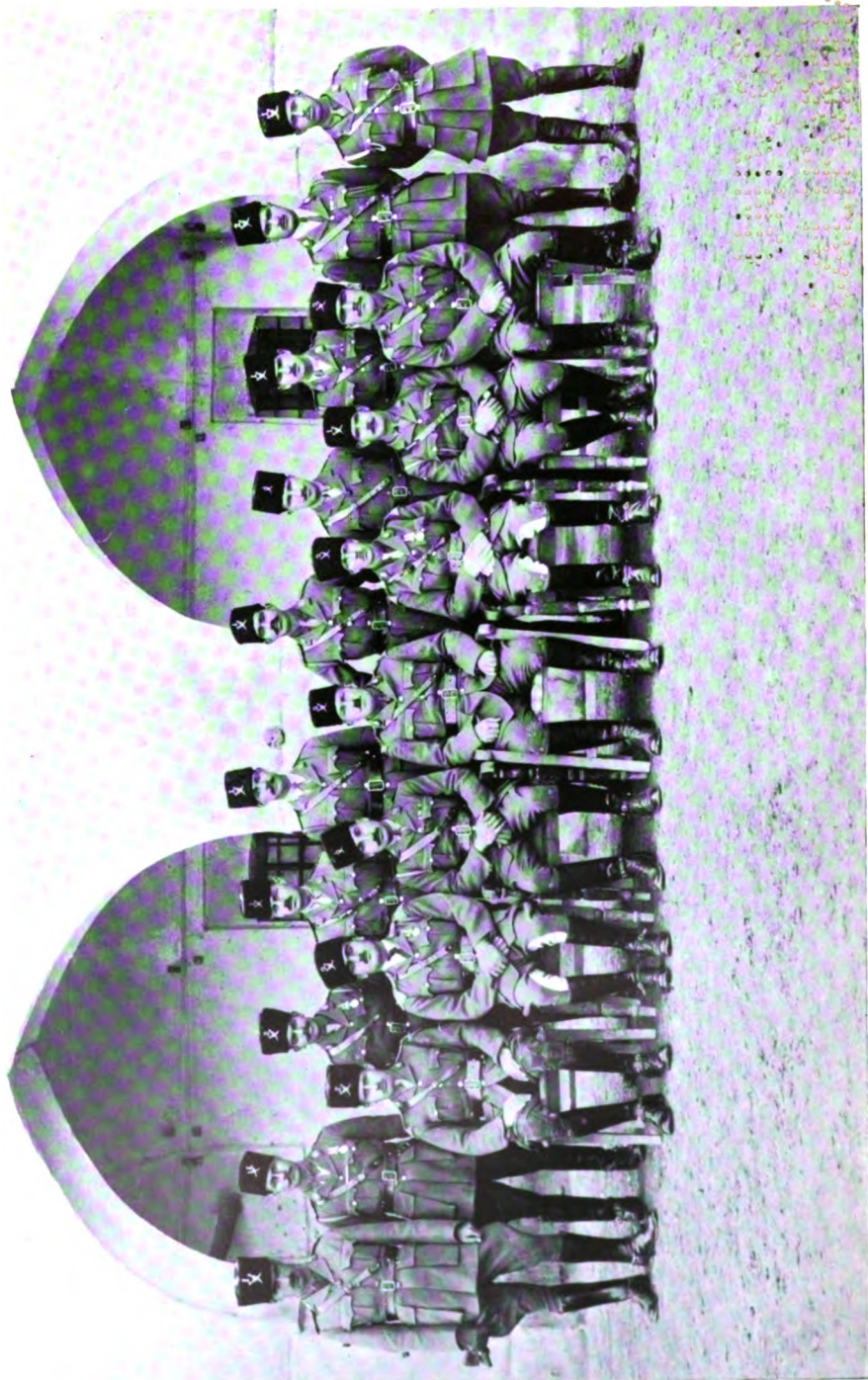
Cavalry	1,410	1 Regiment	457.
Infantry	3,248	1 Battalion	701.
Battery	210.		
Depot	173.		

Vickers guns were at this time held with regiments.

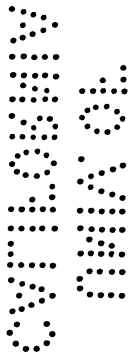
The average yearly cost of a squadron in this country at this time was 157,728 rupees, and of a company 170,928 rupees.

At the end of 1922, Colonel Dobbin succeeded Colonel Sadleir-Jackson. He moved his headquarters from Baghdad to Mosul, and the Levies were then located as follows :

Mosul	..	Levy Headquarters.
		2nd Cavalry Regiment.
		Pack Battery.
		3rd Battalion (less 2 companies).
		4th Battalion (being formed).
		Ordnance.
Dulip	..	2nd Battalion (less 3 companies).
Zakkho	..	2 Companies, 2nd Battalion.
Fesh Khabur		1 Company, 2nd Battalion.
Aqra	..	2 Companies, 3rd Battalion.
Arbil	..	3rd Cavalry Regiment.
Kirkuk	..	1st Cavalry Regiment (less 1 squadron)
Nasiriyah	.	1st Battalion.
Kaniqin	..	1 Squadron, 1st Cavalry Regiment.



Native Officers, 1/2 Regt. Jan. 15th, 1927.



CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES 281

Machine guns were brigaded in December, 1922, and the Levy Machine Gun Company Headquarters established at Mosul.

Early in 1924, it was decided to amalgamate the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Regiments, to form the 2nd Cavalry Regiment, which moved to Kirkuk, the 1st being located at Arbil. In 1926 these regiments changed stations, and, just after this move was completed, orders came to amalgamate the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Regiments. This amalgamation was completed by the end of September, 1926, the single regiment now left being called the 1st/2nd Cavalry Regiment, stationed at Kirkuk. (See Plates Nos. 2 and 3). Its disbandment has now been ordered and by the end of 1927 the Cavalry of the Iraq Levies will have ceased to exist.



A FAMILY REGIMENT IN THE PENINSULAR WAR

By MAJOR-GENERAL J. C. DALTON,
Colonel Commandant, R.A.

THE distinguished regiment to which the above title refers is now known as the "4th Queen's Own Hussars" and was originally raised on 17th July, 1685, as the "Princess Anne of Denmark's (later Queen Anne) Regiment of Dragoons," a full list of the officers on 1st January, 1686, being given in Cannon's "Historical Records of the British Army," where its services up to the end of 1842 are concisely dealt with.

It is unnecessary to descant on these services further than to say that they cover most of the chief military achievements at home and abroad since the Regiment was raised, and include a splendid record in the Great War.

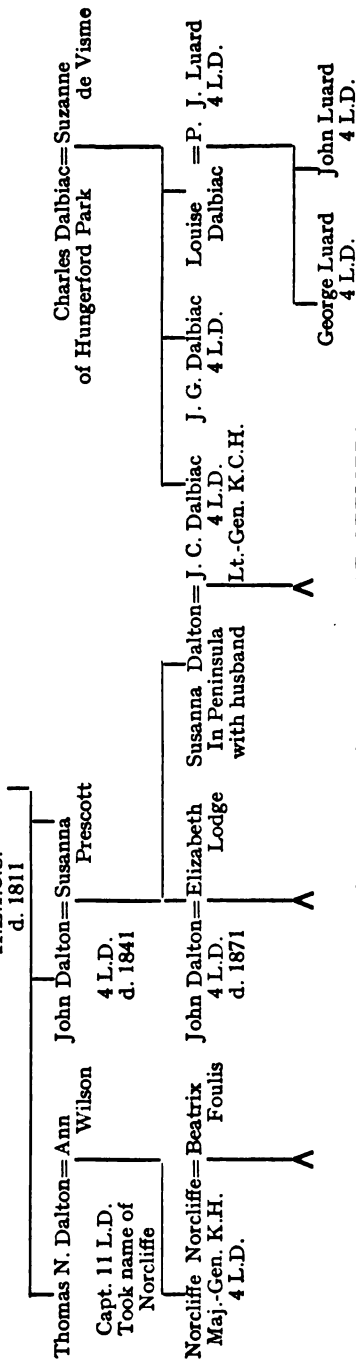
In the CAVALRY JOURNAL for October, 1912, there appeared a short paper by my brother, the late Mr. Charles Dalton, on the centenary of the victory of Salamanca, giving a graphic letter addressed by Lieutenant Norcliffe Norcliffe of the 4th L.D., soon after the battle, to his father, describing his adventures and how, being dangerously wounded, he was tenderly nursed by his first cousin Susanna Dalbiac, the wife of the Second in Command of the Regiment.

Napier relates in his "Peninsular War" how this lady accompanied her husband to the Peninsula and shared the hardships of the campaign.

The Editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL has kindly reproduced Lieutenant Norcliffe's letter, in order to complete the story of his wound and capture contained in another letter,* lately discovered, from Mrs. Dalbiac (my great aunt), written from Salamanca, two days after the battle, to her uncle, Norcliffe's father, in which she describes the finding of his son on the field

* In the possession of Lt.-Col. Cecil Howard-Vyse, of Langton Hall, Malton, to whom I am indebted for the use of it.

CAPT. JOHN DALTON=ISABELLA WRAY
H.E.I.C.S.
d. 1811



SHORT MILITARY RECORDS OF OFFICERS

THOMAS N. DALTON.—1756-1820. Lt. 11 L.D. Dec. 1775; Capt. May 1780; Retd. 1784; Lt.-Col. York Vols. JOHN DALTON.—1758-1841. Senior Cornet 4 L.D. in A.L. 1777; Lt. Mar. 1777; Capt. Jan. 1783; Maj. Feb. 1794; Lt.-Col. (Army) May 1796.

SUSANNA I. DALTON (DALBIAC).—1783-1829. Married 1805. Accompanied husband to Peninsula 1809-1812. NORCLIFFE DALTON (NORCLIFFE).—1791-1862. Cornet 4 L.D. Feb. 1807. Assumed surname Norcliffe Aug. 1807; Lt. Apr. 1808; Capt. Feb. 1816; Maj. Aug. 1821; Maj. 17 Dec. 1821; H.P. 18 L.D. May 1823; Lt.-Col. Jan. 1837; Col. Nov. 1851; Maj.-Gen. Aug. 1855; K.H. 1836; K. of G., Order of St. John 1858. Silver Medal, 4 clasps.

JOHN DALTON.—1784-1864. Cornet 4 L.D. May 1800; Lt. Mar. 1804; Capt. Nov. 1808; resigned 1812. N.B. 2 Troops 4 L.D. ordered home to Depot, 1811. Silver Medal with 2 clasps.

JAMES CHARLES DALBIAC.—1776-1847. Cornet 4 L.D. 1793; Lt. 1794; Capt. 1798; Maj. 1801; Lt.-Col. 1808; Col. (Army) 1814; B.G. (India) 1822-1824; Maj.-Gen. 1825; Lt.-Gen. 1838; Col. 3 D.G. 1839; Col. 4 L.D. 1842. Created

N.B.—I am indebted to Lieut.-Colonel J. H. Leslie for many of the above references.—J.C.D.

K.C.H.; was 2nd in Command of the "Queen's Own" in the Peninsula (War Medal with 4 clasps); G.O.C. Dublin 1828-1830; I.G. Cavalry 1830-1835; M.P. for Ripon 1835-1837.

JOHN GEORGE DALBIAC. Cornet 11 L.D. Feb. 1798; Lt. May 1800; Capt. H.P. Oct. 1801; Capt. 4th L.D. May 1803; Maj. Oct. 1811; ret. Dec. 1811. Distinguished at Albuera 1811. No record of Medals, etc.

PETER JOHN LUARD.—1783-1830. Not in A.L. 1773. Lt. 4 L.D. in A.L. 1777; Capt. Dec. 1778; Not in A.L. 1789. GEORGE LUARD.—1781-1847. Cornet 4th L.D. in A.L. 1806. Lt. Feb. 1807; Capt. 18th L.D. July 1813; Maj. Sept. 1813; H.P. Nov. 1821; Maj. 18th L.D. May 1823; H.P. Apr. 1826. Silver Medal with 7 clasps. Waterloo Medal.

JOHN LUARD.—1790-1875. In Royal Navy 1802-1807; Cornet 4th L.D. May 1809; Lt. May 1811; H.P. 1814; Lt. 16th L.D. Mar. 1815; Capt. Dec. 1821; Maj. Oct. 1834; H.P. 1834; Lt.-Col. June 1838; Maj. 21st Foot May 1839; Lt.-Col. 10th Foot Dec. 1842; H.P. Mar. 1845; Ret. 1848. Silver Medal with 3 clasps; Waterloo Medal. Distinguished at Siege of Bhurtpore.

the morning after the fight, and the measures she took to have him properly housed after personally dressing his wounds. According to this letter she was also looking after her husband's nephew, Lieutenant John Luard, of the same regiment.

In order to make clear the relationships of the three families represented, viz. : those of Dalton, Dalbiac and Luard, I have drawn up a short pedigree which I think will justify the heading of this article.

As will be seen from the above there were actually present in the Peninsula in the "Queen's Own Dragoons" three Daltons (Norcliffe being of that family), including one lady, two brothers Dalbiac and two brothers Luard. Besides these there were two of the older generation Dalton and Luard, both 4th L.D. ex-Officers.

I now give the two letters verbatim.

[Copy of a letter to Thomas Norcliffe, Esq., Petergate, York, 24th July, 1812.]

FLORES DE AVILA,
9 Leagues on the Madrid Road.
24th July, 1812.

MY DEAREST UNCLE,

I never took my pen to address you with less pleasure than at this moment, because I hate to occasion pain or anxiety to those I love ; the Papers would, however, inform you, if I did not, that dear Norcliffe was wounded on the 22nd, at the Battle of Arapiles, and perhaps without the consolatory assurance, which *I can truly send you*, that Dr. Gunning, head surgeon to Lord Wellington, pronounced the wound to be not dangerous.

He received it whilst gallantly charging with his Troop ; the ball grazed the top of his head without, thank God, lodging. Of course he fell and was taken prisoner, but the enemy left him when our Cavalry so gloriously drove them from the Hill. He was not found till the following morning, and, having bled profusely, was of course very faint. Dr. Gunning, however, seems to think his having bled so much a favourable circumstance, as it will keep off fever.

I took him, my dear Uncle, to Salamanca ; procured him the best advice, an excellent house and bed, and every possible comfort ; I also washed and bathed his wound, preparatory to the Surgeons dressing it, as I thought my hands would do it more tenderly. The dear fellow was perfectly himself and very grateful for my little exertions ; the wound is on the left side of his head, almost 3 inches long, but thank God not deep enough to occasion alarm. After he was dressed I got him clean and comfortable and put into an excellent bed, where he soon fell into a quiet sleep.

At four o'clock in the evening I quitted him and set off for Dalbiac, whom I left at the same hour in the morning, far from well. Though I travelled



Very sincerely yours
L. Norcliffe

Lieut.-Colonel NORCLIFFE NORCLIFFE, K.H.

From a print in possession of Major-General J. C. Dalton, R.A.

Digitized by Google

all night on horseback I did not reach him till 8 o'clock yesterday, when I met him on the road to this place. I should have returned to Salamanca this morning had we not received a very good account from my nephew, John Luard, who remains by my desire in the same house with Norcliffe. The distance is 9 leagues, and to say the truth I am so much fatigued that Dalbiac would not allow me to go, as there was no reason to be uneasy about my cousin.

John Luard has a horse to send express to me, should any unfavourable symptoms occur, which at present I have no reason to apprehend; and I trust you and my Aunt will believe that *I have and shall* watch him with sisterly care.

I do not enter on the subject of the engagement of the 22nd more than that the old 4th covered itself with glory and materially tended to the success of the day. I refer you to my Father for all other particulars.

I bless God my dear Husband was not touched; he desires to be most affectionately remembered to you all.

God bless you!

Etc., etc.,

SUSANNA ISABELLA DALBIAC.

[*Copy of letter from Lieutenant N. Norcliffe, 4th Light Dragoons, to his Father. The original is preserved at Langton Hall.*]

SALAMANCA,

10th August, 1812.

MY BELOVED FATHER,

Thanks to the Almighty, and the very great care of my surgeon, I am quite out of danger from the severe wound I received, but it was perhaps the most hairbreadth escape that ever was heard of, the skull was just injured, and the tenth part of an inch more must have consigned me to an eternal rest. We were pursuing the French Infantry, which were broken and running in all directions. I was cutting them down as well as I could, when in the hurry and confusion I lost my regiment and got with some soldiers of the 5th Dragoon Guards; on looking behind me, I could only see a few of the 5th, and we were in the centre of the enemy's infantry, amongst whom were a few Chasseurs and Dragoons. Nothing now remained but to go on, as we were in as much danger by going any other way.

I rode up to a French officer, who was, like the rest, taking to his heels, and cut him just behind his neck; I saw the blood flow, and he lost his balance, and fell from his horse. I perceived my sword was giving way in the handle, so I said to the officer who lay on the ground: "*Donnez-moi votre épée*"—I really believed he was more frightened than hurt; I sheathed my sword and went on with his. I had not gone 10 yards further before my horse was wounded in the ear by a gun shot; he turned sharp round, and at the same instant I was shot in the head. I turned giddy, and fell off. I can recollect a French Dragoon taking away my horse. I was senseless a few seconds, and when I recovered, I saw the French Dragoons stripping me of everything; they began by turning my pockets inside out, to look for money

which they stole ; my sword and sash, hat, boots, and spurs off my feet, dragging me along the ground in the most barbarous manner, saying : "*Eh . . . Anglais, vous n'êtes pas à cheval.*" Another said : "*Eh, je sais (sic) bien le garçon, il m'a poursuivi . . .*"; in fact I never saw such usage in my life. "*Allons donc, enlève-toi*" said another ; I shook my head, as much as to say "I am unable to rise," when he held a sabre over me, crying out : "*. . . je vous mettrai a coup de sabre.*" At last I was left by the cavalry, and the French infantry came all round me, and I expected the same treatment. Judge of my surprise, when I experienced quite the contrary. "*Courage, mon ami.*" I asked for water, being very faint from loss of blood. "*Ma foi ! je n'ai point de l'eau, pauvre garçon,*" and another "*Êtes-vous officier ?*" I stammered out : "*Oui, Lieutenant de Quatrième Régiment de Dragons.*" Presently an officer came up with five [soldiers] ; each took a leg and an arm, and the fifth supported my head, which was bleeding profusely, and I will say I never saw men more careful ; if ever I groaned, owing to the pain of being carried, they said to each other : "*Gardez-vous, gardez-vous, camarade.*" They carried me into the very centre of the French column, close to a very fine battalion of Grenadiers, with great bear-skin caps. I rested here a little, for I was very weak, and a great number of French officers came round me and were most particularly civil. One, Colonel of Grenadiers, poured some brandy into a cup and wanted me to drink it ; I just wet my lips. He then ordered 5 Grenadiers to fall out, and carry me further into the wood. I made a sign that I had rather be carried by the men who brought me there, fearful of falling into fresh hands. Our infantry was at the time advancing again to the attack ; the five men who carried me were desired by all the French officers to take particular care that no-one ill-used me, and that if I could not get away, I was to be laid under a tree. The 5 men seeing our infantry advance, laid me down very carefully under an olive tree, and each of them shook hands with me before they left me, and said : "*Je vous souhaite bien, Monsieur,*" and they also desired that I would remember they belonged to the 65th Regiment. Our Infantry I could now see (though it was getting dark) were bayonet to bayonet, and I had at last the pleasure of seeing the enemy running in every direction. I had the presence of mind to take off my jacket and cram it into a bush, and as my boots were off I lay as if I was dead, and when they were running away they all passed my tree and took me for a Frenchman. Several of the musket shots from our men struck the back of the tree where I was, but I lay very close to the root. Drums, muskets and everything they could not easily carry, were thrown away by the enemy. One Frenchman was wounded by a musket ball in the side, and fell close to me. I waited till the French had all passed me, and then ran as fast as my strength would let me towards our Riflemen. I was so delighted at getting back, I actually threw my arms round the necks of our infantry. They led me up to where the 6th Division was, and I fell down quite exhausted at the feet of the Grenadier Company of the 32nd Regiment. A corporal and a file of men led me under a bank, and I really think I owe my life to the corporal, who took his blanket out of his knapsack, and went 3 miles to search for water for me. They then tied a blanket between two sergeants' pikes and carried



Drawn on Stone by Lt.-Colonel Luard.

Photograph by Messrs. Davey, Harrogate

Lieut.-General SIR CHAS. DALBIAC, K.C.H.

Colonel of the 4th or Queen's Own Light Dragoons

TO THE
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

me more to the rear, to the 5th Foot ; the surgeon of which regiment just tied a bandage round my head, and I was obliged to stay in the cold all night. The agony I suffered was beyond description. The next morning I was carried on a mule to the Regiment, and Mrs. Dalbiac [his cousin], whose kindness I shall never forget, got me carried into Salamanca, and washed my head and put me to bed ; she then got Dr. Gunning to come, who dressed my wounds properly and bled me. The next day I was bled again, and also the day following ; in the whole I lost 48 ounces of blood.

I am now doing well, and I hope to get up to the Army, which is marching on Madrid with General Cotton, who is wounded in the arm, who starts in a fortnight ; he has been very civil.

This is the second horse I have lost in action, as also my saddle, bridle, collar, sword, sash, musket, boots and spurs, and pouch. My beloved Father will see I have been obliged to draw largely on the agent owing to these losses. It was a glorious day for our Brigade. They behaved nobly ; 4 men killed of the troop I commanded, and several men and horses wounded. It was a fine sight to see the fellows running, and as we held our swords over their heads, fall down on their knees, drop their muskets, and cry : "*Prisonnier, Monsieur.*" You see I am not born to be a prisoner. Love to my Mother,

Etc., etc. N. NORCLIFFE.

On Jan. 19th, 1812, the "Queen's Own" formed part of the Heavy Brigade of Cavalry, under Maj.-Gen. Le Marchant, together with the 5th D.G. and 13th L.D.

A few words may be considered useful with regard to the services of the regiment, and especially at Salamanca, though it is a victory, no doubt, well known to readers of this JOURNAL.

In 1809, after the retreat to Coruña and the lamented death of General Sir John Moore, reinforcements were sent out to the British Army in Portugal. These included the "Queen's Own Dragoons" who embarked at Portsmouth in April, 1809, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Lord Edward Somerset, and were quartered in Lisbon.

In May they joined Lord Wellington's Army, some 20,000 strong, at Abrantes, and on the 27th and 28th July took an honourable part in the defeat of Joseph Bonaparte at the battle of Talavera.

After wintering in Portugal, Wellington took up a strong position at Busaco in that country, where he was assailed on 27th September, 1810, by the French in great strength under

Masséna, whose determined onslaughts were successfully repulsed, after which the British retired to the famous lines of Torres Vedras and after three months' vain attempts to force them, Masséna retired in March, 1811, pursued by the Allies. "The Queen's Own" was engaged in all the above, and in much



desultory fighting, including the covering of the Siege of Badajoz; and when Marshal Soult concentrated a large force to relieve that fortress, the British took up a position at Albuera on 16th May, 1811, at which sanguinary engagement two squadrons of the 4th, under Captain Dalbiac (brother of the Colonel) and two of the 13th L.D., all under Lieutenant-Colonel Muter, of the latter, greatly distinguished themselves. The French continued their retreat and the Regiment was again prominent in the brilliant cavalry affair of Usagre (sometimes called Llerena) on 11th April, 1812.

After Wellington entered Salamanca, on 17th June, and had invested and reduced the forts on the Tormes, Marshal Marmont—who had advanced to that river from the Douro—and Wellington manœuvred against each other with varying success on either side, and the latter, knowing that his adversary was expecting reinforcements, had aimed at avoiding a general action unless he had a good chance of success. His object was, at all costs, to keep open his communications with Portugal by the Ciudad Rodrigo road.

The rival forces finally came into contact on 22nd July, 1812, near the village of Arapiles, when the situation looked somewhat serious for the Allies. However, the genius and power of rapid decision on the part of Wellington led him suddenly to detect a false move on the part of Marmont, who in his anxiety to try and cut the Allies off the Ciudad Rodrigo road, detached his left wing to threaten the Allies' communications, thereby leaving a gap in his line. Wellington with lightning rapidity ordered Pakenham, with the 3rd Division, to cross the river to a position near the road, concealed from the enemy, reversed the front of his army, wheeled it up, and at 5 p.m. hurled Pakenham against the French left—Thomières' Division advancing in column—and forced it to retire in disorder, the *débauche* being completed by a magnificent charge of Le Marchant's Heavy Cavalry flanked by Anson's and D'Urban's Portuguese Horse. There was a general retreat of the French, who, being vigorously pursued with heavy loss, retreated on Valladolid and Burgos, and Wellington entered Madrid on 12th August, 1812.

“*DU GROUPE DE RECONNAISSANCE*”

(Translated from an Article by CHEF D'ESCADRON CHANOINE
in “*L'Armée d'Afrique.*”

PRIOR to the Great War our cavalry was organized for shock action alone, the action of cavalry dismounted being looked upon as a rare occurrence; but since 1914 field and machine guns have definitely decided that “the vulnerability of cavalry has forbidden its appearance mounted on any field of action which may be under fire.” Further, in his circular of the 5th August, 1919, Marshal Pétain, in reviewing the lessons of the war, said that “the special qualities of cavalry consist in its capacity for bringing forward rapidly, and across any description of country, all possible engines of fire in alliance with the great manœuvring power of this arm”; while our Cavalry Regulations for 1923 lay down the following as the general principle for the employment of cavalry: “Cavalry manœuvres mounted, and fights with the rifle.”

Since, then, shock action by cavalry is henceforth forbidden—except, of course, under very exceptional circumstances—there still remains for it a very real source of possible success, viz., *surprise*, and this surprise will arise naturally from the remarkable mobility of cavalry, from the ease and rapidity with which it can pass over any description of country, and from its power of improvising at short notice the whole power of the fire-weapon, a power which in modern times is very great.

Contrary to the opinions expressed, unfortunately, by many writers, cavalry is not an out-of-date arm. So far from having reduced it to something of no consequence, the progress of science has actually increased its power tenfold. It is energetically engaged in adapting every one of the new engines of war to aid it in the accomplishment of its mission. A body of cavalry is no mere congeries of men and horses, but on the

contrary a complete organism, containing also machine guns, cannon, armoured cars and aeroplanes, the whole grouped with and forming the complement of the mounted body.

This organism is ruled and guided by strict regard to two points of view, which it is here proposed to study :

(a) Mobility ;

(b) Fire.

(a) MOBILITY

In all our great cavalry bodies we find certain mobile elements capable of going anywhere ; these are the mounted cavalrymen ; elements of a relative mobility—the horse-artillery drawing our 75's ; mechanical elements moving by land, able to move at greater speed than the mounted men, but limited in their mobility by the need of keeping to the roads ; these are composed of the following :

Armoured cars ;

Motor-machine guns, not armoured ;

Cyclist Companies, having varying methods of employment according to whether they are equipped with folding bicycles which can be taken to pieces and carried on the back, or the ordinary kind ;

Pioneer cyclists with material carried in cars ; and, finally, Mechanized artillery and infantry reinforcements carried in lorries.

Cavalry also carries with it all means for the transmission of messages, including telephones. The larger bodies are equipped with pontoons for the passage of rivers, while in addition to all these land-aids, our cavalry divisions are also in possession of all kinds of aerial assistance whereby the aviator collaborates with the mounted man in the complete reconnaissance of the country to be operated over.

Equipped with so many and varied aids the cavalry can always select from among its different tools one specially fitted for a particular use in any given country, while every one of its weapons is capable of a very speedy deployment, as was proved in 1918, when our cavalry divisions, specially called up to fill the gaps in the front, covered immense distances and

reached the front complete in all respects, at least as rapidly and often in less time than did infantry units carried in lorries ; for example, the 6th Cavalry Division, called up on the 12th April, 1918, from the Aumale region to move to Kemmel, covered 210 kilometres in three days and went straight into action. It was back in its original station by the 12th May, and was then again called upon by reason of the fighting in the Chemin des Dames ; again it covered 225 kilometres in three days and went into action immediately on its arrival. Finally, under similar conditions, it took part in the operations of the Sixth and Tenth Armies, and at the close of hostilities the Division was in Flanders, ready for the forward movement which was put a stop to by the Armistice.

(b) FIRE

Our cavalry units are in a position to make use of a very considerable fire-power and a power, moreover, which is all the more costly to an enemy since the action of fire can be used in *quantity*, and, thanks to its mobility, by *surprise*, thus accentuating the moral effect.

A cavalry division on a war footing can put in line a total of close upon 3,000 rifles, the 450 rifles of its *chasseurs cyclists*, more than 50 rifles of its *sapeurs cyclists*, 315 automatic rifles, 219 V.B., 120 machine guns, 36 guns of .37, 3 mortars, 24 "Seventy-fives," and all this without taking into account the heavy artillery, the attachment of which is now tolerably general. Taking the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" with which this paper is mainly concerned, we see that these several units constitute in the bulk a very considerable fire-power. Their composition and armament are as follows :

- (1) The "Groupe" Staff.
- (2) One squadron of four troops, each of two sections, and one machine gun section, containing 80 rifles, 8 light automatics, 8 V.B., and 2 machine guns.
- (3) One section of armoured cars or machine guns mounted on lorries (4 armoured cars and 5 side-cars equipped with wireless), 5 light automatics, 4 machine guns and four 37 mm. guns.

- (4) One company of *chasseurs cyclists*, each of three sections; and one machine gun section, disposing of 120 rifles, 9 light automatics, 9 V.B., and 2 machine guns; the whole making a total of 200 rifles, 22 light automatics, 17 V.B., 8 machine guns and 4 guns of 37 mm.

The "Groupe de Reconnaissance" of an Army Corps contains two squadrons instead of one, its total armament then being 280 rifles, 30 light automatics, 25 V.B., 10 machine guns and 4 guns of 37 mm. mounted on armoured cars.

Let us consider the six main conditions under which "Groupes de Reconnaissance" may be employed:

- (a) Covering the front and defensive action;
- (b) The advance, and gaining touch with the enemy;
- (c) The maintenance of contact;
- (d) The delaying or holding action;
- (e) The general mission of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" when the infantry has come up and relieved it at the front;
- (f) Actual reconnaissance.

(a) COVERING THE FRONT AND DEFENSIVE ACTION

The rôle of the divisional "Groupe de Reconnaissance" is to guard the troops of the division against any possible surprise, to prevent any attack by the enemy. The infantry must be made to see and feel that they are covered by active and vigilant patrols, for, it being for them a matter of *morale* they should be able to march and live in absolute tranquility up to the moment of action, and it is the function of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance," normally placed under the orders of the commander of the advanced guard, to ensure this security to the infantry, moving a short distance in front and also to a flank, in the case where the infantry division is acting independently. It moves between the advanced guard and the enemy, holding all important points, whether of defence or of observation, all points in fact whence the enemy can see or from which he might act. This protective action is carried out by obtaining information

by means of patrols sent out on a limited radius, by fire and by a service of liaison and information carefully organized.

The "Groupe de Reconnaissance" of the Army Corps has a somewhat more important rôle, though its action may not necessarily be carried out on a very much larger scale. The pre-war cavalry regulations laid down that the mission of this body was to hold solidly all avenues of approach accessible to the enemy; but the experience of the Great War has proved that the corps cavalry cannot fulfil this mission except at the cost of an extreme weakening of power, involving a diminution of its capacity for defence and possibly premature exhaustion.

Actually, the regulations of to-day bid us guard against the tendency to ask overmuch of our Army Corps "Groupes de Reconnaissance," and it is laid down in Article 267, that "the Corps G.R. should not, in view of its comparatively few effectives, seek information at a distance along the whole front; it should either be attached to the advanced guard to co-operate in ensuring protection on the march, or should be made use of as a whole to obtain any information specially required." Such a mission should always be given a limited range, since a "Groupe de Reconnaissance," no matter how well it may be armed, is really no more than "a big patrol."

We have seen that this party engaged in covering the front holds the ground entrusted to it by means of the information it gathers, by fire and by good organization of its transmission system. Information is gleaned by means of patrols pushed out to the front to such a distance that they may at any time be in a position to give the alarm; they must not be pushed too far out, thereby running the risk of capture. The use of fire allows the party to deny to the enemy the lines of approach, if not for any great length of time, still for a period sufficient to permit the troops in rear to make all necessary dispositions. It must therefore form in its front a screen of fire, of which the machine guns will provide the long-range flanking fire, the light automatics the frontal fire, while the V.B. will search the depressions not covered by ordinary gun fire. This screen is elaborated by the commander and worked out by the com-

manders of troops and sections, each one of whom, no matter how junior in rank he may be, must have a full knowledge of the idea and object of this fire-screen. Further, this screen of fire will be all the more valuable if the riflemen, the guns and the machine guns are all provided with cover. The cavalryman of to-day must, therefore, be able to use his entrenching tools and provide cover for himself equally with the infantry soldier. Finally, the modern methods of forwarding information enable news of the approach of an enemy to be instantly transmitted so that it reaches even to the rear without delay. In the divisional "Groupe de Reconnaissance" the quickest and the most practical means of sending messages is the visual, but there are of course many other methods at hand which can equally be made use of—the mounted orderly, the car, the field telephone, wireless, or signals from aircraft.

The "Groupe de Reconnaissance" and aircraft must at all times maintain the very closest connection; signallers accompanying squadron commanders must be specially trained men; and all mounted men and cyclists of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" should not hesitate to act when an aviator gives them any direction.

(b) THE ADVANCE, AND GAINING TOUCH WITH THE ENEMY.

Our army corps and divisions are now on the march, let us suppose. The reconnaissance groups, forming part of the advanced guard, are moving in front, going forward from one point of *appui* to another by *bounds*, that is to say, from one position of security to another. When at the halt a body of troops is all together, concentrated ready to meet successfully any attack which an enemy might make upon it; but since, when in movement, it is comparatively defenceless, the time spent on the march must be reduced to a minimum. The commander, in consultation with his immediate subordinates, takes a good look round, fixes upon his next point of *appui*, having due regard to the orders he has received and the nature of the ground, and then spends the least possible time in reaching it, receiving throughout the movement all possible intelligence

about the enemy, and being protected throughout from interference by the enemy. His first act would be to send a small patrol forward towards his objective, instructed to inform him as to the chances of getting there ; this patrol would usually be composed of from one to two troops. The main body would then move forward, covered on the flanks by parties moving at a distance agreed upon. Thus *between* the two points of *appui* the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" would open out like an umbrella, closing again as the next position is reached.

During these movements the commander of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" will be making use of all his various weapons, according to their limitations and the nature of the ground. Ordinarily he will employ his best and most highly-trained men for his points and flank patrols, and, wherever there is anything of the nature of a road, to them will be attached machine guns mounted on armoured or ordinary cars. When armoured cars are available, they will be pushed well to the front, operating according to circumstances, either in close liaison with the cavalry or with the advance guard. But in any case the armoured car and the mounted man must work hand-in-hand.

The machine gun on an ordinary car comes under a different category, since it is very vulnerable ; in action the gun is dismounted from the car and consequently this last is no more than a means of transport.

The cyclists move by road, the company moving at its own pace and forming, generally speaking, the fire-reserve of the commander of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance." With the folding machine in use the cyclists can move over any kind of country, while with the ordinary bicycles such would be left under a guard, with the serious inconvenience of having sooner or later to come back for them.

Finally, a word must be said about the march of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance," since this is no easy movement. If the commander, accompanied by all his *impedimenta*, makes a series of rapid advances from one point to another, his line of communications increases considerably in length, while in an

especially rapid march his communications must have some body specially detailed for their protection. What happens should the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" come upon the enemy while in movement?

First, the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" will clash with minor isolated bodies, advanced parties of the enemy, but these hardly come under the name of "contact," for each can be dealt with by any small combat group of the advance, being held, attacked, turned or outflanked, the front cleared and the march resumed. Then, little by little, the resistance met with becomes greater, the advance penetrates further behind the veil, and the problems confronted must now be solved by squadrons or even by the whole "Groupe de Reconnaissance." Machine guns are met with, at first in small numbers and then in larger bodies, finally artillery is encountered, and then comes a time when no further advance is possible. This is where contact is really established, and this must henceforth be dealt with by the advanced guard of the division, since the initial mission of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" is now completed.

(c) THE MAINTENANCE OF CONTACT

The "Groupe de Reconnaissance" is charged with the duty of keeping touch with the enemy, which means that the hostile front must not be allowed to either advance or retire without information to this effect being at once furnished by the "Groupe de Reconnaissance." The work of the "Group" is far from being complete when contact is established; it should now be in a position to hand over the situation to the infantry of the advanced guard, and itself take over a number of other matters needing attention.

What enemy troops are in our front? Cavalry, infantry, machine guns? Does the enemy seem inclined to take the offensive? Has he any guns and of what description? Are there good positions for machine guns and field artillery, and so forth. On arriving at the front the infantry *must* know the answer to all the above queries, and by far the best way to

impart such information is by means of sketches, and for this purpose it is of the first importance that our soldiers, of whatever rank, should be able to make field sketches. Napoleon once said : " The merest sketch tells me more that I want to know than do the most lengthy written reports."

(d) THE DELAYING ACTION

Let us take the case where the enemy front is advancing at the moment when touch is being established. The "Groupe de Reconnaissance" must resist this forward movement; firstly to hold the enemy back and check his advance; and, secondly in order to gather for and furnish to the infantry full information about the enemy strength and dispositions. The rôles of the opposing forces are now reversed; the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" has now to provide the veil, placing everywhere small bodies in defensive positions which the *enemy* must then in his turn discover, outflank or encircle. These bodies must be disposed in depth, each one, having gained a certain amount of time, falling back fighting and clearing the front of the body in position in rear. This is the moment when the advancing enemy should be drawn under the fire of machine guns and loss inflicted upon him. The work of these bodies is to hold on, "to bluff," using all possible means in order to avoid being surrounded and captured. It is in such circumstances that the qualities of the cavalryman shine out most conspicuously.

(e) THE GENERAL MISSION OF THE "GROUPE DE RECONNAISSANCE" WHEN THE INFANTRY HAS COME UP AND RELIEVED IT AT THE FRONT.

We now have our "Groupes de Reconnaissance" which, having gained touch with the enemy, are relieved by the infantry of the advanced guard; they have done good work and are now licking their wounds; may they then rest upon their laurels? No. For the cavalry is an arm always ready to devote itself to the public good, and to accomplish all that is possible.

The "Groupe de Reconnaissance," now withdrawn into the main body of the division, may be used upon some other work on another part of the front. It may be employed to stop up some gap in the line, or to carry out a counter-attack; to attack and pursue the enemy should he attempt to steal away, and to regain touch with him. It must then be ready for every eventuality, and its commander, who must always have *la cervelle en avant-garde*, should have considered everything that can possibly happen so as never to be taken unawares. He must possess imagination and foresight; one of his staff must be attached to every infantry regiment, and he must be *au courant* with everything, bringing to immediate notice all that is happening on the front of his regiment, while the commander of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" must at all times be in the closest liaison with the leader of the advance guard or the divisional general, in order that if called upon he may at once apply all that a well-trained brain has at its command.

(f) ACTUAL RECONNAISSANCE

In the carrying out of this work under the orders of the chief command, the duty of the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" is to establish touch with the enemy and to send in all information obtained about him. It has to establish touch by day or by night; to question the inhabitants of the country, make prisoners, secure identifications, and so learn the composition of the opposing body. But this is purely a *land* reconnaissance, and it is impossible by means of it alone to discover what lies behind the enemy screen.

Subordinate to the land reconnaissance is the *aerial* reconnaissance, which cannot function at all times and is, consequently, not of a *permanent* character, being restricted in its activities by darkness, fog, bad weather, any cover which may conceal enemy bodies, and by reason also of the limit which has to be placed upon the work to be expected of pilots and their machines. But aircraft is of the first importance in observation of the back areas, the movements of reinforcements and trains, the activity displayed on railway lines and stations,

anything of the nature of field works, and everything of this kind can be fixed beyond dispute or error by aerial photography.

As a consequence of the above, it is clear that land and aerial reconnaissance are the complement the one of the other and must work in absolutely close co-operation.

When engaged upon the duties outlined under (f) the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" depends upon itself alone; it must therefore provide for its own security and protect itself on all sides. It advances as described above by bounds, from one *position d'équilibre* to another; and on arrival at each of these it sends out patrols, reconnoitring parties, etc., and then, having gathered in all reports, it goes on to the next position, continuing this procedure until touch is definitely established with the enemy. From the moment that this is accomplished, the screen penetrated, the "Groupe de Reconnaissance" then works outwards with the view of discovering the extent of the enemy line and where the flanks rest, thenceforward striking at various points in order to glean the maximum of information.

The matter of the transmission of information is of the very first importance. Information, even if of a purely negative character, is of supreme value to the chief command. Every possible method of transmission of intelligence must be made use of—wireless, signalling from aircraft, down to the old-fashioned and more or less out-of-date mounted orderly; and every important report should be sent in duplicate in the hope that it will reach its destination by, at any rate, one avenue or other.

Such are, briefly, the duties which our "Groupes de Reconnaissance" are expected to perform. These duties have been thought out on the experience of concrete cases, and it may not be without use to consider the Table of Argument drawn up and practised at the Senior School, such as has proved its value in the ranks of the 5th Chasseurs d'Afrique.

In the first place, the commander must have foresight; he must foresee everything that can possibly happen, and be in a position to say to himself: "I must be able to act at once

upon every single matter that I may be called upon to deal with."

Then he must not only know what is wanted of him, but he must himself be an enthusiast in regard to its execution, he must whole-heartedly be in agreement with the order given him. The work given him to execute is the anchor-cable to which he must cling even where reason seems to tell him to pause. He must regard his mission as part of a larger scheme, and his orders once issued, his plans laid, he must have the will to "carry on" at all costs. A mediocre plan energetically carried through will always give better results than an abler scheme hesitatingly put into execution.

He must be the master of his soul; must have learnt to conquer himself. Know how to wait upon events. A nervous chief is never a great one, no matter how superior may be his intellect.

Then as to coming to a decision in regard to the solution of the problems before him, the commander, whatever the size or nature of his command, will have seriously thought over the following main points:

- (1) What is the situation—as regards the enemy and in regard to ourselves?
- (2) What are my orders?
- (3) What means shall I employ to carry them out? What shall be my general plan of manœuvre?
- (4) What use shall I make of my main body—dispositions, deployment, plan of march, routes?
- (5) How shall my main body be best protected while in movement?
- (6) Information; the main body, whether halted or in movement, must be at all times informed of the proximity of the enemy, of the chances of gaining the objective.
- (7) To ensure receipt of information everybody must know where to find the commander.
- (8) Liaison between neighbouring units and the attendant air force must be firmly established.

- (9) Transmission of information ; this must be a matter of careful pre-arrangement, whether with the main force in rear, with adjacent units, with the aircraft, with the artillery, and within each unit.
- (10) Finally, to know when to be ready to launch the long-prepared-for attack.

These are the matters for consideration, guidance and settlement.

H. C. W.



EDITOR'S NOTES

OBITUARY

THE Committee of the CAVALRY JOURNAL deeply regret to record the death of Field-Marshal The Earl Haig, K.T., G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O., K.C.I.E., D.C.L., LL.D., Colonel Royal Horse Guards, 17th/21st Lancers, and King's Own Scottish Borderers, on 29th January, 1928. He was Chairman of the CAVALRY JOURNAL Committee from 1920 to 1925. A special Memoir on Earl Haig appears in this number.

PEACE ESTABLISHMENT OF A CAVALRY REGIMENT IN THE COLONIES

A new Colonial Peace Establishment for a Cavalry Regiment has recently been issued. The organization is similar to that of a regiment stationed at home, but there is no mechanical transport included.

The Regiment will consist of a regimental headquarters, headquarter wing, machine gun squadron and two sabre squadrons each of four troops.

The machine gun squadron will have a squadron headquarters and two troops, each troop having four guns carried on pack horses.

The total establishment will be 24 officers and 525 other ranks, compared with the old establishment of 25 officers and 546 other ranks. Thus there will be a decrease of one officer and 21 other ranks. The number of horses will be reduced from 464 to 442.

EX-CAVALRYMEN'S ASSOCIATION

The following is an extract from the Annual Report (1927) of the Ex-Cavalrymen's Association :

EMPLOYMENT.

(a) During 1927, it was decided by the Executive Committee and concurred in by the Chairman of the Association, that the results of the year's working should show the number of *permanent* jobs found for the men, and not the number of men placed in work. In previous years, although a man may have been put into two or three permanent jobs, yet it had been counted as one only.

Under the new system the number of jobs found may exceed the number of men registered in some cases, owing to the fact that a man may have been put into more than one permanent employment.

(b) During the period, 1st January, 1927, to 31st December, 1927, 811 Ex-Cavalrymen registered their names with the Association, 530 permanent jobs were found by the Association, 146 men found their own employment and 53 men were struck off the books. The results in detail are shown in the Table below :—

NUMBER OF MEN REGISTERED, NUMBER OF JOBS FOUND BY THE ASSOCIATION, NUMBER FOUND THEIR OWN EMPLOYMENT, AND NUMBER STRUCK OFF BOOKS OR FAILED TO REPLY, FROM 1ST JANUARY, 1927, TO 31ST DECEMBER, 1927

<i>Regiment.</i>	<i>No. of of Men Registered.</i>	<i>No. of Jobs been found by Assoc- iation.</i>	<i>No. found own Employ- ment.</i>	<i>Struck off Books & failed to reply.</i>
Life Guards	6	1	1	3
Royal Horse Guards (Blues) ..	20	8	4	0
King's Dragoon Guards . ..	38	25	7	0
Queen's Bays	34	32	9	2
3/6th Dragoon Guards .. .	59	23	15	5
4/7th Dragoon Guards .. .	47	36	12	3
The Royals	54	36	8	1
Royal Scots Greys	78	49	9	5
3rd Hussars	39	24	7	1
4th Hussars	14	8	4	1
5th Irish Dragoon Guards ..	60	52	8	4
7th Hussars	40	15	6	2
8th Hussars	49	30	8	8
9th Lancers	14	6	2	1
10th Hussars	31	18	9	3
11th Hussars	49	56	5	0
12th Lancers	18	5	3	1
13/18th Hussars	39	22	8	3
14/20th Hussars	26	8	4	3
15/19th Hussars	19	16	5	1
16/5th Lancers	28	25	4	0
17/21st Lancers	36	31	5	2
Yeomanry	13	4	3	4
Totals	811	530	146	53

CAVALRY JOURNAL NEW SUBSCRIBERS, 1928

Lieutenant F. E. B. Wignall, The Life Guards.
 Lieutenant L. R. Warton, King's Dragoon Guards.
 Major H. R. Darley, D.S.O., O.B.E., late 4th Dragoon Guards.
 Captain J. R. B. Goodfellow, 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.
 Lieutenant C. F. Keightley, 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.
 Lieutenant M. Clarke, 3rd King's Own Hussars.
 Lieutenant J. W. Phillips, 8th King's Royal Hussars.
 Major L. W. Diggle, 9th Queen's Royal Lancers.
 Lieutenant Hon. J. D. T. Pepys, 10th Royal Hussars.
 Lieutenant G. D. Maydon, 12th Royal Lancers.
 Lieutenant W. P. Browne-Clayton, 12th Royal Lancers.
 Lieutenant M. Lafone, late 15th The King's Hussars.
 Major E. H. T. Parsons, Royal Artillery.
 Captain G. Kirkbride, Poona Horse, I.A.
 Lieutenant H. S. Hoseason, Manchester Regiment.
 Lieutenant D. E. M. Fielding, York & Lancaster Regiment.
 Major H. Stretham, Royal Canadian Dragoons.
 Captain W. J. Cowen, M.C., Fort Garry Horse.
 Lieut.-Colonel W. H. Mann, M.C., T.D., Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.
 Captain C. L. Reid, Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.
 Lieut.-Colonel E. T. Chamberlayne, D.S.O., T.D., Warwickshire Yeomanry.
 Major Sir William E. Jaffray, Bart., Warwickshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant P. K. Chance, Warwickshire Yeomanry.
 Major A. V. Negus, Staffordshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant R. C. Holcroft, Shropshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant D. M. Maitland Titterton, Ayrshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant H. E. Townshead Davies, Cheshire Yeomanry.
 S.S.M. W. C. Gubbins, Cheshire Yeomanry.
 Lieut.-Colonel C. J. Hirst, M.C., T.D., Queen's Own Yorkshire Dragoons.
 Major W. H. Crosland, Berkshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant G. S. Sale, M.C., Middlesex Yeomanry, 2nd Cavalry Divisional Signals.
 Lieutenant W. H. Whitbread, Lovat Scouts.
 Lieutenant G. A. Murray, Scottish Horse Scouts.
 Captain W. A. Low, Fife & Forfar Yeomanry, 20th Armoured Car Company.
 Major E. P. Butler, Royal Gloucester Hussars, 21st Armoured Car Company.
 The Officer Commanding, The Sharpshooters, 23rd Armoured Car Company.
 Captain A. Knowles, Derbyshire Yeomanry, 24th Armoured Car Company.
 The Officer Commanding, Queen Mary's Regiment, Surrey and Sussex Yeomanry, 98th Brigade R.A.T.A.

Major A. J. Muirhead, M.C., Oxfordshire Yeomanry, R.A., T.A.
Secretary, Officers' Mess, Royal Devon Yeomanry, 96th Field Brigade,
R.A., T.A.

The President, Mess Committee, Indian Army Service Corps,
Rawalpindi.

Lieutenant C. P. de Fonséque, M.C., D.C.M., French Cavalry.

Total 42

BACK TO THE CHARIOTS

THE long dreaded further reduction in British Cavalry has taken place at last. Is this the beginning of the end or the end of the beginning? We hope the latter. Two of the best Cavalry Regiments in the Army, the 11th Hussars and the 12th Lancers, who have relied on the horse as a means of conveyance for the last two hundred years, are now being converted into Armoured Car units.

The fact that the Army Council has decided that no further reduction by means of amalgamation is possible, augurs well for the future of the arm, and while condoling with the regiments selected, on the loss of their horses, we feel that the future of the cavalry as a whole depends on the possibility of making them harder hitting and faster moving than they have ever been before.

This end can only be obtained by the addition of mechanical devices, and the authorities have realised rightly that mechanized forces require the cavalry spirit and quick thinking brains. Where can these better be found than in our present cavalry who are officered and manned by the very best class in the army?

If the cavalry of the future are to have the power of breaking through the enemy's screen to gain information, armoured cars in considerable numbers are a necessity, and it has been decided that the unit best suited to perform the task required is a regiment. The difficult problem to solve was which regiments were to be selected for conversion. Following the precedent of former reductions, the next two regiments in order of juniority were the 11th and 12th.

While deploring the loss of their horses these regiments feel that this fate is a better one than any form of amalgamation.

For the future, the *esprit de corps* and fine cavalry spirit, for which these two regiments have been distinguished for the last two hundred years, will be preserved, and there is little doubt that they will maintain the high position in cavalry circles which they have held for so many years.

The first authentic mention of the use of the chariot is given in *Genesis* xli. 43, B.C. 1715, but the Chinese claim that chariots were in use as far back as B.C. 2600. Whatever the correct date may be the first use of the horse in war was to pull chariots, by means of which foot soldiers were conveyed rapidly and fresh to the scene of battle and mobility was first gained by this method. Some years later, it was found necessary to have the chariots armoured for the better protection of the occupants from the missiles of the enemy. It was not till B.C. 1120 that men mounted on horses actually fought as cavalry. Now after an interval of 3,000 years, cavalry are being put back into chariots propelled by the petrol engine.

T. T. P.

CORRESPONDENCE

TO THE EDITOR, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

DEAR SIR,—May I point out that your obituary notice of the late Colonel W. J. Foster, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., of the Australian Military Forces, is rather inadequate as regards his War Services. After serving as Brigade Major of the 2nd Light Horse Brigade he was appointed G.S.O.2 of the Desert Mounted Corps and afterwards became G.S.O.1 of the newly formed Yeomanry Mounted Division, and subsequently G.S.O.1 of the 4th Cavalry Division, which replaced the Yeomanry Division. He received the C.M.G. for his services during the operations which led to the capture of Jerusalem and the C.B. in connection with the great cavalry round-up of the Turkish Armies in 1918. As

G.S.O.1 of the Yeomanry and 4th Cavalry Divisions he became well known to a large number of British and Indian Army Cavalry Officers. He was trusted and respected by all those who came in contact with him, either officially or otherwise. He was a very gallant soldier and a most efficient Staff Officer. He possessed to a singular degree the capacity, invaluable but not always existing in a Staff Officer, of being as helpful to the troops as to his General. There is no doubt that, had he lived, he would have gone to the top of his own particular Service.

Yours, etc.,

G. DE S. BARROW, *General.*



REGIMENTAL ITEMS OF INTEREST

ROYAL DECCAN HORSE

Lieut.-Colonel G. P. Morris, O.B.E., was appointed Commandant of the Regiment on 19th August, 1927.

Captain T. G. Atherton was appointed Adjutant on 15th October, 1927.

The Regimental Polo Team won the Meerut Autumn Polo Tournament. Team: Captains T. G. Atherton, R. L. W. Herrick, R. N. Nunn, J. L. Wardle.

The Regiment held a Re-union of all ranks of the Regiment on 2nd, 3rd and 4th December. Colonel P. B. Sangster, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., and Colonel L. F. Arthur, D.S.O., O.B.E., former Commandants and over 600 pensioners were present. The Commander-in-Chief attended the Regimental Sports held on 3rd December, and expressed great satisfaction at meeting so many pensioners whom he knew.

His Majesty has been pleased to change the official title of the Regiment from 9th Royal Deccan Horse to The Royal Deccan Horse (9th Horse).

BIHAR LIGHT HORSE, A.F.I.

Result of Annual Competitions

The Bihar Light Horse Annual Camp, which lasted ten days was brought to a successful conclusion when the competitions were held.

The Camp was visited by General Sir George de S. Barrow, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., A.D.C., General Officer Commanding-in-Chief, Eastern Command, and Major-General H. D. O. Ward, C.B., C.M.G., General Officer Commanding Presidency and Assam District.

Both officers saw the corps at work on Tactical Exercises and on the square. General Sir George Barrow, in his address, referred to his visit to the corps in 1906 and it is interesting to note that many members on parade this week were on parade twenty-one years ago. Many gentlemen at this year's camp have over thirty years' volunteer service, notably Trooper G. H. Dalrymple Hay, who has served regularly with the Bihar Light Horse for forty-five years. The regiment has still nine members who served with Lumsden's Horse in the South African War.

During the Camp the Regiment was exercised in Troop and Detachment Drill and Dismounted Action.

During each day a Tactical Exercise was held either with or without troops and field firing took place on the fifth day.

Night marching by compass was well carried out and every Section completed the course in good time.

A competition was introduced for Section Leaders and was most successful. It consisted of a written general knowledge paper on horse-mastership, musketry, machine guns and military tactics. In addition, all N.C.O's. had to do a small Tactical Exercise without troops.

The Regimental Competitions on the last day were keenly contested. Below is a description of the competitions held and a list of winners :

Machine Gun Competition.—Winner : Monghyr Dett. Vickers gun.

Light Gun Competition.—Winner : Marhourah. Lewis gun.

Best Turned-out Man.—Winner : Trooper H. Studdy, "C" Troop ; runner-up, Trooper T. A. Freston, "B" Troop.

Lloyd Lindsay Competition.—Winner : "B" Troop ; runner-up, "D" Troop.

Individual Sword Tent Pegging.—Winner : Trooper D. H. Duthie, "E" Troop ; runner-up, Captain A. L. Danby, "A" Troop.

Sword Assault Course.—(The course was same as for the Olympia).—Winner : "A" Troop ; runner-up, "B" Troop.

Best Individual : Capt. A. L. Danby, "A" Troop ; Second Best Individual : Corpl. E. L. Marriott, "A" Troop.

Section Tent-Pegging.—Winner : "D" Troop ; runner-up, "A" Troop.

Jumping.—The course was a very stiff one and consisted of Bush Fence, Treble Bar, Stile without wings, Wall, Gate, Grid without wings (the grid

consisted of five single bars, 12 feet apart). The absence of wings made the jump extremely hard and was a test both for mount and rider.

Winner : Trooper D. H. Duthie, "E" Troop ; runner-up Trooper T. A. Freston, "B" Troop.

Officers' Competition.—The course consisted of from beginning to end : Jump and sword thrust at left cavalry dummy, Jump and sword thrust at right cavalry dummy, Sword left in second dummy, draw Revolver, fire at balloon on right over jump, then at balloon on ground right front, then at balloon on dummy left front, return revolver and take lance, charging at 2 rings and finishing with one peg.

Winner : Capt. A. L. Danby, "A" Troop ; runner-up, Capt. W. N. R. Kemp, "B" Troop.

Polo.—Winner : "B" Troop (Troopers A. K. Holttum, H. C. Prior, T. A. Freston, C. G. Lowe).

Best Section Leader.—Corpl. E. L. Marriott, "A" Troop.

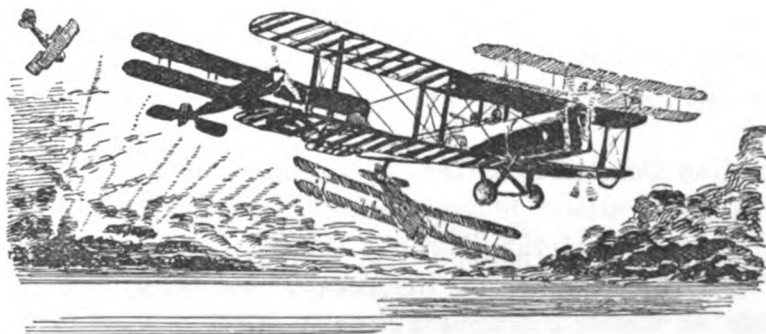
Best Turned-out Troop.—(Points were awarded for condition of horse, saddlery, dress, and equipment of man).

Winner : "A" Troop ; runners-up, "B" and "D" Troops.

Best Man-at-Arms.—Sir Hugh Stephenson's Cup was given to the individual scoring most points in Tent-pegging, Sword and Lance, Assault Course and Jumping.

Winner : Capt. A. L. Danby, "A" Troop ; runner-up, Trooper D. H. Duthie, "E" Troop.

A demonstration from Platoon, 1st King's Shropshire Light Infantry was given at the Race Course on 23rd and 25th November, and was greatly appreciated by all ranks.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

“The Fighting Forces.” January, 1928. (Gale & Polden.) 5s.

The two most valuable articles in this volume are on aspects of mechanization. Of these, the one by Colonel Howard emphasizes the necessity of revolution in our infantry organization rather than modifications. To achieve this, we must educate the country at large into a realization of the danger of procrastination, and induce it to provide the money necessary for the required changes. H. B. W. S., in the second one, also advocates many additions and alterations to the Armoured Brigade, which would involve new Army estimates, but he also produces an interesting and constructive criticism of the work of this Brigade during the last year.

There are one or two quite good stories, and a very interesting account of cock-fighting, which flourishes as a national sport in the Balearic Islands.

This is altogether a light and pleasant number.

We extend a welcome to “The Eagle,” the regimental journal of The Royal Dragoons, which has reappeared again after a lapse of thirteen and a half years. As the Regiment is again abroad, the moment is ripe for the revival of the magazine, which is undoubtedly a means of keeping in touch with old comrades at home. “The Eagle” will be published quarterly, the subscription being 12s. 6d. per annum for Officers and 2s. 6d. for Old Comrades.

“Canadian Defence Quarterly.” January, 1928.

The main article in this volume is one already familiar to most readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, being the lecture on “Air Co-operation with the Army,” by Wing Commander Gossage at the R.U.S.I. in February, 1927. Another “air” contribution discusses the technical development of aviation

in Canada. Much experimental work has been carried out, and, as a result, "Canada can boast an aircraft industry—a nucleus, it is true, but capable of considerable expansion when the many uses of aircraft are becoming a necessity in a country's development." Major Scudamore provides a valuable short article on the importance of Regimental alliances, while "Mr. Chattersome," through the medium of Lieutenant Kimball, R.C.N.V.R., gives an entertaining interview to the "Daily Observer" of 1974, on his reminiscences of the raid on St. John. There is one article of particular interest to cavalrymen—the account, with the successes, of the Canadian Military International Horse Show Team at New York, with some good photographs.

Other articles on Ammunition Supply in the Great War, the Merchant Service, the Pacific Station, go to make up a thoroughly readable issue.

HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

The Editor acknowledges with thanks the receipt of the following Journals :

<i>Journal of the Indian Army Service Corps</i>	Nov. and Dec. 1927 ; Jan. 1928.
<i>The Royal Tank Corps Journal</i>	Dec. 1927 ; Jan., Feb. and Mar. 1928.
<i>The White Lancer and The Vedette</i> ..	Dec. 1927.
<i>Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps</i>	Dec. 1927 ; Jan. and Feb. 1928.
<i>The 13th/18th Hussars Journal</i>	Jan. 1928.
<i>The Ypres Times</i>	Jan. 1928.
<i>The Wasp</i>	Dec. 1927.
<i>The Military Gazette</i>	Nos. 23, 24 ; Nos. 1, 2 and 3, 1928.
<i>The Eagle</i>	No. 1, Jan. 1928.
<i>On the March</i>	Jan. and Feb. 1928.
<i>The Fighting Forces</i>	Jan. 1928
<i>The Royal Engineers' Journal</i>	Jan. and Mar. 1928.
<i>The Journal of the United Service Institution of India</i>	Jan. 1928.
<i>The Veterinary Journal</i>	Feb. 1928.
<i>Journal of the Society of Army Historical Research</i>	No. 27, Jan. 1928.
<i>The Royal Army Service Corps Journal</i> ..	Jan. 1928.
<i>The Strathconian</i>	Jan. 1928.

FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE January-February number of the "Revue de Cavalerie" contains several articles of very special interest. Of these there is one which will specially repay the study of British officers, since it deals with the work of the mounted arm under conditions very similar to those with which British cavalry regiments may find themselves confronted when serving on the fringes of our far-flung Empire. This paper describes the operations of the 6th Regiment of Spahis serving in the country in the neighbourhood of Beirut from November, 1925, to August, 1926, during which time hardly a week passed that the squadrons of the regiment did not find themselves engaged with the enemy. The Druses, to whom the 6th Spahis were opposed, are described as strong in numbers, possessing great mobility, thoroughly well armed with modern rifles and having an abundance of ammunition which they used unsparingly. They knew how to avail themselves of the natural difficulties of the ground operated over, and were only to be driven from any position they had taken up by the menace of encirclement. The Druses were not supported by guns, but on the other hand the Spahis were able on two occasions only to bring artillery into action against them. The country fought over is described as extraordinarily difficult, in very many places the French cavalry having to dismount and lead their horses, since in no other way was the country traversable by a mounted body. The horse wastage in warfare in such a country was naturally heavy, due to shortage of water, the long intervals between feeds, and a wholly-grain diet.

This issue contains a very fine account of the charge of the 7th Hussars of the IXth French Army Corps at R  thel on the 30th August, 1914, and the writer complains, with

much justice, that a great deal of the criticism of the present-day value of cavalry in war is based upon wholly inaccurate accounts of the actions in which the mounted arm took part in 1914-18. On the occasion in question, the 7th Hussars were ordered to do all they could to hold up the German advance sufficiently long to enable Moussy's Infantry Brigade to retire across the bridge at Thugny. To the commander of the two squadrons present of the 7th Hussars, it seemed clear that he could effect the disengagement and retreat of the infantry only by the sacrifice of his squadrons, and he thereupon ordered a charge upon the German field and machine guns, under the fire of which the French infantry was falling back. The losses were naturally heavy in the cavalry squadrons, but the German advance was checked and the infantry passed the bridge without serious interference ; and most readers of this account of a very brilliant charge will probably agree with the writer that where so much was so competently achieved, no reply need be made to the inquiry of the captious critic as to whether the enemy guns were or were not captured or destroyed.

This number contains the translation of an article by Major-General von Rotberg which is of special interest at the moment when the lance has been withdrawn from our cavalry regiments hitherto armed with that weapon. The writer says that in the operations on the western front many Uhlan regiments ceased to carry their lances which were left in their wagons ; on the eastern front where lances were still used, men's hands were in the winter too cold to hold them, and the continued exposure of the hand supporting the lance made the employment of the fire weapon when needed almost out of the question. Further, General von Rotberg contends that in difficult country where cavalry may have to advance dismounted, the young soldier finds it no easy matter to lead his horse and at the same time to carry his lance.

In "Wissen und Wehr" for November of last year there is a very readable and instructive review by Lieut.-General Groener of a new volume of the German Official War History, which deals with the activities of the German railways,

permanent and field, during the World War. We are reminded that immediately after the war of 1870-71, the whole German railway system was overhauled and brought into line, with the one purpose of facilitating mobilization in the event of another war of the same or greater magnitude ; and we are told that so recently as 1913 new plans were drawn up and fresh additions made to the existing net-work of strategic railways, while the *personnel* was increased and its training re-organized. Everything was thus ready when war was declared, and the head of the railway service never had an easier time, so we are assured, than during the fortnight between the 1st and 15th August, 1914. The following figures give some idea of the magnitude of the preparations made in peace for the requirements of war :—arrangements had been made in advance for the conveyance by rail on mobilization of two million men, 118,000 horses and 400,000 tons of supplies ; but in fact thirteen lines of rail actually carried to the front 3,120,000 men and 860,000 horses—exclusive of the operations against Liège which had not previously been allowed for. The volume which has now appeared deals only with the work of those railways which already existed prior to the war, and appears to be indispensable to the military student ; the succeeding volume will contain an account of the work of the field railways.

The “*Schweizerische Monatschafte*” contains in the issues for December of 1927 and January of this year an article by a German Staff Officer, entitled “*Could the Trench War have been avoided ?*” But while he discusses his query from every point of view, he provides no very satisfying reply. We shall all probably agree with him that Napoleon and Frederick under similar circumstances would have, and indeed on occasion actually did, withdraw the bulk of their forces from contact with the enemy when immediate and lasting success had failed to follow upon an offensive, renewing the attack when they had refreshed or reinforced their armies. In the days of those giants, however, they did not control nations in arms, still less did they oppose them ; while they could fall back upon agricultural countries where their armies could be supplied and maintained,

whereas France and Germany of to-day are industrial countries producing little that is edible. The author of this paper suggests that Germany was responsible for the Trench War, believing that thereby her opponents would be destroyed or so weakened as to fall ready victims when Germany should again take the offensive; but he holds that actually it was the Central Powers who suffered the most and that the Trench War ruined Germany in men, money, materials and *morale*.

The general interest in and appreciation of the value of the cavalry arm can hardly be said to be diminishing, when in so highly technical a journal as the "Militärwissenschaftliche Mitteilungen" for January-February of this year we find at least one-third of the contents devoted to the study of purely cavalry matters. In one of these articles an Austrian officer describes at some length the many changes that occurred during the war in the employment and organization of an Austrian cavalry division. In another article, entitled "The Cavalry on the Western Front in 1918," we are told how the cavalry of the French, British and German armies was employed during that year—that of the British being dealt with at greatest length; and the writer states that at the outset of the British offensive of 1918 the sudden appearance of our cavalry had the greatest possible moral effect. Its action both at Harbonnière and Rosière is especially mentioned and lauded.

This number contains a useful paper on the present state of the cavalry in the armies of the leading Powers; but the most important article on the mounted arm to be found in this issue is one on "Modern Cavalry," in which, after discussing all the varied conditions under which, in any future war, cavalry might be employed, the author, Colonel Viktorin, winds up by saying that the long war of positions has caused many to forget that, more than ever, do we need large mobile bodies to prepare, carry through, and consummate victory; that while we are right in experimenting with and exploiting the potentialities of mechanical arms, such *cannot* reconnoitre the enemy front, maintain close and elastic contact with the opponent, or follow up a success in the same thorough way

as can a mounted body. The writer points out that Germany, an infinitely more industrial nation than is France, maintains three cavalry divisions—all that by Treaty she is allowed—easily expandable to three cavalry corps. In conclusion, the writer urges that whatever *strength* of cavalry is likely to be needed in war, should be kept up in peace, since while infantry—and even to some extent artillery—can be trained on the outbreak of war, cavalry cannot, in view of the fact that it must be set in the field and pushed to the front immediately war has been declared.

H. C. W.

CAVALRY soldiers will find a large amount of instructive reading in the January number of "The Cavalry Journal" (United States) which is a special Tactics number. Cavalry work, both in deed and in theory, is ably described. Lieutenant E. F. Smith, in an article, "Armoured Vehicles with Cavalry," examines the two schools of thought—whether to mechanize or not—and sets forth the possibilities and limitations of armoured vehicles in various cavalry tactical situations. It is pleasing to read therein that England leads the way in mechanization experiments. "Protection from Enemy Aircraft," by Major Whiting, gives an interesting account of a twelve-mile "march, a combat employing combined action against a represented mounted enemy and a bivouac in the open, all in the presence of three hostile attack planes." The O.C. Air Squadron reported that owing to the protective measures taken by the cavalry, the squadron was never subject to serious loss from air attacks. Major Gruber, in "Field Artillery with Cavalry," describes examples (with sketches) of artillery co-operation in Reconnaissance, Advance Guard, Surprise Attack and Pursuit situations, his purpose being to make the junior officers understand the action of small artillery units. The transportation of a troop of Cavalry (47 all ranks and 48 horses) in motor lorries over a distance of 288 miles in 36 hours (28 running hours) is detailed in an article "Portée Cavalry." On being debussed, the horses, although perfectly fit and sound "showed

signs of 'auto-intoxication,'" i.e., they staggered and walked stiff-legged for the first few yards. Colonel Lippencott describes the "New Regimental Organization," and here it is of interest to note that the new peace establishment of a Cavalry Regiment will consist of a Headquarters Troop, Band, four Rifle Troops organized into two squadrons, and one Machine-gun Troop of eight guns. This organization is similar to the British, but the strength of the American squadron at full strength is much higher, being 238 other ranks.

A sketch, entitled "The Calv'ry Gunners," gives an amusing account of a fine piece of work during the war by ex-cavalrymen who had been turned into artillerymen against their will and shows that the cavalry dash cannot be stifled.

O. J. F. F.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

(A) MILITARY.

“Official History of the War: Egypt and Palestine.” Vol. I. (H.M. Stationery Office). 12s. 6d.

“The Palestine Campaign.” Colonel A. P. Wavell. “Campaigns and their Lessons Series.” (Constable). 12s. 6d. net.

“Five Years in Turkey.” Von Sanders. (Bailliere, Tindall and Cox; and United States Naval Institute). 16s. net.

THERE is a peculiar fascination in the study of the campaign in Egypt and Palestine, because nearly all aspects of war are illustrated—the static defence on the Canal and the amazing Turkish efforts to attack it; the engineering conquest of the Sinai desert; the Cavalry and Armoured Car raids against the Senussi; the Arab revolt; the trench warfare attacks at Gaza; and finally, the classic combination of mobility and fire power in Allenby's last break through. It is lucky then, that the time has arrived when one can study the whole picture from the points of view of both antagonists.

The official history at present ceases at the second battle of Gaza, when Allenby was sent to take over the command from Murray; it covers the period of “the engineer's war,” when the main achievement was the extending of the rail and pipe line across the Sinai desert. It gives an interesting account of the expedition against the Senussi, culminating in the Duke of Westminster's spectacular dash in armoured cars, and explains clearly the origin and development of the Arab revolt, of which one realises the true military importance from a study of Liman von Sanders' book. The ceaseless raids and demolitions on the Hejaz railway were endless sources of worry to him, owing to his difficulties in communications. The history

finally gives a clear picture of the first and second battle of Gaza, and shows how near to success we were in the former. Both sides decided to withdraw at the same moment, believing that the other had won ; the critical moment of the battle had arrived when only one more effort was required for success. Fog, and an apparent failure in staff liaison, stopped that effort and the Turks were left in possession.

The best compliment to this volume that could be paid is to say that it is worthy of inclusion with those already produced about the Western front.

Colonel Wavell, in his book, has briefly but adequately continued the story and covered the whole campaign. He draws an interesting comparison between the forces in Egypt and Mesopotamia, showing that both were protective originally and without real objectives. His account in general should be of particular interest to readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, because of the emphasis he lays on the influence that was exerted by mobility and by the fighting spirit of the mounted troops in this campaign. At Maghdaba and at Rafa, the cavalry won the victory at the last moment, when the leaders had despaired of success. At the former place the troops rode fifty miles, fought a successful engagement, in which 1,300 strongly entrenched infantry were captured, all within twenty-four hours.

The charge of Grant's Brigade of Australians over a distance of four miles at Beersheba, in which the men carried drawn bayonets, was an action in which the swift blow won instant victory, where slower methods would have allowed the enemy to escape. The brilliant yeomanry charge at Huj, although a minor action, showed the value of speed against unshaken troops. In the final offensive, once the enemy's front line was broken, the mounted troops took the leading part, and carried out what must be one of the most successful pursuits in history, practically the whole of the Turkish Army being accounted for. In these operations, the 5th Cavalry Division marched over 500 miles in thirty-eight days, losing but 21 per cent. of their horses.

In his last chapter, the author discusses mobility and the possibility of mechanised forces in this campaign, and gives the reader much food for thought on the present day problem of speed and armour.

The book is well written, and should be studied by all officers who want to get a clear picture of the campaign, without going into the details of the official history.

It is very interesting to turn from these accounts to that of Liman von Sanders, who was head of the German Mission at Constantinople at the outbreak of war, was responsible for the defence of the Dardanelles and, later, commanded in Palestine at the time of the débacle. His story is one of an endless struggle not only against his enemies, but also against the corruption, inefficiency and intrigue of the Turks, with Enver always playing the part of the villain. It is almost refreshing to realise that we were not the only people who had to contend endlessly with the amateur strategist! At least once in nearly every chapter, von Sanders was sending his resignation either to the Kaiser or to the Sultan!

He gives a valuable account of the Dardanelles, and shows how near we were to success both at the initial landing and at Suvla; he shows even more clearly what would have been the result had a military force landed at the time of the initial bombardment by the Fleet. The chief interest of his story, however, lies in Palestine and in seeing the reverse of the picture painted by Colonel Wavell. He cannot have been lacking in moral courage when he accepted the command there, as he knew full well how desperate the situation was becoming. His predecessors had not understood the Turk; they had "assumed that all orders issued would be carried out." "In Turkey," he goes on, "one can make the most beautiful plans and prepare the execution by drawings and perfect orders, and something entirely different will be done or nothing at all."

He paints a terrible picture of the situation as to moral, strength, equipment, food supplies, etc., of the Turkish forces in the middle of 1918, and emphasises the enormous effect which the Arab revolt and the ceaseless propaganda by leaflets

were having on the troops. In addition, in September, he had only five aeroplanes fit to fly, so that he could do nothing to hinder our air forces. Then, when the final blow fell, he gives an extremely interesting account of the chaos caused by the complete breakdown of all communications and by the overwhelming air attack made by the British forces. It is perhaps sad to think that we had him and the whole of his Staff in our hands at Nazareth, had we but known it !

This book is of exceptional interest, since it is so evidently frank, but it is somewhat spoiled by its extremely irritating translation, which at times is in no known tongue. These three books taken together, however, produce a comprehensive picture of a very interesting campaign.

“The Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers in the World War.” By Sir Frank Fox. (Constable). 21s.

The Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, which, in common with the other Irish regiments in the British Army, suffered reduction on the grant of Dominion status to Ireland, was at all events more fortunate than the bulk of these regiments in that it did not undergo total extinction, but only reduction from two battalions to one. It would certainly have been a pity if a unit with such a fine war record as that outlined in this volume had been altogether lost to the army. Thirteen battalions of the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers fought in the war, three of which saw home service only. Of the remaining ten, the 2nd Battalion and six others served from beginning to end on the Western front, and the other three, including the 1st Battalion, also fought in Gallipoli, Salonica, and Palestine, prior to proceeding to France for the latter period of the war.

Sir Frank Fox, in this history, admirably written and produced, gives a clear narrative of the achievements of all battalions of the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers in the various theatres of war, together with a brief summary of the previous history of the regiment, a roll of honour of those killed and died of wounds, and a list of honours won (among them eight V.C.'s). On the whole this story of the regiment's doings is worthy of the great

deeds which it recounts. The chapters descriptive of the general conditions of fighting on the western and other fronts are vivid and valuable. The volume is adequately equipped with maps and illustrations, from one of which latter it would appear that horses, unlike Captain Bairnsfather's "Old Bill," do not look better with their gas-masks on.

E.W.S.

"Psychology and the Soldier." F. C. Bartlett. (Cambridge University Press). 7s. 6d.

To many people, unfortunately, psychology signifies the clothing of many platitudes in incomprehensible words, ranging from the apparently fatuous reiterations of Coué to the scarcely-to-be-whispered phrases of Freud. Here is a book, however, which should dissipate all those ideas. Written by one of the leading psychologists of the day, it introduces clearly and in simple language the practise of psychology into normal military life. The author traces the history of the war experiments carried out by the Americans, by which they tested recruits to see for what occupation they were best suited, at which most soldiers probably scoffed. He shows here, however, of what real practical value they are and the use to which they could be put to-day in England. He explains the importance of a study of this subject for training men and for getting the best out of them, and shows how to apply its principles.

This is a book which contains much of value for all officers. In commercial and industrial life, experience has proved the vital necessity of the study of all forms of industrial psychology ; there is little doubt that there is an equally large field for work of the same type in military life.

"Only This." By J. H. Pedley. (Graphic Publishing Co., Canada).

The exact dividing line between war novels and diaries of actual personal experiences in war is not easy to draw. Of the best so-called novels of the Great War in English, Gilbert Frankau's "Peter Jackson" ; R. H. Mottram's "Spanish

Farm " Series ; and Wilfred Ewart's " Way of Revelation " must undoubtedly rank as fiction, based of course on personal reminiscence ; whereas Edward Thompson's " These Men, Thy Friends " seems to fall rather under the head of a diary of actual experience adapted for publication, as do also the two best-known French war novels : Barbusse's " Le Feu " and Dorgeles' " Les Croix du Bois." " Only This," the first Canadian book of its kind we have had the pleasure of reading, most undoubtedly comes under the same head as these last-named. It is a very frank account of what the writer saw, heard and thought during his period of active service on the Western front, as an officer of the 4th Battalion, 1st Brigade, 1st Canadian Division, with which he served from November, 1917, until he was wounded at the battle of Amiens on 8th August, 1918. In parts indeed it is almost too frank for good taste, for Mr. Pedley sets down in round terms his opinions of all his superiors and brother officers—many of whom are still alive—from the G.O.C., Canadian Corps down to his company commanders—and his opinions are by no means always favourable or flattering. All this, however, only adds to the vividness and colour of the picture he draws of life in a typical Canadian unit in war-time—a picture which bears the obvious stamp of truth. Mr. Pedley has even gone so far as to illustrate his story with a series of trench sketch maps, so that the reader can follow all his wanderings, and those of his unit. Actually his experiences as related here were no more unusual or terrible—though he of course had his bad times—than those of many hundreds of other officers of all nationalities who fought on the Western front ; had they been so, the book must have lost much of its very real interest and value in recalling to those who know, and informing those who do not know, what it was really like to have soldiered in the years 1914-1918. It is as a living and accurate record of the average man's reaction to the conditions of modern war that the book should be judged, and from that point of view the verdict must be that the writer has admirably fulfilled his purpose, and that the volume is well worth reading.

“Official History of Australia in the War.” Vol. X. “The Australians at Rabaul.” By F. A. Mackenzie. (Angus and Robertson, Sydney). 21s.

This large volume is concerned with the Australian share in the capture of the German Colonies in the Pacific at the beginning of the war—an episode little known to the public, and one of which no reliable and complete account has hitherto been published. A few days after the declaration of war a force consisting of six companies of naval reservists, an infantry battalion, and certain ancillary troops, about 1,500 men in all, under command of Colonel Holmes, and dignified by the title of the Australian Naval and Military Expeditionary Force, embarked on the liner “Berrima” and, escorted by a small naval squadron, sailed for the island of New Britain, its objective being the German capital, Rabaul. The expedition effected its landing on 11th September, fought its way through dense bush to within striking distance of Rabaul, overcoming the resistance of the enemy native levies, who numbered only some 300 all told, and forced the German Governor to capitulate on the 17th. The capitulation included, besides New Britain and the remainder of the Bismarck Archipelago, German New Guinea and the Solomon, Marianne, Caroline, Pellew and Marshall Islands. Certain of the most important of these were later occupied by naval and military detachments. For the rest of the war these former German possessions were administered from Australia, and the history of this administration forms the bulk of the volume, which, like all those of the Australian Official History, is beautifully illustrated with portraits, photographs, maps and plans.

“The Story of the Royal Regiment of Artillery.” By Lieut.-Colonel C. A. L. Graham, D.S.O., *p.s.c.* (Royal Artillery Institution). 8d. post free.

This is a brief history, pleasantly illustrated, of the Royal Regiment written primarily for soldiers preparing for the, second class certificate of education. It is just a general sketch of main events and developments, since, as General Milne

points out in a foreword, "the real regimental history of the Royal Artillery is the History of the Battery."

The story begins before the actual formation of the Regiment, and is told simply and clearly. It should be a valuable little text book for the purpose for which it was written.

"Imperial Military Geography." By Captain D. H. Cole, M.B.E., A.E.C. (Sifton Praed & Co.) 10s.

The fact that this book has gone into five editions since 1924 is the best proof of its value, and in this edition the author has again brought the work completely up to date. Clearly and simply, he covers the whole field of Imperial geography and organization, and the book is one which not only will obviously be used by all officers, and other ranks, for promotion and Staff College examinations, but also should be of great value at all times for reference purposes, since its composition simplifies reference, and its maps and plans are excellent.

"Soldiering in India, 1764-1787." Edited by William Charles Macpherson, C.S.I. (Blackwood & Sons.)

The ordinary serving soldier, whether he belongs to the British or to the Indian Army, has few opportunities of making any real study of the changes and the chances of military life in India in the spacious days of Warren Hastings, and in these modern times there is a tendency to restrict our military perspective to the period of the Great War and to the mechanical war which some day may come upon us. It is none-the-less good to be reminded of the lives which our forbears lived in India more than a century and a half ago, and in this book the editor, who himself knows much of India, has transcribed for us the journals and letters of two of his ancestors who served the Honourable East India Company for some twenty years or more on what was then the north-west frontier, but which is now little more than the border of Upper Bengal.

These pages tell us much about early marches across India, through the territories of friendly or protected States, or conducted against hostile neighbours of John Company for

punitive purposes; and nothing serves better to afford us to-day some idea of the prestige at that time of the British name, than to read of young officers setting serenely forth with a mere handful of native troops to conduct negotiations with Indian rulers, to pacify the country or, if need be, to wage successful war. These letters teach us something new or remind us of much that we have learnt and have forgotten about the Rohilla Campaign of 1774, about the negotiations with and punitive operations against the Mahrattas, about social life in Calcutta and in the small border stations; and we hear, too, something fresh about the peril which Warren Hastings encountered at Benares in 1781, and which Sir Eyre Coote, then in Madras, described as "the late extraordinary excursion of the Governor-General to the Upper Provinces of Bengal."

The book contains a useful return of the distribution of the Bengal Army in 1781, and altogether it will be found of no small value alike to the regimental historian in particular, and to the student of military history of that dimly-lit period in general.

(B) SPORTING

"The Analysis of the Turf." By J. Fairfax-Blakeborough, M.C. (Philip Allan & Co.). 25s. net.

Mr. Fairfax-Blakeborough, who has been intimately connected with the Turf for a period of twenty-five years "behind the scenes in racing stables, in the dressing room of mysteries, as an owner of alleged racehorses, and latterly as a licensed race official," has written a very interesting account of the various duties of racing officials, owners, jockeys, bookmakers and all connected with the Turf. He points out the difficulties with which each has to contend, most of which are not realized by race-goers. Although he owns that irregularities occasionally occur, yet he maintains that the number of Turf scandals are grossly exaggerated.

It is difficult to pick out any chapter for special praise, as they are all entertaining, but that entitled "Equine Rogues

and Savages" will interest all horse-lovers, even though they are not racing enthusiasts.

The book abounds with amusing facts and stories of men and horses of to-day and yesterday. We must take off our hat to the parson who rode in the Grand National and extend our sympathy to the jockey who put on 4 lbs. within a few minutes after having eaten one sandwich. We wonder if the sandwich was one of the notorious "railway-station" type. Youthful and would-be jockeys will be pleased to note that trainers no longer "bury their apprentices for hours together up to the neck in a dung-heap to keep their weight down."

There is an amusing story of a ridiculous steeplechase, in which there were only two starters, and "each jockey had orders to let the other horse give him a lead over the first jump and over the water." In spite of the orders of the starter, neither horse budged. "At last the two horses walked away from the post, then they trotted a bit and the end of a ludicrous race was that both of them tumbled into the water."

Among curious races, the writer records one of 1724, in which "the runners were two bulls, four cows and a calf. The cows threw their riders, the calf fell and one of the bulls won."

A glossary of Turf and stable language is included and we must hasten to add that there is nothing in this to disturb the mind of a bishop.

There are twelve reproductions of old racing prints and the frontispiece entitled "The Headless Horseman" will whet the appetite of many who take but little interest in the Sport of Kings and will make them read this entertaining volume.

O.J.F.F.

"The Hunting Tours of Surtees" (Creator of Jorrocks).

Edited by E. D. Cuming. (W. Blackwood & Co.).
20s. net.

The hunting world owes a debt of gratitude to Surtees, whose name and that of his offspring, "Mr. Jorrocks" is immortal, and we must thank Mr. Cuming for editing another of this famous author's books. In this volume Surtees narrates

his experiences with various packs of hounds, with which he hunted during the years 1829-1832—a period when evil elements of the population were rioting and smashing machinery. He certainly was indefatigable in his wanderings; it was no mean feat to travel by coach from London to the country for a day's hunting, "but as love laughs at locksmiths, so fox-hunters laugh at distance." In these articles, originally contributed for the "old" and for the "new Sporting Magazines," long and perhaps wearisome accounts of the days' runs have been avoided, the author confining himself chiefly to recounting his impressions of the various personalities of the hunts, the hounds and their methods of working. At times his criticism is caustic and undoubtedly many of his words must have caused offence, e.g., "Mr. Donovan goes, if his horse runs away with him," and in referring to the Duke of Wellington, he writes "Indeed I have seldom seen a man with less idea of riding; his seat is unsightly in the extreme." He speaks openly of the sartorial delinquencies of certain masters, their staffs and prominent members of the hunt. He is surprised that "Mr. B—— should make it a rule to hunt in trousers; it looks grocer-like . . ." and he is particularly scornful of "two gentlemen in red coats and white hats," one of whom Squire Osbaldeston accused of having frightened the fox with his hat. It was a jest of the Merstham Hunt at that time that a certain member wore such a large hat that the owner could punt three or four persons over a swollen brook in it.

Lovers of fox-hunting will take a delight in reading these experiences, although they are a century old. Men, horses and hounds may pass away, but the principles of the chase remain constant and much may be learnt from a study of Surtees' Hunting Tours.

O.J.F.F.

"Big Game Shooting in the Indian Empire." By Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Stockley. (Constable & Co.). 18s. net.

Lieut.-Colonel Stockley maintains that India is not shot out, though nowadays it is the fashion to say so. There is

plenty of game to be had, as long as the sportsman knows where to look for it. "Africa may show more beasts, but not half the sport. *Crede experto*," says the author. This volume is an excellent guide to big game shooting in India and deals with the country as a whole and not with any particular area. He gives valuable advice in his chapters entitled: Outfit; Marching; Camping; The Stalk; Tracking; Beating; Sitting-up; Skinning and Preserving Trophies.

Although the author states that Part II (i.e., the appearance, size and habits of the various animals) is curtailed, yet he has managed to deal with the subject in an interesting manner, and the shikari will find ample notes on each animal. He describes well the temperamental nature of elephants, in which he has little confidence. On one occasion he found "his five elephants in a semi-circle creating a terrible din, with the cause of the uproar crawling on the sand in front of them. It was a tortoise about a foot long. A few days later, the same elephants faced a tiger with absolute equanimity." He also mentions a man-eating panther, who with a bag of 125 human victims almost held up the Upper Ganges pilgrim traffic.

This is a fascinating book for all interested in Big-Game Shooting and can be recommended to all those who contemplate taking a hand in this form of sport.

O.J.F.F.



SPORTING NOTES

RACING IN INDIA

THE LUCKNOW AUTUMN MEETING

The Grand Military Steeplechase was won by Capt. G. H. B. Wood, R.H.A., on Warrior, beating Capt. Newill, 17th Poona Horse on Sammy, and Mr. Weber, 12th Cavalry, on Llyn Eigiau, belonging to Capt. E. L. Turner, Skinner's Horse.

The Army Cup was run for at the same meeting. For the sake of those who are out of touch with racing in India, it may be stated that the race is now a Welter Handicap for horses in Class IV, the property of, and to be ridden by, officers holding His Majesty's Commission in the Regular Army or Royal Air Force.

The result was as under :

Joe D. (Capt. J. A. Aizlewood), 11—12 (Capt. Atherton)	..	1
Middleton (Capts. R. George and M. Cox), 9—12 (Capt. Cox)	..	2
Fillet (Maj. S. O'Donel), 11—0 (Capt. Wansborough)	.. ..	3
Whitsun (Mr. Rossco), 9—7 (Capt. Newill)	.. ..	4

Capt. Atherton belongs to the Royal Deccan Horse and Capt. Cox to the Central India Horse.

The enjoyment of the meeting was greatly marred by the sad death of Capt. G. H. A. Watson, Probyn's Horse, from injuries sustained in a fall in the Hurdle Race on the second day.

There was no more popular or hard-riding supporter of all that is best in Amateur 'Chasing in India than "Watty."

The King-Emperor's Cup was won by Mr. A. E. Ephraum's Jingle ; The Aga Khan's Quincy being second ; and the Maharaja of Mysore's Affable third.

Jingle is presumably a horse by Jingo—Zara II that ran for some years in England. As a four-year-old he won a selling race at Beverley, but otherwise met with little success. It is stated that six months ago he was running in Class III amongst hacks in Ceylon. He can, therefore, have had little pretensions to win a race of this description.



Capt. L. D. HAMMOND, R.C.D., on "Sergeant Murphy."
Canadian Army Team, New York, 1927.

Second in Officers' Open Class, at "Royal," Toronto, 1927.

Digitized by Google

The Viceroy's Cup resulted in a victory for Mr. A. A. Bowie's Nightjar, from Mr. Kelso's Ventose and Mr. Wadia's Domestic Bond.

There was a horse named Nightjar by Jackdaw—Doris O, running in Ireland in 1926. Before being sold to go abroad he won two races and was second the only other time he ran. His form was fairly useful.

The Indian Grand National, run over three miles, brought out a field of ten.

Amongst the field was Llyn Eigiau, who had previously run third in the Grand Military. This time he went one better, being only beaten by Righ Pairc, belonging to Mr. Bolton; Folly II was third. Capt. Leetham's More Sanity, last year's winner, was going well when he fell five furlongs from home.

THE CHAMPIONSHIP AND EZRA TOURNAMENT, Calcutta, December, 1927

The Ezra was productive of some good fast games and was very deservedly won by the Deccan Travellers, composed of the two Prior-Palmers and Harris, of the 9th Lancers, and Tucker of 8th Cavalry. This was practically the 9th Lancers' *debut* at Polo since they arrived out in this country. The younger Prior-Palmer at back, and Harris at (2) are a very useful pair, both played consistently well throughout the tournament and should form a useful foundation for a Regimental team.

In the Championship, the Nawab of Bhopal's side was the chief attraction. The Viceroy's illness was a great misfortune and deprived his staff of the services of Colonel Hawey—necessitating the remodelling of the team, Vigors and Taylor both playing out of their usual places, with the result that they never got together and were decisively beaten by the Deccan Travellers.

In the Semi-Finals the 13th Lancers put up a great show and made Bhopal go all-out all the time, this was a really fast open game and the best of the tournament. The 13th all played above their handicaps. For Bhopal, the Nawab was outstanding; being beautifully mounted he had little difficulty in beating his opposing one to the ball and his hitting throughout was brilliant. He is undoubtedly a brilliant player and would show up to advantage in any company. Rao Raja Hanut Singh was brilliant at times, giving some delightful exhibitions of fine horsemanship and hitting, but there were occasions when he was slow in marking his man.

In the Final against the Deccan Travellers, Bhopal had all the best of the first three chukkers, scoring four times in the first, but after half-time, the Travellers put up a great fight and pressed Bhopal continuously. The Nawab again played beautiful polo and was well supported by Hanut Singh.

Pritthi Singh and Dalrymple-Hay were not playing up to their usual form and their shooting was often wild and erratic.

THE I.P.A. CHAMPIONSHIP

It is unfortunate that in the Press reports received from India, there is little mention of this tournament. It is consequently impossible to give the names of any of the players, except in the Final. These are as under :

Bhopal

Capt. Pritthi Singh
 Capt. Dalrymple-Hay.
 Rao Raja Hannut Singh
 The Nawab of Bhopal

Deccan Travellers

Capt. Prior-Palmer
 Capt. Tucker
 Mr. Prior-Palmer
 Capt. Harris

EZRA HANDICAP TOURNAMENT

The Governor's Staff

Capt. Wilkinson
 Risaldar Mai Singh
 Major Henry
 Colonel Butler

Calcutta Red

Mr. Hunter
 Risaldar Boston Khan
 Mr. Forrester
 Major Nethersole

The Governor's Staff conceded two goals and won 6—3.

Indore Army

Lieut. Mahomed Shafi
 Jemador Shabaj Khan
 Major Hira Singh
 General Bhawni Singh

Calcutta Light Horse

Mr. Hooper
 Mr. Amittand
 Mr. Lyall
 Mr. Milton

Indore conceded $1\frac{1}{2}$ goals and won by 6— $2\frac{1}{2}$.

The Deccan Travellers

Capt. Prior-Palmer
 Capt. Tucker
 Mr. Prior-Palmer
 Capt. Harris

13th Lancers

Capt. Cormer
 Major Vickers
 Major Baker
 Capt. Gilpin

The travellers received $\frac{1}{2}$ goal and won $3\frac{1}{2}$ —1.

Bhopal

Capt. Holder
 Mr. Karamat Ali
 Rao Raja Hannut Singh
 Risaldar Mahomed Hussain

The Crusaders

Mr. Mylne
 Mr. Knight
 Mr. Robinson
 Capt. Benyon

Bhopal conceded 5 goals and won by one goal (score not given).

The Blue Birds

Capt. Apcar
 Major Motham
 Colonel Anderson
 Major Blacker

52nd Infantry

Mr. Kilbern
 Mr. Falkner
 Mr. Conant
 Capt. Eager

The Blue Birds conceded 2 goals and won 9—2.

The Muddlers

Capt. Herbert
 Capt. Pritthi Singh
 Capt. Mumtaz Ali
 Major Vigors

The Shabashas

Colonel McLeod
 Capt. Taylor
 Capt. Dalrymple-Hay
 Capt. Alexander

The Muddlers received 5 goals and won 6—5.

The Deccan Travellers beat the Muddlers 4—3.

The Blue Birds received $\frac{1}{2}$ and beat Darbhanga $1\frac{1}{2}$ —1.

The Northern Bengal Mounted Rifles (Mr. Shipsey, Mr. Davies, Major Little and Mr. Hill), received 6 goals and beat Bhopal 10—7.

The Governor's Staff conceded $2\frac{1}{2}$ and beat the Indore Army 8— $3\frac{1}{2}$.

The Semi-Finals

The Governor's Staff conceded 3 goals and beat the Blue Birds 5—3.

The Deccan Travellers conceded $5\frac{1}{2}$ goals and beat The Northern Bengal Mounted Rifles by $\frac{1}{2}$ goal. (Score not given.)

The Final

The Deccan Travellers conceded 2 goals and beat the Governor's Staff 7—5.

BARTON POLO CUP, Jubbulpore, November, 1927

Seven teams competed for the Barton Polo Cup, played at Jubbulpore during the last week in November. The Equitation School, Saugor, represented by Colonel Skinner, Capt. Cairns, Capt. Maxwell and Mr. Alford, reached the Final, where they had to acknowledge defeat at the hands of the 13th Lancers, represented by Colonel Connop, Major Baker, Capt. Corner and Mr. Caldecott. As the score would suggest (5—2), the final was a fast and well contested game—Capt. Corner standing out for the winners and Colonel Skinner for the losers.

INDIAN CAVALRY TOURNAMENT

The Indian Cavalry Tournament was played at Lahore from 28th January to 3rd February. A certain amount of rain fell before the Tournament began, which necessitated putting off the first round from 27th to 28th January, and though rain hung about and actually fell a little during the semi-finals, play was never interrupted. The grounds were in excellent condition, slightly on the soft side on account of the rain, but very true. No. 2 was the better of the two and both the semi-finals and final were played on it.

The first round saw four teams engaged, the P.A.V.O., 19th Lancers, Hodson's Horse and the Deccan Horse. In the first game the P.A.V.O. were too good for the 19th and won comfortably 11—4, though this does not indicate the run of the play, as the 19th put up a very good fight. Contrary to expectations the Deccan Horse were somewhat easily disposed of by Hodson's Horse, for whom Lawrence and Beresford played a good game.

The next round saw some varied polo, one game being excellent and three somewhat indifferent. Sam Browne's Cavalry, who had won at Lahore at Christmas, went down unexpectedly to a weak 15th Lancers team, who had their two best players, Atkinson and Anderson, away. Two young players, Loring at (1) and Lovett at back, took their place, and played very well, Lovett being particularly sound. The 12th never seemed to get going the first half and allowed the 15th to get a long lead, which they held to the end, winning 7—5. The C.I.H. were too good for the Poona Horse, and won easily 12—4; while Probyn's Horse had no difficulty in disposing of the Guides by 10—3.

The last game in this round saw one of the best contested fights in the whole tournament. Hodson's Horse meeting the P.A.V.O.'s. The former, who have not heretofore done well in the Tournament, had got together a well balanced team, and with one or two extra ponies the result might have been different. Polo was of a high standard and very fast throughout, there being no sticky periods, and the result was in doubt till the last chukker. The P.A.V.O.'s owed their victory to Dening's splendid hitting, which was a feature of the tournament, but it was only by the narrow margin of 4 goals to 2 that they passed into the next round.

Here they met the 15th Lancers and had a runaway victory 11—2. The 15th were not playing nearly as well as when they defeated Sam Browne's, Pert being very disappointing, though this was probably due to his playing in an unaccustomed place (3). The C.I.H. and Probyn's Horse, on the other hand, had an excellent game, the former only winning by 5—3. Probyn's Horse have the better-mounted team, and possessed in Campbell a first-rate 1. He demonstrated admirably how a small No. 1, mounted on light handy ponies can deal with a big back on heavier slower ponies. Alexander's play was disappointing, he was very slow, and George was indisposed. The bulk of the work was done by Dalrymple-Hay, who played a first-class game. Play was generally open, which should have suited the C.I.H., but there were some sticky patches in it. Weather conditions were generally against good polo, as it drizzled during the game a little, and there was a cold wind blowing.

Friday showed us the best finals that have been seen in this tournament for years, and the P.A.V.O.'s thoroughly deserved their victory, as at one time they looked as if they hadn't a hope of pulling the game round. However, they never lost heart, and taking advantage of all their opponents' mistakes they gradually drew up and finally pulled the match off. At the throw-in the C.I.H. ran the ball straight down to their opponents' goal and scored within about ten seconds, and added another before the end of the chukker. They secured two more in the next chukker and it looked as if it would be merely a question of how many goals they would win by. The P.A.V.O., however, held them the third chukker, the score at half-time being 4—0 in favour of the C.I.H. The fourth chukker saw the turning point in the match, as in it the P.A.V.O.'s scored 3 goals. This was chiefly due to Dalrymple-Hay having a bad pony, but the P.A.V.O.'s deserved every credit for the way they took advantage of this and pressed home their attacks.



Capt. S. C. BATE, R.C.D., on "Golden Gleam."
Canadian Army Team, New York, 1927.

Winner of Officers' Open Class, at "Royal," Toronto, 1927.

Digitized by Google

The last two chukkers saw some first-rate polo. The C.I.H., making desperate efforts to keep their lead, and the P.A.V.O.'s slowly catching them up. The former scored one more goal, and the latter three more, the last one being shortly before the end of the sixth chukker, at the conclusion of which the score stood at 5 goals all. Even then it was thought by most people that the C.I.H. might still pull the game out of the fire, but after about a minute's play the P.A.V.O.'s scored the winning goal.

Looking at the tournament as a whole, there seems no doubt that Dening was the outstanding figure. Though he never seemed to hurry he always appeared unmarked, and his hitting was a joy to watch. He scored one magnificent goal in the finals from right away by the side line, and whether it was relieving pressure in his own half, or hitting the ball up to No. 1 in the enemy's half, he always managed to get tremendous length and accuracy. Carr-White played a very sound game at back, seldom missing back-handers and both he and Dening showed great skill in dribbling the ball round instead of taking a back-hander. Indeed, by this means Dening used to turn defence into attack time after time, and all the ground gained by his opponent would be lost by a tremendous drive up the field.

Of the other members of the P.A.V.O. Team, Tatham played a sound game at (2), but Wheeler at (1), playing his first big tournament, was rather lost. He was handicapped, however, by a damaged hand, and played a good game in the finals.

For the losers, Dalrymple-Hay was the best, hitting the ball at all angles, and doing a tremendous amount of work. George was never a fit man throughout the tournament, and did not show us his best. Alexander was very slow; but this was mostly due to indifferent ponies. The C.I.H., generally speaking, were not as well mounted as formerly.

Of the other players in the tournament, the one who caught one's attention most was Campbell, the Probyn Horse I, who struck one there as being the best (1) playing and the best mounted. Weber, Sam Browne's (1), was disappointing, never being in his right place. Wardle, at back for the Deccan Horse, played a good game, while Lawrence and Messervy worked well with each other for Hodson's Horse.

TEAMS

P.A.V.O. Cavalry

Mr. G. T. Wheeler
 Capt. P. R. Tatham
 Capt. J. P. Dening
 Capt. G. Carr-White

Poona Horse

Major R. G. MacGregor
 Capt. G. D. Baines
 Capt. K. Hatch
 Capt. T. M. Lunham

19th Lancers

Capt. H. L. Mostyn Owen
 Capt. W. G. M. Thompson
 M. Gulsher Khan
 Major R. Dening

Probyn's Horse

Capt. I. Campbell
 Capt. J. H. Taylor
 Major H. Macdonald
 Capt. G. Nadin

Guides Cavalry

Capt. F. Walton
 Capt. E. K. Wood
 Capt. C. P. J. Prioleau
 Capt. C. H. H. Eales

15th Lancers

Mr. W. W. A. Loring
 Capt. S. H. Persse
 Capt. C. E. Pert
 Mr. R. N. Lovett

Sam Browne's Cavalry

Mr. H. N. Weber
 Capt. E. St. J. Birnie
 Major J. O'Rorke
 Lt.-Col. J. C. R. Gannon

C.I.H.

Capt. H. A. Wansborough-Jones
 Capt. R. George
 Capt. B. G. Dalrymple-Hay
 Capt. A. G. S. Alexander

Hodson's Horse

Major T. W. Corbett
 Lt.-Col. G. de la P. Beresford
 Capt. F. W. Messervy
 Capt. R. T. Lawrence

Royal Deccan Horse

Capt. T. G. Atherton
 Capt. R. L. W. Herrick
 Capt. R. N. Nunn
 Capt. J. L. Wardle

POLO AT SAUGOR

CENTRAL INDIA HORSE TOURNAMENT

The opening matches of the C.I.H. Polo Tournament were played at Saugor on 20th January. Entries had been made by nine teams, including two from the 13th Lancers and one from Mhow—the 27th Field Brigade R.A. Subalterns—the remaining teams coming from the Equitation School. In the first round five teams drew byes, and the games down for 20th January were all between School teams. The Four Jokers, receiving one goal from the Full House, were the first to attack, Bryant coming through and nearly scoring, but the first goal went to the Full House, from Campbell, shortly afterwards Gray added another, and then Marriott with a good run scored a third. The second chukker started with a goal from Spurgin, which heartened up the Jokers, who pressed for most of the chukker, Wells being prominent. After the interval the Full House got going, Marriott and Larden adding goals. Spurgin from the throw-in of the final chukker reduced the opponents lead, but then three more goals from Marriot (two) and Larden (one) came to the Full House, who thus won by 8—3.

TEAMS

The Full House

Mr. G. H. N. Larden
 Major S. W. Marriott
 Major G. C. G. Gray
 Major W. E. D. Campbell (back)

The Four Jokers

Mr. W. H. L. Spurgin
 Mr. J. Alford
 Mr. B. G. Wells
 Mr. A. D. Bryant (back)

The second match was between the Cheesemites (receiving 3 goals) and the Bootleggers. In the first chukker although the latter pressed and crossed the Cheesemites' line several times, they did not score till after the bugle, when Brooke hit a good goal. Benn was prominent in defence in the second chukker, when de Salis with two goals equalized the scores. After the interval the Cheesemites pressed for a few minutes, but then the Bootleggers found

their form again, adding three more goals (Greenway 2, de Salis 1). The last chukker saw two more goals to the Bootleggers (de Salis 1, Greenway 1), and a combined attack by Fewtrell, Mullens and Wright gave a goal to the Cheesemites, who thus were defeated by 8 goals to 4.

TEAMS

Bootleggers

Mr. B. H. Brooke
 Capt. J. A. Greenway
 Capt. R. A. de Salis
 Capt. E. L. P. P. Gilpin (back)

Cheesemites

Capt. A. H. H. Fewtrell
 Capt. L. M. H. Benn
 Mr. R. S. Wright
 Mr. G. J. de W. Mullens (back)

The C.I.H. Tournament was continued on 24th January (after a five days' interval caused by rain), and the second round was completed. The 13th Lancers "A" met the Puritans, a Saugor side, who started in receipt of 3½ goals. From the throw-in Jackman got away and nearly scored for the Puritans, but the 13th then pressed, and after a sixty yard hit Baker scored. Shortly after Connop hit the goal post. Jackman made several good runs but his shots went wide. The 13th had the best of the second chukker, Corner scoring twice. After the interval Baker put his side ahead, and in the last chukker the 13th increased their lead, Corner scoring twice, and Caldecott once, the score being 7 goals to 3½. For the losers Fowler was prominent in defence.

TEAMS

13th Lancers "A"

Mr. H. D. Caldecott
 Capt. R. J. Corner
 Major W. H. G. Baker
 Lt.-Col. H. E. Connop (back)

The Puritans

Capt. H. R. Jackman
 Capt. B. MacMahon
 Capt. A. E. C. Poole
 Capt. H. O. W. Fowler (back)

Another Equitation School side, the Borstalions, then played against the 13th Lancers "B" team, who received two goals on handicap. The Borstalions started slowly and by the end of the first chukker the score board read 4—1 in favour of the 13th Lancers, Ganga Singh and Hunter having scored for the 13th and Cairns for the Borstalions. The next chukker began with another goal from Ganga Singh, but then Borstalions woke up, Cairn scoring twice, and Lambert and Wood once each. After the interval Borstalions continued to press, but the shooting was inaccurate until Cairns made the score level with another long shot. The last chukker saw Wood put his side in front, and Cairns score again from a difficult angle, while Hill got a goal from the 13th. In the last minute Ford all but equalized the score again, but his shot just missed, leaving the Borstalions winners by 7 goals to 6.

TEAMS

13th Lancers "B"

Mr. P. L. A. Hill
 Jemadar Ganga Singh
 Mr. H. S. Ford
 Mr. N. G. Hunter (back)

Borstalions

Mr. D. de G. Lambert
 Capt. G. B. H. Wood
 Capt. C. Cairns
 Capt. R. F. Pearson (back)

The last match of the day was between 27th Field Brigade R.A. Subalterns and the Bootleggers, who had to give their opponents four goals. In the first chukka the Bootleggers pressed but their shooting was not good ; Greenway and de Salis each scored once. In the second chukka Greenway hit a good goal, and Gilpin and de Salis each added goals in the third chukka ; Gimson was playing well for the Gunners, and Hall constantly saved well. The Bootleggers raised their score with goals from de Salis and Greenway, thus winning by 7 goals to 4.

TEAMS

*Subalterns**27th Field Brigade R.A.*

Mr. N. V. Watson
Mr. W. A. Gimson
Mr. C. H. Norton
Mr. H. C. B. Hall (back)

Bootleggers

Mr. B. H. Brooke
Capt. J. A. Greenway
Capt. R. A. de Salis
Capt. E. L. P. P. Gilpin (back)

In the Subsidiary Tournament the Cheesemites met the Four Jokers, who, receiving half a goal, won by $4\frac{1}{2}$ goals to 0.

TEAMS

Cheesemites

Capt. A. H. H. Fewtrell
Capt. L. M. H. Benn
Mr. W. S. Cooper
Mr. G. J. de W. Mullens (back)

Four Jokers

Mr. W. H. L. Spurgin
Mr. J. Alford
Mr. B. G. Wells
Mr. A. D. Bryant (back)

The semi-final rounds of the C.I.H. Tournament took place at Saugor on 27th January.

The Full House receiving $2\frac{1}{2}$ goals, met the 13th Lancers "A." The latter had all the best of the first chukka scoring three goals ; the first from the throw-in, when Baker scored, the other two from melees, scored by Corner and Baker. In the second chukka, Gray got away and after a good run put his side ahead, but the 13th, apart from this, had the better of the chukka and Caldecott, turning up quickly, made the board read $4-3\frac{1}{2}$ in favour of the 13th. After the interval the 13th increased their lead, Corner adding two goals and Caldecott one. The last chukka saw another goal from Corner, making the final score $8-3\frac{1}{2}$ to the 13th.

TEAMS

Full House

Mr. G. H. N. Larden
Major S. W. Marriott
Major G. C. G. Gray
Major W. E. D. Campbell (back)

13th Lancers "A"

Mr. H. D. Caldecott
Capt. R. J. Corner
Major W. H. G. Baker
Lt.-Col. H. E. Connop (back)

The Bootleggers then played the Borstalions, who on handicap started $1\frac{1}{2}$ goals up, and a good galloping game ensued. Wood opened the score for the Borstalions, but the Bootleggers quickly replied, Greenway scoring twice and Gilpin once. Wood was again prominent in the second chukker, and after a good run, put his side ahead. Greenway, however, retaliated with two goals to the Bootleggers. On the resumption, Greenway and Gilpin each added goals, and in the last chukker Lambert hit a long goal for the Borstalions, while Greenway, from the subsequent throw-in, met the ball, and running through made the score $8-4\frac{1}{2}$ in favour of the Bootleggers.

TEAMS

Bootleggers

Mr. B. H. Brooke
 Capt. J. A. Greenway
 Capt. R. A. de Salis
 Capt. E. L. P. P. Gilpin (back)

Borstalions

Mr. D. de G. Lambert
 Capt. G. H. B. Wood
 Capt. C. Cairns
 Capt. R. F. Pearson (back)

In the Subsidiary Tournament the 13th Lancers "B" scratched against the 27th Field Brigade R.A. Subalterns, and the Puritans playing level, beat the Four Jokers by 7 goals to 3.

TEAMS

Puritans

Capt. H. R. Jackman
 Capt. B. MacMahon
 Capt. A. E. C. Poole
 Capt. H. O. W. Fowler (back)

Four Jokers

Mr. W. H. L. Spurgin
 Mr. J. Alford
 Mr. B. G. Wells
 Mr. A. D. Bryant (back)

The Bootleggers met the 13th Lancers "A" on level handicap in the final of the C.I.H. Tournament at Saugor on 30th January, and were defeated by 3 goals to 1.

From the throw-in the Bootleggers crossed their opponents' line near the goal, but immediately afterwards the 13th did the same. After level exchanges de Salis hit the goal post, and for the rest of the chukker play was even, Corner being dangerous. In the second chukker, Gilpin met the ball well but de Salis's shot hit a pony on the goal line. Baker slipped through and all but scored, and a minute later, after midfield play, he opened for the 13th from a melee, and scored again. Just before the end of the chukker a shot from Greenway went wide, and after the bugle Brooke saved in the goal mouth for the Bootleggers. The third chukker saw no change on the board, though Greenway and Corner each nearly scored twice for their respective sides, one of Greenway's shots hitting the post. The game became very fast in the final chukker with the Bootleggers pressing; Gilpin scored from the side line with a very long shot, but immediately after Caldecott made a good run which ended with a goal from Corner, and although the Bootleggers continued to press and crossed the line again, there was no further addition to the score, which ended at $3-1$, in favour of the 13th Lancers "A".

TEAMS

13th Lancers "A"

Mr. H. D. Caldecott

Capt. R. J. Corner

Major W. H. G. Baker

Lt.-Col. H. E. Connop (back)

Bootleggers

Mr. B. H. Brooke

Capt. J. A. Greenway

Capt. R. A. de Salis

Capt. E. L. P. P. Gilpin (back)

In the Subsidiary Final the Puritans met the 27th Field Brigade R.A. Subalterns, who on handicap received half a goal. Early in the first chukker Poole hit the post and then Jackman scored but the Gunners at once got ahead again, and at the interval were still leading by their handicap, though the Puritans had pressed all the second chukker. The third chukker saw further pressure by the Puritans with goals from Jackman, Poole and Fowler, while Watson scored for the Gunners. The last chukker provided a brilliant and successful run by Gibson for the Gunners, who pressed, but just failed to get ahead, being defeated by 4 goals to 3½.

TEAMS

Puritans

Capt. H. R. Jackman

Capt. B. MacMahon

Capt. A. E. C. Poole

Capt. H. O. W. Fowler (back)

27th Field Brigade R.A. Subalterns

Mr. N. V. Watson

Mr. W. A. Gimson

Mr. C. H. Norton

Mr. H. C. B. Hall (back)

At the conclusion the Central India Horse Challenge Cup and the Individual Trophies were presented to the winners by Mrs. Solly-Flood.

THE HUNTERS IMPROVEMENT SOCIETY

The Forty-fourth Annual Show was held at the Agricultural Hall on 28th and 29th February and 1st March.

Every year there is an improvement in the arrangements and the quality of the exhibits, and the result must have been most gratifying to the management. The first day was mainly occupied in awarding the King's Premiums. A large number of first-class stallions were exhibited, amongst them being such high-class performers on the race course as Erehwemos, Periosteum, Ardavon, Eton Boy, Kentish Knock, London Cry and Double Bed.

The awards of Premiums was continued on the second day as was also the selection of Super-Premium horses. These were :

Mr. S. Mumford, jun., and Capt. Blew-Jones's Brigand, by Lemberg ; Capt. Wickham-Boynton's Hector, by St. Amant ; Southwold Hunt Sire Association's Mankato, by Tredennis ; Mr. S. Mumford jun.'s Political, by Joe Chamberlain ; Mr. R. Lawther's John Gay, by St. Amant ; and Mr. W. F. and Miss D. M. Grayson's Sangrail, by Santoi.

The King's Challenge Cup was awarded to Mr. Stephen Mumford and Capt. Blew-Jones's Brigand. In his racing days he belonged to Mr. J. A.



MAJOR R. S. TIMMIS, D.S.O., R.C.D., on "Bucephalus."
Canadian Army Team, New York, 1927.

Winner of George III. Gold Challenge Cup at National Show, New York, 1927,
and Open Class (101 entries), at "Royal," Toronto, 1927.

Digitized by Google

de Rothschild and won many good races. He will be best remembered for his victory in the Cambridgeshire in 1919.

Hector, last year's winner, was reserve.

The third day was chiefly taken up with judging hunters.

The Show was the best that has been seen for many years, the level quality of the exhibits being most marked. Some of the chief results are given below :

Yearling Colts or Geldings.

Major and Mrs. Dodd's Esmolin by Limosin—Esmeralda.

Yearling Fillies.

Mr. C. G. Beard's Veronica, by Captain Jack—Clematis.

Two-Year-Old Colts or Geldings.

Lady Beryl Gilbert's Revesby, by Mankato—Lady Beryl.

Two-Year-Old Fillies.

Major Clive Behren's Swinton Honora, by Dunholm—Heather III.

Three-Year-Old Colts or Geldings.

Miss R. M. Harrison's Kingfish, by King Midas—New Star.

Three-Year-Old Fillies.

Mrs. M. S. Smith-Ryland's Snail III, by Gay Lally—Snail II.

Light-Weight Mares or Geldings.

Mr. R. Bullard's Lord Rowland.

Heavy-Weight Mares or Geldings.

Lady Dennis's The General, by The Boss, dam by Oppressor.

Prince of Wales's Challenge Cup.

Mrs. L. M. Smith-Ryland's Snail III.

Champion Gold Medal.

Lady Dennis's The General.

In the Jumping, two out of the three competitions were won by Achchha. He is an Indian country-bred and was bought from Remounts in Mesopotamia. We saw him jumping at the Aldershot Command Horse Show in 1924, and wrote very highly of him in the autumn issue of this JOURNAL.

CAVALRY FOOTBALL ASSOCIATION

The results of the first and second round are as follows :

First Round

17th/21st Lancers	beat	King's Dragoon Guards	..	4—0
11th (P.A.O.) Hussars	„	The Queen's Bays	..	6—3
16th/5th Lancers	„	7th Q.O. Hussars	..	1—0
3rd/6th Dragoon Guards	„	The Life Guards (1st & 2nd)	..	5—1
10th Royal Hussars	„	Royal Horse Guards	..	7—4

Second Round

11th (P.A.O) Hussars	beat	17th/21st Lancers	..	3—3, 3—2
3rd/6th Dragoon Guards	„	16th/5th Lancers	..	.. 5—0
13th/18th Hussars	„	10th Royal Hussars	..	.. 4—1
Royal Scots Greys	„	14th/20th Hussars	..	.. 6—1

* * * * *

The three photographs published with these Notes are those of the Canadian Army Team. They should have been included in the January number in connection with the accounts of the "National" at New York and the Royal at Toronto, but arrived too late for insertion.

Bucephalus is a troop horse and is mostly standard (trotting) bred. He is a very intelligent and highly-strung horse.

The International Team also attended the Ottawa Horse Show in November.

Bucephalus (Major Timmis) won the Open Touch and Out and the Open Stakes Class, besides being second in the Officers' Open Class and fourth in the Triple Ban.

Golden Gleam (Capt. Bates) was second in the Open Stakes, after tying with Bucephalus.

Sergeant Murphy (Capt. Hammond) was also a winner at the Show.



THE GRAND MILITARY MEETING

The Grand Military Meeting was held at Sandown on 23rd and 24th March.

The Gold Cup was won by Dash O' White, owned by Mr. P. S. Akroyd of the Welsh Guards and ridden by Major McCreery of the 12th Lancers. The winner started favourite for the same race last year but was unplaced. He, however, made amends by winning his next two races and was a clear favourite on this occasion.

The Selling Steeplechase was noticeable for the fact that the winner was ridden by Captain Stanyforth, who only recently returned from captaining the side that toured South Africa.

There has seldom been a season when so many fatal accidents to horses have had to be recorded, and it was a great loss to Colonel Anthony when his gallant horse, Clashing Arms, met with an accident on the second day and had to be destroyed.

The SELLING STEEPLECHASE of 220 sovs. Two miles and about 25 yards.

Æsop (Mr. M. G. Roddick), aged, 12 st. 3 lb.	Captain Stanyforth	1
Redshank (Captain H. de Trafford), aged, 12 st. 3 lb.	Major Cavenagh	2
Mask-On (Captain M. E. Dennis), aged, 12 st. 3 lb.	Mr. S. Dennis	3

Won by four lengths ; a bad third.

The GRAND MILITARY GOLD CUP of 650 sovs. ; winner to receive 400 sovs. and piece of plate value 100 sovs. ; second to receive 100 sovs. ; and third 50 sovs. Three miles and about 125 yards.

Dash O' White, br g, by The White Knight—Calliope (Mr. P. S. Akroyd), aged, 12 st.	Major McCreery	1
Royal Sport (Mr. G. S. Poole), aged, 12 st.	Owner	2
Donegal (Captain A. F. Gossage), aged, 12 st.	Owner	3
Ghent of Old (Major T. Sebag Montefiore), aged, 12 st. 7 lb.		
	Mr. Kindersley	0
Madrigal (Major Hodgkins), aged, 11 st 10 lb.	Mr. H. Misa	0
Foxtrot (Captain H. Lumsden), aged, 12 st.	Owner	0
Lutoi (Captain E. J. L. Speed), aged, 12 st.	Owner	0
Commonside (Lieutenant-Colonel G. Brooke), aged, 11 st. 10 lb.		
	Lord Killeen	0

Menassier (Major V. E. Mocatta), aged, 11 st. 10 lb.

	Captain de Wend Fenton	0
Rampant (Colonel W. S. Anthony), aged, 10 st. 9 lb.	Mr. Kelly	0
Irish Lass (Wing Commander W. R. Read), aged, 10 st. 9 lb.	Owner	0
Umballa (Squadron Leader C. Ridley), aged, 11 st.	Owner	0

Betting.—3 to 1 Dash o' White, 4 to 1 Foxtrot, 13 to 2 Rampant, 7 to 1 Donegal, 8 to 1 Commonside, 10 to 1 each Ghent of Old and Lutoi, 100 to 8 Madrigal, 100 to 6 each against the others.

Won by ten lengths ; six lengths separated second and third. Ghent of Old was fourth and Umballa last.

The PAST AND PRESENT HANDICAP STEEPLECHASE of 260 sovs. Two miles and a half and about 75 yards.

Irish Temple (Mr. H. G. Blagrove), 6 yrs., 10 st. 11 lb.	Mr. L. Whitfield	1
Starbox (Major J. B. Walker), 5 yrs, 10 st. 10 lb.	Hon. H. Grosvenor	2
Ben Cruchan (Mr. W. H. Whitbread), aged, 12 st. 11 lb.	Owner	3
Soulector (Mr. H. Fowler), 6 yrs., 12 st. 2 lb.	Owner	0
Drintyre (Mr. C. N. Brownhill), 5 yrs., 12 st. 3 lb.	Owner	0

Benjamin Cherry (Colonel S. Hill Dillon), aged, 11 st. 11 lb.	Owner	0
Rathluck (Lord Londesborough), aged, 11 st. 6 lb.	Mr. H. Brown	0
Devonport (Captain C. B. Petre), aged, 11 st. 6 lb.	Mr. R. Gubbins	0
West Countryman (Mr. G. Pennington), aged, 12 st. 4 lb.	Owner	0

Won by two lengths ; five lengths separated second and third.

An objection to Irish Temple for crossing was over-ruled. The deposit money was returned.

The MAIDEN HUNTERS' STEEPLECHASE of 270 sovs. Three miles and about 125 yards.

Tiger (Mr. C. B. Harvey), aged, 11 st. 9 lb.	Owner	1
Ulster Vale (Mr. F. L. Williams), aged, 12 st.	Mr. G. Poole	2
Big Wave (Captain Beddington), 6 yrs., 11 st. 4 lb. (car. 12 st. 3 lb.)	Owner	3
Duke's Sister (Captain J. de Wend Fenton), aged, 12 st.	Owner	0
Terebene (Mr. Ferris), aged, 11 st. 4 lb.	Mr. H. King	0
Tenby (Captain A. Gollan), aged, 12 st. 2 lb.	Owner	0
Etherion (Captain A. F. Gossage), 6 yrs., 12 st.	Owner	0
Blanchie (Colonel M. Graham), aged, 11 st. 9 lb.	Mr. Walford	0
Rose de Limond (Mr. N. L. Palmer), aged, 11 st. 9 lb.	Owner	0
Cheesestraw (Mr. D. H. Patteson-Knight, 6 yrs., 11 st. 4 lb.)	Owner	0
Goldhawk (Lieutenant-Colonel A. K. Main), aged, 12 st.	Captain C. Brownhill	0

Won by six lengths ; a bad third.

SECOND DAY

The UNITED SERVICES SELLING STEEPLECHASE. Two miles.

Quite Alone, 5 yrs., 11 st.	Mr. Thrale	1
March On, 8 yrs., 11 st. 10 lb.	Captain Sassoon	2
Turning Point, 12 yrs., 10 st. 11 lb.	Mr. Milbanke	3

Won by six lengths ; eight lengths separated second and third.

Also ran : Real Royal (evens), Æsop, Mask Man, Fiddleback (8 to 1), The Sheik, Scottish Borderers, Lady Martin, Commandant Dan, Sweet Mona, Scrabo, Fair Avis (100 to 7).

The GRAND MILITARY HANDICAP STEEPLECHASE. Two miles and a half.

Orange Maiden, 10 yrs., 10 st. 10 lb.	Captain de W. Fenton	1
Lutoi, 7 yrs., 11 st.	Mr. West	2
Snapper, 10 yrs., 10 st. 13 lb.	Mr. Kindersley	3

Won by five lengths ; a neck separated second and third.

Also ran : Clashing Arms (11 to 4), Fine Yarn (8 to 1), Desert Lady (100 to 7).

The VICTORY STEEPLECHASE. Two miles.

Hugh O'Neill, 11 yrs., 11 st.	Mr. West	1
General Advance, 8 yrs., 12 st. 12 lb.	Captain Gossage	2
Rampant, 8 yrs., 10 st. 10 lb.	Major H. Misa	3

Won by a length and a half ; half a length separated second and third.

Also ran : Richmond II (7 to 2), Jargoon (9 to 2), Irish Truce, Northern Linnet (100 to 8), Odo, George G., Preface, Fantastical, Ardonian, Lord Emmett (100 to 7).

The TALLY-HO HUNTERS' STEEPLECHASE. Three miles and 125 yards.

Tiger, 13 yrs., 11 st. 7 lb.	Mr. C. B. Harvey	1
Rob Roy, aged, 11 st.	Mr. P. Edwards	2
Blank Cartridge, 9 yrs., 12 st.	Mr. West	3

Won by two lengths ; a length separated second and third.

Also ran : Pippin II (4 to 1), Chateau D'Or (7 to 1), Lochamore (100 to 8).

2000



MADRAS LIGHT CAVALRY

Officer in Review Order—1st Regiment (1818-1845)

JULY, 1955

By M. . .

In 1744, the town of
 the Fort of St.
 history of
 other line
 the
 as to their
 stocked arms
 interference in
 armed forces
 In 1744

1. The first step is to identify the problem or question that needs to be addressed. This involves understanding the context and the specific requirements of the task.



MADRAS LIGHT CAVALRY

Officer in Review Order—1st Regiment (1818-1845)

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

JULY, 1928

THE MADRAS CAVALRY

By MAJOR E. J. SHEARER

ALTHOUGH the town of Madras was founded in 1639, and the formidable Fort of St. George was completed five years later, the military history of the Madras Presidency did not commence until another hundred years had passed.

The original and well advertised policy of the John Company was to trade by peaceful penetration. Thus, while a well stocked armoury enabled its worthies to discourage unlawful interference in their affairs, the maintenance of organized armed forces was at a discount.

In 1744, however, the bankruptcy of this policy was finally proved. In that year war broke out between England and France, and the Madras Government quickly found themselves at the mercy of the French military forces stationed at Pondicherry. The services of the mercenary Nawab of Arcot were hastily enlisted, but his rabble of bravos proved to be more warlike in speech than in deed and, in September 1746, Madras feebly capitulated to the French.

Stimulated by this miserable calamity, the Company at last made the belated decision to raise a military force of their very

own. A start was made by recruiting a mere handful of European cavalry, some units of European artillery, and several regiments both of European and of native foot. For reasons of economy, no regular units of native cavalry were raised. In the ensuing operations, however, as also in the subsequent wars against Haider Ali, the want of regular cavalry was much felt, and the various military leaders continued to press the local authorities to rectify this omission.

Still unconvinced, the parsimonious directors of the Company then temporised by placing several thousands of the Nawab's mounted ruffians under British officers. Fortunately, however, this threadbare expedient proved so costly that it was discarded before the inevitable disaster resulted. It was, therefore, with a sorry grace, that the Madras Government decided, in 1784, to form a regular establishment of Native cavalry. As the cheapest possible means to this end, four regiments belonging to the Nawab, which were already paid and mounted by the Company, were permanently transferred to the service of the latter. The peace establishment of these four units was fixed at four troops, each of 125 men including officers. Although, in those days, the proportion of British officers to Indian other ranks was abnormally high, it is significant to observe that the establishment of officers for these particular units was considerably in excess of that obtaining in other branches of the Company's service. The actual establishment was as follows:—

- 1 Major-Commandant.
- 7 Captains.
- 1 Captain-Lieutenant.
- 15 Lieutenants.
- 17 Cornets.

It is possible that the authorities looked with suspicion on their cheap and ready made acquisition. At any rate events quickly proved that the bargain was indeed a poor one. Within a few days of the transfer, all four units, then brigaded at Arnee under the redoubtable Major Dugald Campbell, mutinied and imprisoned their officers. Arrears of pay were

demanding and the mutineers announced that they would butcher their prisoners without further ado if any troops marched against them. Fortunately for all concerned, Major General Ross Lang accepted the risk and, after surprising the mutineers by a successful night march, he effected the release of their captives.

At the subsequent enquiry, the 3rd Regiment of Cavalry was held to have played a lesser part in the mutiny than its sister regiments, and it was therefore reconstituted, on the 28th May 1784, as the 1st Regiment of Native Cavalry. The remaining units were disbanded, but Major Campbell was authorised to raise the 2nd Regiment of Native Cavalry by enrolling suitable candidates from amongst the discharged personnel. In order to remove the previous anomalies, orders were now issued for the Nawab's standards to be replaced by those of the Company, while, for the first time, the men were obliged to take a formal oath of fidelity.

Encouraged by the success of this experiment, the Madras authorities now raised a third Regiment of Cavalry at Arcot in May 1785. This was followed, in June of the same year, by the formation of a fourth.

Early in 1786 the number of troops in each of these four regiments was increased from four to six, two of which were designated "Grenadiers." At the same time the establishment of British Officers was considerably reduced, while two field pieces, with teams of artillery personnel, were attached to each unit as "galloper guns."

In October 1787, a fifth regiment was added to the establishment.

A few months later, in order to correct the strange methods of equitation then countenanced by some of the Commanding Officers, a British Riding Master was appointed to the Cavalry Corps. Before passing on, it may be of interest to quote verbatim the quaint instructions from which this Riding Master derived his authority.

"The book of Horse Drill lately established by the Commander-in-Chief, having authorised that the native cavalry

shall be permitted to take the position on horseback most in use with the best horsemen among the natives, it is to be understood at the same time that the European commissioned and non-commissioned officers of those Corps are to use the proper European position on horseback."

About this time it was the custom to alter the numbering of regiments to conform with the seniority of their respective Commandants. The last changes made under this system took place in February, 1788. But the change then effected was decisive of the future of two regiments in that it placed the junior (5th) Regiment at the head of the list, while the original 4th became the new 5th and was broken up as the junior unit when the re-organization of the Army took place in 1796.

The Madras Cavalry, as a regular corps, was first employed in the war with Tippoo in 1790-92. Originally the 2nd, 3rd and 5th Regiments formed part of Colonel Floyd's detachment in the operations about Coimbatore, in which the 5th Regiment particularly distinguished itself. Subsequently, however, when the main army, under Lord Cornwallis, was concentrated for the advance into Mysore, all five units were brigaded with His Majesty's 19th Dragoons. Again led by Colonel Floyd, it was not long before this brigade won its spurs. On 5th January 1791, Bangalore was occupied and, on the very next day, the whole Cavalry Brigade executed a gallant, if costly, mounted charge against the bulk of Tippoo's army. In the ensuing advance towards Seringapatam, as in the subsequent retreat from that place, the Cavalry Brigade continued to do yeoman service. So heavy indeed were the casualties sustained, particularly amongst the horses, that, in 1792, when Lord Cornwallis' force captured Seringapatam, his cavalry consisted of only the 19th Dragoons, the 3rd Native Cavalry, four troops of the 5th and two of the Governor's Body Guard. In order to place even this force of cavalry in the field it had been found necessary to dismount the whole of the remaining regiments.

At the conclusion of these operations the 1st Regiment added the battle honour of "Mysore" to its previous distinctions of "Sholinghur and Carnatic," while the 2nd, 3rd and 5th

Regiments placed their first honour of "Mysore" on their appointments.

Meanwhile, the Madras Government, seeing no immediate prospect of being able to remount the whole of the cavalry, determined to complete only the 2nd and 3rd Regiments and to maintain the remainder temporarily on a reduced establishment. Thus, in 1793, when war again broke out with France, it was possible to despatch no more than one Cavalry regiment to accompany the field force operating against Pondicherry. By virtue of the seniority of its Commandant, the 4th Regiment was the one selected. It may here be mentioned that although the 1st, 2nd and 5th Regiments were required to make over all available horses, only 188 were fit for duty when, in August 1793, the 4th Regiment arrived before Pondicherry.

In 1796, the general grievances of the Indian Army, which laboured under serious disadvantages as regards promotions, pensions and leave as compared with the British Service, were brought to a head, and orders were issued for a complete re-organization to be effected. *Inter alia*, the establishment of cavalry was fixed at four regiments each of six troops. This, as has previously been mentioned, occasioned the disappearance of the 5th Regiment.

A period of comparative peace now ensued, but in 1799, hostilities again broke out with Tippoo as a result of his continued intercourse with the French. On this occasion the Madras Army was concentrated at Vellore under the command of General Harris, and the two Brigades of Cavalry attached to the force were again placed under the orders of Major-General Floyd. The 1st Cavalry Brigade consisted of the 19th Dragoons, with the 1st and 4th Regiments of Native Cavalry, while the 2nd Cavalry Brigade comprised the 25th Dragoons, with the 2nd and 3rd Regiments of Native Cavalry.

With advancing years, Major-General Floyd had lost none of his former dash. Within a few days of the commencement of the advance, the General led the 19th Dragoons, together with the 1st and 3rd Regiments of Native Cavalry in a gallant charge which retrieved a most critical situation at the action

of Mallavelly. Two months later Seringapatam was finally reduced and Tippoo was slain.

For their services in these operations the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th Regiments subsequently received the battle honour "Seringapatam."

The territorial acquisitions of the Company now necessitated an increase in their armed forces. Consequently, in September, 1799, a 5th Regiment of Cavalry was again formed at Trichinopoly and a 6th at Arcot. Ten months later a 7th Regiment was raised at Arcot.

During the next four years the Madras Army was engaged almost exclusively in consolidating new conquests, and in stamping out brigandage.

In 1803, however, the Mahratta War broke out. The most important engagement during the succeeding three years of heavy fighting was the famous battle of Assaye, in which the 4th, 5th and 7th Regiments of Native Cavalry acquitted themselves with merit.

Meanwhile, in May, 1804, an 8th Regiment had been added to the establishment, the nucleus being composed of drafts of men and horses taken from the other seven units. The Corps of Cavalry was now formed into four brigades, the whole being placed under the command of Major-General Dugald Campbell.

In December 1805, the first real attempt was made to introduce some uniformity into the training of the Cavalry Corps, and detachments from each regiment were ordered to Arcot to be instructed in a uniform system by an officer of the 19th Light Dragoons. Two years later a further step was taken in this direction by the formation of a Cavalry Depot. This arrangement, however, never reached maturity for the depot was abolished in February, 1808.

In 1809, operations in Travancore were brought to a successful conclusion and, during the next few years a considerable proportion of the Madras Army was diverted to the capture of objectives *ex* India including Mauritius and Java.

None of the Native Cavalry regiments were employed on these ventures and the opportunity was seized to tackle many

domestic reforms which demanded attention. Amongst other things it was ordered, in 1813, that the scarlet jackets with white facings, which had been worn by Cavalry units since 1794, should be replaced by dark blue uniforms with silver lace. The Court of Directors, however, objected to the change on the score of the high price of blue cloth, with the result that a cheaper material of a greyish blue was finally substituted in 1818. Two years later officers of the Madras Cavalry were directed to conform with this innovation by providing themselves with jackets of French grey. This uniform, with various minor alterations, remained unchanged throughout the next hundred years, and it is diverting to ponder that the engaging kit of French grey, which lent charm and colour to many a brilliant function within our own recollection, found its origin in such humble circumstances.

While these domestic discussions were raging, war was again declared against the Mahrattas. But, although all the units of the Madras Cavalry spent long periods on active service hunting the Pindaris and Mahrattas, the 3rd, 4th and 8th Regiments alone secured the battle honour of "Mahdipur."

In May, 1819, all units of the Cavalry Corps were renamed Madras Light Cavalry, and a fourth squadron was added to each regiment. This brought the total establishment up to eight troops each of eighty other ranks. Shortly afterwards the system of attaching "galloper" guns to units was discontinued and these guns, with their detachments, were organized in separate batteries.

In 1824, the first Burmese War broke out and a strong contingent from the Madras Army was despatched to join the forces operating at the front. Included in this contingent, which acquitted itself with distinction during two years of severe fighting in trying climatic conditions, were the headquarters and two squadrons of the 1st Madras Light Cavalry Regiment. This unit therefore became entitled to add the battle honour of "Ava" to its appointments.

About the same time the 4th and 8th Regiments of Light Cavalry earned the honour of "Central India" for their services,

notably at Kettoor. From now onwards, until the Mutiny took place in 1857, no events of outstanding importance occurred in so far as the Madras Cavalry was concerned, with the exception that, in August 1843, the first issue of carbines was made to the extent of ten per troop.

In 1857 the Mutiny broke out, and, in November of that year the 8th Regiment was disbanded for refusing to embark for service in Bengal. Three years later the 5th, 6th and 7th Regiments were also broken up.

In 1885 a rapid deterioration of the situation in Burma again necessitated the despatch of an Expeditionary Force from India. As originally constituted, no cavalry units were included in this force. In November 1885, however, after the fall of Mandalay, one squadron of the 2nd Madras Light Cavalry proceeded to the front, and the remainder of the regiment followed in February, 1886. The regiment was immediately split up into several detachments attached to the various columns operating against the dacoits, and, by the end of that year, all its personnel had received their baptism of fire.

As an example of the work done by this regiment it is sufficient to select at random the action at Kyankse, in which Major Warner, with one squadron of the 2nd Light Cavalry, attacked and dispersed a large enemy band, killing and wounding sixty-nine and capturing five guns.

In September, 1886, the 1st Regiment joined its junior partner and, by the time these two units returned to India in 1887, they had both well earned the distinction "Burma, 1885-87" which was added to their battle honours.

Meantime, in February, 1886, the designation of the 1st and 2nd Regiments was again altered, these units now being renamed the 1st and 2nd Madras Lancers. In 1891 the 3rd and 4th Regiments followed suit but, in 1895, the 4th Lancers was disbanded.

From that time until the outbreak of the Great War the Madras Cavalry enjoyed a peaceful existence in cantonments, disturbed only by the despatch of the 1st Lancers for duty on

the Quetta—Khojak lines of communication during the Second Afghan War (1878-80).

In 1903, as a result of the Kitchener Reforms, the 1st, 2nd and 3rd Madras Lancers became respectively the 26th (K.G.O.), 27th and 28th Light Cavalry. It is perhaps worth mentioning that these three units, out of the total establishment of thirty nine Indian Cavalry regiments, were the only ones organized on the non-silladar system. That is to say their system of organization was similar to that employed in the British Cavalry. In the remaining silladar units, however, the yeomanry system applied, the theory of which was that the individual soldier supplied and maintained his horse, clothing and arms (other than his rifle) and received in return a relatively higher rate of pay.

As is generally known, the latter system did not survive the strain of the Great War soon after the conclusion of which all Indian Cavalry Regiments were re-organized on a non-silladar basis.

In the Great War the Madras Cavalry, although thoroughly prepared to answer any demands made upon it, was not altogether kindly treated by fate. By accidents of station, none of these regiments were selected for inclusion in the expeditionary force to France, nor were any Madras Cavalry units fortunate enough to play their part in the spectacular cavalry operations in Palestine or Mesopotamia.

In lesser theatres, however, the surviving units of the old Madras Cavalry worthily upheld the reputation handed on to them by their forebears. Between 1915 and 1920 the 28th Light Cavalry earned for itself a lasting name in Persia and in Russian Turkistan, while, in the operations about Aden, a detachment of the 26th K.G.O. Light Cavalry acquitted itself with distinction. The 27th Light Cavalry, least fortunate of its fellows, was employed continuously in India until the middle of 1918, when a squadron was ordered abroad, together with a similar detachment from the 26th K.G.O. Light Cavalry, for service in South Persia. In 1919, however, the 3rd Afghan War found the 27th Light Cavalry in the centre of things in

Waziristan, and, in company with the 28th, it subsequently added the distinction of "Afghanistan, 1919" to its battle honours.

There is little more to be said. As a result of the general re-organization of the Indian Army in 1922, the familiar titles of 26th, 27th and 28th Light Cavalry have now disappeared. The 26th (in amalgamation with the 30th Lancers or old 4th Cavalry Hyderabad Contingent) has become the 8th K.G.O. Light Cavalry; the 27th is now the 7th Light Cavalry; while the old 28th is the new 16th Light Cavalry. Of these units the 7th Light Cavalry alone has been selected for immediate Indianization . . . *Quod bonum, felix, faustumque sit.*



FRANCE'S "CAVALERIE À PIED"

By PERCY CROSS STANDING

IN a long-ago issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL appeared an article entitled "Stonewall Jackson's Foot-cavalry," dealing with the marching and fighting exploits of the celebrated "Stonewall Brigade" in the American Civil War. The soubriquet of "*cavalerie à pied*" has similarly been applied to the famous French Foreign Legion, that unique military organization which "asks no questions, answers none, takes the recruit at his own valuation, and quickly readjusts it for him." The Legion has been somewhat devastatingly handled by Major P. C. Wren in his remarkably virile novels, "Beau Geste," "The Wages of Virtue" and "Step-sons of France," and that eloquent writer obviously speaks with first-hand intimate knowledge of his subject. I propose to deal, however, with the organization and exploits in the field of this devil-may-care, happy-go-lucky contingent, the refrain of whose rollicking war-song is:

"Soldats de la Légion,
De la Légion Etrangère,
N'ayant pas de nation,
La France est votre Mère."

As at present constituted, the Legion was founded under Louis Philippe in 1831, and will therefore attain its hundredth anniversary a few years hence. Its discipline is severe, the daily pay of a private is exceedingly poor, and non-commissioned officers are permitted too much power. It consists of four regiments of five battalions each and one or two companies of cavalry, the latter averaging about 250 men apiece—a total of, say, 18,000 officers and men. A Legionary enlists for five years and he may re-enlist twice, up to fifteen years. His life is not a bed of roses. All classes and nationalities are represented.

Thus, as comparatively recently as 1923 one of the battalions included nearly 50 per cent. of Germans—astounding, but true!—13 per cent. of Russians, and 4 per cent. of Turks. The officers are for the most part picked men from France's military academies, and they are selected as much for their tact as for their skill in the profession of arms.

Almost immediately after its formation the Legion was despatched to Northern Africa, where the France of Louis Philippe was beginning the conquest of Algeria. Against the dusky warriors of the redoubtable Abd-el-Kadr many doughty deeds were done, and the Legionaries greatly distinguished themselves in the memorable siege and storming of Constantine. From June until October, 1840, a portion of the 1st Battalion was beleaguered by the Arabs in Djidjalli, but steadily refused to capitulate. By the time they were relieved, 208 survived out of 750. Meanwhile, another contingent of the Legion had been sent to Spain for the Carlist War, where one of their brightest moments occurred at the action of Huesco in 1837, losing 350 men and officers out of a complement of 1,200.

The *Légion d'Etrangères'* happiest memory of the Crimean War was of Marshal Canrobert's inspiring words to them at the battle of the Alma: "That is the way, brave Legionaries—show the others how to do it!" (This may be read side by side with Canrobert's comment after witnessing the charge of the Heavy Brigade at Balaclava: "That is the finest thing I have ever seen.") It was the 1st and 2nd Battalions that were sent to the Crimea from Algeria, which was the recognized headquarters of the Legion. They endured the rigours of the winter of 1854-55 in the trenches before Sevastopol, and were prominent in the storming of the Malakoff. In 1859 they again figured on European battlefields, helping to win the great victories of Magenta and Solferino and losing the gallant Colonel de Chabrière in doing so.

Of their services in the somewhat inglorious Mexican war of 1863-67, including the sieges of Puebla and Oajana, the most noteworthy happening was the combat at Camerone. There some sixty of the Legion, assailed by an overwhelming force of

cavalry, resisted under a burning sun for many hours, and did not lay down their arms until but nineteen were left and they had disposed of 300 of their adversaries. Hardly were they back in Algeria than the Legionaries were called on to help suppress a fresh Arab rising, and they participated in the battle of Figuig in 1868.

This valiant "legion of the lost ones" fought for the first time on the soil of France amid the disasters of 1870-1, when they served with both the Armies of the Loire and of the East. It is related that King Peter of Serbia was among those fighting in their ranks, and the hard-fought battles of Coulmiers, Orleans, and Montbéliard were among those engaged in. They subsequently had to assist in the melancholy duty of recapturing Paris from the forces of the Commune. In the middle 'eighties the French conquest of Madagascar took the Legion to that island, where they were the first troops to enter the hapless Queen's capital, Tananarivo. One battalion, indeed, remained in Madagascar for no less than nineteen years (till 1904), General Galliéni having especially applied for them. Another section had, meanwhile, taken part under General Dodds in the campaign of Dahomey (1882), that gallant officer reporting to the War Office in Paris that he had "never had the honour of commanding finer soldiers."

As regards direct comparison between the wonderful marching of the Legion in war-time and the achievements of Cavalry in this direction, I have found some illuminating data in the reminiscences of an ex-French and an ex-German Legionnaire—A. de Colleville's "*Histoire de l'ancien Légion Etrangère*" and G. von Rosen's "*Bilder aus Algier und der Fremdenlegion*." It has always to be borne in mind, of course, that in campaigning against a savage and mobile soldiery such as the tribesmen of Algeria and Morocco, European infantry can afford to take no risks. Straggling or falling-out on the march implies instant death at the hands of a relentless and blood-thirsty foe who always marches "light," and the Legion's policy has frequently been that of the swift night-march followed by the attack at dawn.

I find that an ordinary average of thirty kilomètres, say twenty miles a day, with heavy kit, has been easily maintained by this exceptional "foot-cavalry," with numerous remarkable exceptions. It is, for example, alleged by a former Legionary, the Baron Friedrich, that one of its battalions accomplished *sixty miles* in a night march during the Carlist war in Spain in the late 'thirties! This statement is not more than semi-official, and I give it for what it is worth. But the pace maintained, at something approaching to a swinging trot, has never been paralleled by the infantry, and not too often by the cavalry, of other nations.

"We now learned," writes one who has served in the Legion, "what marching really is, and why the Legion is known in the Nineteenth Army Corps as the *cavalerie à pied*. The route-marches were of appalling length at an unvarying five kilomètres an hour. Over English roads, in the English climate and with the English soldier's kit, they would have been incredible. Over sand and desert stones, under the African sun, and with the much heavier kit of the Legionary (which includes tent-canvas, firewood, a blanket, and a spare uniform), they were infinitely more so. On one occasion we took a 'stroll' of 500 miles, marching continuously at thirty miles a day, as the Colonel thought we wanted 'airing.'"

A comparatively recent volume entitled "Memoirs of the Foreign Legion" has recounted the experiences during the World-war of a recruit of British nationality, Mr. Maurice Magnus. It contains certain intimate and stirring recollections of the marching, counter-marching, fighting and manœuvring of this gallant soldiery at the period of their adoptive country's utmost need and peril.

Tonquin has been styled "the Legionary's paradise" chiefly because the conditions are so comfortable, the climate not unhealthy, and the duties (apart from occasional campaigning) by no means wearisome—in fact, it is no uncommon occurrence for a Legionary to apply for an extension of his three years' term in that delightful *milieu*. It was towards the close of 1883 that the 1st Battalion, in pursuance of the French policy of

"colonial expansion" that was to culminate in the acquisition of Annam, Tonquin and Upper Siam, arrived in Indo-China. The turn of Annam came first, and the Legion lost ten killed and forty-eight wounded at the storming of Son-tay. Reinforced by the 2nd Battalion from Africa, they carried the fort of Bac-ninh in 1884, earned fresh laurels by their gallant defence of Tuyen-quang, and had the satisfaction of reducing Lang-son in February, 1885. Then followed the historic retreat from that place and the bombardment of Formosa by French war-ships, when the Legion effected a landing in the island and remained in occupation for several months. The seizure of the *rive gauche* of the Mekong River by France did not follow until 1893.*

The next active service for these tireless soldiers of fortune was destined to be in Morocco, where, true to her policy of expansion in Northern Africa as in China, France commenced hostile operations in 1906-7. Landing at Casablanca and assisting in the reduction of that port in the late summer of 1907, the Foreign Legion continued this harassing marching and fighting right down to the capture of Fez in 1912. Three of its war-worn battalions took possession of Taza in June, 1914, only a few weeks before the outbreak of the world-struggle. In the last year of that conflict the 1st Regiment of the Legion was still campaigning in and near Morocco, stabilising the conquests already achieved and helping in the pacification of the conquered territory. It is of this twentieth century (Moroccan) period that Major Wren writes so vividly and picturesquely in describing a forced march across the arid desert at the tremendous pace and rate of pressure which tradition maintains shall be kept up at whatever cost in blood and tears. He says:—

"On tramped the Legion. The day grew hot and packs grew heavy. The Battalion undeniably and unashamedly slouched. Many men leant heavily forward against their straps, while some bent almost double, like coal-heavers carrying sacks of coal. Rifles changed frequently from right hand to

* The writer enjoyed personal "contact" with the Legion in Indo-China in that year, when he lived in Bangkok during the blockade of the Siamese seaboard by the French.

left. There was no singing now. The only sound that came from dry-lipped, sticky mouths was an occasional bitter curse. . . . By the seventh halt, some forty kilomètres or twenty-seven miles lay behind the Battalion. At the word *Halt!* every man had thrown himself at full length on the sand, and very few wasted precious moments of the inexorably exact five minutes of the rest-period in removing knapsacks. Hardly a man spoke; none smoked. On tramped the Legion. Gone was all pretence of smartness and devil-may-care humour—that queer *macabre* and bitter humour of the Legion. Men slouched and staggered, and dragged their feet in utter hopeless weariness. Backs rounded more and more, heads sank lower, and those who limped almost outnumbered those who did not. A light push would have sent any man stumbling to the ground. As the whistle blew for the next halt, the Legion sank to the ground with a groan as though it would never rise again. As the whistle blew for the advance, the Legion staggered to its feet as one man. Oh, the Legion marches! Is not its motto '*March or die*'? The latter it may do, the former it must. The Legion has its orders and its destination, and it marches. If it did not reach its destination at the appointed time, it would be because it had died in getting there. On tramped the Legion.”*

Something like a complete revision, reorganization, and enlargement of the *personnel* of the Foreign Legion took place immediately after the outbreak of “the” War in August, 1914. Recruits by the thousand flocked to its colours, literally from all points of the compass, and were rapidly trained at half-a-dozen different dépôts. In the hectic days that followed, they were destined to win some half-score of “citations,” or “mentions” as we style them in the British military vernacular, for distinguished work on many occasions. When shall their glory fade?

May 9th, 1915, a great day in the story of the Legion, was memorable to the first of its newly-raised battalions for a desperate attempt to storm the celebrated “White Works” of the German line at St. Vaast in Artois. The assailants had

* “The Wages of Virtue,” pp. 164-5.

actually penetrated to the second line of the defence when, after suffering incredible losses, they were compelled to fall back for lack of support. In September ensuing, the 1st and 2nd Regiments were in the thick of the sanguinary struggle around Souain in the Champagne country. With a matchless *élan* the 2nd Regiment rushed to the assault of the Wagram work (a name to conjure with in French annals!) and stormed it, capturing prisoners, artillery, machine-guns, etc. But so devastating had been the carnage in these two devoted regiments that they forthwith had to be merged in one, which received the distinctive appellation of "*Le Régiment de Marche de la Légion Etrangère*." More glory was in store.

During 1916-17, and again in the ultimate year of the war, the Legion frequently fought side by side with its British compatriots. Thus, in the frightful Somme battles of the former year, as a unit of the Sixth Army, it stormed and held the village of Belloy-en-Sauterne, capturing 750 prisoners and much war material. In the ensuing year it lost its commanding officer in the Champagne fighting.

In August and September, 1917, respectively, the Legionaries had the high honour of having their flag decorated with the rare reward known as the *fourragère rouge*,* and of having the Cross of the Legion of Honour attached to that flag by Marshal Pétain in person. In line with the British Army to help counter the final enemy effort in the Spring of 1918, these heroes succeeded in holding up the offensive around Villers-Bretonneux. Going on from strength to strength, but losing officers and men in hundreds, in May they turned the tables after the Germans' temporary capture of the historic Chemin des Dâmes and Soissons. In Mangin's dashing offensive in July they captured nearly 500 prisoners on the 18th, and in September they joined in the destruction of the wonderful "Hindenburg Line." An entire battalion of the 1st Prussian Regiment was among their captures on 14th September, and by the time they were relieved, a day or two subsequently, their ranks had been terribly decimated.

* The first time that it was conferred on any formation of the army.

The survivors of the "*Cavalerie à pied*" moved into the Rhineland in December, shortly after the conclusion of the armistice. During the first half of 1919 they returned to their old headquarters in Northern Africa, where they still remain. In the course of the four years' continuous war, upwards of *fifty* different nationalities were represented in the ranks of the *Légion d'Etrangère*.

I am reminded, in closing, of a very remarkable feat of endurance by Napoleon's infantry in 1805, which invites comparison with some marching achievements of cavalry. Marshal Davoût having been ordered to bring his army corps from a distance of 120 kilomètres—roughly, 75 miles—to Austerlitz, it accomplished that distance, with full marching kit, in two days, reaching the battlefield to take part in the fight without rest. This gives a mean average of $37\frac{1}{2}$ miles per day!



Digitized by Google



“OLD BEAN”

"OLD BEAN"

A Veteran of the Indian Show Ring

"OLD BEAN," a Bay Australian Gelding, according to his old Regimental Veterinary History Sheet was foaled in 1902, and is now therefore twenty-six years of age. Very little is known of his military career other than he won the Open Jumping at Lahore in 1911 and was second at the Great Northern India Horse Show, in 1919. In 1920 he was cast for age, and since then he has had numerous successes in the show ring.

At the Equitation School, Saugor, in 1925, he won the Open Jumping, completing the two rounds with only 1½ faults. Many well-known performers competed at this show, including the Equitation School jumper, "Countess," which had won the Open Jumping Delhi Imperial Horse Show, 1923-24-25.

"Old Bean," who shows no signs of age other than his very hollow back, is still an excellent performer, as will be seen from the photograph which was taken in March this year at the age of twenty-six years.

There is no sign of him breaking down, but his owner has decided to let him rest on his laurels and beyond doing light daily exercise will not in future be worked.

Appended below is a list of his performances :

Open Jumping, Lahore	..	..	..	..	1911	1st	
„	„	Great Northern India Horse					
		Show	..	..	..	1919	2nd
„	„	Ambala	..	..	..	1920	1st
„	„	Ambala	..	..	..	1921	2nd
„	„	Lucknow	..	..	..	1922	1st
„	„	Allahabad	..	..	..	1922	1st
„	„	Lucknow	..	..	..	1923	2nd
„	„	Equitation School	..	..	..	1925	1st
2nd Lancer Jumping Cup, Equitation School	..				1925	2nd	
Open Jumping, Darbhanga	..	..	..	..	1926	1st	

"Old Bean" has only been once unplaced since 1919.

**MARS-LA-TOUR: THE LAST GREAT CAVALRY
BATTLE***

By **LIEUTENANT-COLONEL F. E. WHITTON, C.M.G.**

"Some great battles decide a struggle between states without turning the world upside down; others by reason of their oppressive consequences for nations and individuals become world catastrophes: the battle of Rezonville is one of these. . . . The battle of Rezonville, like that of Waterloo is one of those events which modify the conditions of human life over practically the whole surface of the globe."—*Germain Bapst*.

"Never since the battles of the Napoleonic wars has it been the lot of cavalry to act in larger bodies and play a more important rôle than in the conflicts round Vionville and Mars-la-Tour." *Major Kaehler, Great General Staff*. "The German Cavalry in the Battle of Vionville—Mars-la-Tour."

"Never in any battle was cavalry so desperately employed." *Lieutenant-Colonel Bonie*. "The French Cavalry in 1870."

THE above quotations from French and German sources, reduced for convenience to the common denominator of English, will, it is hoped, justify the inclusion of an article on Mars-la-Tour within the pages of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. As a battle it has strong claims to be regarded as one of the decisive battles of the world. And it was a battle in which cavalry played a stirring part. It was a battle in which a cavalry division headed off an army, and in which two cavalry divisions "pinned" that army, until supporting infantry arrived. It was a battle in which the cavalry of both sides amounted to more than 20,000 sabres. It was a battle in which, before the sun had set, cavalry had charged eighteen times, in attack or counter attack, in bodies from a squadron

* The battle described in this article is known in Germany as "The Battle of Vionville—Mars-la-Tour." The French call it "The Battle of Rezonville." In England it is usually known as "Mars-la-Tour," and that title is adhered to here.

to a brigade, in thrusts pushed home in nearly every case, and in one charge where a brigade was sacrificed to restore a situation well nigh desperate. It was a battle in which even a commander-in-chief had to draw his sword to help withstand a cavalry attack. Even the charges above totalled by no means exhaust the cavalry work of that sanguinary 16th August, 1870. At the close of a day which marked the bloodiest fighting of the Franco-German War the cavalry charges merged into one vast mounted *mêlée* in which over 6,000 horsemen were furiously engaged. Nor did that tremendous encounter terminate the shock action of the day. Even when darkness had set in cavalry were once more called upon to charge.

The early days of the campaign of 1870 present a distinct resemblance to the corresponding period of 1914. Wörth and Spicheren fought on 6th August, 1870, are comparable with Mons and Charleroi of 23rd August, forty-four years later. In each case there was an almost complete absence of liaison, and in each case a double retirement. But unlike 1914, when the British Army and the French Fifth Army kept some kind of touch, in 1870 the Wörth Army under MacMahon could not be rallied, escaped from the zone of operations by railway, and reached Châlons by way of Paris. This army does not enter directly into the story of Mars-la-Tour, nor does the German Third Army under the Crown Prince which followed it up. The latter is "off the map" to the southward so far as the operations to be described in this article are concerned.

As for the Spicheren army—the Army of the Rhine, as it was called—the plan adopted was to fall back and concentrate round the great fortress of Metz. On 13th August, the French forces, strengthened by some reinforcements from Châlons, were assembled under the detached forts east of Metz to the number of 176,000 men and 540 guns. On the German side the First and Second Armies had been following in pursuit. The French Higher Command quickly decided to abandon the project of fighting a battle under the walls of Metz and to continue the retirement to Verdun. But the day of the 14th had to be devoted to checking an impetuous attack by advanced troops

of the German First Army, and all through the ensuing night the French columns filed along the road which led to Gravelotte. The night march was carried out in almost hopeless confusion owing to the absence of preliminary arrangements by the French staff. At Gravelotte the army divided into two portions. One portion—that with which we are now chiefly concerned—was to continue straight on to Mars-la-Tour; the other was to bear to the right and march by Conflans.* But so wretched was the staff work of the French that when evening of the 15th August began to close in very little progress had been made towards Verdun. Two whole corps were still extricating themselves from Metz. The cavalry had done practically no reconnaissance whatever. On the northern road du Barrail's division had reached Doncourt, but on the southern road de Forton's division had got no further than Vionville, less than five miles from Gravelotte. The service of exploration was almost entirely neglected, and although some German cavalry had been seen no attempt was made to clear up the situation.

It was in such circumstances that dawn came on the 16th August. The French commander-in-chief, Marshal Bazaine, was with the column marching on the road to Mars-la-Tour. As he was now frankly committed to retreat, clearly he should have pushed on with all possible speed. Instead of doing so, however, shortly after 5 a.m., he issued an order to the effect that the movement would be deferred till the afternoon, and after a perfunctory paragraph as to carrying out the usual reconnaissance work he directed that the halted troops should be allowed to repitch their *tentes abris*. This extraordinary *insouciance* reacted on the cavalry division of de Forton a few miles ahead. Although shots had been exchanged all night long between the French vedettes and some unseen enemy, de Forton was not much perturbed. Patrols had indeed brought

* Via Mars-la-Tour :—G.H.Q. ; de Forton's Cavalry Division ; IIInd Corps (with Valabregue's Cavalry Division) ; VIth Corps ; Guard Corps (with a cavalry division). Via Conflans :—du Barrail's Cavalry Division ; IIIrd Corps ; IVth Corps ; (each of these corps with a cavalry division).



By permission of R. Oldenbourg, Munich.

Von Bredow's Cavalry Brigade at Vionville, 16th August, 1870

By A. JANK.

After fighting for five hours at Vionville, Alvensleben's IIIrd Army Corps was threatened with complete defeat by Bazaine's greatly superior forces. About two p.m. von Bredow's 12th Cavalry Brigade, 800 strong and composed of the 7th Cuirassiers and 16th Uhlans, hurled themselves upon the enemy infantry and guns. Half of these brave horsemen fell on the field of Vionville, but the French attack was checked by the fury of the charge.

A 10x10 grid of dots. The first five columns contain the letter 'A' formed by dots. The last five columns contain the letter 'B' formed by dots.

in the reassuring, but inaccurate, information that Mars-la-Tour was empty, and when de Forton heard that tents were to be repitched he seems to have construed this as a kind of guarantee that all was clear to his front and flanks. He accordingly did nothing further in the way of reconnaissance, but directed that the horses should be unsaddled and watered, and that the men should breakfast. He himself prepared for his morning meal.

Meanwhile the divisional baggage train arrived at Vionville and breakfast was the first thought. Rations were drawn, officers' servants were opening their masters' kits, and mess domestics were laying tables for the officers' breakfasts. Just then an officer from the cavalry outpost line rode in and asked General de Forton if he would ride out a short distance to satisfy himself as to the meaning of some small bodies of troops visible to the immediate front. Several officers joined the group and studied the figures moving about a mile away. Various conjectures were broached, but the idea that the strange troops might be Germans does not seem to have occurred to anyone. A suggestion "they must be part of our IVth Corps," i.e., part of the army which had switched off at Gravelotte to the Conflans road, was made. The theory satisfied everybody. A long rest had been ordered. The coffee and rolls were waiting. The group broke up. General de Forton returned to his interrupted omelette. The next moment the bark of a horse artillery gun was heard from the front; a shell pitched in Vionville; and at 9.15 a.m. the battle of Mars-la-Tour had begun.

Shell after shell now burst among the shelter tents of the French, among the tables set for the officers' breakfasts, and in the midst of the squadrons watering at a tree-shaded pond. In quick succession three more hostile batteries opened fire. Immediately Vionville was in a state of panic. Troopers leaped on their horses, rushed into the streets in which waggons and loose horses were crowded and jammed, and then broke and fled accompanied by a riot of panic-stricken civilian transport drivers. The movement carried away the two French cavalry divisions of de Forton and Valabregue (IInd Corps), and,

although those in rear mounted in good order, within a short time the two divisions had fallen back to the area between the Roman Road and Villers aux Bois.

Incredible as it may seem, while the French had been calmly sitting down to breakfast, over 5,000 enemy cavalry and four horse artillery batteries were but a mile away and right across the French line of retreat. How this extraordinary situation had come about must now be told. When, two days earlier, the French army had vanished into Metz, Moltke, the German Chief of the Staff, rightly diagnosed that it would not immure itself within that fortress. It would retreat, and most probably towards Verdun. The great thing was to pursue it. But of the two German armies under Moltke's hand, the First was "up against" Metz. The Second Army, under Prince Frederick Charles, was, however, some distance south of Metz, and it had already seized the bridges at Novéant and Pont-à-Mousson which the French had left intact. Accordingly it was directed to pursue, and Prince Frederick Charles decided to gain the Metz-Verdun road as rapidly as possible. This was the duty of the IIIrd Corps under General von Alvensleben which, crossing the Moselle at Novéant, was to strike that road at Mars-la-Tour and Vionville. The 5th Cavalry Division was to work with it.* So prompt had been the action of the Germans that practically the whole of this division, thirty-four squadrons, was close to Mars-la-Tour as early as the afternoon of the 15th. Further south the Xth Corps was to hurry parallel with the IIIrd to the line Maizeray-St. Hilaire and the 6th Cavalry Division had as its goal Thiaucourt. There were other corps, cavalry and infantry, in the Second Army, but the orders to them, although on the same lines as above, do not immediately concern us. The units which will fill the picture of the 16th August will be the 5th and 6th Cavalry Divisions and the IIIrd and Xth Corps, the last named in part.

From the above paragraph it will be seen that the first force of all arms to strike the Metz—Mars-la-Tour—Verdun road

* 11th, 12th and 13th Cavalry Brigades and 2 horse artillery batteries = 9 regiments ; 5,400 horses ; 12 guns.

would be the IIIrd Corps consisting of the 5th and 6th (Infantry) Divisions. During the afternoon of the 15th the whole of this corps had crossed the Moselle at Novéant, and Alvensleben, its commander, was puzzled by the news which came in from the 5th Cavalry Division. Not only had it found Mars-la-Tour empty of French but, so far as its patrols could gather, no French troops had passed westwards. What had happened? Frankly Alvensleben could not say. Perhaps the French had moved by Doncourt and Conflans on Verdun; or possibly they had fallen back to the north *via* Ste Marie aux Chênes and Roncourt. Then during the evening came in a message to say that the 5th Cavalry Division had found some enemy troops *behind* it, i.e., between Mars-la-Tour and Metz. This might be a rear-guard to the French Army retiring north, but Alvensleben thought it as well to ask the 5th Cavalry Division to ascertain what was happening, and in case there might be trouble he sent two horse artillery batteries to reinforce the two already with the 5th Cavalry Division. Further, at 2 a.m. on the 16th he sent an order to the 6th Cavalry Division to turn to the right at Gorze and to head towards Vionville.

And so it was shortly after 8 a.m. on the 16th that General von Rheinbaben, the commander of the 5th Cavalry Division, pushed carefully eastward towards Vionville in what was practically a reconnaissance in force. To the utter amazement of the Germans they soon saw below them not a rear-guard but a great cavalry bivouac west of Vionville, with horses unsaddled and being watered, and cooking in progress. This of course was the opportunity of a life-time, and the German horse artillery made immediate use of it with the result we know. The 5th Cavalry Division then surged forward over the abandoned bivouac. The scene was extraordinary. Hundreds of dragon helmets lay all over the ground. There were cooking pots full of cooked food. There were waggons of all kinds from the General's mess cart to the pay chest and medical stores. A long table stood with breakfast laid for officers. Everything indicated the most complete surprise and disordered flight. A business-like cavalry division had caught a slack one napping.

Hardly had the French round Vionville recovered from the temporary panic caused by the shells from the batteries of the 5th Cavalry Division when firing was heard behind them to the south-east. This was from the guns of the 6th Cavalry Division whose leading units mounting the plateau above Gorze drove in the French outposts opposed to them. So far as the Germans were concerned the battle was now a cavalry one, and this wide semi-circle of horsemen, which now extended from the Bois de St. Arnould to the high ground near Tronville, advanced to the attack. But now about 10 a.m. at the extremities of the great German cavalry arc there appeared the heads of the advanced guard of the two divisions of the IIIrd Corps. The apparition of the German forces and the rapidity with which battery after battery came into action bewildered the French who saw, as an official report later puts it: "everywhere Prussians emerging from woods on the sky-line and surrounding us with a circle of fire."

But up till nearly eleven o'clock, General von Alvensleben had not yet grasped the real state of affairs. He still thought he was dealing with a French rear-guard, but on making his way towards Tronville he took occasion to discuss the situation with the commander of the 5th Cavalry Division. Putting two and two together, Alvensleben was now forced to realize that his single corps, with two cavalry divisions, was confronted by the whole Army of the Rhine. Undaunted by the prospect, he determined at all costs to maintain his grip on the French, content to sacrifice his own corps if the enemy could only be delayed until fresh German forces could arrive upon the field. The IIIrd Corps must be thrown immediately into the fight. The left division, the 6th, was therefore ordered to wheel inwards to the right, with the result that before 11 a.m. German infantry were astride the Metz—Mars-la-Tour road advancing to the attack with their faces towards their own country.

The movement was soon attended with success. By half-past eleven Vionville had fallen, and shortly afterwards Flavigny fell, though not without some hard fighting, and in the village the right of the 6th Division joined hands with the left of

the 5th. It was now twelve noon, and the first cavalry charge of the day took place between Tronville and Flavigny, south of the high road. It was made by two squadrons of the German cavalry which had been acting as escort to the horse artillery batteries of whose activity we have spoken earlier, the objective being the retiring French infantry. The charge, however, was not a success, for the French foot soldiers still preserved their *moral*; the squadrons failed to get among them and had to retire with considerable loss, one squadron losing half its horses. The various German accounts consulted are somewhat vague about this charge, but it is clear that it was a complete failure. It should be mentioned that there was no unity in the attack. One of the squadrons belonged to the 5th Cavalry Division, the other had come up from the Xth Corps with the two horse artillery batteries lent by it. The order to charge had not come from, or through, a cavalry brigadier or divisional commander but had been given by the chief staff officer of the IIIrd Corps on his own, with unfortunate results.

At midday the situation on the French side was as follows. The IInd Corps was drifting back, and two regiments of the VIth Corps sent to Flavigny and Vionville had been driven off. The Imperial Guard and the Reserve of Artillery were moving up from the rear to replace the IInd Corps. As for cavalry, the disposition was that on the ground between Rezonville and Villers aux Bois were thirteen regiments, or some 5,000 sabres.* The above, be it noted, applies only to the situation along the Metz—Mars-la-Tour road. The right wing of the French was plodding along *via* Doncourt towards Conflans although Bazaine seems to have forgotten its existence.

* Made up as follow :	Unit.	No. of Regiments.
3rd Lancers (an "orphan" regiment which had been detached from its brigade at Wörth)	1
de Forton's Division, 2 brigades	4
Valabregue's Division, 2 brigades	4
Imperial Guard Cavalry Division, 2 brigades	4
		—
		13

The Imperial Guard Cavalry Division had a third brigade. It was escorting Napoleon III to Verdun via Conflans. We shall meet it later.

Meanwhile General Frossard, the commander of the IInd Corps, had been a restless spectator of the retirement of his troops, and he felt convinced that unless the French cavalry could intervene a disaster was imminent. Two regiments of mounted troops were now close to Rezonville, namely the 3rd Lancers and the Cuirassiers of the Guard, the latter regiment at the moment being just south of the highway near Rezonville facing west. Galloping up to the commanding officer, Frossard called out, "Charge with your regiment or we are . . ." The colonel of the cuirassiers felt, however, that he could not comply without the sanction of his divisional commander, and a hasty conference then ensued in which Bazaine, Frossard, and the cavalry general took part. Frossard became more and more insistent, while the commander-in-chief *demeurait toujours indifférent sans rien décider*. Finally, Bazaine was heard to mutter, "Yes, we must sacrifice a regiment; we must stop them." Taking this for an order, Frossard lost no time in sending an orderly officer off at the gallop to the 3rd Lancers. No one, however, thought of preparing for the charge by utilizing the batteries of the Guard Cavalry Division nor of the Reserve of Artillery; no one thought of making even a hasty reconnaissance of the ground to be charged over; and no one, indeed, even remembered to assign any definite objective.

To roars of *Vivent les lanciers!* from the infantry the 3rd galloped off towards Flavigny, their way being encumbered by the cooking pots, mess tins and odds and ends abandoned in the panic of the early morning. It seems to have been understood in a vague way that the enemy's guns were the objective, but, on topping a slight rise, what was taken for a German battalion in square, in reality some eight companies of skirmishers, was seen almost straight to the front. The lancers dashed forward, preserving a formation worthy of a review, and under a terrific rifle fire from the infantry who had thrown themselves into a rough semi-circle. Then from the lancers came the shout—by whom uttered has never been known—to wheel to the right. This made the cavalry swerve away from the German infantry and brought them up against the high road. The charge was

over and had failed to effect any result. The regiment then drew off and rallied behind Rezonville.

A finer effort was immediately to follow. When the 3rd Lancers had started off, Bazaine had intimated that they were to be supported by the Cuirassiers of the Guard. These were drawn up in a line of five squadrons presenting an imposing sight and moved off in that formation. Soon, however, some hedges bounding enclosures on the southern outskirts of Rezonville necessitated a short movement in column of route, and on emerging from the obstacles the advance took place in three lines, two squadrons in the first and second, and one squadron following in rear. Breaking into a gallop and then into the charge the three lines of heavy cavalry tore down upon the German infantry companies which had just dealt with the onslaught of the 3rd Lancers. The infantry reserved their fire until the cuirassiers were about two hundred yards off, and then a volley followed by rapid fire was directed against the cavalry. The left squadron of the leading line missing its objective dashed past it, but the right got close up to the Germans, only, however, to be mown down by the fierce rifle fire. The second line, charging up from behind, was stopped by a regular rampart of dead and wounded men and horses; swerving to the right it was raked by a rifle fire which threw it into indescribable confusion. The solitary squadron forming the third line was forced to pull up. Nothing remained but to draw off the regiment, which eventually rallied near Rezonville having suffered casualties amounting to 18 officers and 170 men, or, according to other sources 22 officers, 208 men, and 243 horses out of action.

To cover the retirement of the broken French cavalry Bazaine had brought up a battery of the Guard Corps and was watching through his glasses the return of the remnants of the cuirassiers. Suddenly there was a shout of "*German Cavalry!*" and in an instant there ensued a *mêlée* in which Bazaine and the officers with him, French gunners and Prussian bussars were intermingled. From the high ground near Flavigny the charge of the French cuirassiers had been witnessed by the

chief of staff of the Xth Corps, and when it was repulsed it seemed that a favourable opportunity had arisen for the German cavalry to attack. Immediately the 17th Hussars with a squadron of the 2nd Guard Dragoons moved off eastwards of Flavigny,* and, to the cheers of the German infantry which they passed, charged after the retreating cuirassiers, while the 11th Hussars followed to the right and rear. Except for the men who had been unhorsed the cuirassiers had got safely away, but the commanding officer of the 17th Hussars, seeing a French battery to his right, dashed at it with some twenty of his men. It was the battery of the Guard which Bazaine had brought up, and in an instant the group round the guns was borne backwards, carrying with it the staff of General Frossard who was standing near. Bazaine's nephew and orderly officer who was some little distance away galloped off to summon the marshal's escort of chasseurs. On his way he fell in with a squadron of the 5th Hussars, and these veterans of the Mexican campaign dashed in to the assistance of the commander-in-chief. A moment later the squadron of chasseurs was in the struggle, and hardly had they engaged when two squadrons of the 3rd Lancers who had just rallied at Rezonville joined in. The Prussian hussars, leaving several of their number as prisoners, burst their way out of the mêlée. The engagement had been a hot one while it lasted, and Bazaine had drawn his sword, preserving even in the thick of the struggle the coolness which distinguished him upon the field.

In this spirited operation the 11th Hussars had 22 casualties with 30 horses hit. Those of the 17th Hussars were 2 officers, 90 men (8 dead) and 74 horses.

To turn now to the 6th Cavalry Division the fire of the enemy had compelled it about 9 a.m. to take cover in lower ground. About noon its situation was as follows: draw a line from Tronville to Gorze: the division was in the middle of such line facing north east and with its brigades about a mile

* The 11th and 17th Hussars formed part of the 13th Brigade 5th Cavalry Division. The dragoon squadron had come up as escort to one of the horse artillery batteries from the Xth Corps.

and a half apart. Shortly after noon when the French IIInd Corps was retreating, the 6th Cavalry Division was ordered "to advance on Rezonville as the enemy's infantry was retreating in disorder." While, however, the division was getting under way the French had brought up reinforcements and had passed to the attack. The order to the German cavalry was not countermanded and the division advanced in line of squadrons in section columns with deploying intervals, passing close to the south of Flavigny which was in flames. The movement was at a trot and no charge took place owing to a crowding of the columns and to the sharp fire directed upon them. The right brigade was withdrawn at a trot. The left brigade which was slightly held back as a second line had rather a thrilling experience. It met the 17th Hussars coming *ventre à terre* from its attack described above; and close on the heels of the German hussars was galloping the squadron of the French 5th Hussars of Bazaine's escort. It was a delicate piece of tactics to allow the friendly hussars to find safety through the intervals and then to deal promptly with the hussars of the enemy. But it was skilfully done by a squadron of uhlan and the uhlan regiment was then assembled within effective range of the enemy's infantry fire from Rezonville "on which occasion as a matter of instruction for the young troops in their first charge, formation and dressing were effected, front toward the enemy, the same as on the drill ground." The brigade then fell back slowly and the 6th Cavalry Division took part to the south-west of Flavigny.

But in spite of the vigour of the German cavalry, and of the gallantry of the infantry of the IIIrd Corps, by two o'clock a crisis had arrived. After five hours of continuous and bitter fighting, a certain reaction had set in upon the German side. The inability of the 6th Cavalry Division to make any impression in the centre of the field between Flavigny and the Bois de St. Arnould had imposed a serious check on the hitherto successful efforts of the IIIrd Corps, and it seemed certain that the French were about to make a violent effort against the

weak German left.* General von Alvensleben had no infantry left in reserve. All his battalions were exhausted by the severity of the fighting, apart from the diminution of their strength caused by the heavy casualties which had been suffered. The supply of ammunition was also a grave source of difficulty, and the conditions in which the battle was being fought put a further strain upon the troops. The heat was terrific, and water was almost impossible to obtain in most portions of the field. It looked as if the IIIrd Corps had shot its bolt and Alvensleben was well aware of the gravity of the situation. To one of his subordinates he exclaimed that he felt like Wellington at Waterloo—"would to God that either night or the Xth Corps would come." It was still, however, but early afternoon and the Xth Corps could not be expected for at least an hour. But something must be done to gain time, even if the respite were but brief.

In the fork formed by the roads leading from Vionville to Mars-la-Tour and Tronville respectively there was standing the heavy brigade of General von Bredow, which formed part of the 5th Cavalry Division, and was now reduced to the 7th Cuirassiers and the 16th Uhlans.† To it von Alvensleben sent his chief of staff with instructions that the brigade should charge the French guns in action between the Roman road and Rezonville. General von Bredow was at the moment under the impression that the Tronville Copses were in the hands of the French, and some time was lost in choosing by lot two squadrons to watch the woods. The cavalry brigadier then put himself at the head of his remaining six squadrons and led them over the high road, dipping then into a shallow valley which ran northwards and generally parallel to the eastern face of the Tronville Copses. For about fifteen hundred paces the brigade trotted up this natural covered way and then wheeled into line of squadron columns so that it now faced almost due east.

* The French column which was moving along the northern road to Conflans was now being drawn into the battle.

† The remaining regiment—the 13th Dragoons—had been pushed forward to watch the line Bruville—St. Marcel.

Immediately the deployment of the leading regiment, the 7th Cuirassiers, was complete, the order was given to gallop, and in a moment the whole brigade dashed over the crest of the ridge straight for the French guns. The onslaught of the German cavalry seems to have come upon the French as a complete surprise and considerable confusion ensued, which was increased by the cloud of dust raised by the horses charging over the parched ground. An added cause of confusion was the fact that at the moment of the charge some French batteries which had suffered heavily were in the act of being relieved by others.

The cavalry burst right through the line of batteries, sabring the gunners and the teams of such as remained and pursuing those which galloped from the field, and then continued their career against the infantry in rear. But in this quarter of the field the French had many mounted troops, chief among them being the cavalry division of General de Forton which had been surprised by this same enemy earlier in the day. Burning to avenge the stigma of the morning, French squadrons from right and left threw themselves upon the German cavalry whose horses were now exhausted after a gallop of over three thousand yards. Then ensued an indescribable scene—a regular maelstrom of men and horses in which the Germans were at a severe disadvantage as regards numbers, being outnumbered by at least five to one. It so happened in the mêlée that the 7th Prussian Cuirassiers were engaged with the regiment of the same number and designation in the French service, and some way from the main struggle there was to be witnessed an almost mediæval combat between a gigantic Prussian officer and an officer of the French Cuirassiers. For a few moments the duel between the rival cuirassiers in all the splendour of casque and breastplate riveted the attention of watchers from the Roman road until the maelstrom surged round the two combatants and drove them apart. After a short but terrific struggle the German cavalry eventually forced their way out to rally later near Flavigny. The six squadrons—in all about 800 strong—had lost 17 officers, 363 other ranks, and over

400 horses, and the next day the line of the charge was marked out in white—the dead bodies of the White Cuirassiers. But the sacrifice had not been in vain. Time had been gained; the advance of the French VIth Corps was checked; and for the moment the terrible pressure on the German left was eased.*

It is of interest to note here that when the news of von Bredow's "death ride" reached the Fatherland, all Germany went wild with exultation. "They went through the French guns just as the English went through the Russian guns at Balaklava," was the cry, for the Germans were soldiers enough to realise, and generous enough to admit, that Lord Cardigan's squadrons had set a standard for all time. And there is another point of interest too—although, so far as the writer of this article is aware, it has never been commented on before. There was one man on the field who had witnessed the Charge of the Light Brigade, and could now form an instant comparison between it and the onrush of the cuirassiers and uhlans of von Bredow. He was Marshal Canrobert, the commander of the French VIth Corps, who had just seen his guns silenced and some driven off by the German onslaught. Sixteen years earlier, Canrobert had witnessed from the edge of the Chersonese the amazing charge of the English light cavalry and had heard Bosquet's immortal epigram: "It is magnificent, but it is not war. It is madness." For sixteen years Canrobert had absorbed the teaching, burnt into him at Balaklava and compressed into a maxim by a pithy phrase, that guns in action were safe from cavalry attack. How utterly he was to be undeceived must be plain even from the arid narrative of the famous charge related above. Doubtless it was the fashion even in those post-Crimea days to deduce "lessons" from incidents and campaigns; but Canrobert on the 16th August, 1870, had perforce to unlearn a "lesson" based on

*While this article was in the press, there appeared "Private and Personal," by Brig.-General W. H. H. Waters, Military Attaché at Berlin, 1900-1903. He states (page 106) that a survivor of the charge told him that one of the commanding officers, when he received the order to advance, left the field. It is curious that this extraordinary occurrence has apparently never been known to any French historian of the battle.

25th October, 1854. So perhaps may it be again. And even though such death-rides may for ever have passed away, yet those who clamour for the displacement of cavalry by tanks and chemistry may be forced to acknowledge that there is still scope in war for men, brave, well disciplined and well led, mounted on horses game, well tended and well trained.

When the commander of the German 5th Cavalry Division had received the order which resulted in von Bredow's charge he was also directed to send another brigade round by the west of Tronville Copses to co-operate with Colonel Lehmann's detachment from the Xth Corps, the arrival of which, curiously enough, was not known to von Bredow.* The 11th Brigade carried out the task and moved west of the copses towards Bruville where the 13th Dragoons—of von Bredow's 12th Brigade—were already in observation. The 11th Brigade was soon joined by a horse artillery battery and was thus enabled to remain in what was an exposed and dangerous position. The battery soon drew the enemy's fire and a French battalion was seen to be preparing an attack against the right flank of the guns from a wood south of Marcel. Of the 11th Brigade the 19th Dragoons were especially told off for escort to the battery and in order to carry out its work the regiment repeatedly repulsed, by short charges, the strong French skirmishing lines which attempted to advance from St. Marcel.

A lull now set in but it was of but short duration. About 3 p.m. a fresh danger threatened the exhausted Germans. With the arrival of the French IIrd and IVth Corps from the north the French right wing was enormously strengthened and the weak German left was forced back on Tronville village. On the German side, however, there was compensation to some extent in the fact that, true to the principle of marching to the

* Lehmann's detachment was an early arrival from the Xth Corps. It consisted of three and a half battalions and a battery. It was sent into the Tronville Copses—unknown to the German 12th Cavalry Brigade. The squadrons chosen by lot to watch these copses during the "death ride" were thought to be doomed to extinction and it was for this reason that lots were drawn to decide which squadrons were to be selected. Actually, of course, they were almost perfectly safe.

sound of the guns, the Xth Corps had been hurrying up from Thiaucourt. Its leading troops regained the Tronville Copses. But a brigade advancing to the attack, north of Mars-la-Tour, had an experience comparable to ours at Aubers Ridge in 1915. A deep ravine in front of the French position was successfully crossed but before the opposite bank was gained the massacre began. Almost all the officers and 50 per cent. of the German brigade were laid low and the survivors broke and bolted in headlong panic. But again the German cavalry managed to restore the battle by throwing itself into the dangerous area. The Guard Dragoon Brigade was attached to the Xth Corps. Five squadrons had been directed to advance west of Mars-la-Tour and to guard the left flank of the infantry attack just described. When the attack had been dashed to pieces the 1st Guard Dragoons received orders to protect the survivors and to check the French pursuit at all costs. The order was received about 5 p.m. and the regiment was at the moment south-east of Mars-la-Tour. The adjutant was sent out to reconnoitre and returned with the report that dense bodies of French were in pursuit and advancing east of Mars-la-Tour. The ground was very unfavourable for cavalry action, being cut up with hedges and ditches, but the regimental commander skilfully brought the dragoons to more suitable terrain and charged the French, the brigade commander and his staff joining in. Although a destructive rifle and mitrailleuse fire was opened by the enemy the dragoons broke right through a French regiment. The losses of the horsemen were severe. About a third were left lying on the field. In horses 204 were killed outright. But the enemy's advance was checked; the Prussian infantry was disengaged; and the German left flank once more was saved.*

There now ensued such an orgy of cavalry *v.* cavalry fighting on the upland between Mars-la-Tour and Ville-sur-Yron as to baffle description. All that can be done is to present the

* This charge took place just north of the brook above the T of Tronville wood. Two squadrons of the 4th Cuirassiers of the 11th Brigade tried to join in but were driven off by fire having suffered 33 casualties.

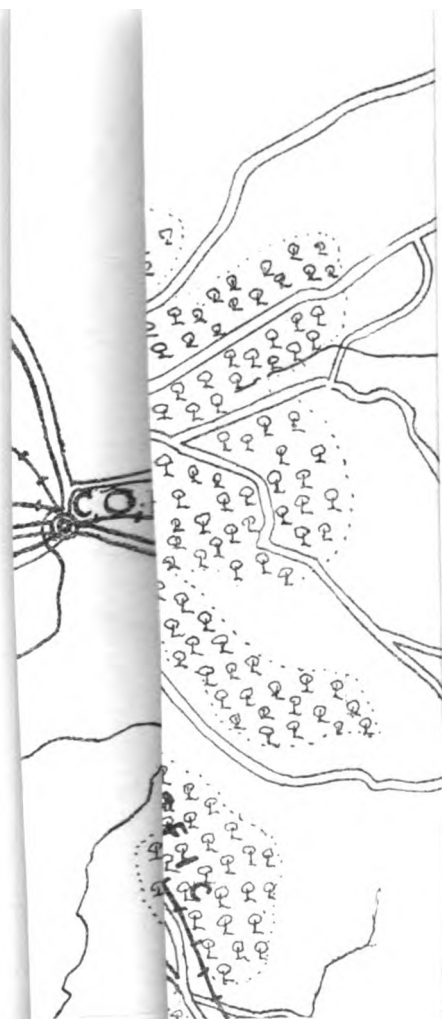
situation in general terms, to give a rough idea of the forces engaged, and to summarise what took place. As for the situation, the French here were tactically on the offensive, for it was their object to roll up the German left wing and to throw the Germans off the Metz—Mars-la-Tour—Verdun road ; while the Germans were chiefly concerned in defending their left wing, the German cavalry realising, however, that the offensive was the best defence. Briefly speaking, the village of Mars-la-Tour was the objective—to be seized by the French ; to be retained by the Germans. In the forces engaged the French were numerically the stronger. They had some 4,900 sabres available made up from du Barrail's Cavalry Division, which had been scouting for the column moving by the northern road *via* Conflans, the cavalry divisions of the IIIrd and IVth Corps respectively, and the brigade from the Guard Cavalry Division which had been accompanying the Emperor to Verdun. Against this number the Germans could oppose but some 3,000 made up of the 11th Brigade of the 5th Cavalry Division as a nucleus, plus the regiment of the 12th Brigade which had missed the "death-ride," and a couple more regiments.

A *mêlée* or series of charges took place, many of them local and without any real co-ordination on either side. One curious cavalry incident deserves to be recorded. The Prussian 13th Dragoons had assembled about Ville-sur-Yron, and was observed by a French brigade of light cavalry. Permission was asked to shake the Germans first by carbine fire and thus prepare the charge in view of the distance to be travelled, some 2,000 paces. The French divisional general, however, full of ardour, cried out "*Non ; au sabre,*" and the hussar brigade advanced at the gallop and up hill. The German dragoons awaited the charge on the spot, outlined against the sky *comme des colosses*. When the hussars were a few paces off, the Prussian dragoons gave a loud cheer, opened fire with their carbines, then drew swords and moved quickly down the slope. The collision was terrible and the small horses of the French light cavalry, winded by the long charge, were overborne. Another Prussian regiment now joined in and, taken in both

flanks, the French hussars fled in confusion, leaving their brigadier severely wounded on the ground. The French divisional general concerned gallantly placed himself at the head of a regiment of dragoons and fell upon the pursuers, meeting a soldier's death by a sword thrust at the head of his troops. Another incident to be recorded is that owing to their light blue uniforms a regiment of French lancers was mistaken for Prussian dragoons and cut down without mercy by its countrymen.

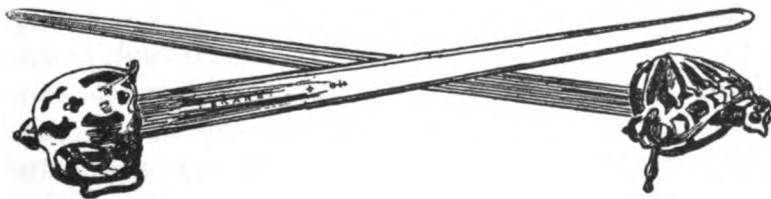
The long and furious *mêlée* lasted about half an hour, and the clouds of dust, and the fact that, on the French side, units entered the combat in succession, rendered any real tactical success on their side impossible. The struggle terminated in favour of the Germans who had thrown practically every available horseman into the fight, and gradually the French were pressed back towards Bruville. The German cavalry reformed on the contested plain and then slowly retired on Mars-la-Tour. That village had been the real prize for which the French cavalry had contended, and dusk saw it still in German hands. In this great cavalry engagement the Germans suffered 485 casualties.

As the day declined the battle gradually died out, but suddenly the fighting recommenced and brisk infantry fire resounded from the German right. From his position near Flavigny Prince Frederick Charles, who had reached the battlefield during the afternoon, had eagerly watched the development of the battle. When about 7 p.m. the firing became more intense on the right he determined to deliver a general attack. The 6th Cavalry Division which had remained between Flavigny and Tronville received orders to attack by brigades. One charge was actually made in the dark and a regiment of Prussian hussars broke through some zouaves, but the latter threw themselves into ditches along the main road and repulsed the attackers with fire action. Night and the exhaustion of both sides now definitely brought operations to an end and the Germans took up an outpost line from a knoll about half-way between Mars-la-Tour and Ville-sur-Yron, on



the left ; along the northern edge of the Tronville Copses ; across the main road between Vionville and Rezonville ; and along the northern edges of Bois St. Arnould and Bois des Ognons, thence to the Moselle. The line of retreat of the French Army *via* Mars-la-Tour was therefore barred.

Roughly estimated the numbers actually engaged were 67,000 Germans and 120,000 French, and each side suffered the same losses as the other, some 16,000 of all ranks. Mars-la-Tour was undoubtedly the decisive battle of the war for it prevented the reunion of Bazaine and MacMahon, and a subsequent attempt at junction led to the frightful catastrophe of Sedan. The Germans owed their splendid success primarily to their cavalry. It was cavalry that discovered the French ; cavalry that pinned them to their ground ; cavalry that by self-sacrifice restored the day when it seemed as if the Germans had shot their bolt ; and cavalry which again towards evening more than once staved off the overwhelming threat to the exhausted German left wing. The successful result would of course not have been obtained had not the German artillery and infantry played a splendid part as well. The losses of the IIIrd Corps were very severe, particularly among the younger officers. All told, the German losses amounted to 640 officers and 15,170 men ; of the cavalry, 96 officers and 1,425 other ranks. The proportion of cavalry to the other troops was roughly one to six and this ratio was almost exactly reproduced in the casualties in the commissioned ranks. So ended the grandest cavalry battle of modern times.



ICHABOD

By Lt.-Col. ARDERN BEAMAN, D.S.O.

It was—or so it seemed to me at the time—an exciting thing for a boy of nineteen to be marching through an alien land at the head of about fifty dusky horsemen, entirely “on his own” for a month.

When an Indian cavalry regiment changes its station, it usually proceeds to the new abode “foot by foot,” as the men graphically express it in the vernacular, often taking a whole winter in the process; which in character is not unlike a long sea voyage, with its kaleidoscopic change of scene by day, its eating and repose always in the same *venue*, but always separated by many miles of distance, and with its occasional excitement of calling at the “port” of some considerable town.

There are *pros* and *cons* for marching on relief. Satisfactorily married men dislike it, and a good many bachelors. You miss your polo, your hunting too, if there happened to be a pack in the previous vicinity, and such lesser things as dining out, dancing, dalliance with dainty companionship, training and manoeuvres. Against this you get, when the day’s march is done and stables over, a very nice variety of rough shooting—black partridge, duck, snipe, quail, hare, sandgrouse maybe, the common kinds of deer, and in some localities, peacock and pigeon, though these two last are sacred fowl and not lightly to be touched in most places. And you come back at dusk to a little canvas town, which glows cosily luminous like so many paper lanterns as you draw near, with an appetite unknown to the sedentary citizen, and then to a sleep beyond all dreams. Also you get more nearly than you will ever get in the rest of your service, a glimpse of the simple heart of India; of a wide land of old forgotten far-off things, unchanged as when Ruth

wept amid the alien corn ; of age-old songs when the women are silhouetted in a line against the evening red as they go with pitchers on their heads to the well ; of primitive clusters of dwellings, walled or thorn-fenced against the jungle beasts ; of grave old men gurgling by turns at the *hookha* while they relate wise, weird tales of gods and devils. Sometimes you will happen on the demesne of a small rajah, a feudal baron, whose *entourage* is more quaint and incredible than anything in the fairy tales of childhood. And by day, as you jog along the white, straight, dusty road, cursing sleepy bullock carts and jostling with a medley of races and creeds, you will, if your eye is not sealed, be sharing in the forever joyous pilgrimage of Kim.

When, therefore, it came to my turn to take the advanced party—which marched a fortnight ahead of the regiment with only one British officer—I regarded the occasion as one of all glamour.

Perhaps at that youthful period my command of the language was, if possible, even less than it subsequently became. There were a thousand things I wanted to know ; why that person on the road wore such and such a caste mark ; why that woman was unveiled ; what that naked maniac was lacerating himself for ; how the skull-cracked corpse we stumbled over on the roadside had come to be lying there. These, and other questions, innumerable, and perhaps infantile.

But etiquette dictated that while on the march I should only ask these things of my second-in-command, Jemadar Shah Jehan Kadr. Perhaps—and for that he might well be excused—this sad, spare little man did not understand my Sandhurst Hindustani. Although punctiliously polite, he gave me no information ; he appeared always to be withdrawn into a melancholy abstraction, as though his spirit dwelt in the vaults of some more spacious experience. After a few days I gave it up, riding for the most part in silence beside him through the long marches, till one morning we happened to pass a strikingly stately *serai*. Then he spoke for the first time that day, calling my attention to the building.

“That, Sahib, was built by Akhbar.”

"Yes?" I said, "The Moghuls were great Emperors—great men."

"Jee, Sahib; and Jellaladin Muhammad Akhbar the greatest of them all. During his life men called him on account of his virtue, the 'Guardian of Mankind.'"

Every person, however dull, has one subject; and by extraordinarily good luck I had hit on the Jemadar's. He had, it quickly became apparent, an astonishingly comprehensive knowledge of Moghul history and legend. There was never a silent yard now, only the rôles were reversed; I rode mute, spellbound, while he talked, and his speech was in the very purest of classical Urdu, so that it was easy to understand every word.

In a varied life few experiences have been more delightful than those weeks on the highway of India, listening in the language which they used themselves to the history of that great race, and seeing their majestic footprints around me on every hand. Handicapped hitherto by a public school education, I now began to learn for the first time from this sad, small little man something of the largest thing that there has ever been, the Moghul Empire—almost fabulous in its immensity and splendour; the wonder and the glamour of it. From my little Jemadar I had much history of the earlier Sultans; what warriors they were; what statesmen; what poets, singers, scholars, patrons of art and literature; how broadly tolerant in outlook; above all, what great romantics, so faithful and tender to their lovely queens. And ever and especially overshadowing all the rest, Jellaladin Muhammed Akhbar, great contemporary of our own great and good Queen Bess.

"Never before, Sahib, were such men born in such high place."

I was inclined to agree with the Jemadar. Even in this practical age we do not deem it a light thing to march some hundreds of miles once in four years. Yet long ago those spacious Emperors of Hind found time between the waging of their wars to make a yearly visit to Samarkhand and to Kashmir, leaving pleasaunces in their path which are still the wonder

and delight of these times. From the Taj Mahal to the Shalimar they have scattered jewels over India with a lavish hand ; bequeathing in Agra and Delhi a veritable casket of gems. Even the roads we hammer along, so well laid out with avenues of trees, with fountains of water, and with the frequent *serais* or rest-houses, are their legacy. My Jemadar's single subject was a happy one.

Presently we came into Lahore. With all the pride of a first independent command I saw to it that the camp was spick and span ; that the rows of little *jori* or two-man tents, with the pennons fluttering from crossed lances over the entrance of each, were in exact alignment ; the horses and mules meticulously picketed ; the paths swept clean. Then, having changed into *mufti*, I was starting out for the club to renew acquaintance with my kind, when the Jemadar appeared, saluting, before my tent.

"Would the Sahib care to see the Tombs at Shahdra ?"

Shahdra ? Of course, the burial place of some of the Moghuls. After so many weeks the call of civilization was strong, but his face was wistful ; and this was certainly an opportunity not to be missed. With no one else could the visit be so illuminating.

We climbed into a tum-tum and rattled out to that garden of majestic sleep. Time passed unremarked. I was shown the monument of Jehangir, the first decadent in the line, who, an ugly tradition says, killed his great Sire, Akhbar, by a foul at polo, with malice prepense ; the resting place of her, whose loveliness had bemused the reason of that unfilial youth ; of Arsaf Jar—and others and others. While the little Jemadar talked on of them, their virtues, passions, glories, crimes, I found myself again englamoured by the spell. Jehangir, Shah Jehan, Alamgir, Aurungzeb—their very names are like a royal roll of drums.

When at last we turned for home, and I thanked the Jemadar for his kind offices, he disclaimed :

"Nay, Sahib, it has been a pleasure to show you the Tombs of my Fathers."

His fathers? I started—and was silent during the drive back to camp. Arrived there, I dismissed the Jemadar, went into the office tent and got out the file of sheet rolls. Turning these over quickly, I noticed that the space for “trade or occupation” was usually filled with the word “zamindar,” which means land-holder. Ah! here was the Jemadar’s!—Shah Jehan Kadr—“Trade or occupation?” One word, in English . . .”—“King.”

Very thoughtfully I drove on up to the club. Instead of diving direct into the bar, I made for the library and pulled a volume of the Encyclopædia Britannica out of its revolving case. Therefrom I learned that Bahadur Shah, the last of the Moghuls, had been arrested by Hodson for his complicity in the mutiny of 1857, and afterwards banished to Burma. At the time of this arrest Hodson with his own hand, when the mob had tried to rescue them, had shot the three Princes, Bahadur Shah’s sons—not forgetting that the eldest had caused the arms and legs to be cut off English children and the blood to be poured into the mothers’ mouths.

And that, from the public point of view, was the end—after three hundred and thirty years—of a once effulgent dynasty.

But possibly the Princes had descendants?

On rejoining the regiment, I made enquiries. Thus, indeed, it was. So valid was the Jemadar’s pretension that he drew an official, lordly pension of nearly £3 a month in lieu of an empire once appertaining.

When, about a year later, the Jemadar was killed at polo in an out-of-the-way frontier station, I followed his *tabut* to the Moslem burial ground outside the lines, with melancholy feelings.

It was awe-inspiring to know that that rough wooden box contained the Shadow of an Empire . . . and of such an Empire.

THE CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES

By COLONEL J. G. BROWNE, C.M.G., C.B.E., D.S.O.

PART II.

I WILL now deal with the various operations in which the Cavalry have been employed in Iraq.

The first occasion on which Levies were used was on 12th April, 1918, when the Hillah Shabana or 2nd Euphrates Levy under Major Boyle made an expedition to Madhatiyah to destroy towers and forts, collect revenue, and make certain arrests. They destroyed eighty-four towers, collected some of the revenue, got surety for the rest, and brought in eight people. 110 miles were covered in this expedition without any horse casualties.

On the 21st April, the same year this same Levy, 170 strong, seventy being mounted men, made an expedition to Jerboniah, destroyed twenty-seven towers and burnt two villages. They were eleven hours in the saddle daily, the expedition lasting three days. No one fell out.

On 25th February, 1919, the 5th Euphrates Levy under Captain Hall left their station at midnight to deal with Sheik Badr and his following, in co-operation with aeroplanes and gunboats. The Levies were 120 strong. On a pitch dark night they made their way across country, men falling into the deep ditches as they went; one man fell, horse and all, into a well. A lake two and a half miles wide lay between the troops and their objective, and across this fifty men were sent in bellums, the horses with one man to two horses swimming and wading over further down. Their orders were to remain near and in observation of the village while it was bombed and shelled, but

not to attack unless Badr was seen evacuating it. For the whole of the 26th therefore they remained in observation, but pushed on and occupied it on the 27th.

On 8th May, 1919, thirty Levies under Captain Lewis were sent to deal with bad characters in the marsh village of Ummel Batouch. They were transported to the island on which the village was, by native rafts and rushed it at dawn. Five of the enemy were killed, and one captured. The Levy guide was killed in the attack.

On 21st May, the 5th Euphrates Levy formed part of a column to deal with Sheikh Badr's force, which had concentrated on the west bank of the Sharaish river. They marched at 11.45 p.m., 21st May, forded the river opposite Fathi Fort, with orders to work round the North-East side of the enemy's position and to attack while the enemy's main position was bombed with aeroplanes. They were not to cross the Sharaish river until after the aeroplane bombardment. For some time therefore the Levies were engaged at about 900 yards with the enemy who had advanced to the river. As soon as the bombardment ceased, the Levies crossed, dispersed the enemy, and burnt Badr's village and crops. The column then withdrew, the Levies protecting its rear and right flank.

On 30th August there took place an action at Batas in which Captain Littledale made an attempt with 15 mounted and 32 dismounted gendarmes and 30 dismounted Levies to relieve the garrison at Rowanduz which was surrounded. He was treacherously attacked, and the whole country being hostile, was obliged to retreat to Arbil, being fired on from all villages passed *en route*, and only brought back thirty-one of his force.

In November, 1919, the Political Officer Mosul, and Assistant Political Officer Aqra, were murdered at Bira Kapra by Kurds, who then attacked Aqra, which was held by Lieutenant Barlow and some gendarmerie. They put up a good fight but had to retire. The Yuzbashi (native sergeant) who later got the medal for gallantry, rallied a small party at Jujar, and, by holding on here blocked the Mosul road to the insurgents, until

the arrival of troops. Moreover his presence at Jujar gave support to such Kurdish chiefs as remained loyal to the Government. His action enabled the country up to the Aqra Dagh to be re-occupied.

In Deir-ez-Zor, the unrest which had been rife for some time came to a head on 10th December. Already two officers, Captain Chamier, Political Officer, Deir-ez-Zor, and Lieutenant Mills of the 6th L.A.M. Battery, had been ambushed on the road. On the 10th, 2,000 Arabs invested the place, supplemented by the rabble from the town. Only sixty Levies were available for defence. They were driven from the Government Offices to the Barracks, where there was no food or water, and made their escape by twos and threes or became casualties until only twenty remained. The Political Officer agreed to evacuate the town on the evening of 11th December, the Levies being given 60 mll. pay and dismissed.

At the end of the year twenty-four men of the 4th Euphrates Levy attempted to collect rifles in the Samawa area, but they met resistance from overwhelming numbers, and had to retire, losing three killed, one wounded and eight horses.

Thus it can be seen that the Levies up to the end of 1919 had a very varied experience of success and failure.

They then had to go through a very stern trial in the rebellion of 1920. The Levies who remained faithful to the Government throughout the rebellion had to face the worst forms of persecution to induce them to change sides. Intensive propaganda was levelled at them by their own people, including their female relatives. They were openly insulted in the streets and in the coffee shops, and called infidels. Reports were sent also that their own women whom they had left in their homes were being assaulted or in some cases carried off and killed. They fully realized that they were cutting themselves off from their own people. The two indecisive actions of Mahmudiyeh and Ibn Ali were exaggerated into Arab victories; the disaster to the Manchester column occurred in the middle of the country from which the 2nd Euphrates Levy were drawn, and bodies of them were besieged in Rowanduz,

Diwaniyah, Abu Sukhair, Kufar, Hillah, Khidr, and Nasiriyah, during which time men were called by name by the rebels to come out and protect their own homes and relatives. In spite of all these trials desertions were very few. On the night of 13th-14th May, 100 men of the 3rd Tigris Levy and 100 Amara and 100 Kurnah tribesmen made a successful night raid on Bait Jasim and Bait Mahmud of the Nawafh, at Al Baidah in the marshes.

On 30th June an action was fought at Mahmudiyeh, where fifty Levies mounted on horses lent by the Sheikh of Dulaim were attacked while reconnoitring Mahmudiyah by a superior force of the enemy. The horses stampeded and the force fell back losing five killed and eight wounded.

From 3rd-6th July a body of sixty Levies went with the column which went through Imam Hamza and made raids on villages round. A body of twenty-six mounted Levies and twenty others holding Imam Hamza and the railway station and Nabi Madiyan also had daily skirmishes with the Arabs.

On 9th July one officer and sixty other ranks successfully defended Khan Jadwal station, losing the officer and ten killed and twelve wounded, but inflicting on their assailants 100 casualties. On the 12th July, however, a party of sixty Levies on the railway were attacked by surprise and dispersed. From 14th-18th July a small detachment of the 2nd Euphrates Levy were besieged in Abu Sukhair. The Arabs succeeded in getting into a house where the women and children of the Levies were, and these were only rescued with difficulty. Finally arrangements were made to evacuate the place and the Levies were withdrawn to Kufah on 18th July.

In the Hillah area the whole of the latter part of July was marked by patrol actions. The enemy on 1st August attacked three troops of Levies holding Bab el Maslakh. They were forced to retire, but did so in good order, and the enemy lost heavily. The Levies were engaged in minor actions all the rest of that month and were subjected to continual sniping. A detachment of the Indian Army and seventy men of the Euphrates Levy had been holding Ainn and Khidr from the

2nd July up to 12th August, assisted by an armoured train on the railway, and two boats on the river. Owing, however, to the lowness of the river the boats could not get near enough to get a good target for their guns. Up to 12th August the work of the Levies had been confined to patrolling but about that date a large concentration of Arabs being reported they were ordered to evacuate Ainn and Khidr and go to Ur. On the night of the 12th-13th August firing began and lasted all night. The armoured train moved out in the morning, but meeting a large body of Arabs marching on Ainn village, returned to Khidr, and the Arabs thereupon surrounded the town. The whole garrison were soon engaged and many horses were hit. Another armoured train managed to get in from Ur and the evacuation of the town began. Horses and stores were entrained under heavy fire; all shunting had to be done under fire, and there was no railway official to superintend. As soon as the trains began to move the Arabs swarmed down towards the station yard. Three trains in all were despatched, the rear one fighting a rearguard action. At Alu Risha one train ran into the rear of another, telescoping some trucks and blocking the line, and fire was poured into the trains from all round. The rear train was evacuated and all personnel got away on the front train which eventually reached Ur. The Levies lost eight, the Indian Army twenty missing and killed, fifty-nine horses were lost and a good deal of material. The official account of this action draws attention to the continuous and exhausting outpost work of this small detachment, and the success with which they carried it out.

On the 14th of the same month the Diala Levy from Sharaban marched out and relieved a military train held up by rebels. Next morning they were attacked on all sides; ammunition ran out and the Arabs rushed the place. Captain Bradfield, the officer commanding the post, Sergeant-Major Newton and thirty-five other ranks were killed, twelve reported missing and the remaining fifteen were captured.

On 10th September "A" Squadron 2nd Euphrates Levy were attached to the 5th Cavalry who were operating on the

right bank of the Euphrates in the 53rd Brigade Group. On the 11th a squadron of each regiment formed the vanguard of the force, and advanced on Sadr Tomaznah, burning villages as they went. On the 12th the force advanced in two columns, "A" Squadron 2nd Euphrates Levy acting as advanced guard to the right column, the objective of which was the Khawas Canal. Patrols galloped forward, forestalling the Arabs by a few minutes. The Levy squadron then became right flank guard for the advance on Tuwairij, and took the village of Beit Salman Musa at a gallop. The enemy counter-attacked, but were held off until the squadron was relieved by a company of the 13th Rajputs. The Levies were then ordered to take a hill 1,000 yards west of Salman Musa, galloped to the foot of the hill, dismounted, and drove the enemy off, inflicting several casualties as they went. This was followed by a series of advances by bounds at a gallop to successive positions as far as the Taijiyah Canal. During the whole of October the Levies were engaged in conjunction with regular troops in punitive work. They fought successful actions on the 19th and 30th of the month.

During November and December "A" and "C" Squadrons of the 2nd Euphrates Levy operated in the Hillah area, and were almost continuously on the move, some opposition being encountered on 11th, 18th and 23rd November. "C" Squadron then moved to Diwaniyah on 13th December, and for the rest of December, the whole of January and beginning of February, 1921, was engaged together with "B" Squadron with columns operating in the Diwaniyah Area. One other small action may be recorded, when on 3rd October, 1920, the 2nd Tigris Levy surrounded a rebel named Amin Beg in a fort at Badrah, and captured him after a fight in which bombs were used. Throughout the rebellion the Levies had seventy-three killed in action, and gained fifteen medals for gallantry.

The rest of 1921 following the rebellion was a period of reconstruction until December. In that month the levies had an action with revolted Kurds near Batas, where they lost Lieutenants Burridge and Cavosso killed in action. "A" Squadron

CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES 397

5th Regiment had a particularly hard night on this occasion, holding the top of the Dasht-i-Harir in a fort of snow. On the 14th "A" Squadron of Levies and thirty-five police were ambushed near Babachikchek by the Surchi Kurds under Sheikh Abdullah. They had to retreat losing six killed and seven wounded and fourteen horses.

In January, 1922, an action took place near Sulaimani when Captain FitzGibbon was killed, and the Levies forced to retreat. Altogether in 1921-22, Levies were used on four occasions in conjunction with the R.A.F., and in the course of the actions had twenty killed and twenty-five wounded, while two got the O.B.E.

In the Rowanduz operations of 1923, and during the Turkish attack on the Northern Frontier in 1924, the cavalry were not used. In 1925 they saw a good deal of service. On 22nd May two squadrons of the 1st Regiment were used in a combined operation with the R.A.F. and Assyrian Battalions against the villages of the Doshki Kurds, west of Dohuk. The villages were bombed and destroyed; but no fighting occurred. On the 15th May the 2nd Cavalry Regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel Laurence, V.C., then at Kirkuk, had marched from that place, orders being to go through Sulaimani and thence to march to and occupy Halebja. Up to April Sulaimani had been held by a regiment of cavalry and a battalion of infantry of the Iraq Army, and now the 2nd Battalion Iraq Levies (Assyrians) and Flight No. 1 Squadron R.A.F. (Snipes) were added to the garrison, the whole being under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel G. C. M. Sorel-Cameron, commanding 2nd Battalion Iraq Levies. The object was to bring this area, which up to date, owing to the action of Sheikh Mahmud and his supporters, had been in a state of turmoil, into administrative control. On the 17th May when near Kanisri, Colonel Laurence heard a body of rebels were five miles off. He sent one squadron to try and catch them, but the rebels made off. On the 18th May Colonel Cameron sent for one squadron from the 2nd Regiment which was on the march to Sulaimani to take part in an operation against

Dar-i-Qeli, which had as its object the surrounding of a rebel force under Kerim Futteh Beg, a Kurdish rebel leader. This, after a long night march, only just missed being successful. On the 20th May the 2nd Regiment marched to Arbat and camped. As soon as it was dark the Kurds occupied a mound, from which they opened fire on the camp. They were driven off by a dismounted attack and lost seventeen prisoners. The Levies lost one killed, three wounded and five animals hit. Sniping continued throughout the night. Next day, 21st May, the march was resumed to Sarao. At Mawun which is an ancient fort of the mound type, and probably Assyrian, the road turns into a small valley about four miles long and two miles wide. It is more or less oval in shape, bounded by hills which rise suddenly to about 150 feet on the right or south side, but run very gradually upwards on the north side. The places where the road enters and leaves the valley are narrow, and at the Sarao end in particular there is a gap only a hundred yards wide between the under features which run down from the hills north and south of the valley. A shallow wady runs diagonally across the valley and runs out close to the road at the Sarao end. There is a small village called Giryazah with a good spring of water just beyond where the road enters the valley.

The Regiment entered the valley and took the road which ran about down the centre. So far no shooting had occurred, and only a few Kurds had been seen near the tops of the hills on the right of the line of march. Aeroplanes came over and the Kurds retired into caves and otherwise hid themselves. Orders had been given by Colonel Laurence for one squadron to move forward and seize the low foothills on the right and for another to seize the high ground in front, the rear guard at this time being just about Giryazah village, when the Kurds came down on all sides, pouring a very heavy fire into the column. The rear guard was at the same time attacked from the direction of Mawun. In addition to the pack transport with the column and the A.T. carts, a quantity of civilian transport was carrying not only supplies for the troops but also, judging by the claims of the contractor put in later, stores for starting

trade in Halebja; these stores were mostly on donkeys. The firing first began in front and all this mass of civilian transport attempted to hang back. But when the attack on the rearguard began, all the civilian transport stampeded into the column, so that with the mixture of transport and A.T. carts considerable confusion occurred. Lieutenant Fuller-Brown, in command of the rearguard, held off the oncoming Kurds with the dismounted troops, while two other mounted troops keeping close in rear of the transport kept it moving forward. During this period, the small dismounted guard over the nineteen prisoners were killed or wounded and the prisoners escaped. In front an attempt by one squadron (Captain Hill) to seize the high ground in front was driven back by the Kurdish fire, and Lieutenant-Colonel Laurence ordered his troops to take cover in the wady which ran across the valley, where he personally restored order among the panic-stricken transport men. The wady gave some cover, but was partly enfiladed and the force was still suffering casualties. He then ordered one squadron (Captain Hill) to charge out and clear a hill from which fire was being brought to bear on the wady. This was done and the Kurds who retreated into the plain behind were machine-gunned by No. 1 Squadron Snipes.

Order having been restored in the wady, Lieutenant-Colonel Laurence decided to continue the march. Captain Fosdick's squadron galloped at the hills on the right front; but the Kurds retreated. The march was continued covered by Fuller-Brown's squadron, the Kurds continuing to fire at long range. The Regiment reached Kara Teppeh that night, and Halebja next day. The Levies lost 9 killed, 1 missing, 18 wounded, 30 animals killed, 9 missing and 29 wounded. Considerable quantities of material and supplies were lost owing to A.T. carts overturning.

The 2nd Regiment remained at Halebja until early September. They co-operated with the columns under Colonel Cameron in the punishment of the villages which had taken part in the attack on the cavalry, also in the Penjvin operations, though they did not go into the mountains, and the Quaradagh

operations in August. In September they left Halebja, being succeeded by two companies of the Iraq Army, and marched to Chemchemal. Here they co-operated with troops from Sulaimani in a raid on Bagh and Kupala in September, and in the action against Kara Anjir and Chamanbi in October. For the rest of the year they were employed on convoy work on the Kirkuk-Sulaimani road.

During 1926 and up to the present date the unrest in the Sulaimani Liwa continued. In May, 1926, the 1st Cavalry Regiment marched to Kirkuk, changing stations with the 2nd Cavalry Regiment, who went to Erbil. The 1st Regiment took over escort duties on the Kirkuk-Sulaimani road. The rebel Kerim Futteh Beg was reported in the area. His chief claim to fame was his murder of Captains Bond and Makant in 1919. He had also fought the Turks continuously prior to the Great War. "C" Squadron made a march of twenty-eight miles and surrounded Muzzafar, where he was reported to be, but he had gone. They spent the next two days visiting villages in the area, and returned to Kirkuk, doing the sixty miles back in two marches. All supplies had to be carried on pack, as there was practically nothing in the villages. On the 17th news again came that Kerim Futteh Beg was at Dari-i-Qeli about fifty miles from Kirkuk. There was already one squadron, "B," at Chemchemal. Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander marched with "A" Squadron at 6 p.m. on the 17th reaching Chemchemal at 4 a.m. on the 18th, intending to use both squadrons. But at 8.30 on the 18th a message was dropped by aeroplane on Chemchemal to say that an aeroplane had come down at Memlaha, thirty miles off, "Could we assist." "B" Squadron under Captain Kinnaird left at once, recovered the flying officer and mechanic and got back at 9 p.m. on the 18th, doing sixty miles in twelve hours over very difficult country. Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander continued after Kerim Futteh Beg with "A" Squadron, and made a dash at Mortaka, where he was reported to be on the 19th. This again failed to catch him and the squadron returned to Kirkuk. Reconnaissance by "B" Squadron from Chemchemal on the 22nd, 23rd and

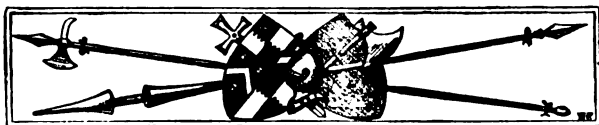
CAVALRY REGIMENTS OF THE IRAQ LEVIES 401

24th June established the whereabouts of Kerim Futteh Beg near Qaratumar, and at 1 a.m. on the 29th Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander left with "C" Squadron to surround this place. Kerim Futteh Beg doubled back, but Colonel Alexander decided to remain hidden near the village for some three hours in a wady, and then to leave secretly for Mortaka to try and catch him there. The result was that Kerim Futteh Beg did return after the squadron had left for Mortaka; but the villagers, encouraged by the idea that the squadron was there, opened fire on Kerim Futteh Beg's party and in the fight that ensued this man received a wound which killed him. His death has had a great effect on quietening the part of the country near Kirkuk.

This narrative will give some idea of the continuous work the cavalry have been called on to carry out in the past.

The two Regiments are now amalgamated into the 1st/2nd Regiment, and stationed at Kirkuk, and with the opening of renewed fighting with Sheikh Mahmud and his supporters are again held ready to act in the Kirkuk area if the necessity should arise.

(Since writing this, the disbandment of the Iraq Levy Cavalry has been completed. Up to the time disbandment began, they were engaged in trying to catch Saber, son of Kerim Futteh Beg, and his band of rebels, and forced him to leave the area. The Regiment at the same time won the Lloyd-Sargon Polo Cup at the Mosul Tournament in June, and, finally, the Reid Polo Cup at the Bagdad Tournament in November. The Regiment ceased to exist on 30th November, 1927.)



*JUST THE WORD**or Le Mot Juste.*

By "HYDERABAD"

A.

"To ANIMATE, in a military sense, is to encourage the troops by the power of language . . ."—*An Universal Military Dictionary*, by Captain George Smith, London, 1779.

B.

" 'Billet d'entre a l'hopital,' *Fr.*, a ticket which is given to a sick soldier to entitle him to a *birth* in the military hospital."—*Military Dictionary*, by Major Charles James, 3rd Edition, 1810.

C.

"Cercle . . ., a large flat piece of iron, one inch thick, which is made red hot, and thrown at the assailants."—*Major James, op. cit.*



MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY

COLONEL LANGFORD LLOYD, C.M.G., D.S.O.

A.D.M.S. Salisbury Plain Area.

Abbreviations

C.F.A. ..	..	Cavalry Field Ambulance.
R.A.P. ..	..	Regimental Aid Post.
R.M.O. ..	..	Regimental Medical Officer.
M.D.S. ..	..	Main Dressing Station.
A.D.S. ..	..	Advanced Dressing Station.
A.D.M.S.	..	Assistant Director of Medical Services. (Usually of a Division).
D.D.M.S.	..	Deputy Director of Medical Services. (Usually of a Corps).
D.M.S. .	..	Director of Medical Services.
M.A.C. .	..	Motor Ambulance Convoy.
D.A.D.M.S.	..	Deputy Assistant Director of Medical Services.
W.W.C.P.	..	Walking Wounded Collecting Post.
S.M.O. ..	..	Senior Medical Officer.
C.C.S. ..	..	Casualty Clearing Station.

PART I*

THE general functions of the Medical Services in the field are very clearly defined. They consist as follows :

Firstly, the preservation of the health of the troops. This undoubtedly is of the greatest importance. The Medical Services are responsible for giving advice which will keep the troops fit and healthy, and able to carry out the tasks allotted to them. It is incumbent on all troops to know the simple rules of health and to abide by them, as well as to conform to any special rules and instructions which may be issued from time to time by the various Commanders and other responsible authorities on the advice of the Medical Services. Preventable diseases can decimate an army quicker than the bullets of the enemy, but care and forethought can stay the spread of disease

* Part II, to be published in October next, will deal with the Influence of Mechanization on the Medical Aspect of a Cavalry Division and with the Lessons and Experiences of the Great War.

and limit or prevent epidemics. Under certain conditions military necessity may demand that risk of disease be taken. Areas may have to be crossed or occupied in which certain diseases are known to be endemic. In this case the Medical Services will advise how this risk may be minimized, if not obviated.

Secondly, the collection and evacuation of the sick and wounded, and the treatment involved thereby, and this includes getting back to the firing line, at the earliest possible moment, every available man.

Thirdly, the replenishing of medical and surgical equipment.

The Medical Services have also to administer and handle, or manœuvre the various medical units that are mobilized as part of an army in the field, as have commanders of all other units and formations. The medical units mobilized on a war basis do not exist in peace—they are only formed when mobilization is ordered, with the result that a unit has to be made and welded together in a very few days, equipment has to be checked, much of which is different to that used in peace. Officers are brought together from all parts, many of whom have possibly never met before. The W.Os, N.C.Os and men are brought together in the same way. The commanding officer may never have met his quartermaster, his regimental sergeant-major or his second-in-command, and therefore may have no personal experience of their capabilities and performances. In those medical units that are termed mobile, or partly mobile, field ambulances, cavalry field ambulances, motor ambulance convoys, casualty clearing stations and hygiene sections, R.A.S.C. personnel are detailed to handle the transport, and these, the R.A.M.C. officers, W.Os and N.C.Os have probably never seen before. This is not so with R.A., Cavalry and Infantry units who exist as such in peace and whose peace equipment and arms form part of their requirements for war. Medical units thus formed on mobilization may take a little longer to shake down into their places in the war organization than units that exist as such in peace, but give them a little latitude and they will fit as perfectly as the others.

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 405

Field Service Regulations very clearly state that the Medical Service in the field is based on the principle of rapid evacuation of sick and wounded. The efficiency with which this system is organized and administered greatly affects the mobility, morale and confidence of the army. Rapid evacuation of casualties means rapid collection. If this is true for all troops, it is especially true of cavalry.

Whatever scheme is drawn up by the A.D.M.S. of a Cavalry Division or S.M.O. of an Independent Cavalry Brigade in the form of R.A.M.C. Operation Orders, Instructions or Arrangements, it must be based on the principle of getting at and collecting the casualties at the very earliest possible moment, the first step in the collection being the arrangements that the Medical Officer with the unit can, or has organized. This at once brings in the question of liaison—liaison between the regimental medical officer and O.C. the unit to which he is attached, liaison between the O.C. Cavalry Field Ambulance and Brigadier of the Brigade he is working with, between the O.C., C.F.A. and the regimental Medical Officer, liaison between the A.D.M.S. and his divisional G. and Q. and between the A.D.M.S. and the C.F.As working under his direction.

The Regimental Medical Officer must be informed by the O.C. of his unit the scope and area over which the unit is going to work, and the objective ; the O.C. of the C.F.A. must know what the troops with which he is working, are going to do, and how they are going to do it. This will be told him by his A.D.M.S. and should also be a matter of discussion between himself and the Brigadier of the Brigade, when his C.F.A. is detailed to work with a particular brigade.

The A.D.M.S. must know from G. the scope, area and objective of the Cavalry Division, in order that he may dispose of his medical units to the best advantage.

All this information should, and must, be given to the various R.A.M.C. Officers by the officers responsible at the very earliest possible moment. Without early information, delay will occur in getting to casualties, collecting and evacuating them. Changes in the disposition of troops, as they occur, must also be communicated, and at once.

Early information is required by the Medical Officer i/c the unit of the exact location where casualties have occurred ; this can be sent in direct to him by troop and squadron officers. For this reason the medical officer should be in close touch with Regimental H.Q. and establish his Regimental Aid Post in as close proximity as possible. If the R.M.O. is at a distance from his Regimental H.Q. he may miss a sudden move and thus get out of touch.

The O.C. the C.F.A. responsible for collecting the casualties from the R.A.Ps must be informed where the casualties have been grouped by the regimental medical officers. The O.C. C.F.A. must therefore arrange for inter-communication between himself and the regimental medical officers by means of runners or orderlies, and also between himself and the Brigade H.Q.

The A.D.M.S., especially in moving warfare, must know where the C.F.As have collected wounded so that the motor ambulance convoy can be informed, the motor ambulance convoy working with the cavalry division being the responsible unit for evacuating the casualties out of the divisional area.

It can therefore be seen that close, adequate and constant liaison between the combatant and medical side, as well as between the various echelons of medical aid, is absolutely essential if the principle, as laid down in Field Service Regulations is to be maintained, viz., rapid evacuation.

Two other very important principles are also involved as far as cavalry are concerned—mobility and conservation of energy. The Medical unit detailed and organized to work with cavalry, especially strategical cavalry, must be as mobile as possible, able to get rapidly from place to place, and keep in touch with the various units under its charge ; the strength and energy of the R.A.M.C. personnel detailed for duty must be conserved to the utmost possible extent, they must be transported until actually required for duty ; the carriage of a hefty man on a stretcher, possibly over rough country, is no weakling or tired man's job. Try it and see for yourselves.

The question of the transport at the disposal of the medical authorities for collecting and evacuating casualties, first to the

M.D.S. by the C.F.As and then to the C.C.S. by the M.A.C. is also of importance. This with cavalry should incline to the generous side. The adequacy and nature of the transport employed will depend on (a) the range and area over which the cavalry will have to work ; (b) the pace at which this work can be carried out ; (c) the nature of the terrain, and with the question of terrain we can include time of year, i.e., wet, cold, dry, tropical, etc.

The greatest potential energy of ambulance transport is when it is empty and in position, waiting to collect. If it has to go back a long way to get rid of its casualties it will have to return a long way before it is again at its maximum energy. To avoid delay, therefore, if long journeys have to be undertaken, and by long I mean long in point of time, whether the actual distance is long or not, a sufficiency of suitable transport for casualties must be provided.

C.F.As are usually designed for work in a civilized country, in a temperate climate and against a civilized enemy. A slightly different organization will be required for terrain such as found in Palestine, Iraq, in a country of sand, where there are few, if any, roads, or in hilly country like the N.W. frontier of India. Modifications for work in terrain of this nature involve mounting R.A.M.C. personnel, especially the stretcher-bearer section, the use of H.T. vice M.T., carrying equipment on pack transport ; even casualties may have to be evacuated from the front by means of pack transport.

In certain very sandy areas sledges can be attached to the wheels of H.T. wheeled transport to enable them to get along, or sand sledges can be used in the same way that sledges were used in Russia. I don't, however, propose to go into these modifications, but shall confine myself to the medical arrangements and method of employment of medical units detailed for duty with cavalry working in a civilized country with good communications, e.g., Europe.

Let us now examine the various echelons of medical aid.
1st or Regimental Echelon.

The first or most forward echelon is the regimental. Every

cavalry regiment has attached a medical officer. He is issued with medical equipment according to a scale, and 4 Mark 11 stretchers form part of the ordnance mobilization equipment of the unit. These stretchers weigh approximately 30 lbs., and are heavy and cumbersome for cavalry. The medical officer is assisted by a medical officer's orderly, who is a lance-corporal of the unit, and the medical equipment is carried in a 1st line transport vehicle. Under the present organization no R.A.M.C. "other ranks" are attached to any fighting unit.

Each squadron has to find one trooper trained in water duties, and one trooper trained in sanitation, whilst the headquarters has to find two of each. These sanitary and water duty men are strictly speaking not "medical aid," though they work under the direction of the regimental medical officer, and he is responsible for their efficiency, and therefore do not come into the scheme of collecting casualties.

War establishments lays down that each squadron shall have four men trained in first aid. No special medical equipment is carried by these first-aid men when in the presence of the enemy other than haversacks of shell dressings when issued, nor are portable folding stretchers authorized for use. It is impossible to carry the Mark 11 stretcher on a horse. Special saddle crutches for fixing or tying wounded men in their saddles are not authorized for issue, though many patterns of such have been experimented with and used from time to time.

The squadron first-aid men collect the wounded man, get him back to some kind of shelter or the R.A.P. as best they can, dress his wounds by means of the first field dressings which every man carries in a small pocket in the front bottom left hand corner of his frock, in the use of which every man has to be instructed yearly, or they can use the shell dressings for extensive wounds. These shell dressings are very large first field dressings not issued to each man, but issued to regimental medical officers and medical units. A cavalry regiment has eight haversacks of these. Some will be issued to each squadron when in the presence of the enemy. Lightly wounded who are still able to ride will be directed back to the R.A.P.

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 409

It should be noted that by paragraph 838 King's Regulations, as amended by Army Order 295 of 1926, all troopers included in peace establishments as bandsmen are to be trained in first aid and the carriage of wounded.

The regimental medical officer is the adviser of the O.C. in all matters affecting the health of the unit and the sanitation thereof. This includes questions of food, clothing, exercise, quarters, in fact everything which will help to keep the unit physically fit. As regards sanitation, he is not the executive sanitarian of the unit; that rests with the O.C., who delegates one of his own officers.

The regimental medical officer is responsible for seeing that the first-aid men are properly trained. As these become casualties they must be replaced. He is responsible that the inoculation state of the unit is as near 100 per cent. as possible; he is also responsible that his medical equipment is kept replenished. Drugs, dressings and other items required are drawn from the nearest C.F.A.

In the presence of the enemy the regimental medical officer selects a suitable site for his regimental aid post, called for short, R.A.P., and puts out an indicating board marked "R.A.P." This site should be as near headquarters of his unit as possible. For the reasons already stated he must keep in close touch with his C.O.

In mobile warfare, and cavalry warfare is always mobile, this R.A.P. cannot be fitted up and organized, properly protected with sand-bags, etc., as can be done in the case of infantry R.A.Ps in position warfare. The R.A.P. selected should, where possible, afford some shelter and possibly warmth, and be a place easily found by messengers, etc., coming from the C.F.A. in his rear, or from the squadrons to his front. A house is a very suitable place as affording shelter from the weather, though not from artillery; warmth, water, fuel and arrangements for disposal of excreta can be found therein. The regimental medical officer should not wander far from his R.A.P. He may, however, have to go forward to see groups of casualties collected by squadrons which for some reason cannot be got back to the

R.A.P. ; the lance-corporal should remain at the R.A.P. to give information and to help keep up touch and the R.M.O. must leave word where he has gone and when he will return.

He must be ready as circumstances dictate to move his R.A.P. to another site at very short notice after he has arranged for the disposal of any casualties on hand. These may often be left where they are, a message being sent back to the C.F.A. giving the number and the exact position where they are to be found.

The moves of the R.A.P. should always be in conformity with the moves of his unit headquarters.

The medical officer's vehicle containing his equipment is kept close at hand, but out of the way and under cover. He cannot let this get far away as it contains his fighting equipment.

As often as not, the O.C. of the C.F.A. responsible for collecting casualties from the R.A.P. will attach to him at the beginning of the operation an ambulance wagon, and possibly two or more R.A.M.C. bearers. He can thus send forward in front of his R.A.P. when the situation and the terrain permits to collect the casualties from the squadrons and thus be enabled to collect his first batch of casualties quickly and get them away.

R.A.P.s in cavalry warfare are never more than temporary abodes of rest, mere collecting posts, constantly changing ; very often it is nothing more than a site marked by the R.A.P. board under cover of bank, a sunken road, a quarry, on the reverse slope of a hill, any place that will give cover from rifle and direct gun fire, and be free from observation and air observation, if possible, but it should be remembered that sunken roads, quarries, and like places invite gas shelling and hold the gas. If possible, R.A.P.s should provide some head cover from rain and sun—a blanket will do.

As the regiment moves forward, the casualties, in all probability, will have to be gathered in groups here and there, on roads, or tracks, and left. The localities of these groups should be marked and the exact map location sent back to the C.F.A. so that they can collect them, one of the slightly wounded being

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 411

placed in charge. They should be grouped wherever possible, in positions where wheeled transport can get at them easily.

The medical officer at the R.A.P. is responsible for giving all the medical aid he can with the means at his disposal, and for attaching to the patient a properly filled in Field Medical Card—Army Form W.3118—which gives the man's name, unit and nature of casualty.

Every squadron officer should do his best to get back news to his regimental medical officer, where casualties have occurred, and where collected. He is sending in information as regards his front fairly constantly to his regimental H.Q., information about casualties can be sent at the same time. If he can give any indication of the class and number so much the better, thus: 6 casualties at such and such a place, 2 stretcher cases—1 can walk with assistance, 3 walking. If casualties are able to get back riding without assistance, so much the better.
2nd or Field Ambulance Echelon ; A Divisional Echelon.

The second echelon of medical aid is the cavalry field ambulance. Cavalry field ambulances, unless attached to an independent brigade are divisional troops and they work under the orders of the A.D.M.S. of the division. The new organization of a cavalry division consists of two brigades and two armoured car regiments, together with R.H.A.; a mechanized field artillery brigade; R.A.F., R.E.; Signals and R.A.S.C. and contemplates two cavalry field ambulances as against the old organization of three cavalry brigades and three cavalry field ambulances. These C.F.As may be detailed by the A.D.M.S. to work with particular brigades, when necessity calls for such distribution.

The distinguishing feature of a field ambulance working with cavalry is mobility.

O.C. C.F.As must keep close liaison with the H.Q. of the brigade with whom they are working for the time being, in order that they may keep in touch with the situation as it develops from hour to hour, to enable such dispositions to be made for the collection of the casualties as the situation demands.

The headquarters of brigades and divisions are responsible for affording this information which should not be withheld.

Once the operations have been launched, the O.Cs C.F.As must trust largely to their own initiative without leaning too much on the A.D.M.S. moving their M.D.S. or A.D.S. as required—moves being at once notified to the A.D.M.S. giving map location. The A.D.M.S. on his part will do all he can to keep up touch with his F.As and afford them all the help, support and information he can. He or his D.A.D.M.S. will visit them as often as possible. Personal touch and personal knowledge, when it can be obtained, produces better results than that which can be culled from messages. Information as regards the medical situation must also be sent to the A.D.M.S. from time to time and as the situation demands, such as number of casualties collected, number awaiting evacuation, number lying down, number sitting. The A.D.M.S. must be able to answer the G.O.C. and Staff any questions on these points.

Cavalry field ambulance commanders must be bold, but not of that type described as "Fools rush in where Angels fear to tread," knowledgeable, have energy and initiative, able to trust when required to their own judgment and resources. It is not every officer who is suitable for command of this unit. It is no easy matter, no "falling off a log" stunt, collecting casualties with fast moving cavalry operating over a wide front, even if the casualties be few, and rapid movement means diminution of casualties.

The mechanized C.F.A. suggested in the recent Cavalry Staff exercise consisted of a headquarters and one company. The headquarters organized to form a main dressing station (M.D.S.), and the company as an advanced dressing station with a bearer sub-section for collecting the casualties from R.A.Ps and units. All transport mechanized of the 6-wheeler type, with six light and six heavy motor ambulances.

This C.F.A. is supposed to be for fifty patients. It is not limited to this number however. A C.F.A. must be capable of accommodating many more than this at a push. On the 25th and 26th August, 1914, No. 2 Cavalry Field Ambulance carried along with it whilst on the move well over 100, of which about six were officers who were lying-down cases.

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 413

Cavalry field ambulances collect casualties from regimental areas, that is to say, they work between the regimental aid posts and the advanced and main dressing stations, and staff the two latter.

The motor ambulance convoy detailed to the cavalry is responsible for evacuating the divisional casualties to the casualty clearing station, i.e., from the main dressing station to the casualty clearing station.

In dealing with infantry casualties, one often comes across the term walking wounded collecting post. This will hardly ever exist in cavalry fighting. The M.D.S. of the C.F.A. will look after any walking wounded that may come along.

When cavalry are dispersed or acting independently over a wide area, the tactics of the C.F.A. will depend entirely on the terrain, and the rate of movement. A M.D.S. is usually established on some road which leads forward as well as to the rear, and which is suitable for motor transport, so that the cars of the M.A.C. can get to them. The M.A.C. is notified of the place where it has been established; this may be done by the C.F.A. sending back a D.R. to the M.A.C. or by the A.D.M.S. notifying the M.A.C., or better still by the M.A.C. keeping touch by its own D.R. The more open the country, the easier the collection of casualties; the more roads or suitable tracks, the easier the work. In enclosed and wooded country, the more difficult it is to locate, collect and evacuate.

Good motor roads largely dominate the question of collecting and getting back cavalry casualties.

At times, and under certain conditions, aeroplane ambulances might be used to evacuate cases to the C.C.S. or base. This form of evacuation is being explored in connection with the experimental armoured force now in "being" on Salisbury Plain. Aeroplanes were used with great success in the Kurdistan operations in 1923 and again in Iraq in 1925. Cases were taken back 220 miles to Baghdad in a few hours instead of the many days it would have taken if they had been evacuated by road and waterway.

If cavalry are working far in front of the main body of the infantry it may be necessary for the casualties to be transferred to a main dressing station of an infantry division. In this case, the cars of the C.F.A. will take the casualties back to an infantry M.D.S. and hand them over there. The responsibility of getting them on to the C.C.S. will then rest with the M.D.S. to whom the cases have been handed over, and the M.A.C. working to that M.D.S. When this procedure is necessitated, arrangements will be made by the A.D.M.S. cavalry division, with the A.D.M.S. or D.D.M.S. of the division or corps concerned.

This arrangement has this disadvantage that it may hold up the C.F.A. from going forward and touch may become lost for the time with the cavalry formation with which it is working, due to the fact that ambulances of the C.F.A. are required to evacuate the casualties beyond their own M.D.S. The better arrangement is for a M.A.C. to come forward on all possible occasions. The medical work with the desert mounted column in Palestine, which is commented on later, bears this out. I can also illustrate what I mean by an incident that occurred in September, 1914, to the C.F.A. I then commanded. By this time this unit had been re-organized into a light or A.D.S. echelon working with the brigade and a heavy or M.D.S. echelon coming along behind more slowly for the purpose of relieving the light echelon of its cases and arranging for their further evacuation. At this time M.A.Cs had not come into existence, and our trust in getting cases to railhead and clearing hospitals as they were called then was *via* the empty supply lorries. The brigade I was working with, after crossing the Marne, came into touch with the enemy, with the result that an A.D.S. had to be opened and some thirty casualties, some of them severe, were collected. The enemy were moving back rapidly. Dressing these casualties took some time, and they could not be left until this had been completed. A message had been sent for the heavy echelon to come forward and take them over. Night-fall, the arrival of slow-moving heavy echelon and the completion of work on the casualties coincided, making it too late for the light echelon to move on that night. The

brigade had gone rapidly forward, and if the heavy echelon had been able to move faster, they could have got to the light echelon earlier and so released the light echelon to move with its brigade. The light echelon moved at dawn the next morning, but the brigade had gone far ahead. Partly owing to want of exact information as to the direction in which the brigade had proceeded, information not having been sent back by brigade H.Q. to the light echelon and partly due to a map mistake by myself, the brigade was without its light echelon for two days until touch was established at Chassemy on the Aisne. The heavy echelon having got rid of its casualties proceeded forward by a shorter route and joined the light echelon about the same time as the light echelon re-established touch with brigade H.Q. Luckily, the brigade experienced no casualties during this time. This, I think, points out the necessity of mobility, liaison and inter-communication, and of adequate means of clearing C.F.As other than the transport at their own disposal.

Cavalry working independently, or when acting as a rear guard as in a retreat, must always contemplate the fact that it may be impossible at times to collect casualties, or even if collected, they may have to be left behind. If such has to happen, it is necessary to decide if medical personnel and material should be left behind at the same time to look after them. This must be decided by the divisional or other commander in consultation with his senior medical authority. Medical personnel so left behind will, under the Rules of the Geneva Convention, be eventually returned, but may be a long time getting back, as the captors, although they have not the right to hold them as prisoners of war, have the right to decide the route by which they will be returned. This, of course, only holds good when both sides have subscribed to the Geneva Convention. Whether personnel are left behind or not is therefore a question for decision whether you are justified in weakening the strength of a unit, the establishment of which, although adequate, is not lavish and in which every man is wanted.

Casualties if left behind without medical personnel in charge may be committed to the care of local authorities or institutions or even to the local inhabitants themselves if time does not permit of arrangements being made with the local authorities or institutions, but every endeavour must be made to get away the lightly wounded. They must not be permitted to fall into the enemy's hands and become prisoners of war if it can be avoided. Lightly wounded soon recover, and can rejoin their units to fight again, and every possible man is wanted who is able to do his duty.

It is the duty of the officer i/c the C.F.A. advanced section and bearers to establish and keep touch with the regimental medical officers. He can do this by runners, cycle or motor-cycle messengers.

He finds out by this means where the regiment has collected or left the clumps of wounded. These he evacuates by bearers and motor ambulances back to the C.F.A's collecting post or A.D.S., and from thence by motor ambulances to the M.D.S.

When circumstances permit, the A.D.S. should be sited as far forward as possible, provided a suitable location can be selected, and wheeled transport should be worked as close as possible to the fighting line in order to minimize carrying. If it is near a brigade headquarters so much the better for liaison.

In rapid movements an A.D.S. will be difficult to establish. In this case the most that can be done will be to collect clumps into larger clumps on roads or to other suitable and accessible places, the exact location of these clumps being sent back by despatch rider or runner to the headquarters of the F.A. who then collects. Possibly the headquarters moving forward may sweep them up.

C.F.As must be prepared at times to move, carrying with them their casualties until a more favourable opportunity occurs for evacuating them to the C.C.S. This may often happen when operating in a savage country or in a country which has not subscribed to the Geneva Convention.

An advanced dressing station is the principal link between the regimental aid post and the field ambulance proper, and is

the pivot from which those responsible for the actual collection, i.e., the field ambulance bearers, work forward to the R.A.P's and from which casualties are evacuated back to the M.D.S. With cavalry, especially if moving fast, its establishment may be doubtful or hurried, but when a proper A.D.S. can be established it should be done in preference to only a collecting or car post where little medical assistance to the casualty can be given. A building or house should be selected in preference to establishment in the open, good approach roads are essential, and the place selected must be easily found by messengers, cars and others.

The M.D.S. is an enlarged and more elaborate edition of an A.D.S., better organized, with a hope of longer fixity of tenure, and is situated further back—two to four miles—the distance depending on circumstances.

At the main dressing station only the most urgent operations are performed, those that are absolutely necessary for the sake of the patient. It is better if cases can wait until they get to the better and more highly organized operating theatre of the C.C.S. ten to fifteen miles or more behind the front. All that is usually done is to revive patients, feed them and adjust dressings and then send them on by M.A.C. to the C.C.S.

The first place where official records of casualties are kept is at the M.D.S. Full and adequate records are most essential, and are demanded by G.H.Q. 3rd Echelon "A" Branch as well as "M" Branch. When time permits the private and Government property of the casualty is checked and labelled. Arms and ammunition are, when possible, handed over to the division here or at the A.D.S.

When in hostile country, especially if the enemy have not subscribed to the Geneva Convention, arrangements may have to be made for special protection for the A.D.S. and M.D.S. This is a matter for "G" to arrange, or the Brigadier in the case of an independent brigade.

Inter-communication.

This is of such importance to C.F.As that it is doubtful if they could have too many trained runners or messengers.

These with a C.F.A. should be provided with some form of transportation such as a motor-cycle or better still, the semi-track motor-cycle now under test by the R.A.S.C., if the test is satisfactory. Whether these messengers or D.Rs are to be R.A.S.C. or R.A.M.C. it matters little ; personally, I like the idea of R.A.M.C. messengers for forward area work as they would be found useful in other ways. These messengers should be picked men, physically fit, level headed, capable of reading a map and working out map co-ordinates. Twelve would not be too many for a C.F.A., and would be invaluable and of the greatest assistance in keeping touch and carrying information. The present allowance is only four motor-cycles and three push bikes, and two of the motor-cycles are for M.T. N.C.Os.

Sanitation.

A cavalry division has also a field hygiene section attached. This section consists of one officer and twenty-eight other ranks, and their principal equipment is a lorry disinfecter in which clothing, blankets and other articles can be purified. They act as sanitary police and inspectors and give help and advice to units as to how to erect and build field sanitary appliances, drain areas, and other work of a sanitary nature.

Carpenters', bricklayers' and tin-smith tools are carried. Twelve of the personnel are issued with push bikes, the remainder are carried in M.T. vehicles with their tools and equipment. Push bikes are quite useless and some form of motor transport should be provided in lieu. Motor-cycles instead of push bikes are suggested.

3rd or Casualty Clearing Echelon ; a Non-Divisional Echelon.

The next echelon of medical aid is the M.A.C. evacuating the M.D.S. to the C.C.S. Thence the casualty proceeds to the base by ambulance train, or if only a slight case, to a general hospital established as far forward as possible for the purpose of receiving those cases likely to be fit and able to return to their units in a short time.

The M.A.C. which consists of seventy-five cars divided into three sections is a non-divisional unit, but at times it might be necessary to attach a M.A.C. or a section to a cavalry division,

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 419

in this case it would come under the orders of the A.D.M.S., normally a M.A.C., or part is detailed to work with a cavalry division but does not come under its orders.

Subsequent Echelons.

By ambulance train, the casualty goes to a general hospital at a base and thence to a convalescent depot and duty, or by hospital ship to a hospital at home.

The medical echelons behind the M.D.S. are common to all formations, and not being specially cavalry, will not be elaborated here. Information regarding them is very clearly set forth in Chapter XXII, Field Service Regulations, Vol. 1, but it might be noted here that the medical organization of an army in the field for warfare in a civilized country, such as Europe, is divided into three zones which each over-lap one another a little.

*The A.D.M.S. with a Cavalry Division. **

When an operation is about to be undertaken, the A.D.M.S. is so informed by the staff—he consults with them as to the nature of the operations and the medical arrangements to be made. It will always be of great help if the medical authorities can be given, where possible, an indication by “G” of the possible number of casualties that may be expected, and where they are most likely to occur. This will help in determining the disposition of the medical units. He then drafts a paragraph embodying these arrangements for inclusion in either the divisional operation orders or the administrative instructions issued with these orders. Minute detail need not be gone into; just so much is embodied as everybody should know, such as (a) the site of the M.D.S.; (b) the area or roads on which the A.D.S. or the A.D.Ss, if a second is considered necessary, is or should be sited. With cavalry it may not be possible to fix a site for a M.D.S. or A.D.S. before movement commences, but the areas or roads along which the C.F.As

*The A.D.M.S of a Division, in addition to the Medical and Sanitary duties for which he is responsible and on which he advises the G.O.C., is also the officer Commanding the R.A.M.C. of the Division c.f. C.R.A.; C.R.E.; O.C.; R.A.S.C.

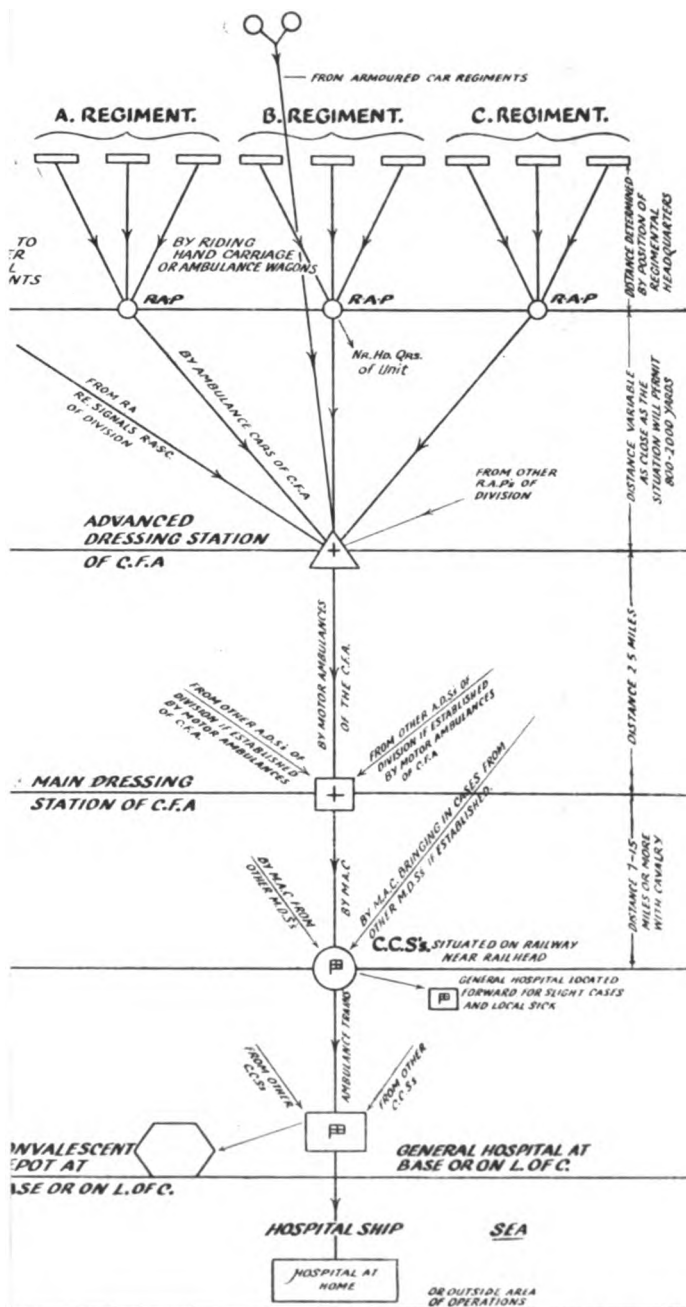
who have been detailed to form the M.D.S. and A.D.S. and collect casualties from the brigades will operate, should be clearly indicated. Or each brigade can be allotted a C.F.A. or portion of a C.F.A. leaving the O.C. of the C.F.A. concerned to work out his own salvation with brigade headquarters. With fast moving cavalry the man on the spot can often deal with things best.

When the A.D.M.S. has come to a definite decision with G. & A. as to how the medical units are to be disposed and employed, he issues his own orders in detail to the C.F.As under his command. These are written in the usual prescribed form for operation orders, or sent out in message form. Copies of these orders are sent to all his medical units, A.D.M.S. of formations on his flanks, the M.A.C. and at times it may be advisable to send them to brigades, R.A., R.E., Signals, Supplies and A.P.M., as well as copies for War Diary, Office, G. & Q. of his division.

The advisability of keeping a reserve must always be considered, don't open two M.D.Ss for the division if one will do, and one A.D.S. is better than two if one A.D.S. will cope with the work. This will give you a reserve to meet eventualities and simplify collection, and the M.A.C. will have only one place to empty instead of two or more.

The A.D.M.S. is always well advised if he calls a conference of his C.F.A. commanders before any big operation, in order that all details may be discussed and thoroughly thrashed out. If time permits this is best done before he issues his orders; every O.C. will then know the exact situation, what may be expected to arise and what is required of him. Difficult points can be smoothed over and an adhesive scheme of co-operation formulated. He can also ascertain at these conferences if his units have sufficient equipment, dressings, emergency rations, blankets, stretchers and splints for the operations contemplated, and issue his instructions accordingly.

In the case of an independent cavalry brigade the S.M.O. who is usually the O.C. of the C.F.A. attached, acts in the same way as if he were the A.D.M.S. of a division.



responds to the Operation Zone, "B" from the back area of the front and the country between that and the Hospital Areas at the Base of Communication, and "C" Zone the area occupied by Hospitals of Communication.

MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY 421

If help is required or contemplated, the A.D.M.S. applies to his own A.A. and Q.M.G.

Extra transport may be necessary where a cavalry force is operating in a hostile country and in advance of the main body, and where it is considered that casualties may have to be carried with the division until opportunity for evacuating them to the main army occurs, and at times extra personnel may also be required. Reserve bearers are supplied by "A" of division from troops in reserve ; extra transport by "Q" who may have to get it from higher formations. The A.D.M.S. must ask for these if he thinks he will require them, and should give as much notice as he can.

To quote from a lecture given by Major T. J. Mitchell, D.S.O., R.A.M.C., at the Staff College in March, 1926 :—

"Such in outline is the system of the evacuation of casualties from the battlefield. In theory it seems quite simple. To be a success in practice it requires close co-operation and sympathetic understanding between the Medical Service and those other Services in the Army upon which to a very large extent it is dependent."

This is very true. Sympathetic co-operation between the combatant and Medical Services working with cavalry is very essential.



“THE SPANISH CAVALRY”

Translated from an article by “X” in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for October, 1926.

BEFORE entering upon anything of the nature of a study of the organization and tactical employment of this arm of the Service, it may not be amiss to point out that the Spaniards have always been and remain to-day a nation of horsemen, since the habits ingrained in the people and bequeathed them by the Moorish cavalry, have been encouraged by the very nature of the country, which is cut up into a number of large properties, ill provided with roads, while such tracks as traverse them are often very rugged.

“The Doctrine of the Tactical Employment of all Arms,” issued in 1924 by the Spanish General Staff, has not failed to lay down the general principles to be observed in irregular or guerilla warfare, and one may easily realise how extraordinarily helpful a commander would find, in a country so difficult as Spain, a really useful cavalry, mobile, quick to manœuvre, and able to hold its own in all the operations of irregular warfare. The Spanish Command-in-Chief has borne all these considerations in mind ; it has not lost sight of the lessons of the latest fighting ; it has made a study of the most recent French regulations on the subject of the employment of cavalry ; but none the less it is particularly in the Spanish cavalry that the lessons drawn seem actually most remote from the principles followed in France.

In the Spanish cavalry there are thirty regiments—hussars, lancers and *chasseurs*—of which three are quartered in Morocco and twenty-seven are stationed in Spain ; and of these last it is proposed to group eighteen regiments by threes in cavalry

divisions, eight are to form the divisional cavalry of the sixteen infantry divisions, and one is to be incorporated in the formation of groups of Alpine Chasseurs.

Actually there are in Spain at the present time, five cavalry brigades, but this organization is likely to be modified, since the question, rather of armament than of the tactical employment of the arm, is just now under consideration, and the cry for economy may very likely retard the carrying out of such changes as are considered most desirable.

The "Doctrine" already referred to, lays down the composition of the cavalry divisions, and the possible constitution of cavalry corps is not lost sight of.

The infantry division disposes of one or two squadrons of cavalry, but so far there is no suggestion of the French "*groupe de reconnaissance*."

Since 1918, "Groups of Instruction" have been instituted in all three arms, infantry, cavalry and artillery; the cavalry group, stationed at Carabanchel Camp, near Madrid, contains three squadrons; like the other two groups it is specially recruited and officered, and its main duty is to carry out experiments in all new weapons and to test any suggested methods of cavalry action; while at the same time it is intended to be and serves as a model for other units, squadrons and groups.

Each regiment of cavalry normally consists of regimental staff and six squadrons, with, in addition, an ammunition column; four squadrons are armed with swords, one is armed with automatic weapons, while the sixth usually forms the depot squadron.

The squadrons armed with swords each contain four sections, each of three or four squads, while the squadron armed with automatic firearms is composed of two sections of light machine guns, each section having four guns; while there are in addition two sections of something of the nature of a Lewis-gun detachment. At the present time, however, the squadrons intended to be thus armed have no more than one or two of such guns as those last mentioned at disposal;

these are used merely for instructional purposes and are of different models, for as yet the authorities have not decided what special gun shall be adopted in the Army.

In the organization of the regiment as proposed, some people seem to question whether the inter-dependence of the squadrons armed with swords and those bearing firearms is likely to be sufficiently close. But it must be admitted that in peace time any evolution of this kind is necessarily very much slower in functioning than under the stress of war, while the nature of the country and the lessons of the operations in Morocco seem to discount any mounted action merely covered by fire, and what is looked for in the future is the employment of specially mobile mounted bodies manœuvring at great speed, covered by the fire of their sister unit.

Further, it is feared that were the authorities suddenly to change the whole organization of the cavalry, while issuing at the same time new and delicate arms of precision, the squadrons and regiments would be unable to obtain fully and quickly any real benefit from such instruction as might be imparted.

It is intended that the squadrons armed with fire weapons should follow as closely as possible the action of the cavalry armed with the sword, moving forward in combination with them when these commence dismounted action, for use in which each swordsman carries also a rifle and bayonet. No doubt by degrees an organization similar to the French will be arrived at, a general unification of squadrons, each having its Lewis guns ; it is largely a question of time and money.

It is worth noting that the machine guns are invariably carried on pack animals, the carriage and limber being impossible in the roadless country in Spain ; while those cavalymen who have served in Morocco recall with pride the many occasions on which they were able to bring up and fight their machine guns in battery, while the infantry, encumbered by their mule-train, were unable to come into action without many delays and serious difficulties.

Elementary training is carried out in the squadron, and some fifty recruits are grouped in one class under the orders of

a lieutenant-instructor, who has a subordinate staff of non-commissioned officers and old soldiers. The young Spanish recruit, who has generally been accustomed to horses from his boyhood, quickly trains into a thoroughly good cavalryman, and at the end of three months the recruits are able to work with their squadrons and regiments.

There are, however, two contingents of recruits annually and the demands made on the trained men are very numerous and arduous; then again the guards and other duties are also very heavy, so that squadrons and regiments are usually very much under effective strength. All arms are suffering greatly in efficiency from the lowness of the Army budget, and General Primo di Rivera is credited with intending seriously to cut down the establishment of units of the Army, and it is possible that modification in internal organization may herald important changes in the Army as a whole.

In principle the Spanish cavalry is mounted on horses bred in the country; many come from Andalusia, they are small in size and only of medium quality, but show signs of Arab blood. The remount department, under the direction of the Infanta Don Fernando, brother-in-law of the King, is organized practically identically as in France; it has stud-farms both in Spain and in Morocco, but horses are also purchased in France and England by a special Commission under the control of the Director of Remounts.

During the spring campaign of 1926, the Commissioners received orders to purchase young horses in Spain to the following numbers and at the prices stated, the purchase being spread over three years:—

1,455 saddle horses, 176 draught horses and 58 pack horses, the first and last at an average price of 1,450 pesetas* and the draught horses at an average price of 1,600 pesetas. In the event, however, of the desired number of suitable age being unobtainable, the Commission were authorised to buy good-looking two-year-olds at the following prices:—

* The peseta is worth, at the time of writing, about 3 francs 80 centimes.

850 pesetas for a saddle horse ;
1,000 pesetas for a pack horse ;
1,200 pesetas for a draught horse.

As purchases are completed, the young horses are distributed in groups among the various depots, and are later sent to regiments or schools where their training is taken in hand.

The Equitation School at Madrid is intended to complete the instruction which for some years past has been afforded to officers at the Valladolid School, and also to give a final polish to non-commissioned officers detached from their regiments and who it is intended shall be the future heads of riding schools in infantry regiments or at various staff centres.

Officers are encouraged to take part in all kinds of mounted competitions ; for some considerable time past the "Concours International" at St. Sebastian has enjoyed a high and well-merited reputation, and many of the best riders of foreign armies meet there to measure themselves with Spanish cavalrymen. During 1926 five captains of Spanish cavalry, specially selected and thoroughly well-mounted, took part in mounted competitions at Nice, Rome and Lisbon. Polo is in great favour among officers of the Spanish cavalry ; a recent Army Order lays down that every cavalry officer is in the future to be in possession of at least two trained polo ponies. The King, Alfonzo XIII, is himself, as is well known, an enthusiastic polo player and takes the greatest interest in polo matches, whether local or international.

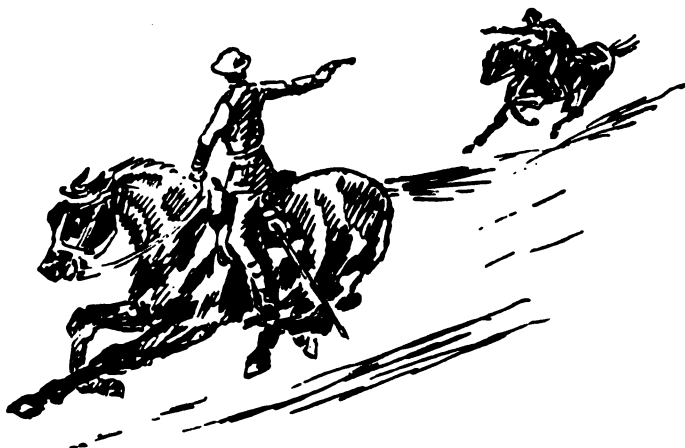
Very many officers also take advantage of the facilities afforded them of attending courses at the Cavalry School at Saumur, while others attend the Cavalry Schools in Italy, and there is much and frequent discussion as to the rival merits of these schools carried on by those who have passed through a course at either.

These have all had something to say in the evolution which has recently taken place, and which is to be noticed equally in matters of internal organization as in those affecting the tactics of cavalry. The Spanish cavalry is now passing through

a period of change, but the cavalry spirit is well maintained among those of the Spanish cavalry who have so recently been engaged on field service. The regiments of Chasseurs engaged in Morocco were re-inforced during the operations of 1925 by several squadrons belonging to regiments serving in Spain, and these rendered the most valuable service.

French officers who fought in Morocco recall with pride and pleasure the names of their Spanish comrades in arms, such as Colonel Dolla, recently promoted to general's rank, and who operated for so long a period in the country to the south-west of the Melilla sector ; Colonel Boloix, commanding the Taxdir Chasseurs at Larache ; Colonel Ponte, who replaced Colonel Dolla in command of the Alcantara Chasseurs about Dardius.

The recent collaboration between the French and the Spanish has assisted us to a better knowledge of our neighbours, a keener appreciation of their good qualities ; we rejoice in the success they have met with ; and feel sure that a friendly rivalry in arms can only lead to the increased and lasting advantage of the mounted arm.



*A NINE DAYS' TREK WITH A SQUADRON IN EGYPT**November, 1927*

Most Englishmen grumble about their horrible climate, and perhaps rightly so. No one, I think, could possibly grumble about the weather in Egypt during the autumn, and especially in the month of November. The cool evenings and the brilliant sunshine by day, with never a thought of rain, endear Egypt to the visitor or sojourner, if for no other reason than to enjoy its climate for these few weeks. The certainty of fine weather then, and the wish to eradicate myself from the ordinary hum drum of squadron training, prompted me to make this tour of nine days into the desert, and see if I could traverse nearly two hundred miles without undue strain to man or horse. That this was accomplished may be seen from the following account of the march.

There was also another consideration, and this was that the thought of mechanization (which carries in its train the knell of the Cavalry spirit) is gaining ground in every country, and people have completely forgotten to think of Cavalry in any other terms than those of fat horses and excessive expenditure.

The strength of my squadron was three Officers, Pat Bramwell, in my regiment, Gemmel from the 12th Lancers (who came in case the 12th did the march next year) and myself and seventy-one rank and file, with seventy-seven horses. I took eight remounts as well as I wished to be as strong as possible, and they all went through the strain well, except one (a five year old chestnut mare) who, owing to her conformation would never become a Troop Sergeant's favourite. She lost some condition but never missed her turn.

A week or two before starting I got into touch with the Air Force, and asked them if they could do anything to help our supplies. Squadron Leader Lindop, with his Army Co-operation Squadron of Bristol Fighters, readily acquiesced, putting two machines at our disposal for two mornings. These brought us out half rations of bread and meat, our mail and cigarettes for the men. A wonderful sense of friendship grew between these two aeroplanes and my squadron. They felt, when they were out in the desert, that these aeroplanes were the hands stretched out to help them should anything unforeseen occur, for I took no doctor or veterinary surgeon. The squadron, like ourselves, also appreciated the bread and meat—a welcome change from Bully and Biscuits!

I had not had the Squadron together this training season, as they had barely completed their troop training, so I made each Troop Leader personally responsible for all his equipment. Further, having organized two packs, I made them parade with their troops, in order to muscle up the pack horses, and train the pack leaders. Though the condition of the squadron was good, they were of course on the big side, and short of fast work; my experience in the war, however, taught me that horses in this condition only improve with slow work, and it mattered not how long the marches were, provided the pace was correct. The wrong pace can kill or thin a horse quicker than anything else I know, except bad water or a really cold wind.

On 23rd November, about 9 a.m. we started on our first march, which was to the Nile Barrage, some twenty-two miles from Abbassia. The first part of our journey lay through the town and suburbs of Cairo. The long paved streets, though slippery in places, caused no grief. The general stream of traffic, motor cars, motor buses, lorries, taxis, gharries, donkey carts, caravans of camels, to say nothing of herds of sheep and goats, all seemed to take an interest in us, and were sufficiently absorbing to relieve what would otherwise have been a very monotonous part of our journey.

On leaving Cairo the road through the cultivation is made of mud; it is as unattractive as the surrounding country and

its upkeep appeared a singularly inexpensive undertaking, as it is kept in order merely by throwing buckets of cold water over it. On our way we crossed over a bridge about which I asked the N.C.O's. to write a report.

Our bivouac at the Barrage was on the football ground which seemed far more suited for a camp than a ground on which to play any game! We put our lines down and groomed our horses while the light was good. During the latter part of stables I went off to try and find the "Gully Gully" man, or local conjuror, whom I thought would amuse the troops. He came and gave an excellent entertainment, in the middle of which my polo pony (which I had taken as a pack pony) suddenly got tied up in his head ropes and built-up ropes at the same time, and having broken his head collar, rejoiced at once in his freedom. The whole squadron, together with the local conjuror (who nobly rose to the occasion) were employed for the next few minutes in putting matters straight, which was soon accomplished, and we all settled down to enjoy the rest of his excellent performance.

Pat Bramwell and Gemmell, who were unavailable at the start, joined me in the evening bringing out an excellent dinner in their car. It is marvellous how long a hay box can keep things hot—the whole dinner might have been cooked on the spot, instead of having traversed some twenty odd miles. Dinner over, we soon retired to sleep under the trees, and I think Pat and Gemmell both looked forward to the next night when they would have their valises; I was, however, quite comfortable with my pack.

Our objective the next day was the village of Khatatba, to which I had previously sent by rail my forage and rations and a small advance party of my S.Q.M.S. and one cook.

By way of doing some military training *en route*, I decided to play the old fashioned game of "I spy," and so sent on a troop in advance with orders to hide singly or in pairs, stipulating that either part of them, or their horses, must be visible to anyone passing along the road, by which we were coming.

The Squadron moved one file along each side of the road

and were very much on the alert, as directly a man or horse is seen the well-known "I spy" is yelled by the individual who thinks he sees the man or horse—and if it is correct he scores one point for his troop. If the hidden man fails to be seen, he fires a round of blank—I then halt the Squadron and see whether this aid has succeeded in its help to find the hidden man, who a minute after his shot is fired, comes out of his lair, generally causing a good deal of amusement to the troops, as he has probably disguised himself as a cabbage or adopted some other wonderful camouflage. Directly the hidden man fires the shot he scores one point for his troop, and of course the troop with most points wins. This is an excellent game for teaching concealment, and the proper use of back ground, and it is wonderful how quickly a squadron can improve its powers of observation.

The road, after six or seven miles, stopped and we then took to the railway, which checked all our efforts at any other entertainment than trekking along it, because two canals ran parallel to it, one on either side. As we passed the swamps of Gatta our memories awakened to the wildfowl we had shot and the many friends we had made there—whilst behind us, hardly visible, were the Pyramids of Mena, giving us, as it were, a final send off! A great many, I am told, wondered whether they would ever see them again!

We halted under some shady trees for an hour in the middle of the day to water and feed, and it was during this time that our packs came up. The leaders had experienced slight trouble with them during the initial stages of this march, but thanks to the efforts of my squadron sergeant major they were now secure. A soldier if left alone would, I believe, carry a grand piano on his horse. This was the only time our packs fell out during the entire march.

Our small advance party at Khatatba had prepared as much as they could, and, as the men's dinners were ready, we lost no time in getting our lines down and grooming the horses.

For maintaining the line we now used a sack per troop, buried to a depth of about 3 feet 6 inches and filled with sand.

This was quite adequate and our line was always intact. We also tied the horses much closer together, and only with enough spare rope for them to hold their heads in a natural position. Too much room and too long a rope was found to result in kicks and rope galls.

Khatatba is a small village on the Railway, containing nothing of special interest, and so, after partaking of an excellent dinner of Bully Stew with enormous dumplings in it, nicknamed by the men "sinkers," we lay down to sleep in our valises which had come up by train about eight o'clock. Gemmell, Pat and myself could only negotiate about a third of a "sinker" each, but we heard next morning that one of my sergeants sunk five! More power to him as he proved himself just as stalwart a fighter in the late war as he appeared a champion consumer of "sinkers" in peace time and weighs no more!

Friday morning produced one of the best sunrises I have ever seen, and, breakfast over, we set our compasses and started at 9 a.m. over the desert towards Bir Hooker, some thirty-four miles off, which we hoped to reach about 4 p.m. The journey across the desert was all good going with very occasional patches of softish sand, slightly undulating in parts to relieve the monotony, but not hilly enough to check our progress. At times one could see for miles and miles and the further we got from the cultivation the clearer and pleasanter the atmosphere of the desert became. We put up quite a number of desert hares—they are smaller than the hares to which one is accustomed in England and slightly lighter in colour—and we also saw a few gazelle.

Camels seemed to wander where they pleased (apparently without anybody looking after them), but flocks of sheep or goats invariably produced a Bedouin in their neighbourhood. I was quite at a loss to understand how the desert supported these animals, as one could only see a very small amount of vegetation in proportion to the masses of sand, and I could only presume that if I had been an owner they would have preferred the latter and succumbed to sand colic!

The air in the desert at this time of the year is soft, clean and pure—I have never experienced anything like it anywhere else, and we could see what afterwards proved to be the smoke from the factory chimney of Bir Hooker when we were sixteen miles away. We watered and fed and reset our compasses at the well of Bir Victoria, which is about half way to Bir Hooker, and very thirsty our horses were, most of them drinking four buckets, and a good many a fifth. Before reaching Bir Hooker, the manager of the factory, Monsieur Raccaud, met us riding a young country-bred. He kindly guided us to our lines, where he had put up two arc lamps, one at either end. These lamps were of the greatest assistance. We quickly got settled down as our forage and rations (which had come by the light railway) were all ready on our arrival. Monsieur Raccaud put half his house at our disposal, and proved himself the most genial and hospitable host; his under-manager, too, Mr. Williams, never failed to help us in every possible way; nothing was ever too much trouble for either of them, and their kindness and patience knew no bounds.

The Wadi Natrum has a unique interest which would attract one under any circumstances, and after a long march through trackless desert, its charm was even greater. We all decided that evening after dinner, that none of us had ever experienced the same feelings before. We had marched over hot sand all day, and just as the sun was losing its power we saw below us water, vegetation, houses, monasteries and the factory—our outward journey's end. It almost seemed too good to be true, and so far, we had had no casualties, and had covered over eighty miles. Before retiring to bed, we learnt that there were some snipe and wildfowl close to our lines, so Pat and Gemmell made plans with a native shikari for their morning's shoot, which I was unable to attend as I had to reconnoitre the ground in order to select a suitable place on which the aeroplanes could land. Saturday morning saw us busy, Pat and Gemmell went off shooting whilst I found an advanced aerodrome before breakfast! Yet the sportsmen failed to bag anything all the morning!

I also loosed two pigeons with duplicate messages addressed to our Brigade, but they never arrived. There are so many hawks in this country, also other enemies in the shape of men with guns, who shoot at anything within range (and this distance or range is an extremely elastic one, especially with gentlemen of certain nationalities), that in this country a pigeon service is not a practical proposition. About 8.30 a.m. we spied the two aeroplanes, and excitement grew intense to know what stores they had with them. They flew around twice then one dropped two sacks, one of bread the other of meat, on to my aerodrome, and, *mirabile dictu*, both were perfectly edible after their severe bump! The secret is not to pack the sacks tightly—the sacks break but somehow or other their contents do not. The other aeroplane landed with Peter Wilson (The Royals) as passenger and brought us more bread and meat, our mails and a few odd trifles. Peter's pilot told me there had been a misunderstanding about the sign I had put out, and that is why the other aeroplane, which contained our Colonel (Colonel Godman) had not landed. The whole of the rest of Saturday morning was devoted to cleaning everything, and I made a most careful inspection of horses, men, arms, accoutrements and clothing. After lunch we witnessed the first two inter-troop football matches and subsequently were shown over the factory.

The factory contained very antiquated machinery but turned out about ten tons of sodium sulphate daily.

The process is interesting: the mud from the bottom of one of the lakes is mixed with water, filtered, heated and filtered again, finally the mixture is cooked for about five days, the water disappearing in vapour, and the pure sodium sulphate remaining is then encased in tins and sealed up. The factory runs night and day in two shifts, one of fourteen hours and the other of ten—the employees changing their hours once a month; their wages seemed extremely small, as they varied from ten piastres (two shillings) a day downwards.

After tea we paraded for a small night scheme for which the Squadron was divided into two, Lieutenant Gemmell commanding one half and Lieutenant Bramwell the other,

each being given a small position to occupy as part of an out-post line. The distance between them was only about five hundred yards. When each was in position I told Gemmell that his portion of the line was being relieved, and that he was to set to work and make plans for the capture of that part of the enemy's line directly opposite to him, warning him that it must be done by the use of cold steel, and not a shot must be fired. I also warned him that to do this he ought to know the position of Bramwell's sentries and where his picquets were. I then strolled over to Bramwell's side and ordered him to relieve his sentries every quarter of an hour, and placed umpires with each sentry, with orders that if the opposing force came close, and the sentry said he would fire, to use his discretion how many men he put out of action, and what information he would tell the luckier ones whose escape he had arranged. The night was extremely dark and waiting with the sentries produced quite an eerie feeling.

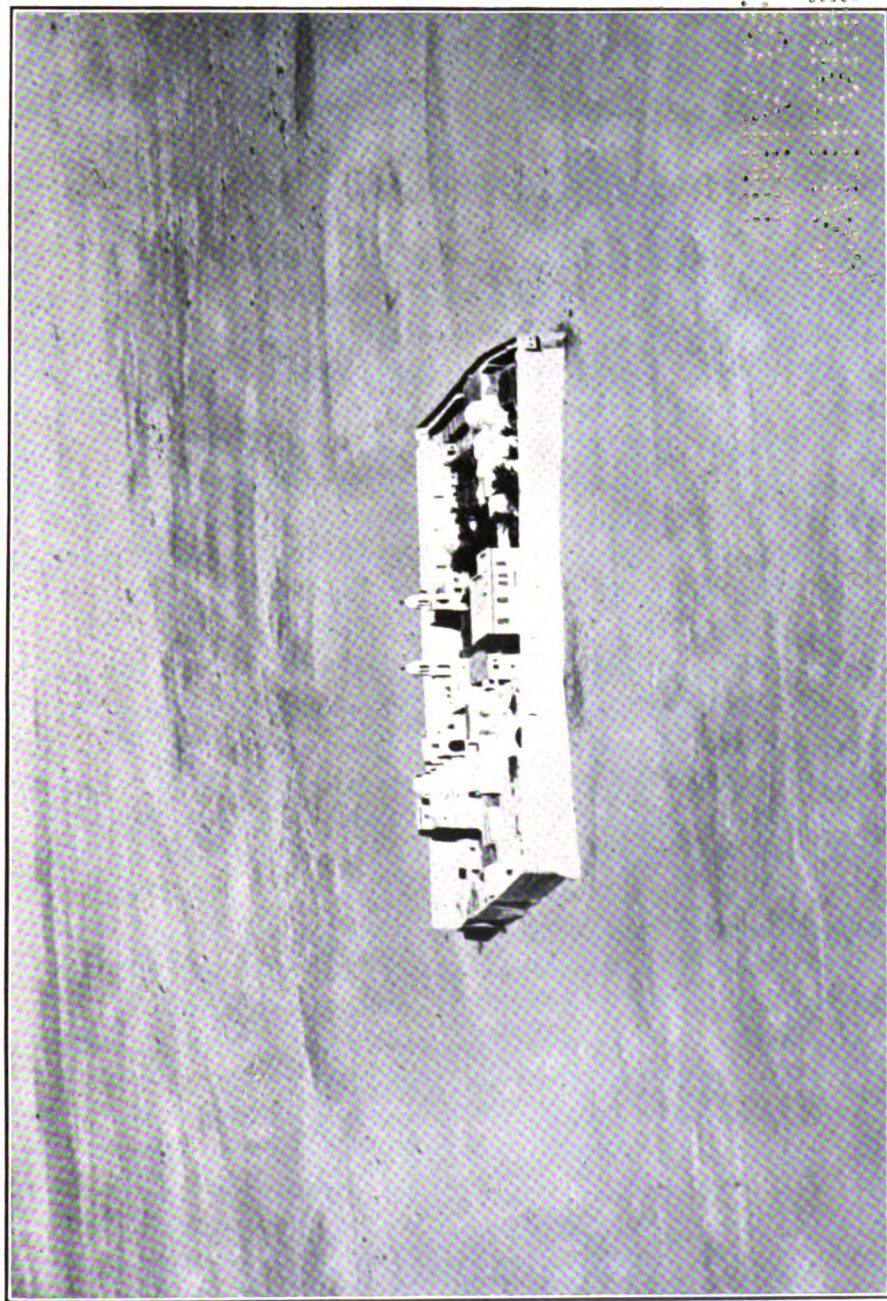
I waited with one sentry post and soon I discerned four forms, an enemy patrol. We thought they hadn't seen us, and hardly dared to breathe, but they had, as they dropped on the ground, and presently we heard a pebble roll, telling us they were moving somewhere to our left front. The two sentries then had a whispered conversation, but came to the conclusion they would let them alone, as from where the last sound came, they thought they would run up against the picquet. Their surmise was correct; a shout, a scuffle, followed by deathly silence. The picquet had done its job. One of the patrol who had been told to keep well behind appeared for a fraction of a second to disappear and, as we heard afterwards, to give a very accurate report. After a lapse of half an hour we could distinctly hear sounds away to our left, and suddenly these were followed by screams and hollas as Gemmell's attack swooped down. Whether it would have been successful or not was impossible to say, but we all learnt a great many lessons, and it was voted rather a good scheme, since it gave everybody something to do—even my S.Q.M.S. was dragged out to umpire !

Sunday morning saw Gemmell, Pat and myself in pursuit of the evasive snipe. As dawn broke we reached our ground with a shikari and two diminutive native boys as beaters. Our first drive produced a few snipe and we bagged two. As we were moving off to go to the next likely place a flock of teal was seen approaching. We all lay flat. On they came, our excitement growing more intense every second. One wide circle, but—yes, they are coming along again, on and on, nearer and nearer, lower and lower. They were so close together—ought one to pick one's bird or trust to luck? Up we jumped—bang, bang—six barrels and two miserable teal fell, and three more miserable officers cursed and swore. It seemed too easy—but yet there's a lot of air round a teal! I'm quite certain any umpire would have put the lot out of action!—unfortunately this was the real thing. A few more drives produced some snipe and a teal and we went back to breakfast with nine snipe and three teal in the bag.

Sunday afternoon was occupied in providing each man with a good hot bath and taking the N.C.O's. over the Coptic Monastery of Marchaios, but before I took them to it I gave them a short lecture about the history of the religions of Egypt, especially with regard to the Copts.

Who are the Copts? What is their origin?

To answer that question requires some acquaintance with the early history of the Christian Church in Egypt. It boasts an ancient and honourable ancestry. St. Mark sowed the seed, and the Coptic Patriarch of to-day is entitled to trace his spiritual pedigree back to that Apostle. The harvest ripened, so that a hundred years after St. Mark's death vast numbers of Egyptians were professing Christianity. Alexandria, second then only to Rome in size and learning, was rich in churches. Paganism, however, still flourished in Rome, and Egypt was at that epoch a province of the Roman Empire. The law required all Roman subjects to acknowledge the reigning Cæsar as a god. Refusal was construed as sedition and sedition was punishable with death. Nero took savage advantage of the law, and Darius and Diocletian, later Cæsars,



THE COPTIC MONASTERY OF ST. MARCHAIOS



followed suit. The Empire ran red with blood; Christianity survived the ordeal with difficulty, and Egypt did not escape. Her obstinate contumacy brought Diocletian to Alexandria. He ravaged the city, and carried fire and sword into the provinces, but Egypt still remained loyal to her faith. Constantine the Great mended matters by proclaiming Christianity to be the religion of the State and Egypt to be a diocese of the Empire. The Church, however, was divided over matters of dogma, Arius heading one party and Athanasius the other. Each appealed to Constantine, the reigning Cæsar, who left his decision to the ecclesiastical authority. At Nicea in A.D. 325, assembled a council of learned bishops who failed to discover a compromise. Other councils, e.g., that of Chalcedon, also failed. Slowly the quarrel became national rather than religious; Egypt and Syria hated the Greeks, who returned the compliment; disorder followed, and the devout fled to the desert to worship in peace. Monasticism became the fashion, and hermits and anchorites sought existence far from the haunts of man.

The weakness of the Persian and Byzantine empires left Egypt an easy victim to Islam and in A.D. 639, Amr advanced from Palestine into the valley of the Nile. The campaign was soon over and the Caliph became master of Egypt. Amr himself was a judicious and temperate governor, protecting the clergy and leaving the Christian congregations undisturbed. His successors, pressed by Arabia and Syria for larger tribute, were less forbearing.

The Copt, a corruption of the Greek word Aiguptios, as the Arabs called the Egyptian, was mercilessly taxed, until in despair he turned upon his oppressor. Then Egypt became a shambles. Between the years A.D. 725 and 763 no fewer than six bloody revolts took place. Resistance was to no purpose, so the Copts saved themselves by flight to remote places. There in monasteries that were almost fortresses they lived peaceably on the western shore of the Red Sea.

The miserable elements of a once peaceful community built hundreds of monasteries and convents, whilst others chose the inhospitable Sahara as a safer refuge. From Aswan to Natrum

the desert is still studded with the ruins of Christian fortresses. From this disorder the Copt never recovered, his numbers diminished and his language fell into disuse. When Bonaparte established himself in Cairo, in 1798, he found only three men who could converse in Coptic, such was the destruction wrought by Islam.

The Monastery of St. Marchaios contains thirty-two monks and no Arab is ever allowed inside. They even have a device for hauling their firewood over the battlements in return for which the monks throw bread. The old keep in the middle was possibly the most interesting part—its drawbridge is still in good preservation—in fact everything seemed ready to withstand an instant siege! They had enough corn in one of the chapels to last them for several months. Their bread is baked in the form of little round buns, and as they bake once a week it must get very stale. There is a beautiful stone lectern in their refectory—on which is a bible, which is read aloud by one of the monks at meal times. The table is made of stone, as is also a long bench on which they all sit to have their meals. I was not allowed to see any of their literature, but I believe the Monastery contains some very old manuscripts.

On Monday morning we had another visit from the air, a most welcome one, as besides fresh meat and bread, the aeroplanes brought cigarettes, of which we had been very short for two days. I had a parade in the morning when we did a field firing scheme over some excellent country which was of course unknown to all, after which we set to work with stables. Before lunch, each man had to wash his underclothing and socks, which were put out on the warm desert sand and were completely dry by evening stable time. In the afternoon we played the final of the inter-troop football, and generally got ready for Tuesday's long march.

Tuesday morning opened with a catastrophe. Just before it was light hordes and hordes of mosquitoes of immense size descended on our lines. Our men were safe as they were sleeping under mosquito nets. I had made the men sleep two together under one net, which was erected tentwise on their

two swords, which were in their scabbards and both pushed well down into the sand, thereby forming stays. As a result of this intrusion three horses got badly kicked and could not travel with us.

At 3 p.m. on Tuesday 30th November we started on the long march of sixty miles from Wadi Natrum to our camp close to the Mena Pyramids.

I went the entire way by compass, our pace being the same by night as it was by day. The night was a particularly dark one, the moon did not really help us much, and clouds prevented the use of stars. We carried a small feed for the horses and the men all had their water bottles filled, but I had arranged that three out of four of the bottles should be given to the horses when we halted, which we did about 10 p.m. for an hour. The night at that time had turned very cold and the wind which had been blowing across our front, now rose and for an hour was quite strong. When we resumed our march, I shuddered to think what might happen if the weather changed or a sand storm should descend on us; luckily neither occurred. It was a strange feeling riding along without being able to distinguish anything at all, mile after mile with one's eyes glued to the compass. Every now and again we could hear the quack-quack of wildfowl flying very high heading southwards, and once I surprised a small herd of gazelle, one of which in its flight came so close to me that if I had taken my foot out of the stirrup I think I could have kicked it. I increased the periods I had designated for our trotting owing to the cool atmosphere, and found that we could go for a full twenty minutes without making a horse sweat. In this manner we continued the march. About 1.30 a.m. the ground became rather bad, and as we could now quite distinctly see the lights of Cairo and were in a sheltered wadi, I decided to halt for two or three hours so that horses and men might rest. The squadron off-saddled in the shape of a square (I thought this the best formation in case a horse might get loose) and we were soon sitting down huddled together for warmth, each man holding his horse's head rope. I lay down to sleep and soon

dozed off, but after an hour I got up and took a walk round the squadron to see if the horses were lying down. I don't think I shall ever forget seeing the squadron on this occasion. Each horse was lying down in front of its rider, often with their noses on the men's laps; the men were all asleep, some of them with their heads almost on those of their horses. There were only five horses standing at this time. Before it was light I sounded Réveille and as we topped the crest of the first hill—there in front of us were the Pyramids! They appeared to be fairly close, so much so that some said it was a great pity that we had halted, and that we ought to have gone straight on into camp. The Pyramids were, however, much farther away than it seemed, and in fact it took us some four hours to reach them. I went some little distance out of my way to water the horses, which we accomplished by about 6.45 a.m., and seeing them drink (their first good drink since 12.30 p.m. the day before) well repaid the detour. After watering the horses we moved quietly towards Camp, which we reached just before 10 a.m.

We went very slowly during the last part of the journey, as the horses had drunk a great deal of water, and it is always very hot in the desert in the early morning at this time of the year before the wind gets up, and we had covered about sixty miles. Just before reaching camp, we were delighted at meeting Colonel Godman, who congratulated us, and who, with our Quartermaster, had prepared our camp. He had come out in his Ford car, and after negotiating a part of the desert, met us a few miles out. He now piloted us to our lines and so ended our long march.

Thursday morning saw the squadron doing its last march from Mena to Abbassia. Before moving off I congratulated all ranks on the splendid spirit they had shown during the last ten days, and on their good march discipline of the night before, when not a man had fallen out. My inspection of the squadron was eminently satisfactory, horses and men both looking well and ready for any eventuality, and their "turn out" was excellent, all their head ropes beautifully white, their leather work excellent, and everything in burnish.

We were met on our march to Abbassia by General Sir Peter Strickland, commanding the British Troops in Egypt.

He arrived just when the squadron had halted and were looking round their horses. He did us the honour of inspecting every man and horse, and told me we looked as if we had just turned out of barracks, the men, their saddles and accoutrements were so clean. On this march we again had no casualties except my Squadron Sergeant-Major's horse, who had a bruised sole. On our arrival in barracks we were met by Pat Bramwell, whom I had sent on in advance and who had got everything in readiness. Back again in barracks after our pleasant trek—we had covered altogether nearly two hundred miles in nine days. Not a sore back, not a rub, many friendships made and a host of happy memories; and—last but not least—our object attained!

NOTES

Carried on the Man:

Haversack; water bottle.

Bandolier, 10 rounds blank.

In haversack, unconsumed portion of day's ration and next morning's breakfast.

Water bottle, filled with water.

Carried on the Horse:

Saddle, sword, shoe case, rifle.

Saddle blanket, bed blanket.

Built up rope, head rope—both round horse's neck.

Line head rope, rolled and carried on "D" of rifle bucket.

Water bucket and surcingle pad on sword.

Two feed bags, one containing feed, the other containing small feed, and sand muzzle.

Wallet.—Near side, grooming kit, i.e., brush, comb, sponge, rubber, wisp and haynet.

Wallet.—Off side, change of washing, shaving, cleaning and washing kit.

Ground sheet, containing cardigan rolled over wallets.

Mess tin on rifle bucket.

Pack No. 1 :

Four lamps in two boxes ; one tin of paraffin oil in each box ; latrine screens, two sets ; six empty sacks for putting down lines ; four aeroplane strips (two on each side, inside lamp box) ; two shovels carried in shovel cases ; one hundred rounds of ball ammunition.

Pack No. 2 :

Six dixies (three on each side) ; tea, sugar and milk for the whole squadron ; four pick heads and helves ; six empty sacks, for putting down lines ; two brooms ; two shovels ; one hundred rounds of ball ammunition.

One man per troop carried a lock and chain for securing arms. Saddlers' tools were carried in a farrier's tool bag and saddlers clamp in a rifle bucket.

Aeroplane Equipment :

Aeroplane set consisting of nine strips, four of which were carried on the packs ; four poles carried in signal case ; ten message bags and string carried jointly in farrier's bags by Trumpeter and Squadron Leader's orderly.

N.B.—I always keep a N.C.O. to write messages, hold my horse and do odd jobs.

Two compasses a troop were taken.

Three maps a troop were taken.

N.C.O.'s. carried message books and pencils.

Sent by Train to Khataiba and thence to Wadi Natrum :

Two dismounted men (the S.Q.M.S. and a cook), also a native servant.

A second blanket for each man.

Mosquito nets and a football tied up in sacks (one sack per troop).

Six days' rations for men and horses.

Fuel ; tin of lamp oil ; axe.

Second wisp, one per man, carried in sacks.

Three officers' kits.

One table for use by the cooks.

One box of butcher's utensils.

Two boxes of horse shoes.

PROGRAMME OF MARCHES

			Miles
1st day	Abbassia to Barrage	distance (approx.)	22
2nd day	Barrage to Khatatba	„ „	28
3rd day	Khatatba to Wadi Natrum	„ „	34
4th day	Exercise and night scheme.		
5th day	Exercise and visit to Monastery.		
6th day	Tactical exercise—field firing	Distance	15
7th day	Wadi Natrum to Mena Pyramids	„	70
8th day			
9th day	Mena Pyramids to Abbassia	„	16
Total distance covered			185

METHOD OF MARCHING AS GROUND PERMITTED.

Walk 5 to 10 minutes ;
 Trot 10 to 15 minutes ;
 Walk 10 minutes ;
 Trot 10 to 15 minutes ;
 Walk 5 minutes and then halt 5 to 10
 minutes.

Average pace maintained was a little over 5 miles per hour.

One hour for water and feeding in the middle of the day, during which smoking, which was not permitted at other times, was allowed.

TOTAL CASUALTIES

One man sick—went in from Bir Hooker with fever.

Four horses, three from kicks due to mosquitos and one with a bruised sole.

No horse had to have his shoes removed during the entire march.

TROOPER WINKLE, R. van
or
THE LAST CAVALIER

By CORPORAL OF HORSE R. J. T. HILLS

38462578 Trooper Winkle, R. van, 22nd (Duchess of Kent's Own) Hussars, with a last reluctant sigh of awakening, sat up. As he did so, the dried leaves fell from him in showers, fell from head and shoulders, burying him yet to the waist-line. With his knuckles he rubbed the sleep from his eyes. Was it a thin tinkle of eerie laughter he heard? Maybe it was. Maybe 'twas but the trickle of the nearby brook. Maybe, too, it was the flicker of a russet-coloured jacket of gossamer his scarce opened eyes saw dive through the nodding heather. Perchance, tho', it was but an errant bunny seeking its warren.

"Lumme," remarked Winkle, "That was a blinkin' good flat, that was. I shan't half be for it, tho'. 'Vine Street' right away. Asleep on duty—neglect of ditto—loss of horse, arms and—Wait a bit, tho'—As you were the horse. Blowed if that isn't old Tarzan asleep as well."

A few yards from him, his flanks heaving under a leafy coverlet, was stretched a troop horse, fully saddled, fast asleep.

Trooper Winkle rose to his feet. It was a by no means easy job. Every joint creaked, and when at last he stood, he was far from erect. Wheezily he made his way to his horse's side, and, bending down, he jerked at the reins. As he jerked, bit and rein parted company; but the horse blinked a heavy eyelid. It was awake.

"Failing to keep his saddlery in repair" the man intoned.

"C'mon then. What about it?"

"Tarzan,"—Army Horse 26496 (D.54)—lumbered to its feet, and made its way unerringly to the small stream which lazed over its peaty bed, through the heather. Winkle accom-

panied it and stood, gazing down into the clear water. What he saw alarmed him. He had left Barracks in the morning, as dapper a young trooper as even the standards of his own crack corps could demand. He saw the reflection of an old, old man—dirty, unkempt, bearded; clothed in rumpled khaki, girt about with a mildewed leathern bandolier. "Tarzan" completed the picture.

The horse drank its fill. Winkle, full length in the heather, did likewise.

"Lor' " he muttered, "an' I always thought water was only good to wash in. Shan't do much good stopping here. Better go back and face the music. Field day must have been over long ago. That's the worst of getting sent off on a job by myself. What a crime sheet."

He tied up the broken bit rein, and "prepared to mount." Never had that simple cavalry operation appeared so difficult to him. The effort of getting foot to stirrup left him well-nigh breathless; the further strain of hoisting himself across the saddle exhausted him entirely. His beast, too, bowed dangerously at knees and hocks, until he feared it would lie down altogether.

They moved off, eventually. Down the Long Valley rode Winkle, till he struck the road leading past Rushmoor Arena, and thence to the main road into Aldershot. Not more than a hundred yards towards the Town had he gone, when his outraged mount shied—shied as violently as his obviously decrepit condition would allow—at a strange vehicle coming down the road towards him.

Winkle was familiar with tanks. He had seen them, first, in 1916, on the Somme. He had known them in all their vagaries, from "Mother" down to the tin milk cart "tanquettes." This, he guessed, must be a tank; but of a pattern outside his experience. Its superstructure was more like a Pullman car than a tank. Through the plate glass windows he saw the crew, at their ease in padded arm chairs, whilst between them, bearing a tray with glasses, moved a nimble-footed waiter, in a blue-and-white striped tail coat.

With a whirring of brakes and gears, the machine drew up, and disgorged its crew. Strange looking creatures. Soldiers by their khaki uniforms only. Goggle eyes, set in tadpole heads, blinked behind thick-lensed glasses. Wisps of sandy hair flowed scantily over hunched backs. Amusedly, consciously superior, they grouped themselves round the bewildered Winkle.

"Haw," remarked one who was evidently cast for the role of "First Soldier." "How distinctly odd, brethren; how monstrously quaint. Surely 'tis a soldier?"

"From an old print," quoth the Second Soldier. "Extremely rare. Tell me, comrade, do you do this for a wager, or is it but a quaint conceit of your own?"

The remainder of the strange crew clustered round man and horse, prodding questioning fingers, commenting in odd sounding but unmistakable English on the apparition in their midst. Winkle grew restive, annoyed and, finally, lost his temper.

"Now look here, you—er—arrangements," he roared, wheeling his aged steed violently, "I don't know what the devil you're driving at; but if you think you're going to take a rise out of me, you're on the wrong leg."

At his crisp words, and threatening gestures, the creatures skipped away on their spindly legs. At a distance of some paces, they continued their remarks, "Yah-ing" and wagging their fingers at their noses in the approved small boy manner. Thoroughly incensed, the old cavalryman swung right hand to left side, and, with a mighty wrench, dragged a well-rusted sword from its scabbard. Driving spurs to his protesting steed, he bore down upon the others. Nimbly they dashed up the steps into their vehicle, and slammed the door behind them. Winkle drew back his hand and hurled his sword at the front window of the tank. With a ringing blow the hilt struck the glass, and—bounced off twenty yards, singing back over Winkle's own head. It was his first experience of armour plate glass.

There was a whirr overhead. Glancing up, he saw a pair of neatly-putteed legs treading the air above him. The legs

descended, followed by the body to which they belonged, and made a safe landing in the road before him. The man was in khaki too. Strapped between his shoulders were a pair of wings, operated by a small motor. The wings were red, and bore in large black letters the legend "G.M.P."

Winkle breathed a sigh of relief; relief that he never in his wicked life had expected to feel at the sight of a military policeman. The Policeman, except for the wings, seemed almost human, and his voice, when he spoke, was of the old military order.

"Hi," said the Policeman, "what the 'ell's up here? An' what d'ye think you're doing?"

"'S'allright, Corporal" said Winkle, "Shan't give any trouble. You can shove me down on as many charges as you can get on a page of your notebook. 'Absent without,' for a start. P'raps you'll save time if you let it go as 'Conduct to the prej.' It'll save a lot of trouble."

The Policeman hoisted up his belt, settled his wings with a shrug of the shoulders, produced notebook and pencil—and prepared for business.

"What mob?" he queried, whetting an ambitious pencil.

"Twenty-second (Duchess of Kent's Own) Hussars," from Winkle in his best parade voice.

"Here, come off it. Don't land yourself further in than you are already. There ain't no such mob."

"What do you mean; ain't no such mob? I'm a good many things; but I'm neither drunk nor daft."

"Now look here, my man. You know as well as I do there's been no such things as Hussars this eighty-odd years. Where's your military history? 'S a matter of fact, my old grand dad used to say it was the disbanding of the Twenty-second broke his poor old Dad's heart. Twenty-second Hussars, my aunt. Nearest approach I have seen to cavalry in my time was up at Olympia in the Tournament pageant one year. They had to get stuffed horses from the Nat'ral History Museum at South Ken' for that."

He glanced sternly at the defaulting cavalier. "Absent

without leave ? Well, you would'nt think so. How long have you had to be absent to get a growth of whiskers like them ? ”

“ Eighty-odd years ? ” mumbled Winkle. “ Lor’ what a sleep. What a flat.—Look here, mate, don’t pull my leg. What’s the date,—pukka ookhum ? ”

“ Fif’ o’ the seventh, twenty-nine,” answered the Policeman.

“ Thank Heaven for that,” said Winkle, “ only a bit over a year after all. I thought I hadn’t quite had my sleep out. Then you *was* pulling my leg. Nineteen twenty-nine, eh ? ”

“ Nineteen twenty-nine be blowed. *Twenty* twenty-nine.”

“ A hundred-an-one-blinkin’-years. Strewth.” Winkle fell from the saddle in a dead faint.

* * * * *

He came to with a not unpleasant taste in his mouth. He was reclining under a tree by the roadside. The tank and its crew had disappeared. Tied to the fence nearby Tarzan was nibbling at the grass. Winkle’s head and shoulders were supported by the left arm of the Policeman. On the ground beside him was a tin box ; on its lid the words “ Simmonds and Co., Ltd., Brewers to His Majesty’s Army.” It contained a number of flat brown tablets stamped XX.

“ Sorry I’d run out o’ Bass tablets ” remarked the Policeman, sympathetically, and he placed a tablet on Winkle’s tongue. The pleasant taste was explained.

As the cavalryman regained strength, the two talked. Winkle had much to ask. He learned surprising things about military developments of the last century.

“ An’ what about the oddments I saw in that tank ? Are they specimens of England to-day ? ”

“ What them ? replied the other. “ Goo’ Lor’ no. They’re what they call synthetic soldiers. They hatch ’em out in a Government laboratory at Farnborough. That’s the fighting part of the Army. They’re not very important, really, becos’, y’see it’s not often it comes to a scrap. They generally settle it before the troops get to grips, between the heads.”

“ You mean the opposing generals have a duel ? ” asked Winkle.

"Sort of" said the Policeman. "They've got this arbitration stunt down to a fine art these days. Look at the business between us and Cochin China, last year. The League of Nations said we'd better 'poky die' for it, on a neutral ground. Old Field Marshall Wilkes met their chap—Chung Ling Su—at Geneva. Good game it was, too. They broadcast it. They won a 'leg' each and tied on the third throw. In the throw off our man threw three kings, an' the best Chung could do was 'one of each.' So of course they simply asked us 'cigars or nuts?' and called it a deal. "

"Hm," mused the Hussar. "But what I'm wondering is, what's going to happen to me?"

"Hanged if I know, mate. O' course, they'll put it down as desertion. You'll forfeit all your service, and have to finish your time. How, I don't know. You're a bit behind the times. There's just a chance they may transfer you to the Life Guards."

"Life Guards? What, haven't they disbanded them with the rest?"

"No, not exactly. They've turned them into a sort of a mounted branch of the Yeomen of the Guard, nice old men with long white whiskers. Just about your drop."

"An' what do they do, then?"

"Same old game, at Whitehall. Where they used to have the horses, they've got a couple of tall arm chairs—like an umpire has at a tennis match—with a ladder up each side. Every hour the relief climbs up one side, and the old sentry down the other."

With a loud groan "Tarzan," the last Troop Horse of the British Army, rolled over on his back and gave up the ghost.



A CHAT WITH A MUTINY VETERAN

I ALWAYS enjoyed a visit to the old Colonel.* Despite his eighty-five years of age he would talk away about the old days by the hour, and although his memory of recent events was rapidly failing, the happenings of the old Mutiny days were extremely vivid. On one occasion I sat and smoked while he rambled on, and armed with a note book and pencil, I jotted down the conversation.

“I can’t understand all this ragging in the mess that one hears of now-a-days. In my day we never had anything of the sort. We used to go in for theatricals. Why! I remember, even at the end of the Mutiny, marching on a flying column with five hackerie loads of theatrical properties. We very seldom sat in the anteroom after dinner; there was no billiard room in those days, and we were not allowed to smoke a pipe or cigar anywhere within the mess precincts, and so fellows used just to go off to their rooms. We had an old colonel living in the mess; his wife was at home in England; and he would never have allowed such a thing as ragging. His name was John Jones and he commanded the 1st Battalion (60th Rifles) at Delhi. He was known as ‘Jones the Avenger.’

“We were very short-handed as regards officers when I joined; the 3rd Battalion was raised and we sent about ten or a dozen subalterns home to England on promotion. The private soldiers were taught nothing in my day, the less they knew the better—we preferred them not to be able to read or write. They were armed with a rifle and bayonet and as long as they knew how to use them, that was all that was wanted.

“I remember one night, outside Delhi, my company was ordered to move down through the Metcalf Park, or compound

* The “Old Colonel” is Lt.-Colonel J. Hare, late 60th Rifles.

as it was called, and capture a building. Campbell, who commanded, formed us all up and told us not a sound was to be heard or word spoken until we were into the building. Half-way down I felt the Colour-Sergeant tap me on the arm, and looking over a wall, we saw the Sepoy picket sitting cooking their khana, their rifles piled. We could easily have captured the lot, but remembered our orders. On we went and right into the building, which we captured without a shot being fired.

"Yes, I knew Neville Chamberlain, a fine fellow he was, with any amount of dash. I remember one day we were on the Ridge at the Crows Nest. I was looking over on to the ground below. I saw him with his men on one side of a wall, and the other side was thick with Pandies. Chamberlain's men were not over keen to go over, so he just put his horse at the wall and went right into the middle of them, sword in hand, cutting them down. He was wounded. It wasn't much use but he wanted to clear them out and drive them back. We gave up doing this sort of thing later on, because we couldn't spare the men.

"I was at the review of the volunteers by the King in Edinburgh some years ago. All the veterans were formed up and the King rode down and shook hands with those he knew. Beside him rode his A.D.C's and amongst the smartest of them was old Lord Wemyss, sitting his horse like a young man of thirty, and he ninety years of age.

"I knew Harry Smith, and many good stories were told of him. One night, on his return from India, he was coming out of the opera when he met an old friend, and stopped to talk to him, but suddenly finding he had lost his wife, he turned back to look for her. At this moment up came the Duke of Wellington and shouted 'Hulloa, Harry, where are you off to?' 'I'm looking for my wife.' 'What! looking for your impedimenta again,' said the Duke. The joke was that in the Sutlej Campaign, when Harry Smith was engaged in winning the battle of Aliwal, the enemy captured all his baggage.

"One day, riding in the park, Sir Harry suddenly spied Orme, who had been wounded with a sword cut in the stomach

at the battle of Moodkee. 'Halloa Orme, how are your guts,' shouted Sir Harry, in front of all the ladies.

"I made my first trip to India just before the Crimea in the 'Lord Auckland,' 400 tons, a tub of a boat. We started in July, but were detained in Plymouth on account of an outbreak of cholera, and we did not reach India till February. The cholera was in London at the time and it broke out as soon as the ship had sailed. We had an awful time of it going down the Channel, as they couldn't tell who had cholera and who was only seasick. Some men were panic stricken and refused to attend to the sick. When they got into Plymouth, Sir Harry Smith, who was in command there, had them tried by court martial. They were sentenced to be flogged. All the troops on board were very young, including the O.C. troops. Sir Harry, who apparently having confirmed the court martial, came on board for the punishment parade, gave secret instructions to the O.C. Troops to come up to him and beg them off. This he accordingly did, when Sir Harry turned on him like a tiger, and said: 'I'll see you damned first.' Then after going through the form of thinking it over and changing his mind, he ordered the malefactors to be released.

"When my father went out to India it took him a year to reach his destination, six months in a sailing boat to Calcutta and six months going up the Ganges, being towed up by natives from six in the morning till six in the evening, making about eight miles a day. My father was born in 1809 and passed out first from Addiscombe into the H.E.I. Coy's Engineers, the future Lord Napier of Magdala being second. His voyage up the Ganges must have been just 100 years ago. He stayed a very short time in India, but on one occasion was engaged in repairing the fortifications of Delhi which I was to see knocked down some thirty years later.

"Yes, there was always a lot of game about. I remember on the march, before the Mutiny broke out, the men used to go out in squads with tentpegs, and when a hare was found they formed a circle round and closed in. There were hares and peacocks on the ridge at Delhi.

"When with a flying column at the end of the Mutiny, I saw a lot of Nilghi ridden down and sabred by Cureton's Multanis."

Raising a murderous looking brass weapon from the table by his side, the colonel continued :

"This old knuckle-duster, I took off a man in my company in Gosport. He was an assistant in the armourer's shop, and when had up in the orderly room for creating a disturbance, this was found on him. He had made it in the armourer's shop and had apparently been using it right and left. It is the only one I have ever seen. Captains of merchant ships always used to carry them in their pockets in old days.

"I first went out to India in 1854. I remember we heard of the battle of the Alma when we touched on the south coast of India to get provisions. It was very pleasant feeling one's way up the coast to Karachi, where we landed. There was no town there then—it was quite a small little place. Our journey up the Indus to Mooltan was delightful. We were on a "flat" towed along side of a steamer. We stopped every evening and also at the wood stations. Sometimes when we reached a wood station in the afternoon, the captain would say that he would stop there the night, and we used to land and go off and shoot. I remember one day doing this, and while we were shooting we saw the steamer moving off, and there was nothing for it but to try and follow it. We had our soldier servants with us, and after going for a bit it became almost dark and we came to a river, which we had to wade through up to our middles. We were very hungry, having eaten nothing since lunch so we made a fire and cooked a partridge. A little further on we heard a dog barking and knew that there must be a native village about. We were not very sure about approaching it, for the natives were none too friendly. However, we suddenly saw the light of the mast head and were able to make our way to the ship, which we did not reach till nearly morning. We found that, during our absence, the flat, on which we were living, had sunk, but by means of pumps had been refloated. They told us that the men had had a rare rat hunt; they came

up in hundreds as the flat sunk. The rats were a regular plague on board, and used to crawl over us at night. I had a terrier sleeping on my bed, but even this did not prevent them crawling over my face. I had often seen fellows come down to breakfast with their faces all scratched.

“When I got my company, in September, 1858, an old captain, L'Estrange, offered to exchange with me. He was in the 70th and had carried the Colours at Corunna fifty years previously. He was just going home to leave the service, and said it made no difference to him. They were all old captains in his regiment, and I would no doubt soon have got a majority. He wanted to do me a good turn and so made this offer. It seems odd when you come to think that is now over one hundred years since Corunna. Old L'Estrange must have been sixteen years of age when he carried the Colours and about sixty-six when he offered to exchange. Such things were quite common in the old purchase days.

“Brind, who was commanding a battery on the Ridge, came up one morning and found one of the natives changing the powder bags. He ordered him to be taken out and shot at once. A few minutes later the discharge of a rifle told that he was no more. Scarcely had the execution taken place, when his subaltern came up and asked for the man, and if anyone knew where he had got to. ‘I’ve just had him shot,’ he said, ‘I caught him tampering with the powder bags.’ ‘Good lord,’ said the subaltern, ‘I sent him up myself a few minutes ago to rearrange the bags.’ ‘Well, you had better keep that to yourself,’ said the captain, ‘we can’t bring him back to life again.’ What the man was sent to do was, to alter the charges with a view to cocking the muzzle up and getting a dropping fire.

“There was story, which I believe was true, of a sergeant of the guard who had a certain number of prisoners in his charge, due to be hanged next morning. He found himself one short, so he sent out a file to get him another. They brought one in all right, who made a great fuss and proclaimed his innocence. He would have been strung up all right if he had not been recognised at the last moment as one of the Colonel’s servants.

"The 9th Lancers kept a pack of English foxhounds (Jones was master). Barchard of the 20th N.I. took them on after the mutiny—he kept bagged jackals in a wire enclosure. Jones was left for dead on one occasion during the Mutiny, and, as every sowar galloped past him, he had a slash at him with his sword. I believe he had over thirty wounds when he was eventually picked up and found to be still alive. He always came regularly to the Delhi dinner and until quite recently was in charge of the Aldershot sewage farm, they called him 'Sewage Jones.'

"I met Barchard (Archdale Wilson's A.D.C.) the day the King was captured at Delhi, and he called out to me 'We've got the king.' I asked him if the General was pleased, he said 'No!' and to Hodson 'what the devil did you want to bring him in alive for.' Surely this was tantamount to an order which covered Hodson's killing the princes. I reminded Barchard of this at the Delhi dinner.

"Yes! there was any amount of loot. A prize committee was formed and everything collected. Part of the jewellery sold and the money divided amongst the troops, according to rank. I remember at lunch one day in the palace, Hodson said to Campbell 'I hear you have applied to be put on the prize committee, I should have thought you were too honest. It was a regular camp jest that the prize committee made a good thing out of it.

"We were in the palace the first night, the men of my company in the zenana. I found that the chilamchees were made of solid silver, the men were using them to wash in and had not the slightest idea. We found a huge chest, which on being opened, appeared to be full of copper coins. We told our native servants they could help themselves. You never heard such a shindy as they kicked up—I believe they found silver coins under the copper."

And so, the old Colonel rambled on. I could have sat for hours listening to him. He is still alive to-day and although he has been bedridden for the last ten years, he can still call to memory some of the old stories, but cannot concentrate for

any length of time. The annual Delhi dinner is a thing of the past, the Colonel is one of the few survivors still living. Personal touch with Mutiny veterans will very soon be an impossibility, but the stories of that great rebellion will never be forgotten.

I used to know Colonel Jones, of the 9th Lancers, who is mentioned above, when he was living near Aldershot. His face and neck were a mass of scars. One of his sons was in the 11th Hussars, but was killed at polo at Sialkote in 1895.

T. T. P.



A GOVERNMENT STUD FARM, IN THE DAYS OF THE COMPANY BAHADUR

By MAJOR THE HON. R. A. ADDINGTON, K.G.O. Light Cavalry

DURING the past few years, a great deal has been heard about horse breeding in India, its political and military importance, and the subject has been strongly supported in the Press. Further prominence has been given to the movement by the inception of the Imperial Delhi Horse Show, the formation of a stud book for India, and the allotment of money for C.B. races by the R.C.T.C. and the W.I.T.C.

It may come as a surprise to many to learn that all the arguments in favour of breeding remounts in India, that are now put forward, were urged with equal force more than a century and a quarter ago, and that the case was made out so strongly that Government were induced to take the matter up and to spend an immense sum of money upon it.

After the conclusion of the war with Hyder Ali in 1782, the miserable state of our cavalry led Lieutenant Henry Evans of the 6th Madras N.I. into the idea of breeding horses. With this end in view he collected some mares and bred from them, but had to leave them behind when he took the field in 1789 for the next war against Tippoo Sultaun. These mares and their foals were sold during their owner's absence on service, and thus were lost to him, but he was so impressed by the quality of the young stock and the possibilities of his venture, that on his return from the war in 1792, he took it up again. The cavalry was very much reduced in strength through loss of horses during the campaign, which gave him hope of making a success of the undertaking. But as Government was not prepared to take it over, he continued to breed at his own expense. In this he was encouraged by General Brathwaite (his former commanding officer), later C.-in-C. Madras, who obtained permission for him to carry on his experiments.

The plan he adopted was to place out mares with natives in the country around Rajmundry (about half-way between Madras and Calcutta). The first ten mares were picked up at the fair at Malligong, in the Deccan, and a similar number were acquired further to the northward. This beginning was made in the year 1795.

In February next year we find Government assisting Evans to form a nucleus by giving him twelve colts. Up to March, 1798, it appears that the Company provided thirty animals for him which were obtained from Bengal and the coast. At this date Government stepped in and took over management of the enterprise. The strength of the stud was fixed at 150 mares and their complement of stallions, and Evans was appointed Superintendent on a monthly salary of Pagodas 200* in addition to his pay of rank. The stud was located at Ganjam whither it had removed the previous year from Rajmundry.

In September, 1799, after the conclusion of the last Mysore War, certain temporary corps of cavalry were broken up and the mares from them were sent to the new stud. About this time the Superintendent built a good house for himself, and his salary was raised to Pagodas 300 a month, and we find a small guard of invalid soldiers being stationed as a protection for the stud, the authorized strength of which was increased at the same period to 500 mares and thirty-five stallions.

All through this and the following years we find stallions being collected. In spite of positive orders from England that only high-class Arabian entires were to be used, an application was made to the Directors to send out six English sires. Then six Gulf Arabs were procured in Calcutta. These had been specially selected in Persia by the British Envoy there, who at that time was Major Malcolm, afterwards General Sir John Malcolm, and Governor of Bombay. Later two English hunter stallions were acquired, but both these and the Persians were found unsatisfactory and were cast and drafted to the Bengal stud at Poosa, which was started about this time and later came under the direction of William Moorcroft. An idea of

* A pagoda equalled about $3\frac{1}{2}$ rupees.

the prices then ruling in India, may be gained from the fact that two Arabs bought about this time cost Rupees 1,461½ delivered at the stud.

The first produce of the stud of which we find any note, were two colts that were examined and favourably reported on in October, 1800. They were then drafted into the cavalry.

As the stud increased in importance troops up to a strength of one company were allotted for its protection. An allowance of Rs.6 per mare per month was made for maintenance. This was to cover bandages, country medicines, and other simple veterinary requirements.

The following figures give some idea of the very large amount of money that was being spent :

In the financial year 1798-9 ..	Pagodas 5,685
" " 1799-00 ..	" 9,334
" " 1800-1 ..	" 59,788

Early in 1802 some 200 more mares and stallions were sent to Ganjam. At this period the future of the stud looked very bright. Captain Montgomery, a well-known expert on horse-flesh of those times, writes in very high praise of it, and asserts that in a few years it will be able to supply all the remounts required by the cavalry.

The board of Directors continued their approval, but intimated that the stud was to be conducted economically, in view of the great success that was being achieved in remounting by purchase, and the opening up of new sources of supply, mainly in Kutch and to the northward, and later up the Persian Gulf. They asked for an annual report on the affairs of the stud, and accordingly a committee was appointed in July, 1802, whose report gives a very clear insight into the organization of the institution.

The president of this committee was Lieutenant-Colonel P. Maxwell, 19th Light Dragoons (who was killed next year charging with his regiment at the battle of Assaye). He was probably expressly appointed as, being a King's officer, he would have had nothing to do with remounting the Company's regiments.

The total expenses of the stud from February, 1798, to July, 1802, are stated to have been the immense sum of Pagodas 168,381. The stabling at the stud is reported to be most excellent, being all of brick, and the horses, some 750 in number, are referred to in the highest terms. The pastures are said to be well adapted for grazing. Guinea grass is being sown. The buildings and stock are valued at Pagodas 167,892, showing a loss to the Company to date of only Pagodas 489. We find that the staff resident at the stud, was five salutries or native horse doctors at Rs.21 a month, five farriers on Rs.16, three saddlers on Rs.10, and one writer on Rs.40.

As a mare cost Rs.6 a month to keep, a colt Rs.4 a month for his first year, Rs.9 a month for his second year, and Rs.10 a month for his third year, they reckoned by the following sum :

Brood mare : 1 year at Rs. 6 a month	..	72 Rs.
Colt : 1st year at Rs.4 a month	.. ..	48
2nd year at Rs.9	„	108
3rd year at Rs.10	„	120
<hr/>		
Total	.. ..	348
<hr/>		

that a remount fit for the ranks should cost Rs.348, which was very little more than the price at which a less suitable animal could be bought in the open market, and this took no account of the great advantage of retaining so much wealth within India, and of building up a source of supply not influenced by a state of war.

The committee then proceed to praise the management of the stud very highly and then pass on to consider the produce to be expected.

Up to the time we are speaking of it was the custom to mount cavalry entirely on stallions, though as we have seen this practice had been departed from in the case of the temporary corps. If this custom was adhered to, it meant that all the fillies produced by the stud were of no value as cavalry remounts. It was therefore recommended that the practice of gelding be introduced to allow of mares being used

in the ranks. Finally the committee recommend the continuance of Arabian stallions and Kutch mares in the stud as they consider this cross produced the best animal for cavalry purposes.

This report was adopted by Government in every particular, including the gelding of colts and the incorporation of mares into the regiments of cavalry.

The meagre results, coupled with the great expense of the stud, disclosed by this report, caused certain doubts to arise as to its efficacy, and from now onwards we find a growing body of opinion in favour of its abolition. A report was at once called for, showing the number of foals produced by each mare since her introduction into the stud.

Meanwhile the Superintendent was making great efforts to vindicate the usefulness of the stud. Seven new Arab stallions were bought from officers, the prices varying from Pagodas 250 to 500, and four or five more were selected from the ranks of the Madras Bodyguard. He imported grasses from abroad, and carrot seeds from Hyderabad. He suggested procuring thorough-bred mares from England, and increased his strength of mares at Ganjam to 574.

The best sire at the stud was an Arabian called "Legs," who had had a successful career on the turf. Some colts got by him were so fine that eight were reserved as stallions. They were superior to anything that could be obtained from Arabia. The Superintendent describes "Legs" as the best sire he ever saw.

As the produce of the stud increased it became necessary to build more accommodation for them. Had the Superintendent been content with temporary stabling it is probable that no comment would have been made, but he wanted 500 more brick stalls, costing another Rs.30,000. This brought forth adverse criticism on the expense, and a further demand for a clear statement of the amount of money spent to date, and the number of remounts furnished by the institution. It appears that from November, 1801, to January, 1803, more than 500 mares only produced 123 foals, and that the expense from February, 1798, to February, 1802, had been Pagodas 188,460,

The total expenses of the stud from February, 1798, to July, 1802, are stated to have been the immense sum of Pagodas 168,381. The stabling at the stud is reported to be most excellent, being all of brick, and the horses, some 750 in number, are referred to in the highest terms. The pastures are said to be well adapted for grazing. Guinea grass is being sown. The buildings and stock are valued at Pagodas 167,892, showing a loss to the Company to date of only Pagodas 489. We find that the staff resident at the stud, was five salutries or native horse doctors at Rs.21 a month, five farriers on Rs.16, three saddlers on Rs.10, and one writer on Rs.40.

As a mare cost Rs.6 a month to keep, a colt Rs.4 a month for his first year, Rs.9 a month for his second year, and Rs.10 a month for his third year, they reckoned by the following sum :

Brood mare : 1 year at Rs. 6 a month	..	72 Rs.
Colt : 1st year at Rs.4 a month	.. ..	48
2nd year at Rs.9	.. ..	108
3rd year at Rs.10	.. ..	120
		—
Total	.. ..	348
		—

that a remount fit for the ranks should cost Rs.348, which was very little more than the price at which a less suitable animal could be bought in the open market, and this took no account of the great advantage of retaining so much wealth within India, and of building up a source of supply not influenced by a state of war.

The committee then proceed to praise the management of the stud very highly and then pass on to consider the produce to be expected.

Up to the time we are speaking of it was the custom to mount cavalry entirely on stallions, though as we have seen this practice had been departed from in the case of the temporary corps. If this custom was adhered to, it meant that all the fillies produced by the stud were of no value as cavalry remounts. It was therefore recommended that the practice of gelding be introduced to allow of mares being used

in the ranks. Finally the committee recommend the continuance of Arabian stallions and Kutch mares in the stud as they consider this cross produced the best animal for cavalry purposes.

This report was adopted by Government in every particular, including the gelding of colts and the incorporation of mares into the regiments of cavalry.

The meagre results, coupled with the great expense of the stud, disclosed by this report, caused certain doubts to arise as to its efficacy, and from now onwards we find a growing body of opinion in favour of its abolition. A report was at once called for, showing the number of foals produced by each mare since her introduction into the stud.

Meanwhile the Superintendent was making great efforts to vindicate the usefulness of the stud. Seven new Arab stallions were bought from officers, the prices varying from Pagodas 250 to 500, and four or five more were selected from the ranks of the Madras Bodyguard. He imported grasses from abroad, and carrot seeds from Hyderabad. He suggested procuring thorough-bred mares from England, and increased his strength of mares at Ganjam to 574.

The best sire at the stud was an Arabian called "Legs," who had had a successful career on the turf. Some colts got by him were so fine that eight were reserved as stallions. They were superior to anything that could be obtained from Arabia. The Superintendent describes "Legs" as the best sire he ever saw.

As the produce of the stud increased it became necessary to build more accommodation for them. Had the Superintendent been content with temporary stabling it is probable that no comment would have been made, but he wanted 500 more brick stalls, costing another Rs.30,000. This brought forth adverse criticism on the expense, and a further demand for a clear statement of the amount of money spent to date, and the number of remounts furnished by the institution. It appears that from November, 1801, to January, 1803, more than 500 mares only produced 123 foals, and that the expense from February, 1798, to February, 1802, had been Pagodas 188,460,

and that the monthly cost was Pagodas 2,202. In spite of the size of these figures we find the extra stabling was authorized.

Several serious setbacks were received by the stud during these years. For instance, a ship loaded with grain to the value of more than Rs.5,000 destined for the use of the stud was lost at sea. Then again, a fine English stallion named "Comus" that had successfully survived the ordeal of the long voyage from England, broke his neck while being transhipped at Bombay. This was followed by the capture at sea of a ship bringing out another stallion from home.

During 1803 further criticism of the stud is found. A civilian member of the Military Board at Madras states in a memorandum that remounting by purchase is 200 per cent. cheaper than by breeding at the stud. That the Superintendent is paying about Pagodas 100 apiece too much for his Arab stallions. Also that from 1797 to August, 1803, the total expense of the establishment had been Pagodas 221,196, and so far only sixteen gelding colts had been produced, which were sold for about Pagodas 300 each. Against this opinion we must put that of the C.-in-C. who contradicts it, and upholds the usefulness of the stud.

The increase in mares above the number of 500 to which we have referred, was not approved of in England, so a reduction to that figure was ordered in 1803, the surplus mares being utilised to mount the escort to the family of Tippoo Sultaun who had been state prisoners at Vellore since his overthrow in 1799.

In July, 1804, we get a very good glimpse of the stud owing to a committee assembling to investigate its affairs and to report on twenty-nine colts bred there. This committee numbered amongst its members both the Q.M.G. and A.G. of the Madras Army. They reported that two colts which had been selected to be sent to England, as specimens of its stock, should be returned to the stud as sires, because from want of forage and water on the way down to Madras they had got into very poor condition. They selected four more colts as stallions for the stud. Of the remaining twenty-three geldings sixteen were to be sold and nine sent to cavalry as remounts.

They then inspected thirty horses selected from the remounts of the year as sires for the stud. Of these they only approved of one very powerful Persian. They found that the produce of C.B. stallions was very inferior. They then examined 244 C.B. mares, and twelve Arab mares purchased for the stud. They rejected fifty-four and approved the rest, remarking that brood mares should not be bought under three or over five years old, and should stand at least 14-3 hands high. They also recommend the purchase at a price of from 800 to 1,000 Pagodas each, of three Arabians imported by the Superintendent from Aleppo, and obtained with great difficulty by H.M. Consul at that place. Also of a stallion at Pagodas 1,000, that he got from the stable of the King of Persia. He is described as being "of very uncommon size, figure and bone, bred by the King of Persia, of a much esteemed race."

About this time the rising cost of grain rendered it necessary to increase the monthly maintenance allowance from Rs.6 per mare to Rs.8. The number of animals at Ganjam when this change was made was: stallions 82, brood mares 712, young stock under three years old 489. This marks the high-water mark of the establishment.

The produce from all these brood mares in the previous twelve months amounted only to 137, which appears to be a very poor percentage, but it must be noted that 200 of these had only just joined and must be subtracted from the total. Even so, the result is far from satisfactory.

The Superintendent now again put forward his plan of letting out approved mares to ryots on the zemindary system. A tentative consent was given by the authorities at Madras, pending sanction from England, allowing him to make a start in a small way by sending out his surplus mares.

In February, 1805, the stallion "Brass" was safely landed at Madras from England, shortly followed by another named "Champion." We find that the unfortunate animal "Brass" was 172 days on board ship. The daily scale of feed allowed by the Company was 12 lbs. of hay, and six quarts of oats, but the groom in charge thinking this insufficient, induced the

captain of the ship to make it up to 20 lbs. hay, and to add some bran and "pollard." The addition of these two stallions enabled the Superintendent to cast nine inferior Arabs.

In spite of the favourable reports made on the stud, we find in October, 1805, that the Directors in London were expressing doubts about the quality of the horses being produced there. Yet another committee was nominated to furnish a report. It consisted of Major-General Pater, an old Company's officer, as president, and two King's officers, Majors S. Cathcart, 19th Light Dragoons, and R. Travers, 22nd Light Dragoons, as members, and assembled at Ganjam on 13th May, 1806.

They report very favourably on the institution, and state the produce is well up to cavalry requirements. The interior economy is admirable, and general regularity prevailed through the whole department. They recommend seventy-eight mares, and eighteen stallions to be cast, and the acquisition of some more "English bony blood horses" and a few strong genuine Arabs. They approve of the Arab-Kutch cross for cavalry purposes.

Giving evidence before this committee the Superintendent ascribes the failure of the stud to date, to the fact that sufficient attention was not paid to the selection of brood mares.

The above report of this committee was submitted to the Madras Government who considered it in relation to other information on the same subject supplied by the Accounts Department. They then reviewed the whole position of the stud in a long appreciation which was sent to England. From this we gather that the cost of the stud from August, 1802, to August, 1806, was Pagodas 145,406. Against this they could only show Pagodas 52,870 for increase of stock, leaving a debit balance of Pagodas 92,536. The cause of failure is put down to the large number of old and barren mares that were supplied as brood mares. It appears that many had been subjected to an operation rendering them sterile, a practice that was prevalent in India in those days.

The young stock, what there was of it, received high praise. Those that had been castrated were reported inferior, so the

operation was prohibited. During twelve months in 1798-99 forty brood mares had produced twenty-four foals. Over a similar period in 1802-3, 504 mares gave 131 foals, and in 1805-6, 550 mares gave 183 foals. These results appear disappointing enough but mares raised in the stud and put to the horse gave much better returns, so that in time it was hoped, that when only stud-bred mares would be used there would be improvement. Working on these premises the estimated cost of a remount would be Pagodas 188. Even this was higher than the open market, but the points are again stressed of retaining the money within the country, of securing a source of supply unaffected by a state of war, and of the advantage of getting a better animal. Again they argue, if the stud were now to be abolished, all the money spent on it to date would be a dead loss.

The question of using mares in the cavalry again crops up. For some time to come all the fillies would be retained as brood mares, but after that, if they were not used as remounts or let out to the ryots on the zamindary plan, then the stud could not be conducted except at a loss. By August, 1806, the total number of stock at Ganjam was: stallions 41, mares 459, young stock 700. The result of these findings was that seventy-six mares and seventeen stallions were removed from the stud of which thirteen were drafted to cavalry regiments and the rest sold.

At this juncture the Superintendent obtained permission to send home four of his best colts in the hopes of disposing the Directors favourably towards the stud. They consisted of two bays by "Legs," one out of a Kutch mare and the other out of a Mawn mare. A grey by a Yorkshire hunter out of a Kattiawar mare and a nutmeg grey by a real Arab, "Toby," out of a good Kutch mare. Advantage was taken of the return to England of the 19th Light Dragoons to despatch the colts by the same ships. Syces from the stud accompanied them. They were fed on hay and grain from Bengal. Their grain was to be washed regularly in fresh water, and at least eight gallons of water was to be allowed to each colt daily.

These colts were adversely criticised on arrival in England and said to be "unfit for Cavalry and defective in every point."

During this year the staff at Ganjam was strengthened by the addition to it of the groom who had brought out one of the stallions, who was a very good man. Also the Veterinary Officer of 19th Light Dragoons was attached to the stud when that fine regiment left India.

The year 1807 saw the beginning of the end of the stud. In March the Acting Governor-General at Calcutta, Sir George Barlow, issued positive orders for the abolition of the studs both at Ganjam and Poosa. He had previously instituted minute enquiries into their state and cost. Presumably he was satisfied that they were unprofitable propositions. Lord W. Bentinck, who was Governor of Madras at the time, however, was favourably impressed by all he saw at the stud during a three days' visit. He strongly advised the retention of the establishment bringing out all the old arguments, and emphasizing the vast amount of public money that had already been sunk in the venture. Owing to his intervention and to certain difficulties that arose in the agency for buying remounts, the abolition was suspended pending a further reference to the Governor-General. Its retention was sanctioned and the stud continued its precarious existence.

Meanwhile orders were received from home to reduce the number of mares to 300 and to use the three English thoroughbred stallions as much as possible and gradually to eliminate the Arabian sire.

These reductions were duly carried out, but the reprieve was only temporary, for in April, 1808, the final orders for completely shutting down the stud, were issued. In doing this the efforts of the Superintendent to make it a success received special praise, couched in the highest terms.

The rest of the year was occupied in making arrangements for the disposal of the stock. The pick of them amounting to twenty-six stallions, 221 mares, fifty-seven fillies, and fifty colts were marched to Bengal in January, 1809. Some of these were sold at Calcutta or drafted to cavalry regiments, others

were sent to the Bengal stud farm at Poosa which seems to have escaped abolition. Others again were sold at Madras and Masulapatam, but the price at the former place we find to have averaged only about Pagodas 80 per animal. There still remained at Ganjam the very young animals that were not yet strong enough to march.

Next year the Bengal Government requested that a further lot of likely brood mares might be chosen from among the remaining fillies and sent to Poosa, which is curious considering the Superintendent there had made an unfavourable report on the first batch. Perhaps it was this that caused the Superintendent at Ganjam to make an offer to Government to buy the remaining stock at a valuation, lease his farm for a term of years and continue breeding on his own account. He asked for a loan to start with and mortgaged his farm as security.

This offer was accepted and he was about to start operations when he died quite suddenly at Ganjam on 16th August, 1810. He had spent the best part of his life and most of his money breeding horses which appears to have been a positive passion with him.

The question now arose what to do with the stock. Mr. W. Moorcroft, the Superintendent at Poosa, in spite of his previous unfavourable report, now thought that the mares would be useful to him and applied for them. Accordingly, 42 brood mares, 167 colts, 212 fillies, of the estimated value of Pagodas 21,386, were despatched to that institution on 26th January, 1811. With this the passing of the stud was complete, and it only remained to settle up the accounts which proved to be a matter of some difficulty.

In reviewing the whole subject the first point that strikes one is the almost universal praise accorded to the produce of the stud by the men on the spot. The only unfavourable comment is from England on the four colts sent home. This may perhaps be accounted for by the conjecture that they expected a type of horse as used in Europe for cavalry and fit to carry a dragoon. They may have failed to appreciate at their true value the lighter type which is suitable to the lighter

Eastern horseman. It is inexplicable why the Superintendent chose unsuitable stallions and mares, or if they were chosen for him, why he accepted them. He was fifty years ahead of his time in advocating the mounting of cavalry on mares and geldings. But his reckless extravagance must be taken as the main contributory cause of failure. Like many other good men he was carried away by too much zeal, and ended by killing his own show through his very enthusiasm. Had he been contented to go slow, there is no reason why he should not have founded as successful an industry as flourishes in the Punjaub to-day.

We must assign as another cause, too, the character of Sir G. Barlow, who first ordered the studs to be disbanded. He quarrelled and disagreed with everybody and everything during his tour of office. His transfer from Bengal to Madras probably saved the Poosa stud but brought downfall to that at Ganjam. This, too, just at a time when success seemed within reach and the initial mistakes were being remedied.

The following reference to the subject is culled from the "British Indian Military Repository," edited by Captain S. Parlbey, Bengal Army, about 1824, from an article discussing the remounting of the Bengal Artillery :

"But this is not all. I will go back to the days of the stud at Ganjam. If I am rightly informed, no such ruinous regulation existed there : but however it may have been, the fact is incontrovertible, that there are now horses here, the produce of that stud, which joined in 1810, and who still have their limbs like those of colts, notwithstanding the shocks and labour they must have undergone in a service of thirteen years in the guns. Will anyone assert that such examples can be adduced in the cattle sent from the stud nowadays ? It is really melancholy to contrast the present degenerate race with those of other days. It is not in reason to hope that they will last as long or do the work as well as their predecessors : they have not the bone, they have the substance for it."

“THE ARMoured CAR-BINIERS”

By “NOMAD.”

(Trooper Thomas Atkins hears that his regiment has been converted into an armoured car unit.)

They say there ain't no difference and we are still 'ussars
And lancers (in the Army List) equipped with armoured cars,
But now the order's come to us and clearly it appears
That 'enceforth we shall just be called the Armoured Car-biniers.

The Colonel's on the sick list with an apoplectic fit.
The Sergeant-Major's temper 'asn't modified a bit.
And the subalterns are swearin' that they'll call for volunteers
To shoot the bloke wot changed us into Armoured Car-biniers.

The Adjutant's a “dressy” bloke; 'is face a sight will be
When 'e meets a squadron dressed in overalls of dungaree.
The Ridin'-Master's orf 'is chump and calls us “pretty dears,”
For 'is job—and language—fails 'im in the Armoured Car-biniers.

The ridin'-school's a garidge and the forage-store a dump
And squadrons goes and draws their “feeds” from orf a petrol
pump
And they'll issue us with goggles to prevent the wind-swept tears
And with greatcoats made of leather for the Armoured Car-biniers.

The silver trumpets' notes are still and trumpeters forlorn
Are tryin' to blow “stables” on a blinkin' motor-'orn
And “honking” Fords salute the day like brazen chanticleers
To sound a new “revelly” for the Armoured Car-biniers.

With our tossin' plumes and pennons and our scarlet, blue and
gold,

Well, we made a pretty picture in the 'appy days of old,
But now a reek of petrol and a cloud of dust appears
And that's the bloomin' march-past of the Armoured Car-biniers.

It's a fate in store for many. It's the writin' on the wall,
But they'd get a better move on if they “mechanised” White'all,
And a bloke wot's fond of 'orscs and been soldierin' for years
Don't want to be a “shuvver” in the Armoured Car-biniers.

“NOMAD.”

CORRESPONDENCE

Re "*A Squadron on Its Own*," published in the CAVALRY
JOURNAL, April, 1927

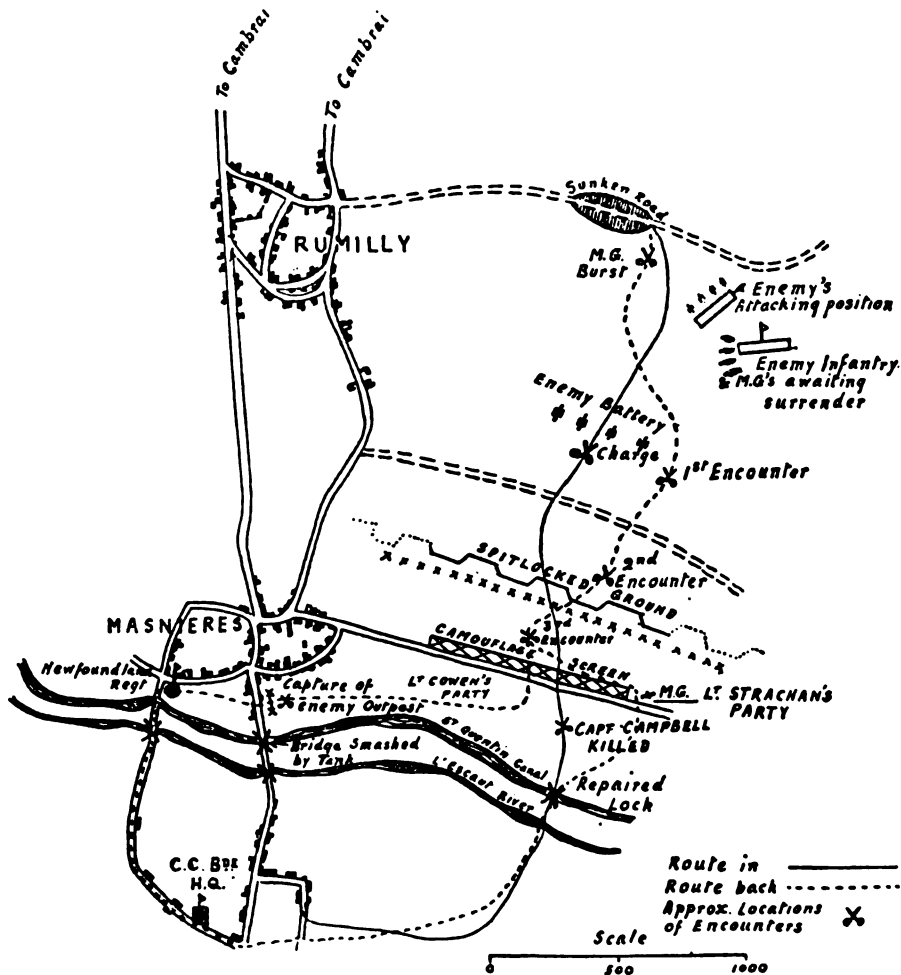
TO THE EDITOR CAVALRY JOURNAL,

SIR,—On my return from the Hawaiian Islands this week I found the April number of your very excellent JOURNAL awaiting me, and I read with particular interest Major Strachan's account, "*A Squadron on Its Own*," relating to the advance of "B" Squadron, Fort Garry Horse at the Battle of Cambrai, November, 1917.

As Major Strachan points out, he wishes to give the experiences of our Squadron for the benefit of young cavalry students, and as I became second in command of the Squadron on the death of Captain Campbell, perhaps I may be allowed to add a few words. Allow me to say that I offer these additional remarks with the same altruistic purpose as did the author of the original article, and without any desire for personal glorification.

The Fort Garry Horse left its camp at Caulincourt about 11.00 p.m. the night before the attack, riding under cover of darkness until daybreak found us near Gouzeaucourt. There we dismounted, fed and watered. Breakfast of a sort was scratched up for the men and we were ordered to stand by saddled, but with girths loosened, until further orders. After breakfast each troop officer explained to his men the mission to be accomplished in detail, as we had an exceptional lot of intelligent, well-trained and disciplined men in our regiment. About 9.30 a.m. our divisional commander, the late Major-General McAndrews, rode through our lines and talked over the orders with our Squadron officers, promising to me the horses of the commander of the 13th German Corps, known to be at Escadœuvres, if I captured the gentleman. General McAndrews laid this task upon me as he knew that I spoke German fluently.

About 11.00 a.m. the order came to mount and then we were off on an exciting ride through the old Hindenberg Line, following in most part the trail broken by the victorious tanks, coming to a halt in the outskirts of the village of Masnieres, where we dismounted, taking cover with stone walls and farm buildings for precarious shelter while we waited for the bridge to be repaired. We were under field artillery and machine gun fire—enemy snipers were still in Masnieres picking off our men—but Brig.-General Seely and his Brigade Major, Major Geoffrey Brooke, sat calmly on their horses issuing orders, scorning even



to put on their steel helmets. The composure of the senior officers had a marvellous effect on the men. I saw chaps whose bravery had been questioned calmly light cigarettes and start picking up the horses' hoofs to look for chance stones, while our farriers went down our lines as we huddled for protection against the walls, tightening a shoe wherever they found a loose one.

The word came that a tank had crashed through the bridge newly repaired by the engineers. We were in a quandary. Then some of the intelligence patrols brought to us the Mayor of Masnieres who had been hidden in a cellar for three years. Captain Campbell and myself questioned him in French and he told us of a lock across the canal which might be used for a bridge. While he was telling this to us the order arrived for the squadron to advance *via* this lock, which was already being put into passable shape by Major Walker of our Machine Gun Squadron.

Relieved to be moving again, we mounted, starting off in column of route, circling slightly S.E. of Masnieres into an open field, which was under a heavy fire of machine guns and field artillery shrapnel. We immediately formed an echelon of extended troop columns. There were a number of casualties in crossing the field—we waded or jumped the narrow river paralleling the canal and dismounted, leading our horses across the repaired lock with the assistance of the Advance Guard ("A" Squadron), the Machine Gun Squadron and some German Infantry recently captured. It seemed strange to see these prisoners giving us a leg up and salute as we mounted. Then we were off into the blue, drawing swords as soon as we had formed line of troop columns. Passing through the wire where we lost our gallant Captain Campbell, the Squadron went on, stopping only to cut a big camouflage screen and silence a machine gun at one end of it, and going through what appeared in the airplane photos to be completed trenches, but was really only spitlocked ground with stakes in front without any wire on them.

The visibility that day had been very low, due to fog,

causing many of our low flying planes to crash into the hills. Had they been able to see clearly and get reports back promptly our Infantry could have advanced to the Rumilly-Crevecour Line with little resistance.

We had travelled about three miles from the canal, going N.W., when on reaching the high ground we saw a battery of German F.A. in position, and with a cheer we galloped at them. They fired, doing no damage as we were travelling down grade at a good rate of speed. Two of the gunners stood at attention after firing their last shots and were run through with the swords of our men. The drivers tried to get away with their teams. One of our corporals cut the battery telephone wires. I called on the drivers in German to halt. In reply they kicked up their ponies—they were riding little Russian horses—and I stopped the two drivers of one team with my revolver, while our men attended to the other.

By this time our strength had been diminished to about sixty men and horses. My horse had two bullets in his flank and was beginning to weaken, when off to the right of us we saw a group of about 150 Germans with four machine guns lying on the ground in front of them. The Germans had their hands upraised in token of surrender. I told Lieutenant Strachan that I was going to take a section and send it back with those prisoners. Instead of allowing this he seized my reins as I started to give the order, directing me to keep going—a serious mistake which lost many lives, for the moment we had gone by, the Germans picked up their rifles and machine guns and started firing from our rear. We took shelter in a sunken road about half a mile further on and counted up our losses. The steady machine gun fire tried to find us—it was getting dark, windy and misty and after a hasty council we decided to hold the sunken road until it was dark enough to make our way back to Masnieres. We put out a picquet, started the two fit horses left with messengers to Regimental H.Q., and took what shelter we could, replying to the steady fire directed at us to prevent the Germans from enfilading our position. A prisoner was brought in by one of our picquets

and I examined him, finding that we were in the midst of an East Prussian Division that had entrained at 10.00 a.m. that morning, coming from easy duty in Russia.

As it grew darker the enemy rifle and machine gun fire increased in volume, causing more casualties, and another consultation was held. It was finally decided to try to regain our lines, so the horses were turned loose, hoping they would stampe and draw the enemy's fire, but they only moved slowly, stopping to feed on the grass until German bullets bowled them over. We started out of the sunken road about 4.30 p.m. I remember the time quite well—half an hour previously I had taken a shot at the church steeple at Rumilly with my prismatic compass to get our bearings before the darkness shut off all visibility. We had only gone a hundred yards when a machine gun burst swept us, leaving four of the men and myself wounded or dead, Lieutenant Strachan and the others going on another fifty yards before taking cover by lying down. Private Wolcott had been shot in the stomach; a bullet had gone through my neck, luckily not severing the jugular vein or windpipe, and tying it up with a large handkerchief, Wolcott and myself crawled to where the others were lying. I remember Corporal Henry putting iodine in my neck and bandaging Wolcott as we lay still for ten minutes, the Germans firing incessantly at the sunken road, but afraid to send a patrol out to try to locate us. We found out that the picquet which had previously been placed had not been recalled, but as it was too hazardous to go back to find it the Squadron went on towards Masnieres as quietly as possible in extended order. It was agreed that if we were challenged that I should reply in German, or if we heard suspicious noises to let me challenge in German and keep talking until we were close enough to use bayonets. Cautiously we advanced and our scheme worked to perfection, having three encounters in which we killed and wounded a number of the enemy, and with six prisoners, who were utilized to carry Private Wolcott, we went on toward Masnieres.

Direction was constantly being lost, and after each encounter I had difficulty in getting our party together. After passing

the camouflaged screen, where we had our encounter earlier in the day, I lost Lieutenant Strachan and the greater part of the remains of the Squadron completely.

Taking a look at the compass I kept going S.W., having nineteen men and four prisoners with me. I have no recollection of the crater, in which Lieutenant Strachan says the entire Squadron slept all night. What happened to him and his detachment after our separation I only know by hearsay from Private Swinford, who told me they had taken cover in shell holes until daybreak when he and Sergeant Willis climbed a roadside sign post and were able to lead their detachment home in the early morning.

My party kept going on. I had threatened the prisoners with instant death if they made a sound should we be challenged. The rain and wind increased and to the right a few faint lights became visible. Then we heard voices, and leaving my men I crawled forward to listen. At first it sounded like Scotchmen talking, but when I came closer I heard the East Prussian accent, and the voices complaining about being sent to the front without gas masks. Then I slipped and fell into the knife-rest fascines that were blocking the road they were guarding. I was caught in the wire and four Germans started towards me, so I commanded them very curtly (in German) to put down their arms and get me out of the wire. With amazing obedience the four rifles went to the ground and they sprang to help me. It was dark and they had no way of recognizing my uniform until I was free and able to cover them with the rifle I had taken from one of our dead men. As I pointed my bayonet at them they loosened their belts and bayonets with alacrity and raised their hands over their heads. I asked them where the British lines were and they pointed in the general direction. Then I asked if there were any other troops between the English and ourselves. When they said "no" I pretended to lunge with my bayonet, telling them that they lied. They swore they were telling the truth and that they were the outpost and that they had never fought against the English before. I threatened to kill them if we were chal-

lenged in German before we got to the English lines. Our men had joined me by this time and pulling the fascines aside the new prisoners led us forward until, to our great relief, an English voice challenged us a few minutes later. It was the outpost of the remains of the Newfoundland Regiment, which had suffered such terrible casualties in the late afternoon while crossing a sound bridge North of the one wrecked by the tank. With one of their officers acting as guide my nineteen men and eight prisoners picked our way over the dead which lay on the bridge like railway ties, and then we set out for the Canadian Brigade H.Q. A mounted officer of the Lord Strathcona's Horse found us along the road and led the way to Brig.-General Seely, reaching the farmhouse, where he was having a council with all the Brigade officers at 8.15 p.m., as the Brigade records will show, and not at three o'clock in the morning, as stated by Lieutenant Strachan.

After giving a verbal account to Brig.-General Seely I was sent off to the hospital as the wound in my neck was badly in need of attention, so that Lieutenant Strachan's report was the only official one made.

The chief lesson to be taken from our advance, which did not accomplish our original purpose, was that it could have been turned to advantage had Lieutenant Strachan's quoted axiom "circumstances alter cases" been adhered to. If a section of four men had gone in with the 150 prisoners and machine guns, and possibly another section sent in with the abandoned battery, we would have depleted the enemy's personnel and equipment, guaranteed the safety of our rear, and cleared an obstacle to possible following troops. Another lesson is that no officer or N.C.O. should be allowed in the field without being thoroughly grounded in compass reading and night marching; and last, but not least, the importance of making compulsory the learning of the important continental languages by officers and N.C.O's. who show any aptitude for them. But in summing it all up, the greatest satisfaction to me was to witness, under the most trying conditions, the sterling worth of our N.C.O's. and privates—to have been the commander

of men who were intelligent and resourceful in danger—and I am sure that to any officer the respect and confidence of such men is more than any outward decoration can ever be.

Yours, etc.,

WM. J. COWEN, M.C.

(*Late Capt. & Adjt. Fort Garry Horse*).

TO THE EDITOR, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—Colonel Fuller's interesting historical article in the April Number of the JOURNAL concludes with the words:

“Then at length came the Tank as we know it to day and it solved the problem which had been perplexing the mind of the soldier for over 3,000 years.”

As a mere dug-in, but one quite willing to accept any new invention in the hopes that it may make the world safe *from* democracy, I challenge that statement on the grounds that if Colonel Fuller's article tends to prove anything, it demonstrates unmistakeably that throughout the ages there have appeared innumerable inventions embodying the principle of the Tank, all of which have been discarded.

The Author maintains that this was due to imperfect means of propulsion; but surely those means were adequate for the particular epoch concerned. Some twenty-five years ago or perhaps more, I saw in an outhouse at the court of an Indian Native ruler, an armoured waggon to be drawn by, I think, two elephants, and near by the armour for the said elephants. In both cases the armour was sufficiently strong to afford protection to most of the lighter lethal weapons likely to be encountered a 100 years ago—the contrivance had not been used for probably fifty years or more. In its day this must have been a very formidable engine of war as, of course, the elephants could be used apart from the waggon, and as elephants can go practically anywhere a man can climb, the whole apparatus had a very wide use.

The reason these various contrivances were discarded was because they were rendered useless by the improvement of the projectile.

As far as can be ascertained the gun has always dominated armour ; twelve or less direct hits on a pre-war Dreadnought by guns of major calibre were deemed sufficient to put it out of action ; probably the same number would disable a Rodney.

So many virtues are claimed for the Tank that it is impossible to discuss them here, but I believe Colonel Fuller claims that they will de-brutalise warfare. There were more death casualties in the " Queen Mary " than occurred at Trafalgar. How encasing men in tin boxes is going to mitigate the horrors of war is not easy to see, however broad an aspect one takes of things. Personally I would prefer to kill my opponent face to face with a clean sword or bayonet thrust than mangle him inside a tank or half suffocate him out of view.

It so happens that for the moment, as in previous decades, armour in the form of the Tank is in the ascendant in land warfare, but the phase will pass, and it is suggested that a study of the Tank antidote would probably afford quite as good results as the designing of endless new models.

Had the study of anti-submarine devices received some of the attention lavished on submarines, the British Empire would have been saved many bottoms and millions of pounds.

Probably all this has been said before ; if so, I have not seen it.

Yours, etc.,

R. G.

TO THE EDITOR, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—Major Godwin-Austen's very interesting article on General Le Marchant is not strictly accurate, as regards the events in the Peninsular War. His Brigade consisted of the 5th Dragoon Guards and the 3rd and 4th Dragoons and not as stated, while his first opportunity of putting Lord Anglesey's precepts into practice had occurred long before Salamanca. On 11th April, 1812, when emerging from a defile near Llerena, he suddenly came on the flank of two brigades of French cavalry, who were manœuvring against Anson's Brigade. Without a moment's hesitation Le Marchant put himself at the

head of his leading regiment, the 5th Dragoon Guards, and charged straight into the French, rolled them up, and pursued them for nearly four miles, before they succeeded in taking shelter behind their infantry and guns. Anson's Brigade joined in the pursuit and Stapleton Cotton who commanded the Cavalry Division, followed in support with the 3rd and 4th Dragoons. This charge, which has never been surpassed by any exploit of British cavalry, ought not to be omitted in any account of Le Marchant's life. It will be observed that it was made entirely on his own initiative and not as the result of any direct order. No doubt the extraordinary success with which the brigade charged at Salamanca, was largely due to the confidence with which Le Marchant had inspired his men by his fearless leading at Llerena. Curiously enough, Ponsonby, of Waterloo fame, then Lieutenant-Colonel of the 5th Dragoon Guards, was temporarily in charge of Anson's Brigade at Llerena, so, altogether, it was a great day for my old regiment.

Yours, etc.,

R. L. POMEROY.

ROYAL MILITARY COLLEGE,

CAMBERLEY,

SURREY.

11th June, 1928.

TO THE EDITOR, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—I am most indebted to you for giving me the opportunity of reading Major Pomeroy's letter in regard to my article on Major-General Le Marchant.

Many of your readers must have noticed the discrepancy between the composition of the Heavy Brigade as given by myself and by Major-General Dalton in his article, "A Family Regiment in the Peninsular War," published in the same issue.

I had been in correspondence with General Dalton before the receipt of Major Pomeroy's letter and have to-day received from General Dalton a copy of a letter from Professor Sir Charles Oman who has been so generous as not only to clear up the point at issue—with the same decision as that given by Major

Pomeroy—but also to explain the reason for the discrepancy of which myself and Major-General Le Marchant's biographer (his son) are guilty. Sir Charles' letter is so interesting and informative that I feel confident you will wish to publish the following extract:—

“There is no doubt that Le Marchant's Heavy Brigade at Salamanca consisted of 3rd and 4th Dragoons and 5th Dragoon Guards. Their losses were:—

		<i>Killed.</i>		<i>Wounded.</i>		<i>Missing.</i>		<i>Total.</i>
		<i>Off.</i>	<i>Men.</i>	<i>Off.</i>	<i>Men.</i>	<i>Off.</i>	<i>Men.</i>	
3rd D.	..	1	6	—	11	—	2	20
4th D.	..	—	7	1	21	—	—	29
5th D.G.	..	—	9	2	42	—	3	56

“The other British cavalry regiments present at Salamanca were 11th, 12th, 14th, 16th Light Dragoons (also 3 K.G. Legion regiments).

“At this time, Hill, absent in Estremadura, had the rest of the British cavalry with him, viz.: one Heavy Brigade, 1st Royals and 3rd and 4th Dragoon Guards, one Light Brigade, 9th and 13th L.D. and 2nd Hussars of the German Legion.

“The 1st D., 3rd and 4th D.G. and 13th and 9th L.D. therefore could only have the Peninsula Medal *without* Salamanca clasp. The other seven regiments had the clasp. The confusion is caused by the fact that the 4th Dragoons and 4th Dragoon Guards changed their brigades in the Spring, the 4th Dragoons going to Le Marchant while the 4th Dragoon Guards were sent to Slade's brigade in Hill's Army. 12th Light Dragoons *ought* to be credited with Salamanca. Though little engaged they lost an officer and three men in the action.”

I was, of course, well aware of Le Marchant's magnificent leadership at Llerena (Usagre) and my omission to mention it, though it may seem inexcusable, was solely due to lack of space of which, in fact, I exceeded my apportionment. This consideration compelled me too to refrain from including that delightful incident of Le Marchant, from sheer *joie de vivre*,

scattering enemy cavalry across whom he came whilst out exercising one morning.

My article was written with the object of reviving interest in this fascinating personality, and I must confess to elation at having persuaded Major Pomeroy to contribute his absorbingly interesting account of Llerena which, as he says, was a great day for his gallant Regiment, of which he is the distinguished historian.

Yours, etc.,

A. R. GODWIN-AUSTEN.



NOTES

CAVALRY RELIEFS

The following Cavalry Reliefs, which are due to take place during the year 1928-29, are announced in Army Orders :

<i>Unit</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>To</i>
The Queen's Bays ..	Colchester	Tidworth.
5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards	India ..	York.
7th Hussars	Tidworth ..	Colchester.
10th Hussars	Hounslow	Egypt.
14th/20th Hussars	York ..	Aldershot.
15th/19th Hussars	Egypt ..	India (Risalpur).
17th/21st Lancers	Aldershot	Hounslow.

NEW SUBSCRIBERS FOR 1928

The undermentioned have become subscribers since the April number was published :

The O.C. "B" Cavalry Brigade Signal Troop.
 Major Herbert E. E. Pankhurst, late 5th Dragoon Guards.
 Lieutenant F. J. S. Whetstone, 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.
 Lieutenant H. B. Scott, The Royal Dragoons.
 Lieutenant J. C. Vernon-Miller, 8th Hussars.
 Lieutenant E. G. Moon, 15th/19th Hussars.
 Lieutenant G. A. E. Peyton, 15th/19th Hussars.
 Major Hon. R. E. O. Long, V.D., Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant E. W. Grazebrook, Warwickshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant S. P. L. Groves, Cheshire Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant J. Reynolds, Duke of Lancaster's Yeomanry.
 Lieutenant A. E. Galloway, The Royal Scots.
 Colonel H. A. Croll, V.D., 12th Manitoba Dragoons.
 Colonel Nikola Christitch, Army Staff, Serbia.

New Subscribers	14
" " published in April	42
	—
Total (1928)	56
	—

We have received the following letter from the National Pony Society :

Breeders who belong to the National Pony Society now in its thirty-fifth year have undoubtedly been very great benefactors for many years to Polo players. The cry is always the same : " Not enough good ponies to go round, so up go the prices." The scarcity would be still greater were it not for the efforts of the Society. The benefits derived by Polo players is not confined to those in England, but the same applies abroad.

Playing ponies and stallions bred by members of the Society have, in considerable numbers, been exported to America, Argentine, India, Africa and the Continent, and have improved the local breed of polo ponies all over the world. And this has been going on for the last twenty-five years.

The Society is very well organized so far as its shows are concerned, and the encouragement it gives to Polo Pony Classes in local and other shows, and by helping its members who own stallions to get Premiums and to travel their stallions in different districts. But they have always suffered under two very great disadvantages ; first, the want of sufficient funds to do what they require ; and second, want of interest and support from active polo players.

Naturally, every polo player who buys a green pony would prefer to buy one whose dam has been a good polo pony ; he knows very well that the pony most probably will inherit the dam's temperament and will in most cases take to the game naturally, and be far less trouble to train than the produce of a dam and sire who have both been bred from racing stock. I am all in favour of thoroughbred blood on the sire's side ; but then the purchaser has the advantage of knowing that the sire, as a rule used by knowledgeable breeders, has a good record as regards coming from a temperate and stout strain. Certain of the best strains of English racehorses are avoided as sires by breeders, because they know that they are apt to transmit to their progeny their own excitable disposition, which renders them unlikely to make temperate polo ponies.

Breeders have another complaint, and that is that they lose trace of their ponies, and do not know what becomes of them. Instances have occurred where breeders have attended big polo matches, and have recognised ponies playing that they have bred, playing under another name. Very likely the owner does not even know the proper name of his pony, but is playing him under the name that the player bought him by.

Breeders have very great difficulty in disposing of their young ponies at remunerative prices because their market is chiefly confined to professional trainers of young ponies, i.e., dealers, who keep men specially for training purposes. Polo players are far too apt to buy the finished article ; there are not enough of them who are willing to take the trouble, or indeed competent, to train a young pony. This is, of course, difficult to avoid, but we members of the Society are very anxious to bring the breeder more in touch with the player, and with that object the following steps are being taken.

First, the following letter was sent out to every member of the Society interested in the breeding of polo ponies :

DEAR SIR,

It is proposed to establish a Register of four year old ponies for sale by members of the Society in order that every assistance may be given to notify potential purchasers, both in this country and other countries of Europe, as well as the Dominions.

If, therefore, you have any ponies you wish to sell, I shall be much obliged if you will fill in particulars on the enclosed circular form and return to me at your earliest convenience.

Yours faithfully,

F. H. BADGE,

Secretary,

The National Pony Society,

12, Hanover Square, London, W.1.

PARTICULARS OF PONY (OR PONIES) I WISH TO SELL :

Name :

Sex of Pony :

Year foaled :

Height :

Colour and Markings :

Sire :

Dam :

Up to what weight :

If broken to ride :

If broken to stick and ball or played :

Price asked :

Name and address of seller :

A very good response was received, and there is now a Register kept by the Society of nearly all the four year old ponies for sale owned by members of the Society.

In future, the Register will contain the names and breeding of ponies up to five years old.

We are taking steps to communicate this information to the Sporting Press of Africa, America, Argentine, Australia, Austria, Egypt, England, Ireland, France, Germany and Italy, and to send the Polo Clubs in England and the Continent cards containing this information, which can be hung up in their Club Houses.

The Special Committee appointed by the Council decided to invite Regimental Polo Clubs, Cavalry Regiments, etc., to join the Society as a Regiment with the following privileges :

- (a) Any serving Officer of the Regiment to be allowed full members' privileges, including members' fees for the Stud Book and Show.
- (b) One copy of the current issue of the Stud Book and Supplement.

- (c) One ticket for the London Show.
- (d) Copies of all cards and pamphlets issued by the Society.
Annual Subscription, £2 2s. 0d.

The Country Polo Clubs to be invited to join the Society at a subscription of £2 2s. 0d. with the following privileges :

- (a) One copy of the current issue of the Stud Book and Supplement.
- (b) One ticket for the London Show.
- (c) Copies of all cards and pamphlets issued by the Society.

The Committee had a discussion as to whether, considering the fact such big animals are now being played at polo, the breeders belonging to the Society are proceeding on the correct lines in order to supply the player with the right type of pony.

The Committee were unanimously of opinion that " The principles now being followed by the principal breeders are correct, viz. :

Bred from polo playing stock on the dam's side and by as nearly thoroughbred blood as possible on the sire side. Paying particular attention to a known stout and temperate strain, and of small size in family.

The height to aim at not to exceed 15.0 hands.

I am now setting to work to obtain a census of the ponies playing in London this season, so as to trace as many ponies as possible which have been bred by members of the Society.

It is very much to be hoped that these steps will result in more interest and financial support of the Society, and that it will have the result of bringing the buyer more in touch with the breeder.

E. D. MILLER,
Lieut.-Colonel.



*REGIMENTAL ITEMS OF INTEREST**4th/7th Dragoon Guards*

LAHORE HORSE SHOW,
21st December, 1927

Open Jumping.

Winner	S.S.M. R. I. Molloy	Combination
Third	Lieut.-Colonel E. M. Dorman	You're-a-one

In the Lightweight Polo Pony Class, Mr. Dixon took first prize with Kalula.

Captain Aizlewood's Rebel won the Ladies' Hacks and was Best Horse in the Show.

IMPERIAL DELHI HORSE SHOW

February 13th, 14th, 16th and 18th, 1928

In the Best Troop Horse Class, S.S.M. R. I. Molloy was first with Red Lady. This mare won the same class last year.

In the Jumping (British Other Ranks), S.S.M. R. I. Molloy was third on Phantom.

In the Open Jumping, the following were the results :

Winner	S.S.M. R. I. Molloy	Combination
Third	Lieut.-Colonel E. M. Dorman	You're-a-one

S.S.M. R. I. Molloy was also Fourth on Phantom.

The winner had half a fault.

In the Polo Pony Classes, Captain Aizlewood won two first prizes with his grey pony Rebel.

Mr. Dixon got second with Kalula, and Captain Aizlewood third prize with Rebel in a special class for a cup presented by the Maharajah of Bhopal.

The Regiment gave a Musical Ride Display in pre-war uniform on the three days of the Show.

SIALKOT HORSE SHOW,
March 13th, 1928

“A” and “C” Squadrons were first and second respectively in the Section Turn Out Class.

In the N.C.O's Jumping, S.S.M. R. I. Molloy was first, second and third with Combination, Phantom and Flickers, in this order.

The Open Jumping was won by Lieutenant-Colonel E. M. Dorman's You're-a-one with Mr. Williams' Gang Warily third.

In the “Likely to make” Polo Pony Class, Mr. J. F. Sanderson's Gamecock got first prize.

Mr. Byron got a second prize with Starlight in the Lightweight Pony Class, and Mr. Dixon two third places with Kalula and Hors de Combat in the Lightweight and Heavyweight Classes respectively.

Mrs. L. Williams won the Ladies' Hacks, and Open Hacks with her horse Honest John.

GREAT NORTH OF INDIA HORSE SHOW, RAWALPINDI,
29th and 30th March, 1928

In the N.C.O's Jumping, the Regiment gained all three places.

Winner	Corporal Thompson	Top 'Ole
Second	Corporal Brown	Gas Bag
Third	S.S.M. R. I. Molloy	Phantom

The Regiment gained first and second places in this class last year.

In the Troop Horse (British Units) Class, S.S.M. R. I. Molloy won with Red Lady.

POLO

In the 12th Lancer Cup at Sialkot in November, 1927, the Regiment entered four teams.

“A” and “B” Teams met in the final and “B” Team receiving $5\frac{1}{2}$ goals, won $7\frac{1}{2}$ —7.

“C” Team won the Subsidiary Tournament.

The following were the Teams :

<i>"A" Team</i>	<i>"B" Team</i>	<i>"C" Team</i>
(1) Mr. Dixon	(1) Capt. Misa	(1) Mr. Barker
(2) Mr. Sanderson	(2) Mr. Allen	(2) Mr. Byron
(3) Major Darley	(3) Mr. Frink	(3) Mr. Craig
(Bk.) Mr. Bolckow	(Bk.) Mr. Williams	(Bk.) Mr. Moulton-Barrett

In the Queen's Bay's Cup three teams were entered, and two of these met in the final which was won with widened goals in an extra chukker by 5 goals to 4.

The winning team was :

- (1) Mr. Clarke
- (2) Mr. Moulton-Barrett
- (3) Mr. Sanderson
- (4) Mr. Cooper

INTER-REGIMENTAL AND SUBALTERN'S TOURNAMENT, MEERUT in March, 1928

In the Inter-Regimental Tournament, the Regiment was beaten in the first round by the 4th Hussars by 9—6.

The following represented the Regiment :

- (1) Mr. J. F. Sanderson
- (2) Major Darley
- (3) Captain Aizlewood
- (Bk.) Mr. Bolckow

In the Subalterns' Tournament, after scoring a comparatively easy victory over the 3rd Hussars, the team met the 4th Hussars in the final and beat them 9—6.

The team was :

- (1) Mr. Dixon
- (2) Mr. Frink
- (3) Mr. Sanderson
- (4) Mr. Bolckow

This is the second year running this team has won the Cup.

REGIMENTAL SPORTS, 23rd March, 1928

The Dent Cup.—(Open to W.O's, N.C.O's and men with over four years' service. Events : Jumping, Dummy Thrusting, All Arms, Sword Tent Pegging).

Winner	Corporal Thomson	"H.Q." Wing
Runner-up	Sergeant Goldring	"C" Squadron

The Mullens Cup.—(Open to N.C.O's and men with less than four years' service. Events : Jumping, Dummy Thrusting, Sword Tent Pegging, Alarm Race).

Winner	L/Corporal Taylor	" H.Q." Wing
Runner-up	Trooper Cassidy	7th D.G. Squadron

Regimental Sword Competition.

Winner	S.S.M. R. I. Molloy
Runner-up	S.S.M. Coventry

Section Control Competition.

Winner	"A" Squadron
Runner-up	" H.Q." Wing

In the Indian File Tent Pegging open to the Garrison, R.S.M. Weston's section was first and Sergeant Cooper's second.

The following displays were given :—Maypole Ride ; Musical Ride ; Trick Riding.

BOXING

At the North Western Railway Boxing Tournament in February, 1928, at Lahore, the Regiment was beaten by the 2nd Battalion The Seaforth Highlanders in the Team event, but won two weights and three Special Contests in the individual events. On the previous occasion of this Tournament four out of six competitors won their fights.

At the Murree Brewery Boxing Tournament in July, 1927, the Regiment won two weights and had the finalists in two others.

In the Lahore District Boxing last year the Regiment was second to the Seaforth Highlanders in the team event but won two weights in the individual tournament.

This year we were once again beaten by the Seaforths in the final of the Team Competitions.

In September, Farrier Simpson won a special contest at the 4th Hussars Boxing Tournament at Lucknow.

FOOTBALL

Last year the Regiment won the Lahore District Football Cup defeating the Royal Scots Fusiliers in the final by 4—0.

This year we were unable to send a team for this tournament owing to the Regimental Sports and other activities. The team has failed to produce "form" this year.

HOCKEY

In the Lahore District Hockey Tournament, the Regiment was defeated by the Seaforth Highlanders after a very good game.

ATHLETICS

The relay team from the Regiment won that event at the Durham Light Infantry Sports. This event was open to the District.

RACKETS

At the North of India Rackets Championships, Captain Marson and Mr. Williams won the Inter-Regimental doubles, defeating the Rifle Brigade in the final 15—2, 15—11, 16—14 and 17—15.

Captain Marson and Mr. Williams also won the handicap doubles and Mr. Williams the handicap singles.

In the Open singles, Mr. Williams and Captain Marson were defeated by Mr. Newton of the Rifle Brigade in the semi-final and final, respectively.

In the final he beat Captain Marson 2—15, 7—15, 15—7, 15—11, 15—10. This was a very fine game. Captain Marson and Mr. Williams reached the semi-final of the Open doubles but were defeated after a good game by the eventual winners (Mr. Newton, Rifle Brigade, and Captain Birnie, 12th Cavalry).

CRICKET

The Regiment won the Jamasjee Cricket Cup, open to all units in the Northern Command, defeating the combined R. & I.A.S.C. Peshawar District by 120 runs.

5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards

POLO

Between November and April the Regiment entered twenty-four teams for various tournaments.

A Subalterns' team won the Lahore Christmas Handicap Tournament and a Regimental side won the Tradesmen's Cup at Rawalpindi, for the third year in succession. Mr. Keightley has proceeded to Australia to play for the Army in India team.

FOOTBALL

The Regiment won the Peshawar District Football Tournament; this is the first time that a British Cavalry regiment has won this Cup.

"H.Q." Squadron won the Garrison Motiram Football Cup.

BOXING

The Regiment won the Peshawar District Boxing Tournament. This is the second time only that this has been won by a cavalry regiment.

"A" Squadron won the Garrison Team Competition.

IMPERIAL DELHI HORSE SHOW

Lieutenant Wilkinson won the Open High Jump on a country bred, aged 17, clearing 5 ft. 9 ins.

S.S.M. (R.I.) Gough won Individual Tent Pegging open to all India out of sixty-eight entries.

This is the first time either of these events have been won by British ranks. They have been won by Indian ranks on previous occasions.

PESHAWAR DISTRICT ASSAULT-AT-ARMS

Officers of this Regiment were first, second, third and fourth in Officers' Open Jumping and first in Officers' Dummy Thrusting.

Other Ranks got first, second and third in both Individual Jumping and Dummy Thrusting.

A Regimental Team gave a Vaulting Display.

MUSKETRY

Second in Brooke Bond Cup, an A.R.A. (India) competition for teams of sixteen. Small Arms School were first.

The Middlesex Yeomanry (2nd Cavalry Divisional Signals)

The annual point-to-point race for Colonel Lord Denman's Challenge Cup was again held with the Surrey Union Hunt, by kind permission of the masters. The course was all grass and the going was good.

Mr. J. S. Judd's Binjimin (O.B.H.)	Owner	1
Captain B. M. Hudson's Rose Marie II (Oakley)	Owner	2
Captain H. D. Robert's Scottie (Surrey Union)	Owner	3

Seven lengths. Same. Five ran.

Trooper J. Evan James, of "A" Squadron, won the Foil Championship of the Territorial Army at Birmingham.

In addition to being undefeated, James went through without any hits being recorded against him, the nearest being a flick on the arm by one of his opponents.

13th D.C.O. Lancers

The Regiment has been stationed in Jubbulpore with one Squadron at Calcutta during the whole of this period.

Lieutenant-Colonel H. E. Connop, D.S.O., became Commandant of the Regiment on 25th December, 1927, on which date Colonel A. Campbell Ross, D.S.O., took over command of the 4th (Secunderabad) Cavalry Brigade.

POLO

Five tournaments were played in :

(a) Barton Cup, Jubbulpore	Won
(b) Ezra Cup, Calcutta	Lost
(c) I.P.A. Championship	Lost (beaten by Bhopal 8—2)
(d) C.I.H. Cup, Saugor	Won
(e) Bhopal Cup, Jubbulpore	Won

DELHI HORSE SHOW

Events competed for :—Long Distance Ride ; Tent Pegging ; I.O's Chargers ; I.O.R's Jumping ; Pony Jumping.

Results :

Long Distance Ride.—Second, Peter, ridden by Lieut. H. D. Caldecott, which was third last year and the year before.

I.O's Chargers.—First, Piara, ridden by Woordie Major Piara Singh.

Pony Jumping.—Second, Bhura, ridden by Captain R. J. Corner.

OTHER EVENTS

The Regiment gave a Torch-light Tattoo Display on 13th March, 1928, at which Major-General A. Solly-Flood, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., and about 200 guests were present.

The display consisted of :—Vaulting Ride ; Khattack Dance ; Tent Pegging (flaming pegs) ; Musical Ride.

18th K.E.O. Cavalry

The Regimental Tent-Pegging Team won at the Indian Cavalry Tournament, Lahore, with 74 points, on the 31st January, 1928.

The Regimental Sports and Reunion were held from 12th to 14th April, 1928. Twenty-seven pensioned Indian officers and thirty-two pensioned N.C.O's attended the Reunion. The pensioners belonged to the late 6th K.E.O. Cavalry, 7th Haryana Lancers, 8th Cavalry, 32nd Lancers, 33rd Q.V.O. Light Cavalry and 34th Poona Horse. On the final day of the Sports, the pensioners were formed up in fours and marched past The Honourable Lieutenant-Colonel H. B. St. John, C.I.E., C.B.E., Agent to the Governor-General and Chief Commissioner in Baluchistan, and General Sir Charles H. Harrington, C.B.E., K.C.B., D.S.O., D.C.L., General Officer Commanding-in-Chief, Western Command.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

"The Fighting Forces." Vol. V, No. 1, April, 1928.

The most interesting portion of this magazine is undoubtedly becoming the editorial, where matters are discussed with a refreshing frankness. Whether the editor is dealing with the "Mongol Complex" and "The Boom in Parthians," or the Service Estimates, he has something definite of interest to say and a trenchant method of saying it.

There is an interesting account of the Services in Parliament, chiefly dealing with the debate on the estimates: while the so-called Air Force view, as against that of the Navy, on the growth and employment of flying boats is put forward in a very controversial and somewhat dictatorial manner. The author announces a series of statements which he puts into the mouth of the Navy, and then sets about refuting them—a method of argument which carries little weight, especially when covered by anonymity.

Colonel Sir Hereward Wake deals interestingly with "Infantry and Mechanization," trying to bring the fanatics to earth by a practical study of the problem within possible financial limitations. There is a valuable account of the war in the Riff, articles dealing with the Persian frontier, the American "New Model" army, and one or two stories, while there is an article on the Navy's Staff System, which, to the soldier's mind, should be "read, marked, learned, and inwardly digested" by the Senior Service!

"Canadian Defence Quarterly." Vol. V, No. 3, April, 1928.

Another very good volume. There is an excellent analysis of the Japanese situation in Manchuria, showing the possible repercussions in Moscow: a brief outline of the history of the Canadian Militia since 1812: a detailed account of the Canadian Air Service: a comparison of the war efforts of the British Empire and the United States, showing the amazingly rapid growth of the American Army, when the urgent cry was sent

out for it : and short articles on the Vickers light tank, morale, and " Infantry ways of ye olden days."

"The Royal Military College Magazine and Record, Easter, 1928." (Gale & Polden).

Both editors and publishers are to be congratulated on this handsome production, which besides a number of excellent photographs, contains a coloured copy of a print of the landing at Rangoon in the Burmese War of 1824, a portrait of " Francis," one of the Grenadier Guards' black drummers, and several line drawings and cartoons. The reading matter comprises, besides topical notes, R.M.C. news, and sports review, an article on negro drummers in the army, an account of the R.M.C. visit to St. Cyr, several well-written stories, and hunting articles and reviews of recent books, including a long and amusingly destructive one of Mr. D'Esterre's " Masters of War." Altogether a varied and palatable bill of fare which enabled the reviewer (who had not the privilege of going through the R.M.C.) to pass none the less a pleasant hour among its dishes.

The Journal of the VIIIth King's Royal Irish Hussars is a new comer amid regimental journals, the first issue being that of January, 1928.

The Editor and his Staff must be congratulated on the first number, which is well got up and clearly printed. The Journal contains good articles not only of regimental but also of general interest, and it should be popular among all ex-VIIIth Hussars.

Old Comrades of the Regiment can obtain copies from Mr. H. W. Pamplin, 13, Latimer Road, Wimbledon, S.W.19.

The April number of the " Journal of the Society of Army Historical Research " contains an item of considerable interest to Anglo-American students of the War of Independence in the form of extracts from the diary of Lieutenant John Barker of the Fourth (or The King's Own) Regiment of Foot. The period covered in this issue is from November, 1774, to June, 1775, when the regiment was stationed at Boston, and includes a first-hand account of the Battle of Lexington and the affair

at Concord. Its appearance is particularly apposite at a time when the "Big Bill" campaign is fresh in the memory, and the detailed account of events noted down from day to day as they occurred supports the opinion generally expressed to-day, that the history of the period requires re-writing with less bias and more attention to contemporary documentary evidence.

Interest in matters American is sustained by an article on two flags hanging respectively in the Chapel and Hall of the Royal Hospital, Chelsea, both captured from the Americans, one at Detroit on 16th August, 1812, the other at the battle of Queenstown Heights on 13th October, 1812; and by a short historical account of Fort Ticonderoga on Lake Champlain.

The reproduction of old plates, plans and maps are excellent and the contrast between the reduced engraving of a bird's-eye view of Pontefract Castle in 1648 and a present day aerial photograph of Windsor Castle is striking.

The Editor acknowledges with thanks the receipt of the following Magazines:

<i>Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps</i>	March, April, May, 1928.
<i>Journal of the United Service Institution of India</i>	January, 1928.
<i>The Journal of the VIIIth King's Royal Irish Hussars</i>	Vol. 1, No. 1.
<i>The Journal of the Indian Army Service Corps</i>	February, March, 1928.
<i>The Military Gazette</i>	Nos. 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9
<i>The Veterinary Journal</i>	March, April, May, 1928.
<i>The Ypres Times</i>	April, 1928.
<i>On the March</i>	April, May, 1928.
<i>The Wasp</i>	March, 1928
<i>The Royal Tank Corps Journal</i>	April, May, 1928
<i>The Eagle</i>	No. 2
<i>The Yorkshire Hussars Magazine</i>	April, 1928
<i>Proceedings of the Canadian Cavalry Association</i>	1927
<i>Faugh-a-Ballagh</i>	January, 1928
<i>The Wiltshire Legionnaire</i>	
<i>The Journal of the Society of Army Historical Research</i>	
<i>The Strathconian</i>	April, 1928
<i>The Royal Engineers Journal</i>	June, 1928

FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE Foreign Magazines for the last quarter contain an unusually small number of articles dealing with matters of purely cavalry interest, the majority of the contents of Service publications being mainly concerned—as perhaps might reasonably be expected—with the development of machine-guns and armoured cars, and such like matters.

The “*Revue de Cavalerie*” for March and April has a long account of the work of the cavalry of the Rhine Army at the manœuvres of last year, when it was given a problem to solve of very special interest, namely, the work which would be required of the mounted forces of a country threatened with war by a neighbouring power, and which would be needed to watch the frontier against possible raids or infringement during the days while war was hanging in the balance, and to act at once and effectively so soon as war should be declared.

This number also contains two papers on the cavalry of Poland; in the one, the writer traces the evolution of the Polish cavalry from the days of Sobiesky up to its re-organization in 1920, and shows the steps which have been taken to bring its armament and training up to date. There appears to be no lack of raw material in Poland, there are any number of mounts of varying quality, and every effort is made to improve the class of remounts by purchases in foreign countries; but the author of this article seems to question whether the cavalry of Poland—good, numerous and well found, as it undoubtedly is—can be regarded as equal to the two main rôles which may be demanded of it, viz. : employment against the Russian cavalry, which is in every way equal to that of Poland but superior in numbers, or against the cavalry of Germany, which is very much better equipped with the adjuncts considered indispensable in the present day. In the second of the two papers on the Polish cavalry contained in this

number, Captain Moslard describes the resuscitation and re-organization of the cavalry of Poland in July, 1920, and its almost immediate employment against the mounted forces of the Bolsheviks. The initial difficulties appear to have been of an unusual character; the officers and men of the new organization had fought during the war in no fewer than three different armies—in the Russian, the German and the Austrian—so that there was no one definite tradition or school upon which to ground or base the new formation; but happily all were imbued by a remarkable keenness to learn and bravery in action. Captain Moslard closes his story in the middle of October, with an account of the forces led by Budienny, to which the Polish cavalry was opposed.

The "Militär Wochenblatt" of the 25th March, contains a very generous and soldierly appreciation of the late Field-Marshal Earl Haig by a German Cavalry Officer, General von Poseck, which closes with the following words: "We German soldiers, particularly those of us who have served in the cavalry, lower our swords in salute to our departed opponent."

In the same Journal, of the 28th March, a writer offers some remarks on certain instructions which appear to have been issued in Germany governing the cavalry training for the current year and which it is believed will form the basis of the forth-coming "Cavalry Training," the publication of which is already overdue. In these instructions great importance is attached to formations, whether the attack is intended to be made mounted or dismounted. The importance of the former is pressed, but it is especially laid down that, since its effective action depends almost wholly upon surprise, time should not be wasted in deployment, but the attack should be made in whatever formation the cavalry body finds itself when the opportunity for attack arises. The instructions definitely state that "it is not absolutely necessary to adopt a wide formation, that is to deploy into line."

A recent issue of the Polish paper "Szaniec" gives some curious details about the Soviet Army of Russia, to which certain instructions regarding the maintenance and inculcation

of discipline have lately been issued. Those composing the army are reminded that, unlike the armies of other States, the Red Army is above all a *class* army, that with it, unlike in "Bourgeois States," discipline is not dependent upon an officer caste, but that its maintenance rests upon the loyal observance of orders by the Red soldiers themselves. Minor punishments for breaches of discipline read curiously to western soldiers; the punishments awarded, their nature and the names of the delinquents are written up on blackboards where all—who can—may read, and are further announced before the company or squadron. Rewards or praise are given out in orders and the first-named take the form of written commendations, a portrait of the honoured soldier beneath the regimental Colour, a badge of honour, the Order of the Red Flag, or—of more doubtful value perhaps—permanent enrolment—or perhaps one should say election—as life-member of the Red Army!

Despite these honours and rewards, service does not appear to be especially popular, nor does tenure of appointment seem very secure. Recently, on the grounds of economy, 4,000 officers of the Soviet Army were suddenly transferred to the Reserve, being assured that civil appointments would be provided for them; but as these appointments were already filled by civilians, the reserve officers have not obtained what they were promised. It was recently considered necessary to clear out of the army all followers of Trotsky, and this measure led to a great deal of desertion, while frontier posts to check this were established, 1,500 such posts being set up on the Finland border alone. The present state of unrest is further shown by the number of thefts of arms, particularly of service revolvers, from magazines and arsenals.

THE April "Cavalry Journal" of the United States is a special "Horse Number" and contains interesting articles such as "Equine Types," "The Hunter," "Officers' Chargers," "The Cavalry Pack-Horse," etc.

Lieutenant-Colonel Barry in "Some Does—Some Doesn't" discusses the two problems (1) Can the experienced horseman

pick the best jumping prospect from a few green horses ? ” He thinks not. (2) “ Can he, judging by confirmation and way of going, select the best jumper from a number of made horses, or with certainty, even a good jumper ? ” He doubts it. An article entitled “ Horse Show Judging ” describes the duties of certain officials and gives them kindly advice, which would also often be appropriate in England. An article that will appeal especially to British cavalry officers is “ The Horse in the Palestine Campaign,” in which the author states “ on several occasions large bodies of cavalry operated continuously for 72 hours without water ” and one of the lessons he draws from this campaign is that “ The best condition of animals is obtained from feeding five times, and watering twice daily.” “ Ultimus ” gives a short history of “ Some Famous War Horses,” among which General Lee’s “ Traveler ” was distinguished for his long and arduous war service.

The interesting announcement is made that the first cavalry armoured car unit for work in conjunction with a cavalry division is now being raised. This is of interest to us in England where two cavalry regiments are in process of conversion into armoured car regiments.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

PART I. MILITARY.

“The History of the VIIIth King’s Royal Irish Hussars, 1693–1927.” By the Rev. Robert H. Murray, Litt.D.
Two volumes. (Cambridge: Heffer).

IN two handsome volumes Dr. Murray sets out with appropriate distinction the history of a distinguished regiment. The “get up” as well as the manner and matter of these volumes is a good deal above the standard observed in most publications of a similar type. Good paper, good print, good reproductions of interesting colour-prints, pictures and photos, and some clear maps make a pleasant impression upon the reader, and the value of the history is complemented by a full index. The history contains much military detail which is of real interest to the general military historian, as well as to the regimental officer.

In Volume I the history of the regiment is traced from its formation in 1693 up to “The Long Peace,” during which the nation sank into the period of military apathy for which she was to pay so dearly in the Crimea. The whole volume is full of incident. In particular, the description of the regiment—then the Eighth Dragoons—in the action at Bousbecque makes refreshing reading in these days when—we are told—the horse is militarily a mere relic.

In Volume II we find the regiment, now the VIIIth Hussars, carrying forward its fighting traditions. In the Light Brigade at Balaclava; in the Mutiny; in the second Afghan War; in the South African War; and, finally, in the Great War—in particular, at the mounted action at Villers-Faucon in ’17—the VIIIth Hussars proved worthy of the spurs which, as the Eighth Dragoons, they had won two centuries before.

Dr. Murray’s volumes make stirring reading; we lay them

down with the strengthened conviction that the spirit which has lived in the cavalry throughout the history of war will continue to endure as long as war itself—in whatever form—endures.

R.E.

“The Uncensored Dardanelles.” Ashmead-Bartlett. (Hutchinson). 21s. net.

“Politicians and the War, 1914–1916.” Lord Beaverbrook. (Thornton Butterworth). 10s. 6d.

“Way of Revelation.” Wilfrid Ewart. (Putnam). 3s. 6d.

Each of these books deals with a different aspect of the war, and, were one to believe the facts and deductions of the authors, the complete picture would be indeed depressing. There is an atmosphere of omniscience and dogma about the first two, however, which makes one a bit sceptical of some of their “ex cathedra” statements. Ashmead-Bartlett proves conclusively, to his own satisfaction, that the military leaders in Gallipoli were hopelessly incompetent, and their tactics and strategy false: Lord Beaverbrook paints a picture of political intrigue at home which would prove our statesmen equally inefficient: while Wilfrid Ewart, in his famous war novel, which is now being reprinted, would have us believe that civil society in London in the war apparently consisted largely of neurotic drugtakers. Military leaders, politicians, civilians—all inefficient, when they were not also corrupt! Dear, dear.

A study of these books, however, shows that possibly it is the authors who are prejudiced. Ashmead-Bartlett’s book deserves especially close study, as it is undoubtedly interesting, but one’s belief in the value of his opinions gets shaken very early on. One is told that the only way of conquering the Dardanelles was a landing at Bulair, and, in a few sentences, all the Naval and navigational difficulties are swept aside. His main argument for this plan is, however, formidable! Liman von Sanders agreed with him, was expecting the landing to be carried out there, and had the bulk of his forces ready to defend that area! One wonders if Mr. Ashmead-Bartlett has ever read the story by Ole Luke Oie—“The Second Degree”!

His descriptions of the country, however, and of the actual fighting are very graphic, but his sweeping denunciations of individuals, apart from the bad taste of some of their phraseology, seem rather puerile : while his apologia or attempted justification for trying to send home his famous uncensored letter can best be left to casuists.

Perhaps the most amazing revelation in the book is the fact that the politicians called on him for a military appreciation of the situation, apparently over the heads of the military advisers, a fact which almost makes one believe completely some of the extraordinary intrigues described by Lord Beaverbrook. A study of the latter's book makes one really depressed. One would imagine from it that the only importance of incidents in the war was the use to which they could be put to further the personal intrigues of various politicians, with apparently the one shining exception of Mr. Bonar Law. Certain definite errors of fact in the book, however, such as the account of the visit of Kitchener to Egypt, make one wonder whether the author's picture of these intrigues is a very real one. It is comforting to know, anyhow, that soldiers can rest tranquil for the future, since Lord Beaverbrook has vouched for the fact that " Mr. Lloyd George had a genius for strategy."

Another interesting aspect of this book is the account of the growth of the influence of the Press and of Northcliffe in particular in making and unmaking Governments. The author, perhaps naturally, seems to assume in all these cases that the Press voices public opinion. One wonders ; especially in these days of vast trusts in the journalistic world.

Of " Way of Revelation," nothing more need be said, since it has long been accepted as one of the classic novels of the war. The descriptions of war are beautifully written, but the whole seems, somehow, thoroughly artificial : war novels always seem to deal with excessively highly strung individuals. The war was really probably won by plain people in all societies, whether fighting or working at home : unfortunately, their lives and feelings do not seem to provide material for a best seller !

There is one definite conclusion which one can reach, after

reading the endless stream of memoirs and war books, each of which contradicts the others—that the task of the unfortunate historian of the future will be an unenviable one !

“Genghis Khan.” By Harold Lamb. (Thornton Butterworth).
10s. 6d.

This book has been produced at a very opportune moment, since all officers have been recommended to study the amazing campaigns of the “Emperor of all men,” and no short English life of the Mongol leader existed. Unfortunately, this work, though of very great interest, deals largely with the social and administrative aspects of the period rather than with military strategy and tactics: and, from a study of the bibliography, extensive as it is, there can be little doubt that the history of the astounding Mongol invasions is of a distinctly legendary nature. It does give, however, an idea of the methods by which this nomad chief and his subordinates succeeded in defeating the forces of China, the Mohammedan powers, and the Chivalry of Eastern and Central Europe. Psychologically, too, the man was of the greatest interest, as he undoubtedly had profound knowledge of the mentality of his own people. “Get drunk only three times a month,” ran one of his laws: “It would be better not to get drunk at all. But who can abstain altogether.”

This is a book which should be read by all students of war, but at the same time the reader might take note of the entertaining remarks on the subject of Genghis Khan and his cult in the editorial of the April issue of the “Fighting Forces.”

“Stalky’s Reminiscences.” Major-General Dunsterville. 7s. 6d.
net.

To soldiers, the author is most well known for his exploits in command of “Dunster-Force”: but, as he has written a separate book on that campaign, little mention is to be found in these memoirs, which form a light and pleasantly written account of a varied and active life, particularly in India and the East generally. The two things which perhaps strike one

most are his apparent ability to learn any language, and his amazing power of getting inside the life and minds of foreign nations. This latter trait is exemplified by his remarkably clear picture of the causes and results of the Russian revolution.

Lovers of "Stalky and Co.," however, may have a grievance! His account of the real school life of the famous trio is rather like being shown an elaborate bit of mechanism which is responsible for some conjuring trick, which, up till then, has mystified and fascinated one. Cold truth is not required.

The book, however, can be strongly recommended for a pleasant afternoon's reading.

"A History of the British Army." The Hon. J. W. Fortescue. Vol. XII, 1839-1852. (Macmillan & Co.). 40s. net.

The author is approaching the end of the stupendous task he set himself, and the Army and the country as a whole owe him a very deep debt of gratitude.

This volume deals with India chiefly, from Sha Shuja's attempt to regain the throne of Afghanistan, with the final tragedies of the murder of Macnaghten, and Elphinstone's retreat.

Other most interesting campaigns are included—Napier's in Sind, Sir Hugh Gough's in China (of particular interest at the moment), the Sikh wars, the operations against the Maoris, the expedition into Burma (that remarkable example of staff work!), and the war of 1846 in Natal.

The very variety of campaigns discussed makes this volume possibly one of the most interesting the author has yet produced.

"The War on Land, 1914-1918." Douglas Jerrold. (Ernest Benn, Limited). 6d.

This is one of the very valuable sixpenny editions, published by Ernest Benn, Ltd. The author set himself what might appear an impossible task—to produce a history of the whole war on all fronts in eighty small pages. One can only say that he has succeeded to a remarkable degree, as he has not tried to do too much. Naturally, the account can only be an

outline, but this is clearly sketched, and a comprehensive birds-eye view of the whole is the result. The author is fortunately, and of necessity, in view of his task, a master of terse, descriptive English, and he has successfully avoided any current prejudiced versions of individual campaigns.

As a preliminary to the detailed study of the various campaigns which make up the Great War, this little book is to be strongly recommended.

H.G.E.

“The Future of the British Army.” By Brevet Major B. C. Denning, M.C., R.E. (Witherby). 10s. net.

Major Denning is to be sincerely congratulated on his book, which should be read by all who desire to look into the military possibilities of the future. He has set himself the task of examining a method of reconciling the principles of the offensive and economy of force by means of increased mobility and protection. He argues that this system will ensure once more the superiority of the offensive over the defensive, and that, in addition, will effect a considerable saving in both man-power and money. He realises our overseas commitments, and, in anticipating difficulties connected with foreign reliefs and the Cardwell system in general, proposes to retain two cavalry brigades, four artillery brigades and thirty battalions in their existing form as a frontier force for employment at home and abroad, and to mechanize the remainder of the Army for service in those theatres of war which are suitable for mechanized warfare.

Chapter V—which is, perhaps, the chapter most provocative of controversy—contains a general classification of the tactical rôles which the army must be prepared to perform, and an outline of the modern organization which, it is suggested, is most suitable for their performance. It is, however, upon Chapter VI that the cavalryman will concentrate his interest, because it is here that Major Denning gives us his ideas upon the “cavalry formation” of the future. Since the book went to press something of the cavalry organization foreshadowed in it has already come to pass. Two regiments of armoured cars

are in process of formation—these, and (we believe) a proportion of mechanized field artillery, are to be allotted to the Cavalry Division ; the machine gun vehicles and transport vehicles of units and the second echelon of administrative transport vehicles have been mechanized. Already, therefore, the tactical and administrative mobility and radius of action of the Cavalry Division has been considerably increased.

At present, neither the practical performance nor the theoretical design of the various types of armoured cross-country vehicles warrant an assumption that work of the cavalry can be carried out by an entirely mechanized formation. Throughout this book Major Dening is somewhat prone to assume a standard of performance on the part of an armoured force which we venture to think is not substantiated by the practical experience of the present. That there will be developments and improvements in the future follows as a matter of course. What they will be, how far they will enable man-power to be superseded (not “superceded”—as Major Dening’s proof reader has allowed) by mechanization which will prove economical in all conditions possible in our conception of war, no man can say. The fact remains that they will come to pass.

It is to be hoped that their way will continue to be paved—and that students of military affairs will continue to be stimulated—by writings which are expressed with the clarity and absence of prejudice which characterize Major Dening’s work.

R.E.

“Gentleman Johnny Burgoyne.” By F. J. Hudleston. With biographical note by Arthur Machen. (Cape). 12s. 6d.

With the untimely death of Frank Hudleston last Christmas after twenty-five years spent in that abode of Stygian darkness, the War Office Library, the Muse of History, that sober and tedious wench, lost one of the least solemn, yet not the least devoted, of her servants. Mr. Hudleston’s work is too well known to readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL to make it necessary to commend this his latest, and alas ! last book to them.

His portrait of General Burgoyne has all the merits of Mr. Shaw's brilliant but fanciful picture in his play "The Devil's Disciple," with the additional one of being true to life. Gentleman Johnny was an unusual, and yet a peculiarly British type. A gallant soldier, and a brilliant regimental commander, he also played in his time many other parts, as politician, writer, dramatist and man about town; and he was first and last a gentleman. But he was not a great general and cannot be acquitted of all blame for the disastrous issue of Saratoga,—rightly numbered among the world's decisive battles,—though the blunders and folly of his colleagues in the field, and in particular of the miserable War Minister at home, Lord George Germain, would probably in any case have ensured his failure. Mr. Hudleston's book gives a vivid and detailed picture of this campaign and of the events in America which preceded it, though it is unfortunate that the publishers should not have thought it necessary to provide any sort of map on which to follow the course of operations.

Not only however, are Burgoyne's life, character and actions narrated here, but also sundry other matters of diverse interest; thus the reader will learn *inter alia* how the merry inhabitants of Bristol greeted "Bristol fash" the Baroness Riedesel, wife of the general of Burgoyne's Hessian troops by calling after her in the streets "French whore"; how the inhabitants of Frome in Somerset illuminated their town on hearing the news of Burgoyne's surrender, concluding from his name that he was a Frenchman; what happened to the young Swedish lady who was misguided enough to visit Weedon; and how Miss Jemima of Williamstown, New England, "bundled" with her first "Britainer." All these and other good things are to be found within the covers of this fascinating volume, which no one—in the complimentary sense of that ambiguous phrase—should lose any time in reading. E.W.S.

"The Silent Force." By T. Morris Longstreth. (Allan). 15s.

Readers of the article which appeared in the January number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL on the Royal Canadian

Mounted Police will find a further and fuller account of the history and activities of the force in this well-written and well-produced volume. The romantic tales and legends which have gathered round "the Mounted" will be seen to have in no way surpassed the reality as found in the sober history of its actual achievements. Mr. Longstreth has had full access to official records, has spent a winter in barracks with the Police, and has so steeped himself in their spirit that he has really been able to transfer something of it to paper and impart it to his readers. The force was fortunate in being recruited from sources which varied in everything but their excellence, led by a succession of chiefs of outstanding personality and ability, and imbued from the first days of its existence by a high *esprit de corps* and an exalted sense of duty and responsibility. To it must be attributed most of the credit for making the westward expansion of Canada and its welding into a homogeneous nation a progressive and peaceful process instead of a costly and stormy one, as in the case of the United States. The story of the Force's handling of the question of the Indians, of Riel's rebellion, of the "gold rush" to Alaska, and of the problems of internal labour unrest, which Canada had successively to face and solve, is admirably narrated, and the whole book is interspersed with narratives of personal adventure and achievement by various members of the force which add to its interest and value. It can be thoroughly recommended to anyone with a taste for the romantic and picturesque side of history.

"On Future Warfare." By Colonel J. F. C. Fuller. (Sifton Praed). 12s. 6d.

Colonel Fuller has for so long now combined the rôles of prophet and apostle that most of us are by now quite familiar with his views—in fact, we have in many cases adopted them for our own. Consequently there may be some reluctance among his prospective readers to traverse well-worn ground with him, and an even greater reluctance to face once more those fearsome diagrams with which the pages of his last book,

"The Foundations of the Science of War," were so freely besprinkled—but not always clarified.

It should be said at once then that such few diagrams as this new volume contains are quite comprehensible even by the present reviewer's intelligence, and that in the various articles, reprinted from Service and other journals, collected together to form the book, Colonel Fuller, while maintaining his ideas in broad outline as we know them, has succeeded in developing and expanding them over new ground—and, it may be added, often somewhat delicate and debatable ground. There is much in these articles that not even the most convinced believer in mechanization can afford to miss, as well as much of interest addressed to those who are not believers, or not very convinced ones. To the former class we would recommend especially the chapters on "Tanks in India" and on "Strategical Paralysis as the Object of the Decisive Attack"; while the latter will, we fancy, be hard put to it to maintain their lack of faith in the face of such admirably argued theses as "The Reign of the Bullet" and "The Influence of Tanks on the Encounter Battle." In fact no soldier who takes a lively interest in his profession is likely to regret time spent in reading this book.

E.W.S.

"Oude in 1857. Some memories of the Indian Mutiny."

By Colonel John Bonham, C.B. (Williams & Norgate). 5s.

The very morning after I had completed my first review of this little book, I opened my *Times* to find the sad news that the author, until then the last surviving officer of the force which defended Lucknow, had joined his comrades in the great beyond.

Born in July, 1834, John Bonham was commissioned to the Bengal Artillery towards the end of 1852. When the mutiny broke out he was stationed at Secrora, some fifty miles from Lucknow, in command of a horse battery of the Oudh Irregular Force. After an interval of nearly seventy years, Colonel Bonham was persuaded to produce, as "a footnote to history," his own account of the outbreaks in various stations in Oude during that dark period in the history of British India.

This simple narrative may have less ambitious aspirations than the productions of our professional historians. At the same time, by his very simplicity and naked sincerity, the author quickens the sympathy of the reader much more readily than would have been the case had he striven after those sentimental effects which we moderns are supposed to appreciate. Indeed, no one with ordinary human feelings will be able to lay down this book without registering a silent prayer that horrors similar to those portrayed may never again be.

It is to be hoped that this little work will be widely read, and that its obvious message will be generally understood.

I cannot close without paying a humble tribute to a very gallant soldier and a great gentleman. With his natural modesty, Colonel Bonham had dismissed, in a few brief sentences, the very noble and courageous part which he himself played in that grim drama of the last century. In point of fact his outstanding heroism, firstly at Secrora, and later during the actual defence of Lucknow, acted as a real inspiration to all around him. Wounded no fewer than three times, John Bonham was deprived of that most coveted of all military honours only by the untimely death of his superior officer whose intention it had been to recommend his subordinate.

“List of the Officers of the Bengal Army, 1758–1834.” Part II (D-K). By Major V. C. P. Hodson. (Constable). 21s.

The first of the four promised volumes of this series was reviewed in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of July, 1927. It is sufficient, therefore, to say that this newcomer worthily sustains the interest and promise of the first born.

In size, the second part is rather greater than its predecessor in that it contains the biographies of no fewer than 2,036 warriors of the old Bengal Army. An Appendix has also been added giving certain corrigenda and addenda to the first volume. In other respects, however, this volume, with its wealth of information, closely resembles its elder brother.

As a book of reference, it should be a valuable addition to any library.

E.J.S.

PART II. SPORTING.

“Polo Pony Training with Some Hints on the Game.” By Colonel Commandant Ramsay. (Gale & Polden). 3s. 6d.

Although Colonel Commandant F. W. Ramsay makes it clear in his introduction that the object of his book is to assist young infantry officers who aspire to train their own polo ponies, it contains much that will interest the more experienced horseman.

The various stages, by which a young pony is gradually worked up into the finished article, are described in detail and a graduated course of lessons is laid down for guidance.

The author attaches considerable importance to dismounted work in a closed manège during the preliminary stages of schooling. Although a certain amount of dismounted work is necessary with a young pony, it should be remembered that it is only an avenue of approach to the main object, which is to get the pony to go kindly and collectedly with the rider up. Therefore, the sooner riding can be safely commenced the better.

One or two statements in the book are perhaps debatable. Sharp spurs are advocated for a weak horseman when schooling. This combination has caused disaster throughout the history of equitation.

“The psychological moment to change diagonal at the canter is when all four legs are in suspension.” Surely this moment does not arise? The correct moment to give the aid for changing is when the leading foreleg is coming to the ground. and the change should take place when this leg is on the ground—at which moment both hind legs are off the ground.

Some hints on the game are given in the last chapter. They will repay study and translation into practice not only by beginners but by many more advanced players. W.D.M.

“From Colonel to Subaltern.” By Lieutenant-Colonel M. F. McTaggart. 12s. 6d.

Critics of books on the horse are very numerous, but many of them are apt to lose sight of the object of the book. In this

book there is useful information for all—in the author's own words, "not alone soldiers and not alone young"—but the form that the book has taken does suggest that it is mainly intended to give advice to the youngster. If this assumption is correct the author has achieved his object most admirably. A book could be filled with advice on buying horses, points of purchase of a horse, stable management, and schooling, but Colonel McTaggart has picked out the main points alone and has condensed them into a few pages.

Some readers may be led to believe that there are many Captain Matheson's to-day, whereas they have almost disappeared since the birth of Weedon.

We are left in doubt as to the difference in the author's opinion—between strong determined horsemanship and Bolshevik methods of training which he again refers to in his chapter entitled "Co-operation and Fear."

The author's advice on "The Approach" to the fence is admirably suited to all. Many horsemen who have already decided that it is too difficult to guide or control the horse's stride on the approach, will be consoled by what he says, yet the more expert who are aiming at perfection in the "controlled" method will still strive to attain the perfect harmony which this method entails.

The same may be said about *The Snaffle versus The Double Bridle*; the choice depends so much on the hands of the rider. It is a little surprising however that Colonel McTaggart gives the impression that he does not believe in there being "a key to every horse's mouth."

The author shares a common view regarding a horse's intelligence, but we are not sure that he has not perhaps overdone it by his examples. He would probably attribute the cause, when the late Lord Haig's charger neighed at the moment that the coffin was being put on board the train at Waterloo Station, to the animal's intelligence, whereas most people would say that it was a very curious and a very touching coincidence.

Colonel McTaggart in his arguments to prove that a horse does not like hunting estimates that he is out of his stable

for nine to ten hours. In an earlier chapter he advocates eighteen hours a week out of his stable as a suitable amount, and in this he includes two days' hunting. It seems that a nine hour day is a high average and an eighteen hour week is a very near approach to the dole.

The author's views on the side-saddle will undoubtedly please all his feminine readers. We would like to have his arguments put forward more explicitly. The disadvantages of the side saddle as regards the horse are obvious, but the advantages of the cross saddle for the rider are not quite so clear.

M.N.T.G.

"Riding and Schooling." By Major R. S. Timmis, D.S.O.
(Vintor & Co.) 10s. 6d.

Major Timmis' name is so well known as to need no introduction to our readers. His long experience in the Canadian Dragoons, during which he has made a careful study of the various methods of training and schooling horses, has rendered him well qualified to write on the subject.

Although he has been outstandingly successful in the show ring, he does not regard show jumping as an art to be cultivated to excess. In his chapter on the "Psychology of the Horse," he remarks that "A horse taught solely to perform impracticable feats of jumping, under artificial conditions, is of little practical value."

It is the author's object to assist an owner to make a horse a safe and pleasant ride under all conditions. To attain this the most careful and systematic training is necessary. There is no more delightful ride in a good hunt than a really well schooled charger, and it is extraordinary how seldom such a one will fall.

It is the practical and common sense methods recommended in this book that will make it specially valuable to young officers.

Some of us may not agree with all he says; e.g., in plate 6. he shows us a rider tightening a girth with his foot out of the stirrup. We have always regarded this as a dangerous practice. Again, when he states on page 115 that a horse's ears should

be small and thin, he goes counter to many good judges who consider that horses with such ears are seldom trustworthy.

However, the author, no doubt, would invite criticism and the book is one we can strongly recommend. R.J.P.A.

“The Houghunter’s Annual” By Captains Scott Cockburn and Head, 4th Q.O. Hussars.

This yearly publication, of which the first number has recently appeared, should help to fill the long felt want for literature on this subject. Besides the summaries from Tent Clubs of their last season’s sport, it contains many interesting and amusing articles by well-known authorities on the sport, and is profusely illustrated with photographs and sketches. Among the latter the outstanding feature is a full page drawing by “Snaffles,” which is one of the most lifelike reproductions of the subject that we have seen, while the sketch by Captain Tulloch at the end is quite excellent and full of movement.

The printing and reproduction are good, but an annual of this kind which one would wish to preserve, merits better binding and a better cover.

It should serve not only to encourage new interest in what is one of the finest sports in the world, but also as H.E. the C.-in-C. in India says in his introduction: “To help to bring back to old pig-stickers many thoughts of the happy days they have spent in the pursuit of the most gallant of animals.”

Copies are obtainable in England from Captain H. N. Head, 4th Q.O. Hussars, 15, Southwick Street, London, W. Price 7s. 6d.; postage 4½d.



SPORTING NOTES

RACING

THE GRAND NATIONAL

Forty two starters, only one to get round without mishap, and a remounted one the only other to finish. Such was the dreary tale of the National of 1928. The winner, Tipperary Tim, is a horse that has been running for years in minor races with little success, and the conditions being all against a tubed horse, it is no wonder that the starting price was 100 to 1. However, he proved himself the best of the six that were left in the race when they came into view the first time round, so it cannot have been all luck. He was well ridden by Mr. Dutton, and it was largely owing to the fact that his rider was not afraid to keep him well on the outside that he escaped accident.

No less than twenty horses came to grief at the Canal turn the first time round. Easter Hero slipped and fell across the fence. Two others bumped into him and there was a general mix up.

Unpopular as it would be to make any alteration, there is no doubt that the course is not suitable to the enormous present-day fields. There appear to be two alternatives. Either to reduce the range of weights from, say, 12 stone to 10 st. 7 lbs., and by this means decrease the number of starters, or to do away with the fence at the Canal turn and fit in another elsewhere. It is a question of reducing the fields or doing something at the place where the worst of the trouble generally occurs. Nobody wants to see the character of the course altered.

THE TWO THOUSAND GUINEAS

The first of the Classics took place under pleasant conditions. The weather was fine and warm and the going perfect.

The withdrawal of Fairway, owing to an abscess in the mouth, left the race very open.

The betting, which was 9 to 4 Sunny Trace, 7 to 2 Royal Minstrel, and 5 to 1 Flamingo, showed how little there was between the three. There was a certain amount of money for Buland at 10 to 1, but nothing else was seriously considered. In the race Sunny Trace quickly showed up and Royal Minstrel was always prominent on the Stand side. At the Bushes, Sunny Trace was in front of Royal Minstrel with Flamingo going well just behind them. In a few strides the leader dropped right out and Flamingo drew out looking an easy winner. Then Royal Minstrel came at him and in turn seemed to have the race won. Then for an instant he faltered, and though no jockey could have got him balanced more quickly than H. Beasley did, he just failed to reach Flamingo by a head.

The winner revels in a ding dong struggle and in Elliot he had a jockey always at his best on such an occasion.

A bay colt by Flamboyant—Lady Peregrine, he is owned by Sir Lawrence Phillips and trained by Jack Jarvis. For a classic winner he is decidedly on the small side, but is beautifully turned and full of quality.

THE ONE THOUSAND GUINEAS

The fillies in this race were a particularly nice lot, and for looks compared well with the runners on the Wednesday. Scuttle, Jurisdiction and Toboggan are three most charming fillies, and it was no surprise that they filled the first three places. It struck us that the last named looked as though she might be made a bit better. Whether that is the case the Oaks will show.

The race was intensely exciting. Scuttle was fractious at the post, and did not get away too well. At the end of half a mile Grand Vixen and Wings of Love were in front with the white and tartan cross of Jurisdiction always prominent. Twice Childs appeared to have an opening, and there was an audible groan when each time the opening closed in front of him. At last, however, the chance came, and at once Scuttle strode into a prominent position. In the dip she and Jurisdiction drew away from the others. Richards rode desperately, but the longer stride of the King's filly told and she gradually drew away to win by a length amidst such a storm of cheering as has rarely been heard at Newmarket.

By Captain Cuttle—Stained Glass, the winner is a bright bay with all the action and appearance of a stayer.

His Majesty has not had his share of success with his stud. May the future have better things in store.

THE DERBY.

Nineteen horses faced the starter. Ever since his race at Newmarket, Fairway had maintained his position as favourite, but during the last few days his price had eased, owing to the persistent backing of Sunny Trace. In the Two Thousand this colt ran like a rank non-stayer, but those who knew most about him evidently thought this running was wrong, as after having been quoted at 33 to 1, money poured in to such an extent that he eventually started at 5 to 1, and at one time threatened to oust Flamingo from his position of second favourite. Royal Minstrel, who had finished a long way in front of him at Newmarket was evidently not thought likely to be suited by the Epsom course and was comparatively neglected in the market.

In the race Fairway never looked to hold a winning chance and eventually finished nearer last than first. Coming round Tattenham Corner Flamingo and Sunny Trace were clear of the others. As soon as the straight was reached Felstead came on in pursuit of the leaders. As in the Guineas, Sunny Trace suddenly cracked, and Felstead, strongly ridden by Wragg, tackled Flamingo, and after a short struggle went on to win by one and half lengths. Black Watch, six lengths away, was third.

The winner had run inconspicuously in the Two Thousand but had afterwards won a race at Hurst Park, and proved himself to be the best stayer in what will probably turn out to be a year of moderate horses.

THE DERBY STAKES of 100 sovs. each, with 3,000 sovs. added ; breeder of winner to receive 500 sovs., owner of second 400 sovs., owner of third 200 sovs. About one mile and a half.

Felstead, b c, by Spion Kop—Felkington (Sir H. Cunliffe-Owen), 9 st.	H. Wragg	1
Flamingo, b c, by Flamboyant—Lady Peregrine (Sir L. Philipps), 9 st.	C. Elliott	2
Black Watch, b c, by Black Gauntlet—Punka III (Mr. L. Neumann) 9 st.	C. Smirke	3
Advocate (Sir A. Bailey), 9 st.	J. Marshall	0
Bubbles II (Baron E. de Rothschild), 9 st.	C. Bouillon	0
Camelford (Lord Rosebery), 9 st.	J. Leach	0
Constant Son (Mr. T. Davidson), 9 st.	B. Carslake	0
Gang Warily (Mrs. G. Drummond), 9 st.	S. Donoghue	0
Grange View (Mr. W. J. Waldron), 9 st.	H. Graves	0
Palais Royal II (M. J. Wittouck), 9 st.	M. Allemand	0
Porthole (Mr. S. B. Joel), 9 st.	F. Winter	0
Ranjit Singh (The Aga Khan), 9 st.	M. Beary	0
Royal Crusader (Mr. D. M. Gant), 9 st.	G. Hulme	0
Royal Minstrel (Captain G. P. Gough), 9 st.	J. Childs	0
Scintillation (Mr. C. Whitburn), 9 st.	J. Sirett	0
Sunny Trace (Lord Dewar), 9 st.	G. Richards	0
Yeomanstown (Mr. H. Armitage), 9 st.	E. Gardner	0
Fairway (Lord Derby), 9 st.	T. Weston	0
Fernkloof (Lady Richardson), 9 st.	R. Perryman	0

Winner trained by O. Bell, at Lambourn.

Betting : 3 to 1 agst Fairway, 9 to 2 Flamingo, 5 to 1 Sunny Trace, 100 to 8 Ranjit Singh, 100 to 6 Royal Minstrel, 18 to 1 Gang Warily, 22 to 1 Bubbles II, 25 to 1 Camelford, 33 to 1 each Black Watch, Felstead and Fernkloof, 40 to 1 Porthole, 50 to 1 Palais Royal II, 200 to 1 each agst the others.

There was no special place betting.

Won by a length and a half ; six lengths separated second and third. Fernkloof was fourth and Yeomanstown last except Royal Crusader, who was tailed off.

THE OAKS.

The result proved a sad disappointment to the many thousands who journeyed to Epsom hoping to cheer a royal victory. Since winning the One Thousand, Scuttle had thriven on her work and confidence in her was so strong that she was backed down to evens. She got away well enough and at the top of the hill was lying fourth. Coming down the hill she moved up into second place, behind Toboggan, who had made all the running. For a moment it looked as though she might get up, but it was not to be, and Childs was unable to make any impression on the leader who, finishing very strongly, drew away to win by four lengths. Flegere, six lengths away, was third.

The winner is a bay filly by Hurry On—Glacier. She is owned by Lord Derby and trained by Frank Butters. She was admirably ridden by Weston.

POINT TO POINT RACING

The following are the results at the Army Point to Point Meeting, held at Silverstone in the Grafton Country on 27th March.

GRAND MILITARY LIGHT-WEIGHT RACE (for the Prince of Wales's Cup).

Lieutenant J. Quicke's (R.N.) Charlie Brown	Mr. R. A. Wyrley Birch	1
Mr. E. Wadham's (16th/5th Lancers) Grand Canal	Owner	2
Captain J. H. Hirsch's (13th/18th Hussars) Glenmilliam	Owner	3

Fourteen ran. Won by a distance; five lengths separated second and third.

GRAND MILITARY WELTER RACE (for Lord Beatty's Cup).

Mr. A. H. Ferguson's (Life Guards) Kilcarty	Owner	1
Colonel T. R. Price's (Welsh Guards) Queensgate	Owner	2
Mr. R. G. R. Oxley's (60th Rifles) Sparkler	Owner	3

Twelve ran. Won by half a length; five lengths separated second and third.

CHARGERS' RACE (for the late Field-Marshal Lord Haig's Challenge Cup).

Mr. W. L. Newell's (R.A.) Ismet	Owner	1
Mr. R. B. Shephard's (7th Hussars) The Bishop	Owner	2
Captain G. W. E. Heath's (R.H.A.) Weary	Owner	3

Nine ran. Won by two lengths; four lengths separated second and third.

PAST AND PRESENT RACE (for Lord Cavan's Cup).

Lieutenant W. P. Wyatt's (17th/21st Lancers) Parky	Owner	1
Mr. H. C. Walford's (17th/21st Lancers) Blackthorn X	Owner	2
Captain A. Knowles's (late Scots Greys) Royal Sovereign	Owner	3

Seven ran. Won by four lengths; five lengths separated second and third.

ADJACENT HUNT'S FARMERS' RACE.

Mr. W. H. Bonner's (Bicester) Belrath	Mr. C. G. Bonner	1
Mr. T. Stanley's (Pythchley) Trekers Way	Mr. G. B. Thompson	2
Mr. J. H. Westlake's (Grafton) Vera Causa	Mr. T. G. Wilkes	3

Ten ran. Won by eight lengths; seven lengths separated second and third.

FOOTBALL

THE CAVALRY CUP

This annual competition was won by the 11th Hussars, who defeated the 3rd/6th Dragoon Guards at Tidworth by the odd goal of three, gained in the last minute after a thrilling match. The winners are a good level lot and are well up to the level of former successful teams. In the first round their form was scarcely convincing, as after leading the Queen's Bay by 5—0 at half time, they became very ragged and allowed their opponents to score three goals in quick succession.

However, in the second round they did better and defeated the much fancied 17th/21st Lancers after extra time in the re-play.

In the semi-finals against the Royal Scots Greys, they led by 2—0 at half time, but the Greys made a fine effort and were only beaten by the odd goal.

POLO IN INDIA

We regret that we have been unable to obtain a proper account of the Inter-Regimental Tournament. The Indian papers made no reference to the earlier ties, and the account promised us has not arrived.

The final was played at Meerut on 2nd March. The teams lined up as under :—

11th P.A.V.O. Cavalry

Mr. G. Wheeler

Capt. P. Tatham

Capt. J. Dening

Capt. G. Carr-White

Central India Horse

Capt. H. Wansborough Jones

Capt. R. George

Capt. B. Dalrymple-Hay

Capt. A. Alexander

The 11th started well and Dening and Tatham both scored in the first chukker. The C.I.H. then improved and at the end of the third chukker the score was 2 all. (In the very incorrect press report both these goals are given as having been scored by Dening, who was on the other side).

In the fourth chukker Tatham scored once for the 11th, but two goals from Dalrymple-Hay gave the C.I.H. the lead for the first time in the match.

There was no score in the fifth chukker, but in the sixth a fine effort resulted in Carr-White equalising (4 all).

Extra time was played with widened goal posts. The 11th had slightly the better of this, and, amidst intense excitement, Wheeler hit the winning goal.

In the Subalterns' Tournament the 4th/7th Dragoon Guards defeated the 4th Hussars by 9 goals to 6.

TEAMS

4th/7th Dragoon Guards

Mr. C. H. Dixon

Mr. J. F. Sanderson

Mr. H. R. Frink

Mr. H. C. Bolckow

4th Hussars

Mr. R. Knight

Mr. J. P. Robinson

Mr. P. W. Dollar

Mr. W. Fuller-Brown

PIGSTICKING IN INDIA

This year's Kadir Cup Meeting was held on 15th, 16th and 17th March, at the old rendezvous, Sujmanna. There was an excellent entry of eighty-two.

The crops had not yet been cut and there was some anxiety as to whether pig would be sufficient. This fear was fortunately not justified, and there was never any difficulty in running off the heats.

The result was a popular win for the Secretary of the Muttra Tent Club, Captain H. McA. Richards, R.A. To reach the final he had to survive three severe heats, in each of which there was a previous Kadir Cup winner, and he had no previous knowledge of the country.

His horse Centaur was bred at the Mona Stud, and is by an arab sire. For a small horse, barely 15 hands, he showed exceptional pace, and though only six years old followed the pig like an old performer.

The runner-up, Major Mason Macfarlane, is also a gunner. All through he showed exceptional form, and it was only the question of weight that told against him in the final.

Mr. Benson, the Hon. Secretary, was again a great success. Few realise what an immense amount of work falls on the organiser of a meeting of this description, but nothing seemed to upset him, and to his unfailing industry and courtesy much of the success of the meeting was due.

THE MUTTRA CUP

The Muttra Cup was given by the Inniskilling Dragoons as a tribute to the sport they had enjoyed when stationed at Muttra before the war. The competition is run annually under the control of the Muttra Tent Club and is limited to teams of three, who must belong to a recognised tent club or be members of the same military unit or service.

Each team is given at least three runs, and if any team kills only once in three runs it automatically disappears, the other teams remain in going on the line in order of rotation (which is fixed by a draw on the first day) until a particular team obtains a definite superiority.

This year eleven teams actually competed and the winners were the 4th Hussars "B" Team. They were successful in killing six pig in six successive runs. The 4th Hussars "A", the Calcutta Tent and the Muttra Tent Club "A" and "B" teams all killed five out of six pig on the first day.

HOG HUNTERS' CUP

HEAVY WEIGHT.—Run on conclusion of Kadir Cup, over about 4 miles fair pig-sticking country. Post Entries: Open to all horses which in the opinion of the Committee are bona fide pig-stickers.

- * Horses ridden by other than nominators to carry 1 stone extra.

Captain J. A. Herbert (R.G.H.), br Aust. g, The Gleaner	Owner	1
Mr. C. M. Clements (4th Hussars), b Aust. g, Ulu	Owner	2
Mr. C. D. T. Pope (R.A.), b Aust. g, Wara	Owner	3

Also ran: Mr. J. S. Lowsley Williams (R.H.A.), b Aust. g, Reprieve (Owner); Mr. E. R. Sword (4th Hussars), b Aust. g, Carynn (Owner); Major F. N. MacFarlane (R.A.), bl Aust. g, Crepe-de-chine (Owner); Mr. J. P. Robinson (4th Hussars), ch cb g, Hornet (Owner); Lieut.-Colonel W. P. Paynter (R.H.A.), bl Aust. g, Sandown (Owner); Major Willoughby Holland, b Aust. g, Double Head (Owner).

Won by a neck.

LIGHT WEIGHT.—

Major S. W. Marriott (R.A.V.C.), ch cb g, Harlequin	Owner	1
Mr. I. Hopper, mr Aust. m, Wendy	Owner	2
Captain T. G. Atherton (R.D.H.), b Aust. m, Emily		
Mr. G. Clochester (R.A.)		3

Mr. J. F. G. Gage (4th Hussars), Aust. g, Last Crack
Captain C. F. Forestier Walker (3rd Hussars) 4

Also ran: Mr. H. G. Cowdell (4th Hussars), b c b g, Frankie (Owner); Mr. Maitland Heriot, b Aust. g, Beau Site (Owner); Mr. H. F. Smith, br Aust. c, Richard (Owner); Mr. J. F. B. Gage (4th Hussars), b Aust. C, First Chance, (Mr. J. E. Armstrong, 4th Hussars); Captain C. F. Marriott (20th Lancers), ch Aust. c, Mameluke (Mr. H. S. Ford, 5th/6th D.G.).

POLO IN EGYPT

SEASON 1927-1928

YOUSRY CUP.—Total handicap not to exceed 8.

1st Round—7th November, 1927

15th/19th Hussars "A"	beat	12th Lancers "B" (rec. 1½)	..	11—3
The Royals	"	R.H.A. "A" (rec. 4)	..	5—4
12th Lancers "A"	"	R.H.A. "B" (rec. 2½)	..	5—3
Horse Hairs	w.o.	15th/19th Hussars "C"	..	
Light Brigade (rec. ½)	beat	Somerset Light Infantry	..	8—0
12th Lancers "C" (rec. ½)	"	15th/19th Hussars "B"	..	8—2

2nd Round—9th November, 1927

The Royals	beat	15th/19th Hussars "A"	..	3—2
12th Lancers "A" (rec. ½)	"	Horse Hairs	..	6—3
Light Brigade (rec. 2½)	"	12th Lancers "C"	..	6—5
12th Lancers "D"	"	R.H.A. "C" (rec. 1½)	..	7—2

Semi-finals—14th November, 1927.

12th Lancers "A" (rec. ½)	beat	The Royals	..	2+½
				(Won by a fraction)
12th Lancers "D"	"	Light Brigade (rec. 1½)	..	6—4

Final—16th November, 1927.

12th Lancers "D" (rec. 1½)	beat	12th Lancers "A"	..	3—1
Mr. M. E. B. Sparke ..	0	Mr. K. Smith ..	0	
Mr. I. F. C. Smith ..	2	Capt. H. Russell ..	4	
Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright	3	Capt. J. C. R. Rawnsley	3	
Mr. G. J. Kidston ..	0	Mr. W. P. Browne Clayton	0	
	—		—	
	5		7	
	—		—	

VISITORS' CUP TOURNAMENT.—Total handicap not to exceed 12.

1st Round

12th Lancers "A"	w.o.	15th/19th Hussars "B"	
------------------	------	-----------------------	--

2nd Round

12th Lancers "A" (10)	beat	R.H.A. (rec. 4)	..	8—5
15th/19th Hussars "A" (12)	"	The Royals (10)	..	8—2
Kasr-el-Doubara (12)	"	12th Lancers "B" (7)	..	11—4
15th/19th Hussars "C" (12)	"	Light Brigade (4)	..	10—7

Semi-finals—30th November, 1927

15th/19th Hussars "A"	beat	12th Lancers "A"	..	4—3
Kasr-el-Doubara	"	15th/19th Hussars "C"	..	5—4

Final—2nd December, 1927.

15th/19th Hussars "A"	beat	Kasr-el-Doubara	..	4—0
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith	2	Capt. C. L. Huggins	..	1
Mr. R. L. Agnew ..	2	Major-General Sir Charlton		
Mr. T. J. Arnott ..	4	Spinks ..	..	2
Lieut.-Col. J. Godman	4	Major H. F. Brace	..	5
		Major H. L. Jones	..	4
	—		—	
	12		12	
	—		—	

PUBLIC SCHOOLS TOURNAMENT.—

1st Round—5th December, 1927.

Wellington	beat	15th/19th Hussars Eton "A" ..	5—1
12th Lancers Eton "A"	"	15th/19th Hussars Eton "B" ..	7—1
Harrow	"	Cheltenham	12—2

2nd Round—7th December, 1927.

Wellington	beat	12th Lancers Eton "B" ..	4—3
12th Lancers Eton "A"	"	Harrow	3—0

Final—9th December, 1927.

Wellington	beat	12th Lancers Eton "A" ..	5—0
Capt. D'A. F. H. Harris		Major J. R. C. Rawnsley	
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Mr. W. G. Carr	
Major J. C. W. Francis		Lieut.-Colonel H. V. S. Charrington	
Mr. R. H. Blackwell		Mr. F. Arkwright	

LADY MAXWELL CUP.—Open tournament played on handicap.

1st Round—12th December, 1927

R.H.A. (rec. 8)	beat	Wasps	15—5
Mr. J. V. D. Radford 1		Mr. E. de Heller ..	1
Mr. H. C. Phipps .. 0		Mr. G. de Heller ..	2
Capt. W. T. H. Peppe 2		Capt. H. Russell ..	4
Mr. F. E. Vining .. 0		Major H. L. Jones ..	4
—		—	—
3			11
—			—

Semi-finals—14th December, 1927.

15th/19th Hussars "B"	beat	12th Lancers	4—3
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith 2		Mr. W. G. Carr ..	2
Mr. R. L. Agnew .. 2		Major J. W. Hornby ..	3
Mr. T. J. Arnott .. 4		Lieut.-Colonel H. V. S. Charrington ..	4
Lieut.-Col. J. Godman 4		Mr. F. Arkwright ..	3
—		—	—
12			12
—			—
15th/19th Hussars "A"	beat	R.H.A. (rec. 8)	13—10
Major J. C. W. Francis 3		Mr. J. V. D. Radford ..	1
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde .. 5		Mr. H. C. Phipps ..	0
Mr. J. G. Leaf ... 6		Capt. W. T. H. Peppe ..	2
Major H. F. Brace .. 5		Mr. F. E. Vining ..	0
—		—	—
19			3
—			—

Final—16th December, 1927

15th/19th Hussars "A"	beat	15th/19th Hussars "B"	..	10—4
Major J. C. W. Francis	3	Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith	..	2
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde	.. 5	Mr. R. L. Agnew	..	2
Mr. J. G. Leaf	.. 6	Mr. T. J. Arnott	..	4
Major H. F. Brace	.. 5	Lieut.-Colonel J. Godman	..	4
	—		—	
	19		12	
	—		—	

CHRISTMAS TOURNAMENT.—Total handicap not to exceed 6.*1st Round—26th December, 1927.*

Light Brigade	beat	12th Lancers "B"	..	3—1
Royals "B"	..	Royals "A"	..	3—2

2nd Round—28th December, 1927.

Light Brigade	beat	R.H.A. "B"	..	8—3
Norfolk Regiment	..	Royals "B"	..	4—2
12th Lancers "C"	..	15th/19th Hussars	..	2—0
12th Lancers "A"	..	R.H.A. "A"	..	7—1

Semi-finals—30th December, 1927.

Light Brigade	beat	Norfolk Regiment	..	7—4
12th Lancers "A"	..	12th Lancers "C"	..	8—2

Final—2nd January, 1928.

12th Lancers "A"	beat	Light Brigade	..	7—1
Mr. W. G. Carr	.. 2	Mr. T. H. du Boulay	..	0
Mr. W. Brown Clayton	0	Lieut.-Col. W. J. Ainsworth	..	3
Mr. F. Arkwright	.. 3	Mr. G. B. Clifton-Browne	..	2
Mr. G. Kidston	.. 0	Mr. P. S. Whitehead	..	1
	—		—	
	5		6	
	—		—	

JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP.—No individual player's handicap to exceed 3.*1st Round—4th January, 1928*

15th/19th Hussars	beat	12th Lancers "A"	..	4—3
Royals	..	Light Brigade	..	5—2

2nd Round—6th January, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	Wanderers	..	7—1
Royals	..	12th Lancers "B"	..	9—1

Final—9th January, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	Royals	..	6—3
Capt. J. C. Rogerson		Mr. R. B. Moseley		
Mr. R. L. Agnew		Capt. A. S. Casey		
Major J. C. W. Francis		Capt. D'A. F. H. Harris		
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith		Major F. W. Wilson-Fitzgerald		

COUNTRY LIFE SALTS.—Open handicap.

1st Round—13th January, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars' Captains	beat	Kruschens	..	..	..	9—2
15th/19th Hussars' Subalterns	„	Royals' Subalterns	..	..	..	6—5

2nd Round—16th January, 1928.

12th Lancers' Subalterns	beat	15th/19th Hussars' Captains	..	8—4
Majors "B"	„	Majors "A"	..	4½—4
Colonels	„	Captains, Etceteras	..	7—5
15th/19th Hussars' Subalterns	„	R.H.A. Subalterns	..	13—4

Semi-finals—18th January, 1928.

12th Lancers' Subalterns	beat	Majors "B"	..	..	8—4
15th/19th Hussars' Subalterns	„	Colonels	..	..	3—0

Final—20th January, 1928

15th/19th Hussars' Subalterns	beat	12th Lancers' Subalterns	..	5—4
Hon. T. W. A. Frankland	2	Mr. W. Browne Clayton	0	
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde	5	Mr. F. Arkwright	3	
Mr. J. G. Leaf	6	Mr. H. Arkwright	1	
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith	2	Mr. W. G. Carr	2	
—		—		
15		6		
—		—		

This tournament was open to teams consisting of 4 players of the same rank.

INTER-REGIMENTAL CUP.—Open.

1st Round—27th January, 1928

15th/19th Hussars	beat	Royals	..	..	5—1
Major J. C. W. Francis		Mr. R. B. Moseley			
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Major F. W. Wilson-Fitzgerald			
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Lieut.-Colonel E. W. T. Miles			
Lieut.-Colonel J. Godman		Mr. H. W. Lloyd			

Final—30th January, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	12th Lancers	..	..	5—3
Major J. C. W. Francis		Mr. W. G. Carr			
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Major J. W. Hornby			
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright			
Lieut.-Colonel J. Godman		Capt. H. Russell			

SUBALTERN'S TOURNAMENT.—Open.

1st Round—5th March, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	12th Lancers	..	..	6—3
Hon. T. W. A. Frankland		Mr. W. G. Carr			
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Mr. W. Browne Clayton			
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright			
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith		Mr. G. J. Kidston			
Royals	beat	R.H.A.	..	..	9—0
Mr. P. G. Heywood-Lonsdale		Mr. P. S. Whitehead			
Mr. R. Peake		Mr. H. C. Phipps			
Mr. R. B. Moseley		Mr. J. V. D. Radford			
Mr. H. W. Lloyd		Mr. B. C. H. Kimmins			

Final—7th March, 1928.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	Royals	6—2
Hon. T. W. A. Frankland		Mr. P. G. Heywood-Lonsdale	
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Mr. R. Peake	
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Mr. R. B. Moseley	
Mr. C. Cokayne-Frith		Mr. H. W. Lloyd	

OPEN CUP.—Open.

1st Round—21st March, 1928.

12th Lancers	beat	Hawks	13—3
Mr. W. G. Carr		Mr. R. L. Agnew	
Major J. W. Hornby		Mr. T. J. Arnott	
Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright		Capt. D'A. F. H. Harris	
Capt. H. E. Russell		Capt. A. S. Casey	

Final

15th/19th Hussars	beat	12th Lancers (after extra time)	6—5
Major J. C. W. Francis		Mr. W. G. Carr	
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Major J. W. Hornby	
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright	
Major H. F. Brace		Capt. H. E. Russell	

The finalists for the Open Cup competed for the KING'S CUP.

15th/19th Hussars	beat	12th Lancers (after extra time)	7—6
Major J. C. W. Francis		Mr. W. G. Carr	
Mr. W. R. N. Hinde		Major J. W. Hornby	
Mr. J. G. Leaf		Mr. F. G. B. Arkwright	
Major H. F. Brace		Capt. H. E. Russell	

This annual challenge cup was presented by H.M. The King of Egypt to be competed for between the winners of the Open Cup and a team representing the rest of Egypt. It has been won by the 15th/19th Hussars for five years in succession.



2025



CMS del

Enlaid by L.A. Allmon

Acquainted by Huz

A Tournament as practised in the xv Century.
1450.

1. The first part of the document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions.

2. It then outlines the various methods used to collect and analyze data, including interviews, surveys, and focus groups.

3. The next section describes the results of the study, highlighting the key findings and their implications for practice.

4. Finally, the document concludes with a discussion of the limitations of the study and suggestions for future research.

5. The following table provides a summary of the data collected during the study.

6. The data shows that the majority of participants reported a high level of satisfaction with the service.

7. However, there were some concerns regarding the quality of the service in certain areas.

8. These findings suggest that further improvements are needed in these areas to enhance the overall quality of the service.

9. The study also identified several factors that were associated with higher levels of satisfaction.

10. These factors include the quality of the service, the responsiveness of the staff, and the overall environment.

11. The results of the study have important implications for the development of service quality improvement strategies.

12. By focusing on these key areas, organizations can ensure that they are providing the highest quality of service to their customers.

13. The study also highlights the need for ongoing monitoring and evaluation of service quality.

14. This will allow organizations to identify areas for improvement and implement changes as needed.

15. In conclusion, the study found that the majority of participants were satisfied with the service.

16. However, there were some concerns regarding the quality of the service in certain areas.

17. These findings suggest that further improvements are needed in these areas to enhance the overall quality of the service.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

OCTOBER, 1928

JOUSTS, TOURNEYS AND TILTS

By LIEUT.-COLONEL F. E. WHITTON

SEVEN hundred years hence historians of English games may be led, owing to a loose terminology employed by us to-day, into giving a ludicrously inaccurate description of our sports. They may depict people of the sixteenth century enjoying a Wimbledon week, and “contrariwise”—as Tweedledum might say—may describe Wimbledon at the beginning of the twentieth century as given over to a game within an enclosed court with dedans and grille. Such inaccuracy would arise from the unfortunate manner in which “tennis” is employed to-day, both for the ancient game and for its totally different off-shoot, “lawn tennis.” A similar confusion generally exists to-day about the mediæval and later combats between mail-clad horsemen. The expression “tournament,” as will be shown in this article, is sometimes a misnomer. Further, as these armoured combats mostly took place before the age of printing, and entirely before the age of mechanical illustration, the opportunities for error were more numerous. Romantic writers wrote romances and the more sober historians were often monks,

whose mode of life was not attuned to fighting technicalities. Further, illuminations in manuscripts must not be estimated at their face value. For artistic purposes they were often made fantastic and they are rarely contemporaneous with the attempts they portray. Again it must be remembered that mediæval artists paid very little attention to "period" details. We are all familiar with pictures of Old Masters in which the characters of early Christendom are dressed in the fashions of the Middle Ages.

In old time accounts of these combats we must therefore beware of anachronisms and inaccuracies and must remember that a picture of two knights charging each other may be meant to depict an incident occurring any time during a period of six centuries and in any country in Christendom. It is most unfortunate, too, that modern writers prove such broken reeds. We can forgive Tennyson his "Last Tournament" and can smile at the simple Geraint so "molten down in mere uxoriousness" as to be "forgetful of the tilt and tournament." Tennyson was dealing with a mythical era—so mythical that Geraint "forgot" an innovation—the tilt—which did not come in till nine hundred years later; it is as if William the Conqueror ceased to amuse himself with his wireless and gave up going to the "movies."

Sir Walter Scott is more blameworthy. In "Ivanhoe" he deliberately endeavours to reconstruct a period, that of Richard I. But whereas the account of the "Gentle and Joyous Passage of Arms of Ashby de la Zouche" is admirably worked out in many details, in one respect it is hopelessly misleading. His warriors wore harness of plate; actually they should have been clad in chain-mail and Sir Walter misses the bull's eye by some two hundred years. The task of the writer of an article such as this for the CAVALRY JOURNAL is thus beset with considerable difficulty.

Let us first of all define our terms. "Tourney" and "Joust" are often confounded with each other, but as a matter of fact the two things were sharply different. In the tourney the opponents were *teams* or *sides*. It was a battle

in miniature ; an armed contest of courtesy on horseback, troop against troop, chiefly with swords. The joust, on the other hand, was a *single* combat between mounted cavaliers run with lances. A tourney therefore differed from a Joust in the way a rugger international differs from the golf championship. A tilt was a joust of later days and run under conditions devised for "Safety First" reasons, i.e., by the introduction of a wooden barrier which kept the contestants from colliding ; and parallel to, and on opposite sides of, which, the knights galloped one against the other. Jousts, it may be noted, were often included with tourneys ; and the word "tournament" —although really the same as "tourney"—came to be used in a loose, generalised sense for any mock fight, or series of fights, between armoured nobles.

For two reasons we propose to confine ourselves principally to jousts, and in England. In the first place, in order to keep this article within reasonable bounds ; and in the second place, because the tourneys, or *mêlées*, frequently degenerated into vulgar brawls, particularly when they had an "international" character and English *versus* French or other foreigners was the contest. In the thirteenth century considerable bitterness existed between English and foreigners owing to the very rough treatment some of our competitors had received abroad. The English got some of their own back at a tournament at Rochester in 1251 when all rules and regulations went by the board and the proceedings were simply a free fight. The crowd seems to have joined in and the foreign jousts were set upon with staves and chased into the town where they fled for refuge. Two years later the foreigners retaliated. The Earl of Gloucester and a friend took part in a tournament overseas and were so roughly handled by the people "as to require fomentations and baths" before they were in a condition to return to England. A more noticeable case was when Edward I was returning from the Holy Land to take possession of the Crown of England. He was invited, with a number of his followers, to take part in a tournament near Châlons. In the *mêlée* the Count of Châlons and King Edward began an undignified wrestling on

horseback, in which the Count was heavily thrown, and the exasperation of the French cavaliers was so great that a real battle ensued in which the outside followers of either side took an active part, the English archers using their bows with considerable effect. This incident led to a rule by which laying hands on an opponent was strictly forbidden.

Leaving these *mêlées* we can now deal with the single combats, or jousts. It is impossible here to do more than make a very brief allusion to chivalry and knighthood, with which the joust is inextricably connected. Briefly, to be a mounted fighting man was the aim of every young aristocrat and all his education was shaped to that end. No one was born a knight, not even the king. Only after a certain apprenticeship and a ceremony of consecration could one become a knight. The young noble must practise riding and wielding lance and sword; sometimes he served as apprentice in the house of his father, sometimes his father sent him to the castle of one of his friends. Passing through the ranks of page and squire the young man—provided he had the means to purchase his equipment and to support a squire and the usual servants—could be solemnly received into the corps of Knights. The ceremony required the *accolade* or stroke with the sword. Technically this was a blow, and a blow was an insult—in this case designedly so—and at one time was given sharply with the fist on the back of the aspirant's neck. The intention was to remind the young knight that he was now a man and that this blow was the very last he must ever brook without vengeance.

As the young knight had been brought up chiefly on military exercises and athletic sports and as he was unable to write and, in the great majority of cases, unable to read as well, it was only natural that he should develop a marked taste for field sports and fighting. Ignorant, brutal, violent, often ferocious, he was yet courageous and proud. He was proud of being a gentleman and a soldier. And he was, theoretically at least, passionately devoted to truth—so much so that to contradict him was to insult him, by implying that

he had been guilty of falsehood. Over and above these characteristics of chivalry was one peculiarly connected with it, which we may call the sex-complex. While still in the probationary stage of squire the young aspirant chose his "lady love" whom he was expected to regard with an adoration at once earnest, respectful, and the more meritorious if concealed. It was in this atmosphere made up of ignorance, brutality, honour, self respect, and a curiously refined adoration that the joust flourished.

Broadly speaking jousts can be divided into jousts for sport and exercise on the one hand, and "business" jousts on the other—in other words, jousts of peace and jousts of war. The latter might be dismissed as being practically synonymous with the more modern duel were it not that they were bound up with a curious procedure known as trial by combat or legal duel introduced by the Normans but analagous to the trial by ordeal of Anglo-Saxon times. The principle involved was the same in both cases, namely, that the Almighty would not remain indifferent if solemnly invoked but would interfere miraculously so that the ends of justice might be furthered. The system was allowed in certain cases such as on a civil writ of right for the recovery of land, and in criminal charges of treason or felony on an appellant making a sworn declaration before a judge. The judicial duel, however, never took root in England as it did in France and fell greatly into disuse after the time of Elizabeth. Nevertheless it was still legal until modern times and as late as 1817 a man, charged with the murder of a girl, claimed his right to challenge the appellant, the brother of the victim, to wager of battle. His suit was allowed by Lord Ellenborough as being in accordance with the law of the land, and, the challenge being refused, the criminal escaped. Next year the law was abolished. This is, of course, getting very far from mail-clad mediæval knights and the incident is quoted merely as showing how long some of the features of feudalism survived.

Let us revert now to the thirteenth century and view a tournament in which jousts of peace, that is to say with blunted

lances, were included as part of the programme. In the early days of tournaments there were only five authorised lists in England, and they were all south of the Trent. At a later period these enclosures were usually placed in the neighbourhood of a large town where there was a hall spacious enough for the banquet and the dance ; the size of the lists being regulated by the number of cavaliers expected to take part. The lists were enclosed by a double row of palisading, high enough to prevent a horse leaping over. The space between the rows afforded a place of refuge for the varlets and attendants. The rôle of the varlets was to rush in and steady their masters in the saddle, when swaying after their careers ; and, when unhorsed, to extricate and drag them, if opportunity offered, out of the press or from among the horses' hoofs in the *mêlée*. The knights were unable, it should be remembered, to help themselves in their heavy armour. The duty was both difficult and dangerous but the varlets and attendants had to manage as best they could. Openings were left at either end of the lists for entrance and exit, and movable barriers were provided for closing them when required. A thick covering of sand was strewn on the ground, or it was well mulched with tanning refuse so as to provide a soft bed for breaking the force of a cavalier when unseated. The lists were gaily decorated with tapestry, bunting and heraldic devices ; a tribune for the umpire or judge ; benches for the spectators ; as well as special galleries for the ladies, which were often adorned with gold and silver embroideries. Two pavilions were pitched for the use of the leaders, which were removed before the commencement of the tourney.

The scene presented by a tournament must have been brilliant in the extreme, and the element of danger involved would add greatly to the interest and excitement of the spectators. Permanent lists were often surrounded by a ditch or moat. The marshals of the lists, kings of arms, heralds and poursuivants-at-arms were stationed within the enclosure to note the various incidents taking place among the combatants ; and it was the duty of the first named to see that the rules

of chivalry and general regulations were strictly observed. Trumpets announced the entry of each competitor, who was followed into the list by his esquires; and flourishes of music were heard at intervals to animate the combatants and to mark special feats of gallantry. Each knight usually bore on his person some token of his lady love, which was disposed on his helmet, lance or shield. The armour and horses of the vanquished fell as spoil to the victors, unless ransomed by payments in money; this, however, was the case only in tournaments of courtesy. The jousting at a tournament usually ended with *le coup ou le lance des Dames*—a homage to the fair sex joyfully rendered.*

As early as the last quarter of the thirteenth century some of the tournaments had become mere pageants of horsemen and in the Jousts of Peace held at Windsor Park in 1278 the sword blades were of whalebone and parchment silvered; the helms were of boiled leather and the shields of light timber. But the majority of the meetings were not held on what we may call "Aldershot Tattoo" lines. The contests were rough sport and many a tournament had its tale of wounded in the chronicle books. We read how Roger of Lemburn struck Arnold de Montigny dead with a lance thrust under the helm. The first of the Montagu earls of Salisbury died of hurts taken at a Windsor jousting and in those same lists at Windsor the earl's grandson, Sir William Montagu, was killed by his own father. And in 1256, William Longespée was so bruised that he never recovered his strength. Many other cases similar to the latter are mentioned in old records.

By the fifteenth century England had become more refined, less barbarous and less gladiatorial. This change of outlook was reflected in tournaments in which the sporting rather than the dangerous side began to make the greater appeal. About 1400 the armourers began to devise harness with defences specially wrought for service in the lists. Already in the

* "The Tournament," by R. Coltman Clephan. Compare with this account that given by Sir Walter Scott in "Ivanhoe." It will be noticed that the first-named writer says nothing about a Queen of Beauty.

fourteenth century the more primitive chain-mail had given place to plate armour, but this had proved inadequate to resist the then weapons of attack. At Milan which was the chief seat of the industry during the fifteenth century, armour was forged of such strength as to be capable of resisting not only thrusts of the lance but strokes from the terrible battle-axe, sword and mace, practically without fracture. Special gadgets in armour and saddlery were also introduced with a view to the lists. Thus the vamplate on the lance was much enlarged so as to form what was practically a shield for the lance arm. The right side of the cuirass was sometimes flattened so as to facilitate the management of the lance. The steels of the saddle lent such protection to the bodies of the jousts below the breast that in some friendly encounters it was found possible to dispense with leg armour.

The danger to life and limb in the joust was not, however, confined to the effect of lance thrusts. Serious accidents ensued from the collisions of the horses. In the new plate armour with its closed helmet the jouster was practically a human tank and suffered the tanks' disadvantage, that of blindness. Through the slots or orifices of his head-gear, the cavalier's range of vision was extremely limited and many injuries had befallen riders through the collision of their mounts, mostly by accident, although sometimes by design. The idea of the tilt was conceived chiefly with a view towards obviating this danger. The tilt, or *toile*, was at first a rope hung with cloth, stretched along the middle of the lists, but later it became a solid barrier of planks along which the tilters charged in opposite directions, bridle-arms towards it, their lances held in rest in their right hands on the tilt side of the horse's neck, striking the polished glancing surface of their adversary's armour at an angle. The tilt had the advantage of lending a fixed direction to the jousts in their careers, though they often failed to touch each other.*

With this innovation risk was greatly minimised, and on the whole the joust was henceforth a bloodless entertainment.

* R. Coltman Clephan. *Op. cit.*

Accidents, however, could not be entirely eliminated, and as late as 1559 Henry II of France was killed by a blow on the temple owing to the failure of his adversary, Gabriel de Montgomeri, to cast up in time the truncheon of his splintered lance. It should be noted that even long after the introduction of the tilt the hardier spirits continued to joust in the open and with pointed lances. In order to obviate the risks of collision, cushions or mattresses stuffed with straw were placed as buffers over the horses' chests.

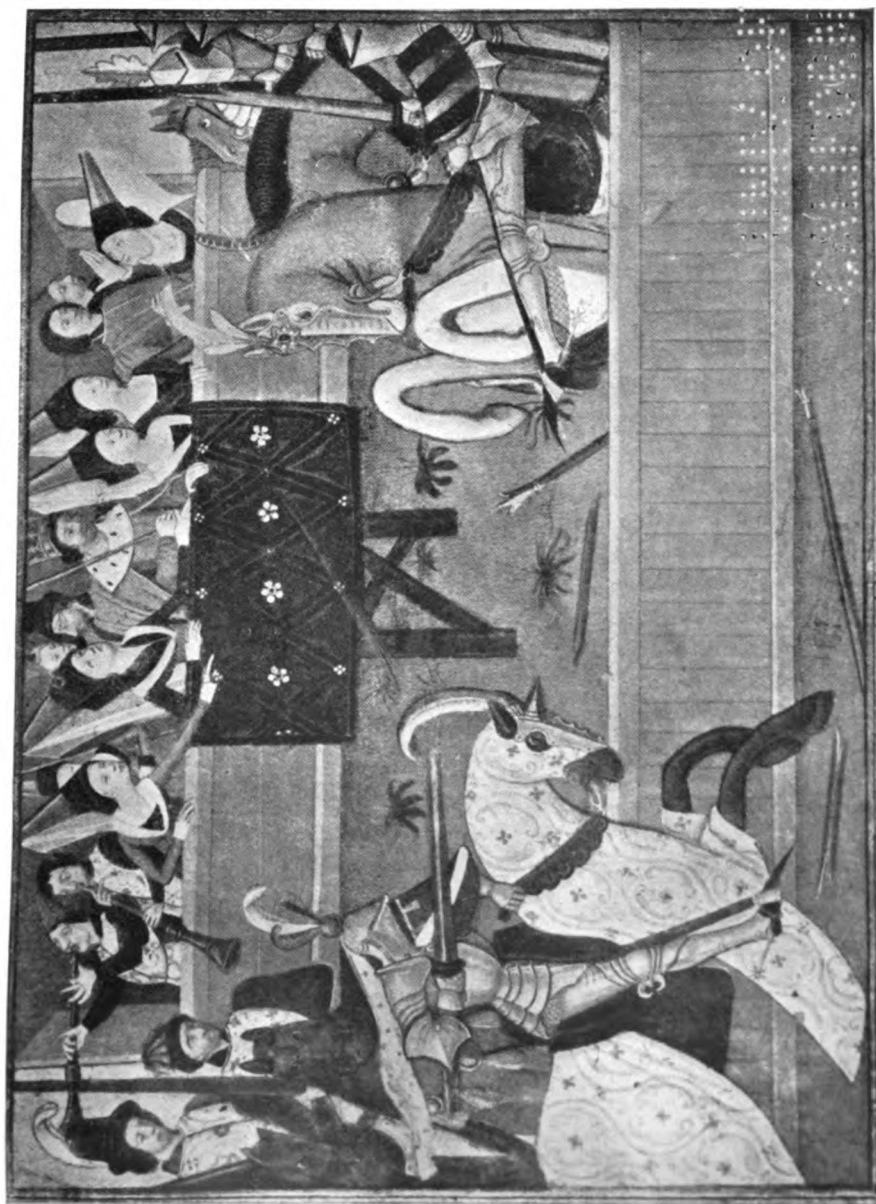
The object in the joust was to break a lance on the body of an adversary and, if possible, to unhorse him as well. Prizes were awarded on the total of points scored during the courses run. One point was awarded for breaking a lance fairly on the body of the opponent, below the helmet; if above the breast two points. The lance, which was of soft wood which splintered easily, had to be broken within a foot of the "coronal"—analogous to the button of a foil—in order to count, although it might otherwise be judged a "good attaynte" or contact. Here it may be mentioned that the opponents frequently missed each other entirely. Three points were scored for unhorsing an opponent. Points however could be deducted for clumsy tilting, thus "Who breaketh a speare on the saddle, shall be disallowed for a speare broken." To hit the tilt meant the disallowance of "2 speares broken." To hit the tilt three times apparently spelt disqualification and this was the penalty also for striking the adversary's horse and was also incurred by "Whosoe striketh a mannes backe, turned or disarmed of his speare." Various officials, including umpires, were present to see that the rules were strictly observed and an oath to observe the rules of chivalry was administered to all cavaliers taking part in the tournament. Scoring was by strokes marked by a king of arms, or sometimes a poursuivant on a scoring tablet, termed a "checque" which was tricked with a shield of the arms of the owner. The scoring board itself was in the form of a parallelogram with three horizontal lines, the middle line projecting some distance beyond the others, and on the projection or middle line the number of

courses run (usually from two to eight) were registered. The "attaints" were noted on the top line; and they were often differentiated as hits on the body or head, which had a different value in the tale, for one rule was that "He that on horsebacke directeth his launce at the head is more to be praised than he that toucheth lower. For the higher the Launce hitteth, the greater is the Runner's commendation." The middle line inside the parallelogram was for staves well broken, and the bottom for those ill broken—that is, broken within a foot of the head of the lance, on the tilt or on the adversary's saddle. The proportion in the number of attaints varied greatly, though on the average it would appear that the misses made in jousting at the tilt were greater in number than the hits made, while in jousting "at the wide" the proportion of attaints was much greater.*

The introduction of gunpowder, followed by the invention of firearms, was the death knell of old time Chivalry, and knights in armour ceased to be the deciding factor in war. Consequently the tournament, from being a military exercise pure and simple, began to assume the form of a pageant or masque. For two days after the crowning of Henry VIII at Westminster, the king and queen viewed from the galleries of a fantastic palace set up beside the tilt-yard a play in which deer were pulled down by greyhounds in a paled park. Thereafter there was a revival for a time of the tournament as a martial sport and the king himself was not only an enthusiast but proficient. In 1521 there was a tournament in which 506 lances were splintered.

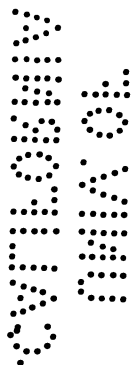
In the previous year, when Henry VIII visited Francis I of France, the jousts and tourneys of the Field of the Cloth of Gold were held on a magnificent scale and the two monarchs greatly distinguished themselves in the tilt-yard. The lists themselves are stated to have been 150 paces long and were placed in a plain surrounded by a ditch. Stands were erected for the officials and spectators, and pavilions were pitched for the use of the cavaliers taking part. On the first day's jousting

* R. Coltman Clephan. *Op. cit.*



KNIGHTS JOUSTING

From a French MS. of the latter half of the XV Century. (Cotton MS. Nero D. ix.)
(By kind permission of Editor, Encyclopædia Britannica).

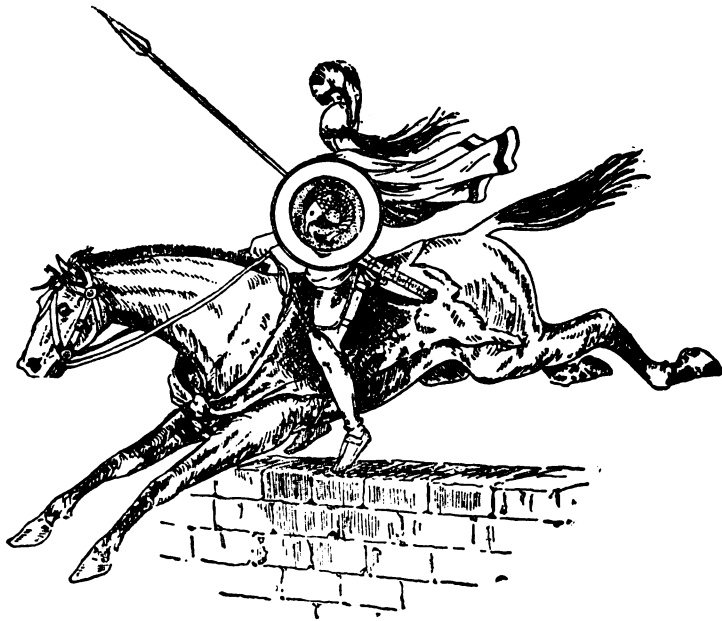


King Henry ran against Monsieur Grandevile and the helm of the Frenchman was fractured. On several other days of the meeting Henry tilted and is said even to have fought with his retinue against his host and the latter's retinue in a battle on foot at barriers. Such engagements often formed part of a tournament. In this case the weapons were spears and swords, and on the previous day a Frenchman had been killed at this sport.

Elizabeth was partial to jousting, especially when it took place in conjunction with a pageant. A great entertainment of this kind was given on 22nd January, 1581, when some score of cavaliers took part and when many lances were broken. After the jousting there was the attack and defence of a mock fortress on which cannon were mounted. Tournaments were now clearly degenerating and were not without a touch of the farcical. Thus in 1612 four noblemen issued a general challenge at tilt, tourney and barriers in defence of the following propositions:—1. That in the Service of Ladyes, Knights have no free will. 2. That it is Beautie maintains the World in valour. 3. That noe fare Ladie was ever false. 4. That none can be perfectlye wife but Lover. The challenge was addressed: “To all honourable men, Men at Arms, and Knight Adventurers of heraldic note, and exemplarie noblesse, that for most memorable actions doe wield either Sword or Launce in quest of glorie.”

It is hardly likely that an age which had seen the conquest of a new world and the peopling of dominions whither the eagles of all-conquering Rome had never winged their flight would seriously risk life and limb for the maintenance of such trivial and dubious propositions. Mummery and play-acting invaded the tilt-yard, and although an effort was made to revive a shadow of its glories on the coming of age of Charles, Prince of Wales, in 1619, by that date its zenith had long been passed. In France the tournament degenerated into the carrousel, originally a game in which cavaliers pelted each other with balls. After a dormant period of nearly two centuries, the year 1839 saw the last flicker of the life of chivalry

at the Eglinton Tournament held in Ayrshire—the expiring reaction of feudalism against the mechanisation of the day expressed by the factory and the railroad. Torrents of rain marred an exhibition which was not without interest and in which the only casualty worth recording was a blow on the wrist received from a sword stroke in the *mêlée*. The best joust was one of three careers between the Earl of Craven and Captain Fairlie in which two attaints were made and three lances were shattered. The exhibition given at Earl's Court in 1912 will be fresh in the minds of many, when Lord Ashby St. Ledgers was adjudged the best joustier and received from the Queen of Beauty the gold cup of the value of £600.



BRIGADIER-GENERAL TURNER ASHBY

"A Gentleman of great assuredness and a great heart"

By COLONEL H. C. WYLLY, C.B.

A STUDY of the all too brief military career of Turner Ashby, the Confederate cavalry leader, should commend itself to Englishmen in general and to soldiers in particular, for he came from Virginia, the first to be established of the British Colonies in North America, established, moreover, in the days "when knighthood was in flower" by one who was himself "a veray parfit gentil knight"; and peopled from the beginning of things by colonists of the best class from the yeomen and landed gentry of the Midlands.

The Ashby family of Virginia hailed from Leicestershire, and Turner Ashby's branch appears to have emigrated early in the seventeenth century; four of his immediate ancestors had held military commissions—in the old Colonial wars, the Revolutionary war and in the war of 1812; while in the old days, of course, every male of the family had fought with the Indians, when each land-owner had to be the ever-watchful warden of his own marches. The proximity of the Indians, and their constant raids and massacres, were responsible for the military proclivities of the Virginian settlers, and Turner Ashby's great-grandfather—one John Ashby—was captain of a company of Virginian Rangers, which served with Braddock's expedition, and John Ashby it was who was selected by Washington—also serving under Braddock—to convey the news of the disaster to the Governor at Williamsburg.

The material for this sketch is largely taken from the "Life," by Thomas A. Ashby.

Turner Ashby was born on the 23rd October, 1828, in Fauquier County among the foothills of the Blue Ridge, one of a family of six, and, his father dying when he was quite a child, he was brought up by his mother, under whose teaching and influence he developed a lofty character and heroic spirit, and learnt, too, that service is something finer than self. He led an outdoor life and even as quite a small boy became an expert rider and trainer of young horses, and was soon known as the best horseman in the district. In 1853 the old home was sold and Turner Ashby bought a farm near Markham and lived here until the outbreak of the Civil War.

He appears to have inherited from his martial ancestors all the instincts of a soldier, and he early organized and commanded a troop of volunteer cavalry, raised among and manned by his friends, and nothing gives stronger proof of the personal influence which he was able to exercise over his associates than the fact that, while yet there seemed no actual necessity or call for such an organization, he was able to hold together men drawn from a large rural district, requiring them to travel long distances to attend the drills and acquire the standard of military proficiency which their leader demanded of them.

Ashby's troop was called out at the time of the John Brown insurrection at Harper's Ferry, and while quartered here his superb horsemanship and fine appearance early attracted general attention, and he became acquainted with Robert Lee, Stonewall Jackson, "Jeb" Stuart and other leaders-to-be in the Civil War, which Turner Ashby had now come to believe to be unavoidable. The Ordinance of Secession was passed by the State of Virginia on the 17th April, 1861, and, realising that this meant war, Ashby at once marched his troop back to Harper's Ferry to protect the State from invasion by Federal troops, and was told off to hold the line of the Potomac, between Harper's Ferry and Point of Rock, guarding the bridge and preventing the passage of trains and canal boats. Here the number of his little command was speedily swelled by new recruits who flocked to join, and whom he disciplined and trained.



*Yours truly
Turner Ashby*

*Reproduced from "Life of Turner Ashby," by kind
permission of The Neale Publishing Co., New York.*

TO VIKU
AIRBORNE

While holding the river line, Ashby's command was under General J. E. Johnston, who, on the 16th June, wrote saying : " I assure you that the knowledge that you were between me and the enemy made me sleep soundly last night." On the 23rd July, Ashby was promoted Lieutenant-Colonel and Second-in-Command of a regiment, which was to become famous in the war as the 7th Virginia Cavalry, the nucleus of which had been his own Fauquier troop—now commanded by his younger brother, Richard, who was to fall just before the battle of Manassas, and, as re-organized, contained ten troops, all the officers and men admirably mounted and comprising the very best of cavalry material.

In the very brilliant but, for the Confederate cause, practically profitless victory of Manassas, Ashby and his men had no share, but thereafter and for some weeks he was sent about the country to the different points where attack was considered likely, covering great distances at speed, and on at least one occasion when in independent command—at Boliver Hill on the 16th October—inflicting defeat and loss on the Federals. This last action taught him that cavalry unaided by any of the other arms could not effect all that was required of it, and he now applied for and obtained permission to organize a battery of Horse Artillery of three guns which, under Captain Chew—the counterpart in his way of Ashby—did magnificent service with the cavalry.

During the early winter of 1861-2, Ashby's cavalry occupied an outpost line extending from Harper's Ferry to Bath in Morgan County, and as far as Hanging Rock in Hampshire County ; and it has been said by a historian that " little indeed transpired along this 140 miles of front which escaped Ashby's men. His faithful black servant, George, who was almost able to divine his master's thoughts, was within call both day and night, to saddle at a moment's notice, whichever one of his three blood horses suited his whim. Matching the bottom of his mount against his own prodigious endurance, he would then take a swinging trot for hours together, averaging, before the end of his journey was reached, fully eighty to ninety

miles of road. A few of his best scouts were always chosen to accompany him. Sometimes they captured Union prisoners, always they gathered stray bits of excellent military information which might otherwise have been entirely missed."

During the twenty-eight days which immediately preceded the battle of Kernstown, fought on the 23rd March, 1862, it has been computed that Ashby fought the enemy in "*thirty-two* distinct engagements. "Ashby," says Henderson, in his 'Stonewall Jackson,' was the beau ideal of a captain of light horse. His reckless daring, both across country and under fire, made him the idol of the army. Nor was his reputation confined to the Confederate ranks. 'I think even our own men,' says a Federal officer, 'had a kind of admiration for him, as he sat unmoved upon his horse, and let them pepper away at him as if he enjoyed it.' " And in the battle of Kernstown, with a handful of 500 cavalry and Chew's guns he held the right flank and saved Jackson from serious defeat.

Chew wrote in after years: "I have always believed that his audacity saved General Jackson's army from total destruction at the battle of Kernstown. Ashby moved boldly forward with his command, consisting of a few companies of cavalry and only three guns, and, protecting his men from observation by woods and ravines, opened on them with artillery and withstood from ten o'clock until dark the fire of the enemy's artillery, sometimes as many as three or four batteries. When the enemy moved forward he dashed upon and repulsed them with his cavalry. Had the enemy known our strength or not been deceived by the audacity of the movement, they could have swept forward upon the turnpike, turned Jackson's right flank, and cut off retreat by way of the turnpike. They, however, made little effort to advance, and we remained in our position until Jackson had returned to Newtown," three miles from the field.

Another eye-witness, the Rev. J. B. Avirett, the Chaplain of the 7th Virginia Cavalry, has stated that "it is doubtful whether there was a more desperate and hotly contested engagement through the whole period of the war than that of Kerns-

town. . . . Ashby was in his glory. Many will recall him, as, mounted on his white charger, he rode at full speed, clearing every obstacle, whether post and rail or stone fence, or one of those ravines so common in limestone lands. Now consulting with Jackson, now riding up to Chew's battery and ordering its intrepid, skilful boy-captain to limber up and move with the squadron of horse just then ordered to charge. . . . The rapid and skilful manœuvring of his squadrons and battery elicited the warmest admiration, while his reckless exposure of his life and wonderful escape from death, was a theme around the camp-fire for a long time afterwards. . . . So well ordered was his withdrawal from the field, that not a man or gun was lost on that part under his immediate eye."

Up to this, Ashby had been held to be little more than a very gallant leader, but his handling of the guns and cavalry at Kernstown showed that in him were developing the qualities—the insight and the decision—of the military commander; and he was already displaying in every action, and to an increased degree in each, an instinct unusual in so young, so inexperienced and so untaught a soldier, for the effective co-operation of cavalry and horse artillery.

In the early part of the Valley Campaign of 1862, the services of the cavalry under Ashby were invaluable; Jackson's retreat up the Valley was so admirably covered that the pursuit under Banks, whose force was four times the strength of that commanded by Jackson, was slow and unpressed, Ashby contesting every inch of ground and Banks kept by the activity of the Confederate cavalry leader in total ignorance of Jackson's real weakness; while he was apprehensive at all times of attacks upon his flanks and rear by the mounted men under Ashby, Banks' own cavalry being quite unequal to the task of keeping the Confederate cavalry at a distance.

When at the end of April, Jackson decided to march and join Johnson at Staunton in order that the combined forces might attack and defeat the Federal army under Milroy, marching in that direction, Ashby was left behind with his cavalry to keep Banks in play and create the impression that Jackson was

still in his front. Ashby did his work so effectively, driving in the Federal picquets and making constant demonstrations along the Confederate front, that for at least a week Banks remained in complete ignorance of the fact that Jackson had left the valley and that only a comparatively weak cavalry body remained in his front.

On the day immediately preceding the battle of Front Royal, Ashby showed that he was no blind believer in the purely mounted duties of his arm. In moving to get between two bodies of Federal troops, Ashby arrived at a place called Buckton where, on the 23rd May, he found the station buildings occupied by two companies of enemy infantry, who were also lining the railway embankment. "Dismounting his command, Ashby, after a fierce fight, in which two of his best officers were killed, stormed the building and drove out the garrison. Two locomotives were standing on the rails with steam up, and by this means the Federals sought to escape. Twice they moved out towards Strasburg, twice they were driven back by the Confederate carbines, and eventually the two companies surrendered." After the defeat of the Federals at Front Royal, Ashby and his cavalry—now of the strength of a brigade, but still having only three horse-artillery guns attached—hung on the heels of the retreating enemy the whole day through, inflicting much loss and capturing many prisoners. "The rout from Strasburg and Front Royal to Winchester was a complete stampede. When the Federal troops formed to resist the charge they were overwhelmed by the strength of the Confederates and were forced to fly for safety. . . It was with difficulty that Banks reached Winchester on the night of the 24th with any of his command under control."

Jackson had hoped to capture the whole of Banks' army and not merely to force a retreat upon him, and for his failure to achieve the complete success he had looked for, he blamed his cavalry in his official report, and successive historians have been inclined to accept Jackson's verdict, without paying sufficient attention to the facts of the case. Previous to the operations leading up to the battle of Front Royal, Ashby had

been placed in command of the equivalent of thirteen squadrons, but of these on the day of the action at least nine were detached, and on the morning of the 24th Ashby had no more than 300 men under his immediate command ; and yet with this small cavalry force and Chew's guns, he followed Banks from Strasburg to Winchester and afterwards from Winchester to Martinsburg and the Potomac. Then it must be remembered that Banks' disordered army fled, not by one, but by many different roads ; so that in the pursuit Ashby's men equally became scattered, and if their discipline became impaired, it can hardly under such conditions, be matter for surprise, since in the Confederate service every cavalryman supplied his own horse and replaced it at his own expense if killed or wounded in action ; and in the pursuit of Banks many horses were captured, and the men possibly thought more of replacing their mounts than of pursuing the enemy to the last. The best reply to the criticism above-mentioned seems to be furnished by "Stonewall" Jackson himself, who, on the 27th May, handed Ashby his commission of Brigadier-General, saying : "I do this with great pleasure, General Ashby, hoping that as you are soon to command a brigade, the country may expect less exposure of your life."

The defeat of Banks, the capture of Winchester, the menace to Washington and the paralysing of McClellan's operations, were all great objects to have attained ; but the effect of them was to arouse the North to increased efforts, and it soon became evident that Jackson would not much longer be able to hold what he had captured, for from every direction the Federal forces began to close round the Confederates in the valley. Two armies, under Shields and Banks, were moving round to get in Jackson's rear, while a third, under Fremont, was closing in upon his line of retreat at Strasburg ; the advance of Fremont was opposed by Ashby's cavalry.

On the 3rd June, Ashby was placed in command of all the cavalry in the army of the Valley, and the Confederates retreated to Mount Jackson. "On the 4th," writes Henderson, "the bridge over the North Fork was given to the flames, Ashby,

whose horse was shot under him, remaining to the last ; and the deep and turbulent river placed an impassable obstacle between the armies. Under a deluge of rain the Federals attempted to launch their pontoons ; but the boats were swept away by the rising flood, and it was not until the next morning that the bridge was made. The Confederates had thus gained twenty-four hours' respite, and contact was not resumed until the 6th."

But Ashby's course was now nearly run. On the afternoon of the 6th the Federals came upon Ashby's cavalry occupying a strong position on a ridge, and the Northerners, attacking incautiously, were repulsed by a heavy fire, after which Ashby let loose his squadrons on the broken ranks, driving back the Federals to within half a mile of Harrisonburg, and taking many prisoners. Among these was an Englishman, Sir Percy Wyndham, commanding a regiment of enemy cavalry.

"Smarting under their defeat, Fremont threw forward a still stronger force of cavalry, strengthened by two battalions of infantry. Ashby had already called up a portion of the brigade which supported him, and met the attack in a clearing of the forest. The fight was fierce. The Confederates were roughly handled by the Northern riflemen, and the ranks began to waver. Riding to the front, where the opposing lines were already at close range, Ashby called upon his infantry to charge. As he gave the order his horse fell heavily to the ground. Leaping to his feet in an instant, again he shouted 'Charge, men ! for God's sake, charge' ! The regiments rallied, and inspired by his example swept forward from the wood. But hardly had they left the covert when their leader fell shot through the heart. He was speedily avenged. The men who followed him, despite the heavy fire, dashed at the enemy in front and flank, and drove them from their ground. The cavalry, meanwhile, had worked round in rear ; the horse artillery found an opportunity of action ; and under cover of the night the Federals fell back on Harrisonburg.

"The losses of the Union troops were heavy ; but the Confederate victory was dearly purchased. The death of Ashby

was a terrible blow to the army of the Valley. From the outbreak of the war he had been employed on the Shenandoah, and from Staunton to the Potomac his was the most familiar figure in the Confederate ranks. His daring rides on his famous white charger were already the theme of song and story; and if the tale of his exploits as told in camp and farm sometimes bordered on the marvellous, the bare truth, stripped of all exaggeration, was sufficient in itself to make a hero. His reckless courage, his fine horsemanship, his skill in handling his command, and his power of stimulating devotion were not the only attributes which incited admiration, 'with such qualities,' it is said, 'were united the utmost generosity and unselfishness, and a delicacy of feeling equal to a woman's.' "

Such is the tribute of Henderson in his "*Stonewall Jackson*," and of Ashby "the boy-captain," Chew—he was only twenty-two when the end came to the war, at which time he was commanding "Jeb" Stuart's horse-artillery, wrote: "I have seen General Ashby under fire in fully a hundred battles and skirmishes, and he always appeared to be absolutely without consciousness of danger—cool, self-possessed and ever alert, and quick as lightning to take advantage of any mistake of the enemy."

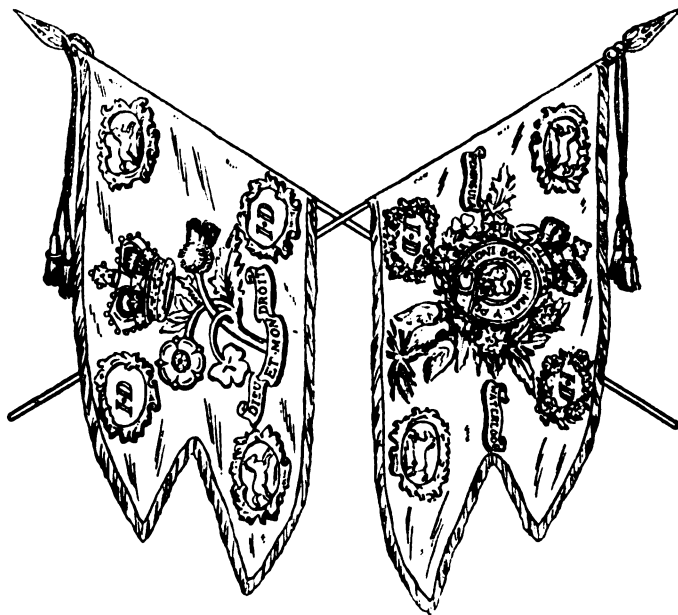
To the cavalry of the South, Jackson sent out an order: "Poor Ashby is dead. He fell gloriously, one of the noblest of men and soldiers in the Confederate army"; while in his official report he wrote of the dead leader: "The close relation General Ashby bore to my command for the most of the previous twelve months will justify me in saying that as a partisan officer I never knew his superior. His daring was proverbial, his powers of endurance almost incredible, his character heroic, and his sagacity almost intuitive in divining the purposes and movements of the enemy."

"Ashby fell," so writes his biographer, "just as the sun was going down behind the mountains, which form the western wall of the beautiful Valley of Virginia. He fell on the soil of Virginia in the Valley he loved most devotedly, and in a cause he believed was most holy. He escaped the humiliation

that came to many of his friends and loved ones, who lived to see that cause go down in disaster."

Another writer has said that "to the people of Virginia that day it was as if Prince Rupert had fallen at Marston Moor"; and to the village of Port Republic where his body lay all night watched by a Guard of Honour of his cavalry—"to the secluded spot, where he lay through the night enshrouded in a pall of silvery moonshine, there was a steady tramp, tramp, tramp as of an army to his bier."

"Valiant, kindly, knightly, pure,
Lustrous as the steel he wore."



WIRE JUMPING IN NEW ZEALAND

THE Australian-bred horse has been well and favourably known in India for many years, and his great qualities of endurance and speed have given him a pre-eminent place as an Indian Army remount. But the New Zealand horse is not so widely known. Though he put up a fine record in South Africa in 1900-1902, it remained for the Sinai and Palestine campaigns to bring out the fact that he is the equal of if not a better horse than his Australian brother.

Bred and reared in an ideal climate and living in his early days a natural out-door life, he has developed the true characteristics of the equine race, giving him strength, hardiness, endurance, and courage.

New Zealand had no indigenous horse or pony stock, and the pioneers who left Britain to people this Britain of the South included sportsmen who imported the best English thorough-bred stock and laid the foundations of the race-horse and the hunter of to-day.

It is a tradition that every true Englishman loves a horse and this tradition, carried on for years of necessity in a young unroaded country, now finds continuance in the racecourses and in the hunting-fields; this, too, in spite of the formation of innumerable motor-roads and of the enormous increase of motor cars, giving a greater number per head of population than in England.

Our Pioneers brought with them their love of the horse, their memories of the delights of fox-hunting, and packs of pure fox-hound blood were imported long before the era of the wire fence.

Of those started in the early days, the Rangitikei Hunt was one of the pioneer packs on the West Coast of the North Island—it was founded in 1880 and ran a drag once a week. Two

years later, a pioneer settler of Rangitikei presented three couples of harriers to the Rangitikei Hunt and the club began to hunt hares. The country then hunted was almost ideal—open and rolling, with patches of cover, and though fairly closely subdivided, the fences were ditch and bank, with the bank well covered with gorse. Near the home-steads would often be found stout timber fences of four rails, or of stakes placed vertically in the ground. Hares were hunted and were fairly plentiful and gave good runs.

Somewhere about 1890 some of the gorse fences began to die out, and the farmers replaced them by running wire through the gorse along the top of the bank, or by clearing away the bank and erecting wire fences, usually of eight wires about four feet six inches in height, with posts about sixteen feet apart with three battens stapled on to the wires between the posts. In some places the old ditch and bank was left and two or three wires were stretched along the top of the bank.

Wire fences were looked upon at first with great disfavour, and the practice arose of placing a length of rail along the top wire so that the fence could be seen easily by the horse. However, the boldest riders soon took to riding straight and going for the bare wires and it was found that a horse once having come a cropper over wire, ever after took most particular care to clear it or would never face it again. Needless to say, in the latter case, his usefulness as a hunter ceased.

Nowadays most of the fences are wire and a horse that will not jump wire safely and well is not considered a hunter.

A good wire jumper must be steady. Once he is brought to jump timber he is schooled without difficulty over bare wire, but it is not desirable to put him at wire until he has confidence in timber-jumping; for he has an instinctive fear of becoming entangled, and if he strikes wire heavily before becoming a confident jumper it may be difficult to get him to face it again.

Most horsemen like a horse to hit his first wire fence a good rap; for as a general rule he will not do so again. But it is astonishing how hard a horse may hit the wire and yet get safely over. Many fences have barbed wire at the top and



Digitized by Google

hitting this leads to bad scratches and cuts. It is also astonishing how clearly a horse sees the wire, though jumping towards the sun is always difficult.

At almost all Agricultural and Pastoral Shows, of which there are many held throughout the year in different parts of the country, there are horse-jumping competitions that include wire-jumping. Often, in the event of a "jump off" a judge will ask the competitor to stand fifteen feet from a fence and then jump it. As can be imagined this requires a horse that can gather himself quickly.

In almost all districts hares are hunted and these give some very good runs. On 9th May, 1927, at the Dannevirke Hunt the hounds ran for fifty-five minutes with one check only (of three minutes) and during the whole of the run the Master Huntsman and two ladies jumped nothing but wire. This was of course exceptional, as a huntsman of much experience gives the average run in hare hunting as three and one half miles per hare.

Just before the war the writer was at a parade of a squadron of the Mounted Rifles (Territorial) in the area hunted by the Manawatu Pack. The parade was dismissed in a large paddock about a mile from the nearest road. To his astonishment, immediately the men were dismissed, they scattered, and with rifles slung over their shoulders, were over the wire fences on the nearest way to the road.

A well-known horse, "Consul," owned and ridden by one of the Troop leaders (Lieut. H. Taylor, afterwards killed at Gallipoli) is still living, and last season was out at each Meet jumping faultlessly, though in his eighteenth year.

Among the illustrations will be seen the mare, "Twilight," who, in her twentieth year, won the high jump at the Manawatu Agricultural and Pastoral Show.

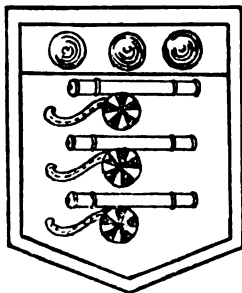
The hunting season begins late in Autumn, sometime in April, and lasts until towards the end of July, when the advent of newly-born lambs brings the season to an end. The hounds are followed by some thirty to forty riders, both men and women.

Among the chief Packs in New Zealand are, in the North, the Pakuranga Hunt Club, where stone fences are most in evidence. On the East coast of the North Island are the Gisborne Hounds and the Hawkes Bay Hunt Club, both jumping wire.

In the Wellington Province besides the Rangitikei Hunt, there is the Manawatu Hunt Club, whose country in the beginning was bush country, and when hunting began was covered with logs and stumps. Here, fences have always been wire. Then, in the centre of the Island, is the Dannevirke Pack.

In the South Island one of the best-known Hunt Clubs is the South Canterbury Hounds. There are also the Christchurch Hounds and the North Canterbury Hunt Club. All Packs started with pure foxhound blood and are in every way as good as the Packs of the Old Country.

Wire jumping is not dangerous—a fact proved every day in the hunting field in this country. When asked his opinion, one of our oldest and most experienced huntsmen replied that in all his experience in hunting hounds for seventeen years and in his practice as a veterinary surgeon for twenty-five years he had never known a horse to injure himself seriously over wire except on one occasion, when he rode a horse at a plain wire fence for the first time in his life, and the horse broke his neck.





Mr. J. J. BRYCE'S MARE "TWILIGHT"

Winning the Wire Jump at the Manawatu Agricultural & Pastoral Show in her 20th year.

Digitized by Google

“ LISETTE ”

AN INCIDENT AT THE BATTLE OF EYLAU, 1807.

*From the “ Memoirs of Baron de Marbot.” 2 vols.
Silver Library Edition. By kind permission of Messrs. Longmans
Green & Co., Ltd.*

“(Herr von Aister) informed me that M. Finguerlin, a wealthy man living in fine style, had a large stud, in the first rank of which figured a lovely mare, called Lisette, easy in her paces, as light as a deer, and so well broken that a child could lead her. But this mare, when she was ridden, had a terrible fault, and fortunately a rare one ; she bit like a bulldog, and furiously attacked people whom she disliked, which decided M. Finguerlin to sell her. She was bought for Mme. de Lauriston, whose husband, one of the Emperor’s aides-de-camp, had written to her to get his campaigning outfit ready. When selling the mare, M. Finguerlin had forgotten to mention her fault, and that very evening a groom was found disembowelled at her feet. Mme. de Lauriston, reasonably alarmed, brought an action to cancel the bargain ; not only did she get her verdict, but in order to prevent further disasters, the police ordered that a written statement should be placed in Lisette’s stall to inform purchasers of her ferocity, and that any bargain with regard to her should be void unless the purchaser declared in writing that his attention had been called to the notice. You may suppose that with such a character as this the mare was not easy to dispose of, and thus Herr von Aister informed me that her owner had decided to let her go for what anyone would give. I offered 1,000 francs, and M. Finguerlin delivered Lisette to me, though she had cost him 5,000. This animal gave me a good deal of trouble for some months. It took four

or five men to saddle her, and you could only bridle her by covering her eyes and fastening all four legs ; but once you were on her back, you found her a really incomparable mount.

“ However, since while in my possession she had already bitten several people, and had not spared me, I was thinking of parting with her. But I had meanwhile engaged in my service Francis Woirland, a man who was afraid of nothing, and he, before going near Lisette, whose bad character had been mentioned to him, armed himself with a good hot roast leg of mutton. When the animal flew at him to bite him, he held out the mutton ; she seized it in her teeth, and burning her gums, palate, and tongue, gave a scream, let the mutton drop, and from that moment was perfectly submissive to Woirland, and did not venture to attack him again. I employed the same method with a like result. Lisette became as docile as a dog, and allowed me and my servant to approach her freely. She even became a little more tractable towards the stablemen of the staff, whom she saw every day, but woe to the strangers who passed her ! I could quote twenty instances of her ferocity, but I will confine myself to one. While Marshal Augereau was staying at the chateau of Bellevue, near Berlin, the servants of the staff, having observed that when they went to dinner someone stole the sacks of corn that were left in the stable, got Woirland to unfasten Lisette and leave her near the door. The thief arrived, slipped into the stable, and was in the act of carrying off a sack, when the mare seized him by the nape of the neck, dragged him into the middle of the yard and trampled on him till she broke two of his ribs. At the shrieks of the thief, people ran up, but Lisette would not let him go till my servant and I compelled her, for in her fury she would have flown at anyone else. She had become still more vicious ever since the Saxon hussar officer, of whom I have told you, had treacherously laid open her shoulder with a sabre-cut on the battlefield of Jena.”

* * * * *

“ Such was the mare which I was riding at Eylau at the moment when the fragments of Augereau’s army corps, shattered

by a hail of musketry and cannon-balls, were trying to rally near the great cemetery.”

(De Marbot was one of three aides-de-camp to Marshal Augereau. Two of these had been sent off with an important order to the 14th Regiment, but had evidently been killed on the way. It was now de Marbot’s turn to attempt to deliver the message.)

“ So I went otherwise to work, and leaving my sword in the scabbard, I regarded myself as a horseman who is trying to win a steeplechase, and goes as quickly as possible and by the shortest line towards the appointed goal, without troubling himself with what is to right or left of his path. Now, as my goal was the hillock occupied by the 14th, I resolved to get there without taking any notice of the Cossacks, whom in thought I abolished. This plan answered perfectly. Lisette, lighter than a swallow and flying rather than running, devoured the intervening space, leaping the piles of dead men and horses, the ditches, the broken gun-carriages, and the half-extinguished bivouac fires. Thousands of Cossacks swarmed over the plain. The first who saw me acted like sportsmen, who, when beating, start a hare, and announce its presence to each other by shouts of ‘ Your side ! Your side ! ’ but none of the Cossacks tried to stop me, first, on account of the extreme rapidity of my pace, and also probably because, their numbers being so great, each thought that I could not avoid his comrades farther on ; so that I escaped them all, and reached the 14th regiment without either myself or my excellent mare having received the slightest scratch.

“ I found the 14th formed in square on the top of the hillock, but as the slope was very slight the enemy’s cavalry had been able to deliver several charges. These had been vigorously repulsed, and the French regiment was surrounded by a circle of dead horses and dragoons, which formed a kind of rampart, making the position by this time almost inaccessible to cavalry ; as I found, for in spite of the aid of our men, I had much difficulty in passing over this horrible entrenchment. At last I was in the square.”

(De Marbot's hat was now knocked off by one of the Russian cannon-balls, and the shock caused him great pain.)

"During this terrible struggle several of our men, in order not to be struck from behind, set their backs against my mare's flanks, she, contrary to her practice, remaining perfectly quiet. If I had been able to move I should have urged her forward to get away from this field of slaughter. But it was absolutely impossible for me to press my legs so as to make the animal I rode understand my wish. My position was the more frightful since, as I have said, I retained the power of sight and thought. Not only were they fighting all round me, which exposed me to bayonet-thrusts, but a Russian officer with a hideous countenance kept making efforts to run me through. . . .

"Among the Frenchmen who had got their flanks against my mare's near flank was a quartermaster-sergeant, whom I knew from having frequently seen him at the marshal's, making copies for him of the 'morning states.' This man, having been attacked and wounded by several of the enemy, fell under Lisette's belly, and was seizing my leg to pull himself up, when a Russian grenadier, too drunk to stand steady, wishing to finish him by a thrust in the breast, lost his balance, and the point of the bayonet went astray into my cloak, which at that moment was puffed out by the wind. Seeing that I did not fall, the Russian left the sergeant and aimed a great number of blows at me. These were at first fruitless, but one at last reached me, piercing my left arm, and I felt with a kind of horrible pleasure my blood flowing hot. The Russian grenadier with redoubled fury made another thrust at me, but, stumbling with the force which he put into it, drove his bayonet into my mare's thigh. Her ferocious instincts being restored by the pain, she sprang at the Russian, and at one mouthful tore off his nose, lips, eye-brows, and all the skin of his face, making of him a living death's head, dripping with blood. Then hurling herself with fury among the combatants, kicking and biting, Lisette upset everything that she met on her road. The officer who had made so many attempts to strike me tried to hold her by the bridle; she seized him by his belly, and carry-

ing him off with ease, she bore him out of the crush to the foot of the hillock, where, having torn out his entrails and mashed his body under her feet, she left him dying on the snow. Then taking the road by which she had come, she made her way at full gallop towards the cemetery of Eylau. Thanks to the hussar's saddle on which I was sitting I kept my seat. But a new danger awaited me. The snow had begun to fall again, and great flakes obscured the daylight when, having arrived close to Eylau, I found myself in front of a battalion of the Old Guard, who, unable to see clearly at a distance, took me for an enemy's officer leading a charge of cavalry. The whole battalion at once opened fire on me ; my cloak and my saddle were riddled, but I was not wounded nor was my mare. She continued her rapid course, and went through the three ranks of the battalion as easily as a snake through a hedge. But this last spurt had exhausted Lisette's strength ; she had lost much blood for one of the large veins in her thigh had been divided and the poor animal collapsed suddenly and fell on one side, rolling me over on the other.”

(De Marbot now states that he swooned for four hours, and on recovering consciousness found that he had been stripped naked and that his boots were being torn off by a marauder. Eventually he was discovered by a soldier servant of Marshal Augereau and taken off to hospital.)

“ Before I was removed from the field of battle I had seen my poor Lisette near me. The cold had caused the blood from her wound to clot, and prevented the loss from being too great. The creature had got on to her legs and was eating the straw which the soldiers had used the night before for their bivouacs. My servant, who was very fond of Lisette, had noticed her when he was helping to remove me, and cutting up into bandages the skirt and hood of a dead soldier he wrapped her leg with them, and thus made her able to walk to Landsberg. . . .”

“ . . . My mare passed the winter in the stables of M. de Launay, head of the Forage Department.”

*SOME EXPERIENCES OF LIGHT SIX-WHEELERS
WITH THE 1st CAVALRY BRIGADE*

PART I.*

INTRODUCTION.

THE lot of a writer, as of a policeman, is frequently "not a happy one." This is especially true of writers on military subjects. Either the wretch is accused of violating some precept of the gods, or of pushing his own ideas down the unwilling throats of his readers (if any) or—worstest sin—of letting some secret cat out of the Olympian bag. Consequently it is with much diffidence that the Editor's request for "something about six-wheelers" has been complied with. These experiences, whatever their worth, are perhaps of interest as showing how the situation seemed to men upon the spot charged with implementing the ideas of the higher command, but should in no way be taken as laying down the law or as incontrovertible statements. It is sincerely hoped that they will produce criticisms and counter arguments, thus stimulating thought and the circulation of ideas.

I.

As a legacy of the war (1914–1918), cavalry brains were presented with the problem (amongst others) of increasing both the radius of action of the mounted arm and of the time which it could remain upon its horses in the face of an enemy equipped with modern armaments. The first was largely an administrative question based on reducing the weight carried by the horse, of speeding-up first line transport and of reducing its bulk and consequently its vulnerability from the air. The second implies the bestowal of increased mobility and possibly offensive power upon the means of fire support. This I think can be agreed to as a fair statement of the situation.

* Part II will deal with the Six-wheeler in connection with Machine Guns

In 1926, the productive and ingenious Mr. Morris, who has so successfully solved the problem of transportation for our officers, evolved a type of light lorry, which by a system of rigid articulation rather too technical to explain here—(in plain truth for the writer to understand)—was capable of both considerable cross-country movement and adequate road performance as well. It was decided that the standard reached by this vehicle was sufficiently high to consider it for introduction to our cavalry organization in peace, and one regiment at Aldershot—The Royals—was selected for the experiment.

It should be noted here that the loads worked on them, especially as regards machine guns, were different to our subsequent ideas. Much of this was due to the fact that the vehicles allotted to them were of mixed types and carrying capacity.

Despite the urgent need for cavalry to find solutions to its own problems and to the apparently satisfactory capabilities of the vehicle, its arrival was generally hailed—and is still perhaps looked upon in some ways—as a Greek gift.

This attitude, I think, is largely due to extravagant claims made on its behalf and to a misconception of how to get the best out of it. At Aldershot the then M.G.A., Sir P. Hambro, himself a cavalry man, put the situation as follows: “You—none better—understand you own cavalry problems. Here is a vehicle of certain capabilities and limitations. Examine how far it meets our needs and what serious drawbacks there are to it. Accept no pretension without testing it, nor put forward any claim without substantiation.” This may be a paraphrase, but gives his underlying ideas. In consequence the question was approached with an open mind, neither as an Israelite collecting manna nor as an anti-Fascist being given castor oil.

II.

The questions raised by the introduction of the light six-wheeler into our cavalry organization can be divided into two groups: (a) Transport; (b) Machine Guns. It is proposed to consider them in that order.

(a) TRANSPORT.

This in its turn can be sub-divided into field work and barrack work, or internal administration. Taking the former, the first point that struck us was rather an obvious one—a great increase in mobility and radius of action. It was found possible to leave vehicles some way behind and then send them forward at will with very good chances of their safe arrival, due discount being made for those chances of war irreproducible in peace. Hence it became possible to shift certain weights, amounting to two stone, off the horse and carry it in first line transport vehicles easily available behind the fighting troops.

The second point was that by again making use of this mobility it should be possible to devise a method of cooking in a back area, which could provide a hot meal with more certainty and greater rapidity than the horse-drawn cooker. This was the inception of hay-box cooking, which, though not perfect, is a great advance in maintaining the comfort of the cavalry soldier. Certain limitations of equipment and diet, the necessity for a high standard of preparation, possibly not always attainable in war, and the bulk of boxes, fuel and preparatory equipment, have caused us since to favour more the introduction of a self-propelled cooker rather than ground cooking. But the principle is true and I think will remain. As an example of the increased benefit to the troops the following may be of interest. One year, the march to camp for collective training in August took place by night. The distance was 35 miles, the rate of progress aimed at 6 m.p.h. and many of the men very young, some in fact not dismissed riding school but made available for this training.

By the use of M.T., hay boxes and covered coloured lights, it was possible to leave barracks after the troops, move by a different route and meet the brigade 15 miles out with hot tea. Rations for each unit were dumped at the places where its head and tail came respectively, when the head of the column reached and halted at given map co-ordinates. Owing to the rate of march little time was available at this halt and on the old system it would not have been possible.

Few difficulties of general interest were encountered, while only a single regiment had these vehicles, but when other units possessed them, both in fact in peace and on paper in staff exercises, further problems did arise.

Briefly these were: *Command, control and liaison*. M.T. was able to move quicker and with a far longer radius of action than horse transport, but was just as liable to get lost and far more difficult to find. Further, when organization for war came to be considered it became clear that double the number of vehicles would be required and present difficulties doubly increased. The question of road capacity and possibility of congestion also arose. This was specially so when working in limited areas with infantry, but cavalry operations are not immune from it. At one cavalry staff exercise held in the Heythorpe country—largely fences, banks and lanes with high impenetrable sides—the general situation ended in a cavalry division breaking off an action and remaining dismounted in contact with a superior enemy for the night. On this occasion it was estimated that there was one six-wheeler M.G. (or S.A.A. vehicle sent up on call) to every 50x of front before the transport proper arrived at nightfall. It was a very dark night and very muddy. Total communications front to rear being one road and two tracks. The country, as stated above, was enclosed, and I think the situation would have been a very difficult one for those concerned with feeding and replenishing the forward regiments. Our suggested solutions for these difficulties was as follows:

Command (field work). Six-wheelers were organized as follows:

- (a) Machine gun fighting vehicles.
- (b) "A" echelon vehicles, i.e., necessities.
- (c) "B" echelon vehicles, i.e., comforts—hot food.

Control.

An officer was detailed to take charge of each echelon and be responsible for it.

Liaison.

Motor cyclist D.Rs. were allotted to each echelon for this purpose.

It may be noted here that the more D.Rs. it is possible to provide the quicker can the movement be. In 1927 a peace-time march to camp in convoys of 22-26 vehicles each convoy having two D.Rs. averaged 10 m.p.h. The special convoy mentioned for the hot meal mentioned above consisting of six vehicles but possessing twelve D.Rs. averaged 15 m.p.h. even though it was at night. This latter may be considered a freak, but is an example of how picketting by D.Rs. does speed-up progress. As regards the loads carried by these echelons our proposals were :

"A" Echelon.

S.A.A. for rifles, and Tools.
S.A.A. for light automatics.
Blanket jackets (coats M.S.)
W.P. sheets.
Iron rations.
Oats (6 lbs. per horse).
Picketting gear.
Change of underclothing.
Medical and Veterinary chests.

"B" Echelon.

Men's Rations.—Based on each convoy carrying one day's rations, viz. : Meat tea, breakfast and sandwiches and arriving about 6 p.m. each day. (Officers rations are also catered for on the squadron cooking vehicle.)

Water Vehicles or Trailers.—It is quite a point for consideration as to whether there should be some provision for water with "A" echelon, but until more is known of type of carrier it is not possible to say. In this connection some remarks below on trailers may be of interest.

Another problem arose here and that was that "A" echelon got too big and unwieldy, and also that its components were wanted in different times and places. For example, ammunition and tools, it seemed, would frequently be required before picketting gear and British warms. Therefore it was proposed

to sub-divide it into A.1 (S.A.A. and M.O.) and A.2. (Iron rations, British warms, picquetting gear, etc.). It was proposed that each A.1 would be commanded by its Regimental Transport officer ; if brigaded then under the senior Regimental Transport officer, and the A.2 under the Brigade Transport officer brigaded the whole time.

S.Q.M.Sgts. were to accompany A.2 lorries and would then be available to go off billeting or to arrange to have the lines up on arrival of the troops. "B" echelon was placed under the Q.M.; when brigaded under the senior. Protection was to be dealt with by training the leaders to take their convoys off the roads whenever halted any length of time, and to use their cross-country mobility to hide up in woods, or rough commons, where a search by enemy armoured cars would be lengthy and probably abortive proceedings. *Personnel* were also to be trained in making hasty road blocks where possible, in "laagering" as taught at the M.T. Training College and in anti-aircraft duties. This organization brought to light the following two points :

(1).—*Would it not be simpler to put A.2 with B and have B.1 and B.2 ?*

Pro.

- (a) One less echelon.
- (b) One less unit to control.
- (c) "Comforts" of all kinds together.

Con.

- (a) Might be too far back to get at.
- (b) Iron rations and oats are essential. If all with B, little object in iron rations.
- (c) Too many vehicles for a good convoy: would be too slow and lose its aim, viz., mobility.

No solution is suggested for this ; our experience inclines to A.2, but we have an open mind.

(2).—*The new duties of the Quartermaster.*

He will have to be a combatant, a good map-reader and a bit of a M.T. expert. There will be no room for him otherwise. The special reason for this is the necessity for local protection,

and for carrying out the protective system outlined above.

Lastly as regards field work, we found that we should have to become accustomed to dealing with more complicated forms of march tables and orders. Delivery of food to troops on the move, double shifts over country impassable to four-wheeled M.T. vehicles, and in peace, double convoy trips to camp; all require paper and we must get accustomed to dealing with it.

Now as regards our peace-time organization and administration in barracks.

This was based on a reduction of what we have seen were our war-time requirements and an attempt was made to maintain these proportions. We were given eleven vehicles which were allotted as under :

M.Gs. 6

A. 2. 3 weight off horse : 1 per sabre sqdn.
1 per Regtl. H.Q.

B. 2

11

Officers' messes were dealt with by loans from the Command pool. The water question was dealt with by being lent one trailer per regiment by the R.A.S.C. These trailers slowed-up movement considerably, and especially owing to their awkwardness in turning are not really practical. Their use also led to the question of sub-dividing "B" echelon. The argument was as follows: "These trailers have one speed, therefore instead of using one vehicle to carry all the rations of each squadron moving both together at 6 m.p.h., send on one per regiment with the next meal and come on slowly with these infernal trailers and the rest of the doings." This was considered unsound both from the point of view of the general system of distribution in accordance with tactical requirements and because it overloaded the vehicles left behind. We therefore discouraged it.

As far as petrol is concerned it was found that one trailer moving in close touch with Brigade H.Q. was sufficient. This

trailer was of a much lighter pattern but still open to many objections. It was chiefly required to replenish motor bicycles; even the M.G. lorries usually not requiring more per day than their tank and one spare tin. As regards organization, it was laid down in the beginning that all vehicles were to be under the Transport Officer (none on establishment in peace !), and that the M.G. were to have first call on them. The reason for this was to fix financial responsibility to the Commanding Officer, upon an officer with a certain amount of technical training and to ensure that as far as possible every chance was given for the vehicles to be kept on the road. This policy has, I think, been fully justified by the initial results, but as progress was made, so did we come to the conclusion that it is not perhaps entirely satisfactory and it is now suggested that all vehicles should be put under the Machine Gun Officer and to make the transport a section of his command. There are many arguments in favour of this, but as perhaps M.G. vehicles and troop vehicles may develop along different lines, the end is not yet and no alteration in organization would be quite satisfactory until the situation is less fluid. However, it is suggested that the idea is well worth thinking over as is the question of allowing the Quartermaster a share in accounting and administration.

Finally, the dangerous question of accounts. Frequently it was urged that there was too much paper, that the R.A.S.C. system was the best, that the R.A.O.C. system was better, that neither was any good and so on. So in response to many enquiries the following facts were elucidated :

- (1.)—Some form of accurate financial accounting is essential, otherwise the door is open to speculation.
- (2.)—Some form of record of performance, etc., is essential so as to trace trouble and make comparisons between vehicles and changes of conditions.

However, it is well to bear in mind that unnecessary book work and complicated tables should be avoided, and it will, I believe, pay to analyse our 1st line M.T. accounting system in this light and see if something simpler cannot be devised.

SECOND LANCERS AT EPÉHY

THE accompanying etching by George Soper, the well-known etcher of horses, shows the 2nd Lancers (Gardner's Horse) in Kildare Lane on the morning of the attack by the Mhow Cavalry Brigade on Villers Guislain (1st December, 1917). (See CAVALRY JOURNAL for January, 1928.) The incident chosen for the etching was the second departure of Lance Dafadar Gobind Singh from Regimental H.Q. with a message for the Brigade. The 2nd Lancers, with "C" Squadron, Inniskilling Dragoons, and a section of machine guns had been in occupation of Kildare Lane, from which they had driven out a company of German infantry, for about two hours and were entirely surrounded by the enemy. Major G. Knowles, D.S.O., who had taken over command when Colonel H. H. F. Turner was killed, judged that the Mhow Brigade's attack had broken down and he considered that it was imperative that he should receive further orders before continuing the advance.

Volunteers were therefore called for to carry a message to Brigade H.Q., and of those who stepped forward Gobind Singh (Rahtore Rajput) and Jot Ram (Jat) were selected. Each was given a duplicate message, and rode off. A burst of machine gun fire greeted their appearance above the bank of the sunken road. Jot Ram was killed almost immediately, but Gobind Singh covered over a quarter of a mile before his horse was killed. To all appearances both messengers were dead and it was deemed hopeless to send more. Gobind Singh, however, was unhurt. Like Brer Rabbit "he lay low and said nuffin" until he judged that the attention of the Germans had been attracted elsewhere. Then, alternatively wriggling and running, he worked his way on. Occasionally, when things became too



LANCE DAFADAR GOBIND SINGH, V.C.
(*From the etching by George Soper in the Imperial War Museum*)

2020

hot he toppled over and shammed dead again. Eventually he completed the two miles to Epéhy and produced his message to a surprised Brigadier (the late Brig.-General Neil Haig), who was beginning to think that he had seen the last of the little force. Gobind Singh immediately volunteered to take the reply back to Kildare Lane. He was given a fresh horse and started. As before his horse was killed, but he managed to get his message through. An hour later a second message had to be sent to Brigade H.Q. Again Gobind Singh stepped forward and persuaded a reluctant adjutant to let him go for a third ride. He said that he now knew where the German posts lay and that he knew of a safer route. The safety which he claimed for this route was only comparative, for it involved riding through a continuous barrage of heavy Hows which the Germans had put down on the right flank of the force in Kildare Lane. As he galloped across the barrage zone it seemed to the anxious watchers from the sunken road that he had struck a lucky moment for there was a distinct lull. Suddenly horse and man were blotted out in a cloud of black smoke. The horse had been cut literally, in two. Again Gobind Singh escaped. This time it was a long range for the enemy machine guns and he got up at once and ran for his life. Four hundred yards further on he was in dead ground and safety. On reaching Brigade H.Q. he volunteered to make a fourth trip. He was told that he had done enough. The award of the V.C. followed very shortly. Gobind Singh remained with the 2nd Lancers until 1920 and with them took part in the "Allenby drive" in Palestine. He was the first man into the Turks in the charge at El Afule. On the return of the 2nd Lancers to India he went back to his old regiment the 28th (now 16th) Light Cavalry, in which he is now serving as a Risaldar.

In Mr. Soper's etching, portraits of individuals, except in the case of Gobind Singh, have been deliberately avoided, but other details have been studied carefully. The two Sikhs on the left recall the fact that the Sikhs had refused to wear the steel helmet, on the ground that their religion forbids them to wear a *topi*. Gobind Singh had lost his rifle in his first ride.

The absence of a sword on his saddle is accounted for by the fact that the bulk of the 2nd Lancers had been recalled from the trenches about Hargicourt on the day before and had ridden there without swords or lances. These were brought up to Epéhy by the remainder of the regiment in wagons. The wagons were lost and only reached Epéhy a few minutes before the regiment moved off to the attack. Swords and lances were being thrown to men of the rear squadrons as they passed the wagons, but the majority went without the *arme blanche*. It was a curious freak of fate that this should be so for the first time in the three long years they had waited for their opportunity in France.



FRIGHTFULNESS

By LIEUTENANT-COLONEL ARDERN BEAMAN, D.S.O.

IF an officer is going to succeed on the Frontier, he must be constituted with one or other of two conflicting alternatives: either he must have a very keen sense of the ridiculous and realize that Life after all is only one huge comedy; or else he must have no scintilla of humour at all, facing its problems with a kind of Robot-like grimness. Anything between the two is fatal to the equilibrium.

When you compliment one of your men for bringing in the head of a sniper, and he modestly replies that it was nothing, he knew the sniper's ways, as it happened to be his father; when your favourite Indian Officer gravely asks the loan of your field glasses before going on leave, as he wishes this time to despatch the last items in a blood-feud, so that for the future he can sleep with his window open—you begin to understand that you are in a world whose values require some readjustment of the mental focus.

Dickie, however, was new to the Game; he still held by the standards of the West, and he did not at all relish the order.

"I say, it's pretty beastly," he grumbled, his face flushed to a dull red. "There's no proof—only camp rumours."

On the previous day we had played a round with the Tribesmen on the foothills course, according to the time-honoured Rules. We had, I regret to say, rather badly ffoozled some of our strokes; the honour, it seemed to us players, was unmistakeably with them. We could, of course, count our own casualties, but there is never any knowing for certainty what are those of the enemy. But these are happily an elastic

conjecture which can always be stretched within reasonable limits, to the length of victory without much hazard of refutation. And as it is awkward and embarrassing for Olympus—and subsequently for others—to hear of anything but success, we were gratified to learn from the gospel of our G.O.C's report that the Tribes had been many times more grievously smitten than had we ; that condign punishment had been meted out. Olympus bridled ; smooth sentences vibrated through the ether ; honours and awards descended. But in spite of these glories a dull resentment seemed to gnaw like conscience at the vitals of Authority-on-the-Spot. Hence, presumably, the order.

“If you destroy a man's home and crops,” Dickie rationalized with the embryonic instincts of a statesman, “you're bound to make him a bitter and permanent enemy.” He snorted indignantly. “Worse than the Bosche in Belgium.”

“To encourage the others, Richard,” I said without a great deal of ardour.

It was like this. While we had been retiring to camp across that belt of more or less no-man's-land between the Border and our own marches, over which the jurisdiction is loose and nebulously defined, we had been incommoded by fire from a crop-screened village on our flank. The Tribesmen had got into the village, we saw them there with our own eyes, but, it was said, they had received too civil a welcome from the inhabitants, and further, it was affirmed, the villagers themselves had partaken in the *battue* against us. Therefore an example must be made. We were going out to destroy the village and lay waste the surrounding crops.

“Vive la Gloire !” Dickie muttered as he swung into the saddle and we moved off across the plain towards Gemorrah. “The poor devils hadn't a hope. If they had stuck up for us, the Tribesmen would have scuppered the lot. As it is, *we're* going to devastate them. Devil and the deep sea.”

“One can't be too particular about the site of one's residence, Richard,” I said feebly, for a rather threadbare motley was the only wear for such an occasion.

We were, I suppose, short of explosives, for it was ordained that a field battery was to demolish the huddle of mud huts at point blank range, and before the curtain rose on this paramount spectacle, it was our delectable duty to clear the inhabitants out beyond the danger zone to a position which had been gratuitously allotted to them, from where they could get an excellent view of the performance.

When the cordon had been completed, I rode forward with Dickie and Faiz Ullah to explain matters to the headman of the village. He came to meet us, a tall, lithe, stately figure, with one arm in a sling, striding towards us with long and dignified steps, grave anger on his face.

I explained, as briefly as might be, the reason, and the purpose, of the military pageant he beheld around him. His dark eyes flashed.

"Sahib," he said, "less than three months ago I stood in Buckingham Palace, even before the King, who with his own hand gave me this, for some small work in France."

He moved the shattered arm, displaying pinned on his *poshteen* the Indian Order of Merit—that medal next in virtue to the V.C.

"And now," he proceeded, "after three years across the seas, I come back and find ye, the King's servants, about to destroy my house and bread."

It was not easy to find an answer to this. Dickie murmured hopefully in my ear:

"Isn't this rather a cosmetic? Doesn't it put a different complexion on things?"

I wrote hastily in my message book, tore out the page, and despatched an orderly *ventre a terre* to headquarters. Pending the reply we, Dickie, Faiz Ullah and I, dismounted a little apart from the headman to discuss events.

"You can't *really* believe a fine-looking ex-soldier like that would have fired on us?" Dickie asked with a mournful countenance. Faiz Ullah was much amused at this restricted outlook on the spacious game of Life. He turned to me with his harsh croak of a laugh.

"Ye remember the Zakka Khel war, Sahib?"

I nodded. Faizu himself was of the Zakka Khel, and at the time we had tactfully given him and his clan unlimited leave on urgent private affairs.

"Ye remember, Sahib," he chuckled, "how with your own hands ye blew up my *khori*, my tower?"

"How could I have known it was yours, Faizu?"

"It was a base act, Sahib, to destroy the home of a friend." Faiz Ullah grinned. "I was shooting at you all the time, but, the light being misty, I could not get the range. Nevertheless," he crowed, "'twas the providence of Allah that marred my aim."

"Thank you," I said modestly.

"Aye," he proceeded, "for afterwards was it not the tongue and the pen of Your Honour that got me the compensation with which I built a three-times greater *khori*? Had that morning been clear," he murmured with dreamy reminiscence, "who knows, Sahib, I might still be but a small house-holder."

From my point of view the corollary to this reflection was not very enlivening. I reverted to the business in hand.

"These houses are mere hovels," Faizu grinned significantly, "the soil harsh, the crops scarce fit to feed a crow: and our friend there—" he indicated the headman, "has the Medal. If—"

A clatter of hooves broke in on Faiz Ullah's ratiocination as the orderly trotted up and handed me the answer to my message. It was laconic. Dickie, peering over my shoulder, read it aloud:

"The programme will be proceeded with according to plan."

"Clumsy English," he muttered.

"But lucid," I said.

While I said a last word to Dickie about the arrangements, Faizu had walked across and was croaking in the headman's ear. When I turned and beckoned the latter to me, there came to us a kind of echo of Faizu's final croak, and it sounded like the words of a parable.

“Your houses and your crops ye will lose, but nevertheless the harvest will be richer than this soil would bear ye in a score of years. Allah, may his name be praised, rewards the Faithful.”

The headman stood before me again, I communicated the dire decision.

“*Hakm hai*—it is an order. Ye will remove all to safety forthwith.”

The headman's face was still grave as that of a fine bronze. But there was no longer anger upon it. Only a serene and settled calm. This time he saluted with his uninjured hand. He was a man of the second category; he had no scintilla of humour, but there had come to him—through the kind offices of Faiz Ullah—a swift and complete understanding of the Game.

As he set about evacuating the villagers in a quiet and orderly manner, without the slightest trace of panic, and we looked on—Dickie, thinking of what had just passed and of what was just about to begin, remarked to me:

“Ken, I feel a little giddy.”



CAVALRY SIGNALS IN INDIA

By CAPT. R. H. NEALE, Royal Signals

GENERALLY speaking, inter-communication in the Cavalry Division and Cavalry Brigade is similar to Artillery and Infantry Signals, excepting that more rapidity of movement and elasticity are required.

The functions of the O.C. Cavalry Divisional Signals are laid down in Signal Training, Vol. 1.

It is intended to deal here with inter-communication within the Cavalry Brigade.

The Brigade Signal Officer receives his Commander's instructions through the Brigade Major, and it is his duty to supervise and co-ordinate the Signal communication of all units in the Brigade.

The Brigade Signal Officer must always be given early information of the situation as it develops owing to the rapidity with which the situation may change.

His operational work includes :

- (1) Preparation in conjunction with the Brigade Major of detailed arrangements and orders for signal communications during operations.
- (2) Organization of wireless communication, redistribution of wave-lengths and calls.
- (3) Organization of despatch-rider letter service.
- (4) Organization of line communications when they are available.
- (5) Co-ordination into one system of all available methods of communication.

- (6) Technical supervision of work done by regimental and battery signallers, carried out by frequent inspections.
- (7) Meeting the legitimate requirements of miscellaneous units in the cavalry brigade area, e.g., Armoured Car Companies.
- (8) The direct supervision of all signal instruction within the Cavalry Brigade.

Inter-communication personnel consists of :

- (1) Regimental and Battery Signallers and Orderlies.
- (2) Cavalry Brigade Signal Troop (Royal Corps of Signals.)

The responsibility for inter-communication is from rear to front and laterally from right to left. That is to say that the Brigade Signal Troop is responsible for communication from Brigade to Regimental H.Q., and a formation or regiment is responsible for communication to the equivalent formation or unit on its left.

A Signal Officer must always arrange for alternative means of communication so that, in the event of one method breaking down, messages may be sent by another means.

The organization of the Brigade Signal Troop is as follows :

- 1 Captain Commanding ; 1 Subaltern, Second-in-Command ; 1 Troop Sergeant-Major.
- (a) Visual Section, commanded by a Sergeant, consisting of 8 Visual Terminals (helio, lamp or flag), 11 British Operators, 11 Indian Operators.
1 Cable Detachment (7 miles D.2 cable), 2 British Operators, 1 British Lineman, 3 Indian Linemen.
5 Motor Cyclist Despatch Riders (British).
- (b) Wireless Section, commanded by a Sergeant, consisting of 2 Wireless "C" Sets, carried on pack-horses ; 1 spare Wireless Set on a motor vehicle ; 12 British Operators.

British personnel belong to the Royal Corps of Signals, Indian Ranks to the Indian Signal Corps.

The Visual Section is normally divided into two Signal Centres : one for Brigade Headquarters and one Advanced Signal Centre for Advanced Brigade Headquarters. This makes

it possible to employ a leap-frogging system during a move, i.e., four terminals are working while the remainder are ready to move in order to establish communication elsewhere. Each signal centre has one operator employed as a signal clerk who is responsible for the registration of messages. When mounted orderlies are required men are taken from visual terminals which are not working, or linemen are employed.

All ranks are trained in R.A.F. Co-operation duties. The picking-up device and brigade sign are normally carried by the cable detachment.

The Cable Detachment.—The cable is carried on two pack-horses. Field cable is used in the Cavalry Brigade under the following circumstances :

- (a) From piquets to outpost H.Q. and to Brigade H.Q. at night ;
- (b) When movement of orderlies is restricted by enemy air activity or by ground (e.g., rivers, canals).

Under the above conditions it is particularly required when commanders wish to speak personally with their subordinate commanders. The men must be trained in laying cable at the gallop, as it frequently happens that the Brigade Commander requires a line to be put out quickly.

The Wireless Section.—Normally one wireless set will be with the Advanced Signal Centre and one at Brigade Headquarters, keeping one set in readiness to move at a moment's notice. Further, a wireless set may be made available to accompany a regiment on an independent mission to keep communication with Brigade Headquarters. A wireless set is a terminal of a Signal Station and not a station on its own.

In the field, a mobile wireless set is sent by the Corps Signals Unit to Cavalry Brigade Headquarters for communication with Force Headquarters. This set is mounted on a Crossley tender with a roof aerial, and is capable of receiving and transmitting on the move over a distance of approximately ten miles. Armoured Car Companies have a similar wireless tender accompanying them and so are enabled to communicate with Cavalry Brigade Headquarters on the move.

All Signallers must know by sight the brigade staff and commanding officers and if possible all signalling officers and adjutants. They must have constant practice in packing of equipment boxes and adjusting loads on pack-horses, as well as carrying equipment on the man. They must receive a thorough training as orderlies to fit them to carry verbal messages and must be well mounted.

Signalmen of the Brigade Signal Troop must be properly trained as cavalymen in march discipline and horsemastership and section leaders require special training.

The Brigade Signal Officer must hold several signal exercises during the training season which all Regimental and Battery Signallers must attend.

Owing to the essentials of speed in transmission of messages the use of a carefully worked out code repays consideration. For instance, places on the map are given code names, while regiments are given cipher names, e.g., Harry for Kut-al-Amara. This considerably simplifies the duties of enciphering by wireless personnel.

In the event of heavy casualties in the Brigade Signal Troop, temporary reinforcements in the field will be found from regimental signallers.

In conclusion, it may be said that unless the Brigade Signal Officer displays the maximum amount of energy, force and driving power, he will accomplish little.



SCOTTISH YEOMANRY IN 1828

THE year 1828 was a sad year for the whole of the Yeomanry, in Scotland no less than elsewhere, for the Government, anxious to effect every possible economy, had decided to disband the bulk of the force. On 5th December, 1827, a circular letter was issued to the Lord Lieutenant of each county, announcing that in districts in which the experience of the past ten years showed that the Yeomanry had seldom or never been called upon to act in aid of the civil power they were "to be released from their present military engagement." Those corps which were to be disbanded were to receive no allowances after 24th December, 1827, and the Government hoped thereby to save a sum of £87,000. Early in 1828, therefore, most Scottish corps paraded for the last time for the purpose of giving up their arms.

This decision involved the extinction of a large number of corps throughout the United Kingdom, most of which had held themselves ready for service in any emergency for twenty-four years, many for thirty years, and some (such as the Ayrshire Yeomanry) for an even longer period. The majority of the yeoman had offered their services during the wave of patriotism inspired by the danger of a French invasion. As part of the Volunteer Force, of which they formed the Volunteer Cavalry, they had served until Napoleon's downfall, in 1814 and 1815. The Volunteer Infantry, which had by that time been converted into local Militia—with the exception of certain exceptionally efficient and enthusiastic Volunteer Corps, such as the 1st Royal Edinburgh Volunteers—then went out of existence. But in the meantime the Government had come to realize the value of the Yeomanry for the maintenance of order, at a

time when a modern police force had not yet come into existence. The Peace which succeeded the Napoleonic Wars resulted—like the Great War—in an aftermath of industrial unrest, in which the services of the Yeomanry were invaluable. The Regular Army had been drastically reduced, and in the troublous years between 1816 and 1821 the maintenance of public order really depended on the Yeomanry. As a result, the Government found it necessary to increase the numbers of the force.

In 1817 there were sixteen corps in Scotland, with an establishment of 2,001 rank and file, and an effective strength of 1,861. Most of these were single troops, scattered throughout the country, and varying in strength from 35 to 70. Such were the Troops of Clackmannan, Forfar, Linlithgow, Peebles, Selkirk, Wigton and the Galloway Rangers. The corps in Ayrshire, Berwickshire, Dumfriesshire, Kircudbright, Roxburgh and Stirlingshire were larger, their strengths varying from about 100 to 180. The Royal Fife and the East Lothian Yeomanry both mustered considerably over 200 men. The strongest regiment in Scotland was the Royal Mid-Lothian Yeomanry Cavalry, with 269 men. It had originally been raised in 1797, and had been amalgamated in 1800 with the Royal Edinburgh Volunteer Light Dragoons, the corps which Sir Walter Scott had been largely instrumental in raising, and of which he was one of the most enthusiastic members.

In 1816 the Ayrshire Yeomanry were called out to aid the magistrates in consequence of a serious riot at Ayr, in which a miller's house and mill were destroyed, and they remained on duty for eight days. In the following year, not only the Clackmannan and Stirling Yeomanry, but also the Wigton Troop, were similarly called out. In 1818, although various disturbances took place elsewhere, it was not found necessary to call upon the Scottish Yeomanry. But in December, 1819, and April, 1820, the Radical Riots in Glasgow and the West of Scotland made it necessary for the authorities to call for the services of most of the Scottish Corps. During December, 1819, the Mid-Lothian Yeomanry and the Linlithgowshire Yeomanry were both ordered to march across Scotland to Glasgow, where

their presence, in conjunction with that of the Regular troops, prevented the disturbances from reaching a serious height. Meanwhile, the Berwickshire Yeomanry assembled at Duns and afterwards marched to Dalkeith to take the place of those corps which had been moved to the West, while at the same time two troops of the Ayrshire Yeomanry were quartered in Ayr. In April, 1820, it was again found necessary to send the Mid-Lothian Yeomanry to Glasgow, where the Ayrshire and Dumbartonshire Yeomanry had already assembled, while the Lanarkshire, Stirlingshire, Clackmannanshire, and Linlithgowshire Yeomanry were called out for duty in their own districts. Similar disturbances, however, were taking place throughout Scotland, and the Berwickshire, Fifeshire, East Lothian, and Perthshire Corps were all called out for duty during the course of the winter.

The need for the employment of so many corps of Yeomanry in maintaining order at so many places, not only in Scotland but throughout the United Kingdom, led to a marked increase in the strength of the Yeomanry force. Many of the existing corps raised additional troops and other new corps sprang into existence. By 1821 two of the corps which had been in existence in 1817 (the Clackmannanshire Yeomanry and the Galloway Rangers) had disappeared. But, on the other hand, new corps had been raised in Kinrosshire, Dumbartonshire, Perthshire, and Renfrewshire, and many of the old corps had increased in size. In Lanarkshire—an industrial district which was particularly liable to show signs of discontent—three corps had come into existence, at Glasgow, Kilbride, and the Upper Ward of Lanarkshire. The same thing was taking place throughout England and Ireland, so that the force in the whole of the United Kingdom, which in 1817 had numbered 35,000, rose to 57,000, and in 1822 consisted altogether of 52 corps, over half of which had been raised between 1819 and 1821.

In 1821, the Berwickshire Yeomanry were again called out, in consequence of a riot which arose between a number of Irish shearers and the townspeople of Lauder, and which assumed such a serious aspect that a party of the 4th Dragoon

Guards was sent down from Piershill. The bulk of the disturbances in that year, however, were confined to Ireland. The year 1822 was peaceful, so far as Scotland was concerned, but in 1823 the Ayrshire, Berwickshire and Roxburghshire Yeomanry were again called upon. The two latter corps also had to provide strong detachments, to escort from Jedburgh to the place of execution at Fans a murderer whose crime was so atrocious that the authorities were afraid that an attempt might be made to lynch him. After 1824 the country seems to have been more settled, and, with the exception of two small detachments of the Ayrshire Yeomanry, in 1827 and 1828, the Scottish Yeomanry were not employed in aid of the Civil power.

The decision of the Government to disband so many corps, whose services had recently proved useful, created—as was on'y to be expected—widespread disappointment. In pursuance of their policy of retaining regiments only in those districts in which trouble was likely to recur, the only Scottish corps which the Government decided to keep after the beginning of 1828 were those connected with Ayrshire, Lanarkshire (as well as the two troops from Glasgow and the Upper Ward), Mid-Lothian, Renfrewshire and Stirling. The remainder went out of existence, and the total expense of the Yeomanry and Volunteers for the whole of the United Kingdom was, in consequence, reduced from £151,027 to £58,664. Doubts were freely expressed by many as to the wisdom of dispensing with the services of a large number of men of a class well suited to perform the difficult duties which fall upon those entrusted with the maintenance of public order. Their value was also enhanced by the fact that they were widely distributed throughout the country, so that their services could be made instantly available wherever necessary.

While regretting the Government's decision, most of the units to be disbanded appear to have accepted their fate with a good grace. Some corps, as for instance, the Berwickshire Yeomanry—who might with justice have regarded themselves as hardly treated, in view of their past services—resolved to maintain their old muster rolls and keep their uniform ready,

so as to be able to re-raise the corps quickly in case its services were again required. Others, like the Dunbar Troop of the East Lothian Yeomanry, offered to serve without pay and allowances, and did so for several years. The political feeling engendered by the Reform Bills, however, once more showed the need of a strong force such as the Yeomanry had been. The result was that, in February, 1831, the Secretary at War had to admit his regret at the reductions which had taken place in 1827. In his view, the utility of the force was not to be measured simply by its service in putting down actual disturbance, but also by the moral effect produced upon possible rioters by the knowledge that such a force was in existence, and could be speedily collected. The Government, therefore, found it necessary to increase the expenses for the Volunteer and Yeomanry Corps by £72,000—a sum very nearly equal to the estimated saving contemplated by the reductions of 1827. The doubts which had been expressed in 1827 were thus fully justified.



MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR CAVALRY

COLONEL LANGFORD LLOYD, C.M.G., D.S.O.

A.D.M.S. Salisbury Plain Area.

(For abbreviations see Part I published in the July Number.)

PART II.

The Influence of Mechanization on the Medical Aspect of a Cavalry Division.

The recent organization of a cavalry division into two brigades of three regiments each, each regiment having two sabre squadrons and one machine gun squadron carried in M.T. vehicles with the 1st Line Transport Mechanized, and divisional troops consisting of two armoured car regiments, a brigade of R.H.A., a mechanized field brigade R.A., a squadron of R.A.F. attached, together with R.E. Signals and R.A.S.C., has definitely given present day cavalry a wider range of action and greater rapidity of movement. Armoured car regiments may be working twenty to forty miles in front of the actual cavalry and spread over a wide frontage.

The recent Memorandum on Training, 1927, issued by the War Office states that the radius of action of cavalry has been definitely increased by the mechanization of the 1st Line Transport. A regiment is no longer tied to its horse transport, and greater distances can be covered owing to the reduction of weight on the horse with greater comfort to the troops. Two instances of this are quoted, one of a cavalry regiment covering a distance of thirty-six miles at five miles per hour during a night march and being fit to go into action at the end, the other of a cavalry regiment marching forty-eight miles in nine hours with one hour halt, horses and personnel being in good condition at the finish.

The difficulty of organizing the medical work with cavalry

has undoubtedly increased. This was very clearly emphasized at the recent War Office Cavalry Staff Exercise which also brought out the necessity for an adequate and mobile Medical Service. This difficulty, I think, can be got over ; the principles are exactly the same as set forth in the first part of this article.

(a) The armoured car regiment should have its own unit medical establishment on the same lines as a cavalry regiment. The regimental medical officer must keep close touch with his O.C. and be carried about in an armoured unarmed M.T. vehicle together with his equipment and unit medical staff.

(b) The mechanized C.F.A. should be a unit easily divisible into parts or sections. The suggested establishment used at the recent Cavalry War Office Exercise was the 1923 war establishment converted into M.T. with no H.T. and consisted of a headquarters and one company, the headquarters forming a main dressing station, and the company an A.D.S. plus bearers with six light and six heavy motor ambulances, two such units being allotted to a cavalry division. This organization is not elastic enough, and I suggest that each mechanized C.F.A. should consist of a headquarters and two sections, each part self-contained and capable of acting and existing by itself when required. Two of these mechanized C.F.As should then be sufficient for a division.

(c) The number of ambulance wagons allotted to a C.F.A. should be on the generous side—fourteen per C.F.A., divided six to headquarters and four to each section, and in addition four armoured ambulance wagons. These armoured ambulance wagons will require a more powerful engine and chassis to carry the armour and to enable them to keep touch with the armoured cars. They will be used for work with the armoured cars as opportunity offers and will be lent to the R.M.Os of armoured car regiments ; the armour to protect against A.P. bullets over their engine and petrol tanks and against the ordinary bullet and shrapnel elsewhere. During the late war we tried protection of ambulance wagons by using wire and expanding metal, why not now go all out for a proper armoured ambulance car. The present type offers no protection whatsoever.

An armoured motor ambulance would get casualties through a hostile area that might otherwise become prisoners of war. An ordinary motor ambulance trying to get through a hostile area by itself would have every chance of being stopped, and the casualties inside made prisoners.

Most casualties would prefer this type of vehicle than one with canvas sides. It is good for morale. It is not against the Geneva Convention. Every argument can be used for the adoption, but few against, except it be that of weight and a more powerful engine which means increased cost, but this should not weigh down the scales on the negative side.

(d) Bearers should be carried in vehicles other than ambulance wagons.

(e) The wagon orderlies with ambulance wagons should be increased to two per car and fit each car with a surgical haversack containing dressings, etc., also a few splints. A car could, by this means, be sent off by itself to pick up and dress casualties.

(f) All M.T. vehicles of the C.F.A. should be capable of cross-country performance.

The light motor ambulance car, the Ford of the Great War, is not likely to be used in the future. All ambulance cars will therefore be of the four lying-down type and the eighteen cars with a C.F.A. would accommodate seventy-two lying-down cases at one trip.

The secret of rapid collection of casualties with a cavalry division as now organized is a sufficiency of vehicles under divisional control capable of carrying casualties, some of these vehicles being armoured. We must recognize, however, that mobile warfare means diminution of casualties as compared with static warfare or the attack and defence of a position. The greater the mobility the less the casualties, but the greater the difficulty in collecting them.

Let us examine the two echelons of medical aid that especially interest cavalry.

The 1st or Regimental Echelon.

As already indicated, armoured car regiments require their own R.M.O. who should have his own armoured vehicle.

The R.M.Os. with a cavalry regiment, brigade of R.H.A. or mechanized brigade of R.A., R.E.

With the cavalry regiment he is expected to share a six-wheeled light lorry with the veterinary officer and he is provided with one horse. This combination will probably result in complications—dual control is not always wise.

Regimental medical officers should have their own motor vehicle and so be independent. A motor-cycle messenger detailed as M.O's orderly, in addition to the lance-corporal now allotted as medical assistant would be a great boon to all regimental medical officers. He would always have someone available for rapid messages, either forward to one of the squadrons, or back to call the aid of the C.F.A. Liaison and rapid inter-communication is one of the secrets in the collection of casualties, especially those of cavalry moving at all rapidly.

As regards the R.M.O's vehicle, it might be possible to give him a six-wheeled cum track reconnaissance car, but with a slightly different type of body, one which would allow of four sitting in front—driver and one on the front seat—two on seat behind. Behind the back seat would be a "boot" with door at the back opening downwards so as to form a table or shelf. In the "boot" would be carried, besides the tools required for the car, the medical equipment and any additional articles he might require such as blankets, hot water bottles, Primus or other kind of portable stove.

The four stretchers, Mark II, could possibly be carried along the sides, but if portable stretchers were ever issued these heavy Mark II could be carried under the quartermaster's charge, and brought up by him when required. The heavy stretcher is of little use with cavalry.

This type of car would be useful to "others" besides regimental medical officers, and with this car the R.M.O. would not require a horse. The new establishment for a tank battalion provides a motor-cycle and side-car for the R.M.O., but this is not very suitable; it is far from restful. Further, a vehicle, in addition, is necessary for his equipment and orderly. The car such as described above, which will take

the R.M.O., his equipment and his orderly, with a motor-cycle for the R.M.O.'s messenger, is the ideal and would be a far less strain on the M.O.

Light portable folding stretchers capable of being carried in a bucket on a horse by squadron first-aid men, weighing about 8 to 9 lbs., are a very real necessity with cavalry regiments ; two per squadron are suggested.

The 2nd or Field Ambulance Echelon.

The new C.F.A. will be entirely mechanized with all its vehicles capable of cross-country performance. This is absolutely essential and in keeping with the increased radius of action and pace now given to cavalry divisions. Increased mobility and range of action must also be given to field ambulances working with cavalry if the F.A. is to do its work properly, rapidly and efficiently.

With mechanization the area over which casualties will occur will certainly be greater, groups of casualties collected by regimental effort will be farther apart. It therefore behoves squadron officers, and others, to help all they can by sending back information of the exact location where the groups are or the casualties have occurred.

The six-wheeler cum track motor ambulance, which is capable of going nearly everywhere and under all conditions of ground and across nearly every class of country, will help to simplify collection. These six-wheeled ambulances should not, however, when loaded, move across country more than absolutely necessary. For the sake of the patients, they should get on to a good track or road as soon as possible. They have one crab when on a road, if moving at all fast, and that is the very small rapid vibrations that are felt and which would be especially upsetting to a badly wounded patient. It is very doubtful if these vibrations can be got over.

I have already indicated the organization of the C.F.A. I suggest should be authorized, and that two of these should be sufficient for the new cavalry division. If, after experience, two were found insufficient a third could be authorized.

To go into a little more detail. The following organization is suggested :

A headquarters capable of forming a M.D.S., self-contained. Two sections for forward work, each section capable and equipped to form an A.D.S. plus four stretcher squads (a squad=four men), each section being self-contained.

The officers are carried in six-wheeled cum track touring cars, and the quartermaster and regimental sergeant-major in motor cycle combinations driven by a R.A.S.C. private. An adequate number of despatch riders are allowed for inter-communication, and a reasonable number of motor ambulance cars.

The stretcher-bearers are carried in a new type of vehicle which I will term an Irish car lorry, a 30-cwt. six-wheeled cum track chassis, with a body like an Irish car, to seat six on each side facing outwards, straps for each to hold on by, a well in the centre for taking the Mark II stretcher, folding stretchers if authorized, surgical haversack and water-bottles, blankets and other equipment required by the bearers. There would also be seating accommodation by the driver. Head cover is not normally required.

The advantage of this type is the rapidity with which the passengers can dismount. These lorries would take the bearers as far forward as possible, and could then be used, if required, to take back light and walking casualties. If this type of troop carrying lorry does not materialize, the ordinary 30-cwt. type could be used.

This type of lorry could be put to many other uses besides the conveyance of C.F.A. bearers. R.E., Machine gun sections, for instance, in fact for any class of troops where quick dismounting was essential. The twelve men carried by it can dismount simultaneously carrying with them whatever is necessary.

The transport allowed the mechanized C.F.A. enables every man to be carried until such time as required for actual duty at the M.D.S., A.D.S., or for the collection of casualties; another great principle complied with, viz. : conservation of energy.

Item.	Head-Quarters.	One Section.	For Two Sections.	Whole C.F.A.	Remarks.
Personnel					
Officers	4	2	4	8	
Other Ranks, R.A.M.C. .	(1 a Q.M.) 50	39	78	128	
Attached Batmen .. .	5	2	4	9	
" R.A.S.C., M.T. .	42	18	36	78	223. (Includes 5 Divisional R.A.S.C. personnel).
Touring Cars .. .	2	1	2	4	Of the 11-cwt. Lorries : 3 are with Divn'l R.A.S.C. 1 for baggage ; 1 for blankets ; 1 for supplies.
Motor Cycle Combs. .	(1 for O.C.) 2	Nil	Nil	2	
Transport					
30-cwt. Lorries .. .	7	2	4	11	
Irish Type Lorries ..	Nil	2	4	4	Of the 15 Motor Cycles : 3 are for R.A.S.C., M.T. ; N.C.O. in charge ; and 12 for D.R.
Ambulance Cars . .	6	4	8	14	
Armoured Amb. Cars .	4	Nil	Nil	4	
Water-Cooker Lorry .	1	Nil	Nil	1	
Mess Van—Officers' .	1	Nil	Nil	1	
Van for M.T. Fitters ..	1	Nil	Nil	1	= 37 6-wheeled Vehicles with the C.F.A. and 3 with the Divisional R.A.S.C.
Motor Cycle (Solo) ..	5	5	10	15	

Notes :

- (1) All vehicles are Six-wheeler cum Track, including touring cars, fitters' van and officers' mess van.
- (2) Some of the motor-cycles could be semi-track now under experiment by R.A.S.C.
- (3) Four of the 30-cwt. lorries carry personnel of the M.D.S. and A.D.S., and four carry equipment and technical stores.
- (4) Fifty per cent. spare R.A.S.C., M.T. drivers have been allowed, and three fitters.
- (5) The cooks and water-duty personnel travel on the water-cooker lorry.
- (6) The Irish type lorries carry the section stretcher bearers and their stretchers and equipment.
- (7) The lorries with the sections, including the Irish type lorry to carry 20 gallon water tanks under driver's seat.
- (8) All ambulance cars have two wagon orderlies instead of one.
- (9) Water-cooker lorry not required with section. Each section carries portable cooking utensils and a portable stove as part of its equipment, which enables them to cook for their personnel and patients when required. Food for personnel can also be sent up to sections from H.Q. when sections are away from headquarters.
- (10) A Dental officer with his assistants and equipment are not included in this C.F.A. as in the case of the War Establishments, 1923, C.F.A. One for a Cavalry Division should be sufficient, he could be included in the A.D.M.S. staff and be attached to each C.F.A. as required. He should have his own M.T. vehicle to carry himself, assistants and kit.

One section for work in front of the main dressing station is not sufficient for present day cavalry who are required to work over an extended area and have a greater range of action. Consequently, two forward sections have been provided, each being self-contained and capable of independent action.

Take a cavalry brigade doing an advance guard. Two forward sections allow of one being detailed to each flank when required. Further, with one section, if two lines of aid are required, a hurried division of the one section's equipment and transport would have to be made; a not very satisfactory arrangement. With two forward sections, and only one required for use, the second can leap-frog over it when required. This makes for continuity of collection—one section can be closing whilst the other is working.

For the above reasons two forward sections are better and give more latitude than one, and therefore make for greater efficiency and more rapid collection and should meet all possible eventualities.

Lesson and Experience gained during the Great War.

A careful study of the medical history of the Great War does not help us a great deal. Purely cavalry action was not very frequent on the Western front. Cavalry working as such were used up to the end of the first battle of Ypres and were employed for a short time at Arras in April, and at Cambrai in November, 1917, and again in the final phases of the war leading up to the march to the Rhine. In Palestine, with the Desert Mounted Corps, we get the greatest evidence of cavalry work.

In the operations in South-west Africa the question of increasing the mobility of the medical units was of the greatest importance; during the advance from Swakopmund some of the South African Mounted Brigade field ambulances were not always able to keep up, over the rough tracks, with the rapidly moving commandoes.

Many types of light H.T. ambulance wagons were used in South-west Africa, both on two wheels drawn by one horse, ride and drive, capable of taking one stretcher only, and four-

wheeled, very low, drawn by a pair, ride and drive, capable of taking two stretchers. These were designed as it was considered that the heavy H.T. ambulance wagon and even the official light H.T. ambulance wagon was not suitable for South Africa. The four-wheeled modified light ambulance wagon proved satisfactory, but the single horse, two-wheeled type called a "galloping ambulance wagon," was only of limited utility.

In certain places in South-west Africa wheeled vehicles were impossible, and sleighs with runners, 12-18 inches wide, were used. Motor ambulances were ultimately issued to C.F.A's to replace H.T. wherever possible. This motor ambulance was a light car with a high engine power and carried two lying and three sitting cases.

The cavalry field ambulance of 1914 which went to France was of two sections, each section consisting of a tent sub-division and a bearer sub-division, and could staff a M.D.S., an A.D.S. and supply bearers. The transport was light draught horses heavy ambulance wagons and light ambulance wagons with pairs driven by long reins, G.S. wagons and Maltese carts. All the personnel marched. This unit working and moving together as a complete unit was impossible; it had no mobility; it was scarcely faster than the infantry field ambulance. An attempt was at once made during and after the retreat in 1914 to increase its mobility by dividing it into two echelons instead of two sections. "A" Echelon consisted of the light ambulance wagons, the Maltese carts, water cart, and G.S. wagons, lightly loaded and spare horses. "B" Echelon, or the Heavy Echelon, consisted of the heavy ambulance wagons and all the rest of the transport. "A" Echelon, under the O.C., moved with brigades. "B" Echelon moved with division, under the second in command. "A" Echelon was attached to brigade H.Q. for supplies. "B" Echelon was fed direct. "B" Echelon kept "A" Echelon supplied in all medical requirements. "A" Echelon was equipped to form an A.D.S. plus bearers, "B" Echelon to form a M.D.S.

The bearers with "A" Echelon and all personnel were carried in the ambulance wagons when not required to collect casualties

or other duty. This re-organization produced a certain amount of mobility in the section working with brigades, with a less mobile section working behind with divisional H.Q. to take over casualties from "A" or the Light Echelon, but this was still not satisfactory. The question of the under-horsing of the light ambulance wagons was frequently raised. The light ambulance and limbered G.S. wagons were used to carry personnel and equipment during an advance, but could only carry forward half what was actually required, and further, the light ambulance wagons (pairs) after having carried forward a full load of ambulance personnel had to be ready to return with a load of wounded and so on as long as the operations continued. The result was that the horses became utterly fatigued and unfit to work over extensive periods on account of the double work entailed. This was noted in other theatres of operations besides France. Suggestions were put forward to increase the number of horses to four, but this did not materialize on the Western front, although four mules were authorized in other theatres where mules were in use. It was the unanimous opinion that the light H.T. ambulance wagon required four light draught horses.

At times, the M.A.C. evacuated casualties direct from "A" Echelon.

At the end of 1914, motor ambulance wagons were issued to C.F.As, the heavy ambulance wagons still being kept, but eventually M.T. replaced all heavy H.T. ambulance wagons. The motor ambulances usually remained with "B" or the heavy echelon.

G.S. limbered wagons were also issued, and some of the G.S. wagons and the useless Maltese carts were withdrawn, the G.S. limbered wagons having teams of four. The regimental Maltese cart was also replaced.

A fairly useful unit was thus evolved, partly M.T. and partly H.T., but still leaving much to be desired as regards mobility.

After the war the C.F.A., as authorized in War Establishments, 1923, came into existence, partly H.T. and partly M.T.

In April, 1917, at the battle of Arras the D.D.M.S. of the Cavalry Corps prepared a special pack mounted section for each C.F.A. which was organized to afford aid to wounded during cavalry action on occasions when the whole resources of the cavalry field ambulance was not available. Specially designed light jointed stretchers were issued to these pack sections.

This pack organization was designed in case the cavalry were able to advance through a gap over the trench system where wheeled transport could not follow; the only medical aid to casualties would therefore be by hand carriage and the pack transport section. These pack mounted sections were to form brigade collecting posts behind the R.A.Ps of the cavalry units, and would be a connecting link until the Light or "A" Echelon of the C.F.A. could get across the trench system.

This organization went into action on 10th and 11th April, 1917, and the pack mounted section moved with Cavalry Brigade H.Q., and the remaining bearers of the light echelon bridged the gap between the pack mounted sections and the light ambulance wagons. This arrangement worked well on the whole. There was, however, an unfortunate incident. The pack mounted section and the "A" Echelon with one brigade withdrew before it had cleared its area of all the brigade casualties, although very distinct orders had been given by the divisional commander that C.F.As would only withdraw on completion of evacuation of wounded of the Division.

The chief cause of this unfortunate occurrence was want of close liaison between the A.D.M.S. and his divisional staff from whom he had no information of the casualty situation of the brigade in question when the cavalry division was withdrawn.

The pack mounted section was again used by brigades at Cambrai in November, 1917.

During the Sinai Peninsula operations in 1916, one of the great difficulties was the want of a portable stretcher, with the result that sand carts and sand sledges had to work close up to the firing line. The regimental organization of the Anzac Mounted Division broke down more or less during these operations as some of the unit commanding officers took the trained

regimental first-aid men away from the control of the regimental medical officers, and ordered them into the firing line, with the result that regimental medical officers were unable to form R.A.Ps., and the casualties were handled by untrained men.

In addition, messages were sent back asking for medical aid by many irresponsible persons, resulting in many sand carts being sent up to collect casualties which were not there. Indiscriminate messages sent in by irresponsible persons resulted in confusion and waste of energy.

I can recall another incident within my own experience in which, during the Second Battle of Ypres, a message was sent into a cavalry division stating that hundreds of cavalry casualties were awaiting evacuation from the Potijze area. Every available motor ambulance was collected, including many belonging to a M.A.C. who are not supposed to go beyond the M.D.S. The M.A.C. cars did not know their way through Ypres in the dark, but they started off. A very large number of motor ambulance cars eventually, somewhere about 02.00 hours, arrived at Potijze. There were no casualties to collect other than four, and the area was clear. They got back through Ypres without damage to the cars, but it was all by good luck. Some irresponsible person had sent in the message and on arrival at Divisional H.Q. the cars were collected and despatched without the message being thoroughly analysed by the A.D.M.S. Much energy, time, temper and petrol were wasted, luckily without any loss of cars or personnel. Adequate liaison was not functioning in this instance.

During the operations in the Sinai Peninsula the A.D.Ss of the Desert Mounted Column, operating under Sir P. Chetwode, were placed from 500–2,000 yards according to the nature of the ground, from R.A.Ps. The C.F.As working with the Desert Mounted Column were organized as in France into mobile and immobile sections corresponding to the "A" or Light Echelon and "B" or Heavy Echelon of the Western front.

During the Palestine operations at the end of 1917 and 1919, cavalry units, as well as infantry units, experienced great difficulty in the evacuation of casualties ; the sand was the difficulty.

Roads across the soft sand had to be made for motor traffic. These roads consisted of wire netting over the sand with manure worked in, or wire placed on matting over the sand. Sand carts, camel ambulance transport and Ford cars were principally used.

The Desert Mounted Corps consisted of four cavalry divisions, the Anzac Mounted Division, which contained one brigade of New Zealanders, the Australian Mounted Division, 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions from India. They were served by twelve C.F.As or mounted brigade F.As.

This column worked up the Jordan Valley and assisted in the capture of Damascus, Aleppo, the remainder of Palestine and all Syria up to the border of Asia Minor. Casualties had to be evacuated over desert, in deep mud, over steep and rocky mountains unfit for wheeled transport and during long pursuits in a nearly roadless country.

The medical establishments were far from properly equipped for the work in hand. Many changes of organization were tried ; that which existed at the end of the campaign worked out fairly satisfactory, considering the paucity of suitable transport available.

The squadron first-aid men or stretcher bearers carried with them, on their horses, light portable stretchers made of bamboo poles, canvas and transverse bars, weighing about 9 lbs. These were carried in a bucket attached to the off-stirrup and slung by a strap to the elbow like a lance. Each squadron had a collecting post about 200 yards behind near "led" horses. Cases were carried back by means of these portable stretchers to the squadron collecting posts, and thence to the R.A.Ps near regimental H.Q., about 800 yards from firing line. Wounded were collected as soon as possible, being sent back whenever able, walking or on their horses, whilst the ambulance transport was brought as far forward as the situation allowed, even up to the squadron collecting post and further forward still whenever there was suitable cover. During the desert portion of the operations this could usually be done with the two wheeled sand carts or sand sledges. Sand sledges were most comfortable for serious casualties. Light

motor ambulances could not get so far forward, nor were they able to tackle some of the rough and hilly country. Sand carts, less their sand tyres, were often used in this rough country. Hand carriage over any great distance was seldom employed. Bearers were as often as not employed as runners between the C.F.A. and the R.M.O. Inter-communication was of the greatest importance. The location of casualties was communicated to C.F.A. through brigade H.Q., to which they were attached. By this means few casualties were left for long uncollected and unnecessary calls on the C.F.A. were avoided. Later, when owing to the nature of the country, communication with the C.F.A. became difficult, R.A.M.C. personnel were trained in helio and lamp and an issue of these was made. All C.F.A. bearers were mounted and carried portable stretchers, as well as the unit stretcher bearers. Extra horses and mules were authorized for this purpose. Each C.F.A. had thirty-six mounted bearers—these mounted bearers were invaluable.

In the case of an active pursuit the R.M.O. moved with the unit and attended to each casualty where he fell, collected those in the immediate neighbourhood into a group where they were left under the care of a stretcher bearer for the C.F.A. to come along with its transport, whatever it was, and collect them. In the case of a retirement, the C.F.A. transport was packed as tight as possible and they were sent to the rear.

The A.D.S. was always sited as far forward as possible, even as close at times as a few hundred yards from the firing line. This A.D.S. was formed by the mobile portion of the C.F.A. The immobile portion remained further behind and formed a M.D.S. The three immobile (or heavy echelons) were often amalgamated and formed a divisional receiving station. This divisional receiving station became the main line of evacuation in the bigger operations. It often acted as a kind of M.D.S. and C.C.S. combined. Wounded were evacuated to this divisional receiving station by its own divisional transport, camel, pack, sand-cart, motor ambulance or H.T. ambulance wagon.

These receiving stations, of which there were four, corresponding to the four divisions of the Desert Mounted Column,

leap-frogged over one another, but as the operation proceeded the A.D.Ss got further and further away from these divisional receiving stations mainly owing to the delay caused by the amount of sickness that broke out, preventing them from being moved forward. When the 5th Cavalry Division got to Aleppo it was 120 miles in front of the nearest divisional receiving station.

Divisional receiving stations were evacuated by the unemployed sand cars, camels and motor ambulances of infantry divisions, but after a time a M.A.C. became available. Finally, returning empty lorries were also used and these divisional receiving stations were placed as close as possible to the re-filling points in order not to lose any chance of utilizing their services.

Divisions of the Desert Mounted Column were at times 190 miles away from the nearest C.C.S. It can therefore be imagined that the difficulties of the medical administrative staff were great, both of divisions and of the corps itself.

Divisional receiving stations had to cope with as many as 800 sick at a time. Lack of transport for these immobile sections of C.F.As. was greatly felt, and the immobile sections at times completely lost touch with the A.D.S. or mobile sections, with the result that the latter became immobile also, for want of clearing.

A very important feature of the Desert Mounted Column was the provision of portable sanitary equipment. Each regiment carried in a limbered wagon sufficient portable sanitary appliances and disinfectants for its own use.

This short account of the medical work of the Desert Mounted Column brings into prominence the question of mobility and the inadequacy of the transport authorized for the C.F.As., both for casualties, personnel and technical stores.

Mobile sections with the brigades were able, to a fair extent, to keep in touch with the troops, but the immobile sections were often tied to the ground for want of transport. Further, the M.A.C. allowance was too small to properly clear the divisional receiving station to the C.C.S. It cannot be good for the morale of troops to have so many sick and wounded held up in the forward area. Further, the holding up of cases in C.F.As.

interferes with their proper functions, which is keeping touch with the troops, in other words, with its mobility.

During the advance to Baghdad in 1917, the cavalry were kept on the move, undertaking raids or flank attacks. The transport for cavalry casualties consisted at first of twenty Benares tongas, eleven Ford cars and three wagons. After rain, mud predominated everywhere, which greatly impeded ambulance transport and the mule allowance per vehicle had to be increased. The Benares tonga was a complete failure with the cavalry. They were very weak and broke down under the slightest strain, even after undergoing strengthening in the local workshops.

H.T. or mule transport and motors was the only transport of any real use, and the H.T. or mule transport only when the team was big enough. The final arrangement of transport for the cavalry division was eleven Ford cars and twelve light H.T. ambulance wagons, distributed amongst the C.F.As. as the A.D.M.S. considered best.

It can be seen, therefore, that the C.F.As. in Mesopotamia were defective in mobility and local re-organization had to be undertaken to adjust this to the best of local resources.

In the section of the Medical History of the War dealing with ambulance transport and methods of carrying wounded by hand, it is recorded that the general opinion of all R.A.M.C. Officers serving with cavalry was that the regulation stretcher and the official Rogers trench stretcher were unsuitable for collecting cavalry casualties in open warfare, and that a special portable light pattern was required, and that the type suitable was one that could either be carried on pack transport or by a mounted stretcher-bearer. Various types were designed locally. That eventually evolved in March, 1917, was a type that folded in the middle. The canvas was 5 ft. 9 in. long and 1 ft. 7 in. broad, and was folded round the poles when not in use. The poles were kept apart for use by jointed spreaders, the weight being 15 lbs. The mounted stretcher bearers of units were to carry this in rifle buckets or in bags slung to the saddle. The Cavalry Corps staff, however, thought that the extra 15 lbs.

weight added to the horse was not justifiable. Four of these could be carried on a pack horse—two each side. The Australian Mounted Division in Palestine produced a stretcher already described, carried like a lance, which only weighed 9 lbs. We still have no official portable stretcher authorized for issue, and there is no doubt that one which could be carried by a man on a horse is an urgent necessity for cavalry. One could be designed which should not weigh much more than 8-9 lbs. This would be issued to cavalry units and C.F.As. on a fixed scale, in addition to the present Mark II stretcher. Experiment would show how this could be best carried by a mounted man.

The blanket stretcher, with which units from India were equipped, was completely useless, both for cavalry and infantry, but its use is still continued in India. Wheeled carriages of various patterns on which the official Mark II stretcher could be fixed were used during the Great War and were found of great use relieving bearers of the strain of carriage. The commonest type were those known as the Brook-McCormick, the Miller James and the Luce Mono Wheel. These were issued from time to time to units and F.As. They are not of the same advantage to cavalry as they are to infantry.

The one horsed two-wheeled single stretcher ambulance wagon already noted as having been used in South-west Africa was also used in Sinai and Macedonia, and was there found useful for accompanying cavalry or parties sent out to raid villages.

At the recent International Congress of Military Medicine, held at Warsaw in June, 1927, Lieut.-Colonel Garboroski, of the Polish Army Medical Service, read a very interesting paper on "Evacuation in a War of Movement," and touching on the cavalry aspect of it emphasizes the fact that cavalry medical units must be light and mobile to permit of rapid movements; that when on raids or advanced guards in a hostile country, medical units with cavalry will have less protection than those working with infantry, that the casualties will have to be got back longer distances, and that consequently the wounded will have to suffer, but that there is no alternative. That it was

calculated that a cavalry force of 10,000 might expect 300 casualties in one day's fighting, but that this "figures" for heavy losses. That the proportion of dead and missing will be greater than with infantry, and that owing to the distance cavalry casualties may have to be carried, the means of transport must be on the generous side, and that motor ambulances carrying back casualties may have to be accompanied by armoured cars to afford protection. That in a cavalry raid the functioning of the Medical Service is no easy matter, and that although in a raid the casualties should not be great it may be impossible to get them all back, in which case the serious cases will have to be left under the Geneva Red Cross in local civil hospitals. He touches on the system of the use of medical aeroplanes for evacuating casualties, especially serious cases from cavalry operating in front of the main army. He points out that casualties with raiding cavalry may often have to be treated by less modern methods owing to the difficulty of establishing a fixed point of medical aid, and that the Medical Services must be satisfied with the fact that they have saved the casualties from being made prisoners of war, a terrible hardship for a wounded man. Finally, he emphasizes most strongly the question of adequate liaison between the R.A.Ps. and the C.F.As. and the C.F.As. and the medical units in rear, between the A.D.M.S. and his divisional headquarters and between Medical Services as a whole, and the officers and other ranks with whom the Medical Service are working for the time. He considers a good system of inter-communication imperative, and that the medical units and administration should take full advantage of that provided by telephone, D.R., visual, wireless as supplied by the signal service of the formation to whom they are attached, and that in addition the Medical Service must organize their own system of inter-communication by runner, telephone, motor-cyclist and mounted orderly.

“A LITTLE BIRD TOLD ME”

By A DWELLER ON EARTH.

“FOR heaven’s sake, be careful,” cried the mother rook as she returned to the rookery to find one of her offspring lying peering out of the nest and perilously near the edge. She picked up the offender in her beak and flung him none too gently inside.

“I was only trying to see the Earth, which you and dad keep talking about,” complained the other in an injured tone. “H’m,” retorted his mother, “if you were to go and tumble out it’d be the last of the Earth you ever would see!” “Then why do we live stuck up here in a tree where one can’t see anything?” rejoined the young hopeful, “and its beastly draughty, too!” he added rebelliously.

“Patience, my dear, patience,” soothed the older bird. “When your wings have grown stronger like mine, you’ll be able to fly about and see as much of the Earth as ever you want, and when you’ve grown some feathers, you won’t feel the draught any more than I do.”

But the youngster wasn’t satisfied, and when his father came home that evening, he tackled him on the subject.

“Why do we live up here in a tree instead of on the ground like other creatures?” he asked. “Because it’s safer,” replied his father. “Safer?” queried the other in blank astonishment. “How can it be safer? It’s much further to fall.”

His father regarded him a little sadly, and then said, “I’m afraid you don’t quite understand. The creatures on the ground are our enemies. *That’s* why it’s safer to live up here.” “Oh,” said the little rook, “I see! Mother didn’t say anything about that.”

“I expect your mother didn’t want to frighten you,” replied the father, and there the matter was allowed to rest for the time being.

During the weeks which followed, our small friend made great progress. He gradually learnt to fly, and visited the

Earth in company with his mother on several occasions. He assisted her to slay insects and eat them, both of which occupations he thoroughly enjoyed ; and once they stopped to pick up some crumbs which a man threw out of a window ; but they didn't stop half as long as he would have liked, because a wretched cat came slinking along, and his mother had told him that whenever any animal of the ground approached—and especially cats—he was to fly away at once.

But the tragedy which came to pass, was not caused by a cat. It didn't even happen on the ground ; but up in the air where he had always been taught to believe that birds were safe. It didn't happen to him, but to his mother, who was killed in front of his very eyes not fifty yards away from their nest. And the cause ? He didn't quite know. All he knew was that a man had been standing below and had pointed something up into the air. There had been a bang, and his mother had suddenly crashed to the ground, and her dead body had been promptly picked up by the man, who was clearly very pleased with himself. Oh, yes, the man had done it all right. He was sure of that ; and when he had recovered from the first shock of the thing, his grief took the form of bitter hatred against man. What kind of a creature could it be who threw crumbs to you one day and murdered you the next ? But now the whole rookery was in an uproar, and he saw his father flying rapidly towards him in a considerable state of excitement.

"Now," thought the young rook, with a feeling of savage satisfaction, "we're surely going to declare war on man and avenge my mother's death" ; but he was very soon disappointed.

"Come along," said his father, "we've got to clear out of this at once."

"Why ?" said his son. "Never mind why—just follow me," said his father, and the son obeyed because everybody seemed to be doing the same. They didn't go far, only to the next group of trees ; but as soon as they got there the young rook spoke his mind.

"Why do we always take refuge in flight ?" he cried contemptuously, "why don't we attack these creatures of the

Earth if they attack us? Our ability to fly gives us an enormous advantage over them, and yet we only use it to fly away from them! Come, let us descend upon that murderer over there," and he indicated the man who had just shot his mother, "and let us peck his eyes out. What! Are you afraid?" he challenged. At this juncture a very old rook, whose tone commanded instant attention and respect, started to speak from the topmost bough of the highest tree.

"Young fellow," he said, "you don't know what you're talking about. You haven't studied the origin of species. You haven't given any thought as to why it is that man is unassailable. Listen, and I will tell you. On the ground, and in the ground, lie all the sources of life. We birds lost all hope of mastery of the ground when we took to the air. The fishes lost all hope of mastery of the ground when they took to the water. But man was wiser. He put mastery of the ground first, and now he is rapidly becoming master of air and water as well."

"But why," interrupted our hero, "should mastery of the ground lead to mastery of the air any more than mastery of the air to mastery of the ground?"

The old rook smiled. "Where does our food come from?" he asked. "Where do the trees grow in which we build our nests? Where did the rifle and ammunition come from with which your mother was killed? On the ground and in the ground, lie not only all the sources of life; but all the means of deliberate destruction. If we were to be so foolish as to attack man, he would very quickly exterminate us."

The small rook's face fell. He felt he'd been made to look a fool, and all he could say was: "Then what a pity we don't combine with man. Together we should be all-powerful."

"Too late!" said the old rook sadly, "too late! Man has contrived to retain his mastery of the ground and has learnt to fly into the bargain," and as he spoke an aeroplane whirled through the air just over the tree tops.

* * * * *

A distinguished young Air-Marshall faced an equally distinguished old Cabinet Minister.

"The thing we want to develop, Sir, is our independent air force," said the younger man. "We don't want to be tied to the other two obsolescent services. We want to be free to evolve a strategy of our own. Don't think," he hastened to add, "that I wish to belittle the Navy and the Army, or the enormous services they have rendered to the nation in the past, but—er, well I think you realize what I mean."

"I suppose you mean that in your opinion, future war will be entirely in the air," said the other.

"Well, Sir," smiled the Air-Marshal, "just think of our mobility, just think of the power of rapid concentration we have, and then of course there's this new gas, too, which we shall be able to shower down on our enemies."

The Cabinet Minister was very thoughtful for a moment or two. "Well, you may be right," he said at length, "it would seem at first sight that you must be, and yet —." He paused.

"And yet what, Sir?" questioned the young Air-Marshal confidently. "And yet," continued the old Cabinet Minister, carefully weighing his words, "deep down in me there is an instinct which tells me you are wrong. Your aeroplanes don't live in the air, nor are they made in the air, but on the ground, and from the ground is derived the power which enables them to fly, and the deadly gas which enables them to kill."

"Certainly, Sir," interjected the other, "but from the air we shall be able to control all that happens on the ground."

"Yes," rejoined the Cabinet Minister, "that is your idea I know, but deep down in me there is an instinct which tells me that you cannot. Only by the closest combination of all our forces—land, sea and air—(so my instinct seems to say) can we hope to be victorious over our enemies. That the air should be free to evolve a strategy of its own is an attractive notion, I grant you; but I cannot help feeling that a common strategy is the thing which we should aim at. Think it over, my boy. And now," he added, "I must be off. I promised my grandson I would be home in time to take him out rook shooting."



THE FOURTEENTH IN FACT AND FICTION

By J. PAINE

“ A great regiment is like a stately oak, it gathers strength and dignity with years. It is embodied tradition. Its past inspires reverence and respect ; its present, admiration and courage ; its future, confidence and hope. Firmly planted in its native soil, it survives the changes and stress of fretting years. Its memory is imperishable, and its heroic deeds are amongst the most treasured possession of a nation.”—*T. R. Threlfall.*

IN common with a few other cavalry regiments, the Fourteenth (King's) Hussars can boast of a small but select bibliography. Though linked for the last six years with another regiment as the 14/20th Hussars, one has little trepidation in still using the designation familiar to those who served with the regiment before and during the late war. Five years ago a short record was compiled of the services rendered by the Twentieth Hussars throughout the Great War and one trusts the deficiency in the case of its linked regiment will be remedied at some future date, for it is over a quarter of a century since the illustrious name of the Fourteenth appeared on the cover of a book.

Dealing with each volume in the order of its appearance, the first item of regimental interest would appear to be a very small book with a rather long title, the “ Journal of a Regimental

Officer during the Recent Campaign in Portugal and Spain under Lord Wellington," published in 1810. The diarist's name does not appear on the title page, but it is Captain Peter Hawker, who served during the campaign with what was then styled the Fourteenth (Duchess of York's Own) Regiment of Light Dragoons, commanded by his distinguished relative, Lieutenant-Colonel (afterwards General Sir) Samuel Hawker. Unfortunately the "Journal" is rather scrappy, being just a day-to-day record of personal experiences from the latter end of 1808 to just after Talavera. For its information concerning that battle the book is chiefly remembered. Captain Hawker, who joined the Fourteenth in 1803, was one of several officers of the regiment severely wounded in that memorable fight, and he pleads his after-sufferings as the excuse for not revising his diary. Like many other of his contemporaries, he retained a very poor opinion of the Spanish allies, his disgust at their conduct on numerous occasions being a matter which he makes little attempt to hide in the pages of his narrative. He partially recovered from his wound and produced a book which had a great success, "Instructions to Young Sportsmen in all that relates to Guns and Shooting," the third edition of which was published in 1824, an eleventh edition leaving the press thirty-five years later. His portrait appeared six years ago in the reprint of the ninth edition of this valuable sportsman's compendium. For the information of those who have not seen the two-volume work, published in 1893, "The Diary of Colonel Peter Hawker, 1802-1853," it should be noted that this is not a record of his military career, since the period covered by his "Journal" is purposely omitted and, moreover, he was gazetted out of the Service two years prior to Waterloo. In a footnote to that work, however, this "father of wild fowling" tells of how, in after years, he came across his old regiment, being readily recognized by the trumpet major as the officer who led the squadron which won for the Fourteenth the honour "Douro." No other British cavalry regiment has either this honour or those for the "Pyrenees" and "Persia." In the case of the last mentioned, history repeated itself sixty-two

years later when the Fourteenth earned the right to flaunt the distinction "Persia 1918."

Deserving of a brief notice is Lever's notable novel "Charles O'Malley, The Irish Dragoon," which first appeared in 1840 in the "Dublin University Magazine," was published the following year in Dublin in two volumes, illustrated by "Phiz," and has since, in London and elsewhere, passed through many single volume editions, a standing proof of its immense popularity. The Fourteenth itself has rather a shadowy existence in this rollicking yarn, though one has a glimpse of the regiment at the Douro, Talavera and other Peninsular fights. O'Malley's devil-may-care soldier servant, Mickey Free, is an outstanding character and so is Captain Power, who informs our hero, prior to his last night in Old Trinity, that he has been gazetted to "the 14th Light—the best fellows for love, war and whisky that ever sported a sabretache." Lever must not be taken too seriously though, and many have been the accusations levelled at his head for giving a false impression of Irish humour. He was a courageous, happy-go-lucky individual himself and numbered among his society friends Wellington's son, to whom he dedicated this story of the young officer who eventually became an extra aide-de-camp to a Major-General. The song which leads off with "Oh, Love is the soul of an Irish Dragoon," reproduced at length in the "full dress" history of the regiment, is taken from Lever's book. The reason why the Fourteenth has so often been associated with the Emerald Isle lies in the fact that prior to the last Boer War it spent on and off almost one hundred years there. That, in point of popularity, "O'Malley" in its early years "surpassed even the inimitable compositions of Dickens" is a fact recorded by Edgar Allen Poe. Charles Lever's own words in defence of his literary efforts are not inappropriate for inclusion here, since they express so aptly the spirit in which he wrote this one solitary novel connected with the Fourteenth, "I wrote as I felt—sometimes in good spirits—sometimes in bad—always carelessly; for, God help me, I can do no better."

The realms of fiction duly recognized, one returns again to the more stolid and less fanciful works affecting the career of the regiment of O'Malley's choice. Many years were destined to roll by ere any members of the Fourteenth thought fit to follow in Colonel Hawker's footsteps and give to the public their versions of what soldiering was like in the grand old "spit and polish" days. In the meantime, however, an official publication, the "Historical Record of the Fourteenth, or The King's Regiment of Light Dragoons," made its way into print, one of a famous series of similar works compiled by Richard Cannon, a clerk in the Adjutant-General's office. Published in 1847, this none too glowing narrative had to serve as the one and only "history" of the regiment for just over half a century. Since it only numbered sixty pages, exclusive of the usual appendices, it does not furnish the present generation with much detailed information concerning the early years of that scarlet clothed regiment known as Dormer's Dragoons, raised just a century prior to Waterloo. The Peninsular campaign takes up most of the pages of this book, for the regiment fought at the Douro, Talavera, Fuentes d'Onor, Salamanca, Vittoria, Pyrenees and Orthes.* Cannon's little record was embellished with three coloured plates, two of which portrayed the guidons that were finally abolished in the early 'thirties. It is only fair to record that, in Colonel Hamilton's history of the regiment, this particular record is not given the bad name which many modern writers have deservedly given to Cannon's other records. It is not surprising that his record of the Thirteenth Light Dragoons is often quoted in connection with the doings of the Fourteenth, since the two regiments spent many years together in the Peninsula where they were dubbed "The Ragged Brigade," a significant sobriquet since the toils of war were plainly evident in the condition of their uniforms and equipment. Fourteen years following the publication of this record the regiment was converted into Hussars

* All these battles with "Peninsula," eventually appeared as Honours on the regiment's Drum Banners. Its subsequent Honours are "Punjaub," "Chillianwallah," "Goojerat," "Persia," "Central India," "South Africa, 1900-02," "Relief of Ladysmith" and those awarded for the Great War.

and the shako (which had taken the place of the helmet) was supplanted by the white-plumed busby. One has a fair idea of the appearance of the regiment before this change in uniform came about from one of the very few battle paintings ever executed of the Fourteenth, Henry Marten's "Charge of H.M. 14th Light Dragoons at the Battle of Ramnuggur, Nov. 22, 1848," a print of which was published by Ackermann in 1851. Most regiments have their red-letter days and with the Fourteenth it is still Ramnuggur Day.

The regiment is fortunate from a literary standpoint, in having once mustered in its ranks George Carter Stent,* a much travelled man, who eventually secured a post in the Chinese Imperial Customs Service, where he was well known as a member of the Royal Asiatic Society and as a compiler of more than one Chinese dictionary. His no less honourable post as a non-commissioned officer in a British cavalry regiment was revealed by the publication, in 1882, of his "Scraps from My Sabretache ; Being Personal Adventures while in the 14th (King's Light) Dragoons." The writer launches his narrative with the pleasant recollections attending his boyhood days in Canterbury, his birthplace, where his chief source of admiration seemed to be within the Cathedral itself, hardly a matter of surprise when one remembers, even in his day, the many fine military memorials within those historic walls. Stent was a keen observer of people and places, and his experiences and escapades, both by land and sea, make pleasant reading. His pages are not all confined to the piping times of peace, since he served in the Indian Mutiny, where hastily devised charges and tough hand-to-hand *mêlées* were for many months quite the order of the day for his regiment. Mutiny survivors are few and far between now, one of the very last of the Fourteenth, a Tower warder and a veteran also of the Punjaub campaign, faded away some thirty years ago. The dragoon of this story was also an amateur poet, but he does not "inflict" on his readers, to use his own

* Lieut.-Colonel B. D. W. Ramsay, the author of "Rough Recollections of Military Service and Society" (two vols., London, 1882) served as a Captain in the 14th from 1844 to 1847, but there is little of interest concerning the regiment in his narrative.

expression, much of his well-meant attempts in that direction. The title of the book may seem original, but it is quite likely the author was influenced in his choice by that which appeared on the cover of another cavalryman's autobiography "Jottings From My Sabretache," published thirty-five years previously.

In a well-written memoir, published in 1883, bearing the attractive title, "Life As I have Found It," General Charles Philip De Ainslie records a few interesting anecdotes concerning the Fourteenth, to which he was appointed as a major in the early 'forties, being transferred four years later to another regiment, only to return again to the Fourteenth in the year of the Mutiny, when, for three years, he held the extraordinary position then common in the Service, that of Second Lieut.-Colonel. Speaking of the regiment in its Indian campaigning days, he states that "no finer body of cavalry ever took the field." After the unfortunate affair at Chillianwallah, Sir Charles Napier paid a similar compliment to the regiment on the occasion of an inspection, but foolishly added, "and all you want is to be well led," a statement which so affected the Commanding Officer, Lieut.-Colonel John Wallace King, that he retired from the parade ground and shot himself. This tragic affair, as related by De Ainslie does not quite correspond with the account of the same affair given by James Grant in his voluminous "History of India," in so far as the transcription runs of the actual words used by Napier, but the former appears to be the more correct version. This unhappy business was the cause of much comment at the time, since Colonel King behaved in a gallant manner in the battle and little blame could be laid on his shoulders in not using his squadrons to the extent expected by others not present in the engagement, and consequently ignorant of the full circumstances attending the disaster. De Ainslie's book was thought by one of his contemporaries to contain "much which had better have been left untouched," but the same critic endowed the writer with a true soldierly characteristic when he described him as "the frankest writer since the days of Pepys." He was also the author of "The Cavalry Manual" and a history of the regiment to which he



RAMNUGGUR
The Charge of the 14th Light Dragoons, 22nd November, 1848

was eventually appointed Colonel, The First Royal Dragoons.* The fact that the coloured frontispiece to his memoir is a representation of his family coat of arms, recalls a heraldic device of greater interest, the crest, with a Fourteenth Light Dragoon as sinister supporter, borne by a one-time Commander-in-Chief in India, Lieut.-General Sir Robert Sloper, K.B., who aspired to the Colonelcy of the regiment just one hundred and fifty years ago.

In 1889, Lieut.-Colonel Henry Blackburne Hamilton revised and published the "Regimental Almanack of the 14th (King's) Hussars," a publication originally launched in India, and published annually till the year 1886, when it was discontinued. In this almanack almost every day reveals itself as an historic anniversary by a recorded entry of some episode in the regiment's distinguished past. As a sheet suitably mounted it used to adorn the men's barrack rooms and an issue in pocket-book form, as kept by the officers, is still preserved in the British Museum. It was also Colonel Hamilton who, in 1890, at Hounslow, introduced the officers' "Dress-Call" for mess, and, in the following year, was instrumental in having published a book of "Regimental Standing Orders," copies of which were kept by all officers, troop-sergeant-majors and sergeants of the regiment. A War Office "Review Book" in the Public Record Office reveals the information that a "Code of Regimental Orders" existed a century previously, the introduction of which is usually credited to Major-General Sir John Burgoyne, who was in command of the Fourteenth Dragoons in 1776, the year in which the regiment became Light Dragoons, and adopted helmets in lieu of cocked hats.

* It is an odd coincidence that another writer, Major-General Frank Shirley Russell, C.M.G., should, like De Ainslie, have been at one time a Second Lieut.-Colonel of the 14th, and also eventually the full Colonel of the "Royals." His best known work is a two volume memoir of "The Earl of Peterborough and Monmouth (Charles Mordaunt)," London, 1887. Whilst serving with the 14th he translated from the German "Cavalry Field Duty," by Major-General Von Mirus (London, 1872), and was the author of "Russian Wars with Turkey" (London, 1877), and "The Armed Strength of Switzerland," compiled in the Intelligence Branch of the Quartermaster-General's Department (London, 1880).

The last member of the Fourteenth to record his regimental experiences was Troop-Sergeant-Major Edwin Mole, whose memoirs were edited by Herbert Compton, in a volume entitled "A King's Hussar," published in 1897. It is just a plain narrative of the adventures that befell an eighteen-year-old farmer's son who enlisted in the early 'sixties and, through sheer hard work and perseverance, rose to be the senior non-commissioned officer of his troop, eventually taking his discharge after a quarter of a century's service with a desire to live his army days over again. Aiding the civil power was a common duty for cavalry regiments in the days when Erin's sons went forth to poll, and the Hussar of this story relates some interesting anecdotes of the election fights, and of his chance acquaintance with a gentleman who turned out to be on his own confidential introduction, "a commissioned officer in the Army of Ireland," a rank which, in plain English, was none other than that of a Fenian ringleader. It was whilst stationed in Dublin that Mole's comrades discovered and entertained an old soldier who turned out to be Heffernan, the trumpeter who sounded the charge of the Fourteenth at Talavera. One thing worth noting in this soldier's reminiscences is his judgment of each successive commanding officer. "A beau sabreur of the old school" is his description of Colonel T——, who is the subject of a rather more intimate character sketch in De Ainslie's pages; his successor, Colonel C—— "a more reserved gentleman . . . who made the men's welfare his study"; Colonel A——, "an enthusiast at soldiering . . . scrupulously just," and, as the writer added, "a little too just we sometimes thought"; his last commanding officer, Colonel K—— he endows with all the military virtues, rounding up with the verdict that he "was most popular with all ranks." Though the writer preferred to omit the full name of these Lieut.-Colonels in the chapters of his book, the first letter used in each case was not a fictitious one, as reference to the "Historical Record" of the regiment will show. In the frontispiece portrait this "King's Hussar" is wearing the pillbox cap, a much abused headdress but one which suited the age remarkably well.

The most important contribution to the regiment's bibliography is the "Historical Record of the 14th (King's) Hussars, 1715-1900," written by Colonel H. B. Hamilton, M.A., to whom reference as a promoter of other publications of regimental interest has already been made. Professor Oman, in his "Wellington's Army" enumerates several regimental histories deserving of special mention and it is worthy of note that Hamilton's volume is the only cavalry history included in the appreciatory remarks of that eminent military historian. Almost a third of the work is taken up by the numerous appendices relating to officers' services, uniforms, regimental marches and such like. The bulk of the narrative is of course concerned with the regiment's services in the Peninsular and Indian campaigns. If much is lacking in the records of its early years one cannot blame that sergeant-major and a few troopers who died in the Pyrenees in 1813 defending the regimental baggage, included in which were many valuable record books. The Fourteenth was one of the regiments of the Royalist Army engaged with the rebels at Falkirk in 1746, the only really noteworthy event in its subsequent career and prior to its embarkation for Portugal in 1808, being its inclusion in the ill-fated force which proceeded to the fever-stricken isle of St. Domingo in 1795. The inclusion, in the pages devoted to the Peninsular battles, of innumerable anecdotes verbatim from the manuscript diary of Captain (afterwards General) Brotherton of the Fourteenth lead one to wonder how such an interesting narrative should have escaped publication on its own. The regiment spent, on and off, nearly thirty years in India and a long peace followed its achievements in the Sikh and Persian Wars and in the great Sepoy Revolt. The part played by the regiment in the Boer War ends rather abruptly, since the book left the press in 1901, when the Fourteenth had still many arduous months' campaigning in front of them. The fact that the regiment proceeded to South Africa under the command of Lieut.-Colonel H. C. C. Hamilton, at one time a trooper in the First Life Guards, recalls that other distinguished ranker officer, Brigadier-General Charles Robert

Cureton,* "the first cavalry soldier in India," who, under the name of Robert Taylor (Charles Roberts in some accounts) enlisted as a private in the Fourteenth with whom he served in numerous Peninsular fights and in whose presence he fell at Ramnuggur. Though the poorer by its exclusion of any pictures relating to the campaigns in which the regiment partook, this handsome volume has several coloured plates of uniforms and guidons, and a rich collection of photogravure portraits of the successive Colonels and Commanding Officers. Among other volumes in a bookcase, it is conspicuous with its back of bright yellow, the colour of the regiment's busby bag. Needless to add the pre-war regimental badge, the Prussian Eagle, reproduced on the cover, is now a thing of the past, for reasons which need no explanation. "Ca Ira," described as an old regimental song used by the Fourteenth Light Dragoons in the Peninsula, is a grievous error, since the "Fourteenth" referred to in this transcription of the stanzas of the English version is the Fourteenth Foot, who beat the French troops "to their own brave tune" at Famara in 1793. The author of this noteworthy history was an old Etonian and served with distinction in the Afghan campaign, retiring from the command of the Fourteenth in 1896, after over thirty years' service in the cavalry. His name recalls the fact that the regiment was known as Hamilton's Dragoons in 1745, the year in which it served against the Jacobites at Prestonpans.

Ere concluding this discussion mention should be made of one or two small contributions which have probably escaped the notice of the many who are still interested in the campaigning experiences of cavalymen who have long since passed away. An article, for instance, which appeared in 1912 in the "Journal of the Royal United Service Institution" is worthy of perusal since it comprised the "Recollections in Portugal and Spain during 1811 and 1812"† of Cornet Francis Hall, who served

* For biographical sketch, *vide* article "Brigadier-General C. R. Cureton, C.B., A.D.C.," by Colonel R. H. Mackenzie, F.S.A.Scot., in THE CAVALRY JOURNAL, 1912.

† A regimental medal bearing this date, awarded to a Corporal of the 14th Light Dragoons, is preserved in the Royal United Service Institution Museum and forms the subject of an illustration reproduced in THE CAVALRY JOURNAL, July, 1910

with the Fourteenth at Fuentes d'Onor. It was to that "Journal," seventeen years beforehand, that the Colonel of the regiment, General C. W. Thompson, and Viscount Chetwynd, at one time a subaltern of the Fourteenth, contributed their views of the part taken by "The 14th Light Dragoons at Chillianwallah," in an article which was afterwards reprinted in Colonel Hamilton's history, but which, in the first place, was published as a reply to the version of the same affair as related by General Sir Charles Gough, V.C., G.C.B., in an earlier number of the "JOURNAL" of that year.

During the Great War, the Fourteenth Hussars was not destined to win fresh laurels in France or Flanders, but its activities in another hostile quarter of the globe is a story which in book form would not only reveal much of interest concerning the work of mounted troops in modern warfare, but would also enlighten future generations as to how "Tigris, 1916," "Kut al Amara, 1917," "Baghdad," "Mesopotamia 1915-18" and "Persia, 1918," came to figure among the Battle Honours of what has been described as "the finest light cavalry regiment the British Army ever possessed."



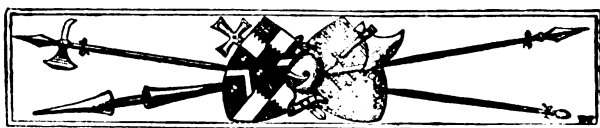
*UNVEILING OF THE 18th K.E.O. CAVALRY
WAR MEMORIAL*

AT Quetta, on Wednesday, 16th May, the ceremony of unveiling the War Memorial Shield of the 18th K.E.O. Cavalry was carried out by General Sir Charles Harrington, G.B.E., K.C.B., D.S.O., D.C.L.

The Memorial consists of a bronze Shield with the Regimental Crest and Battle Honours mounted in silver and the inscription : in Urdu and Hindi, "For the honour of the Regiment and in memory of brave men."

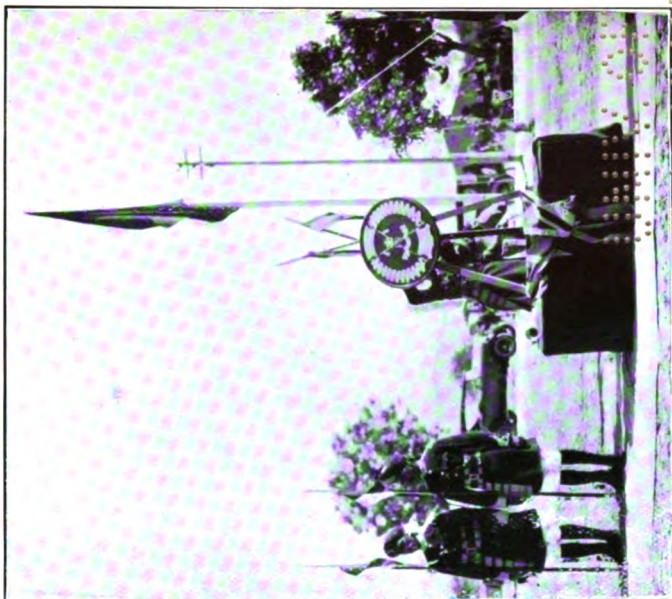
The Regiment was drawn up in line wearing full dress blue, and after inspection by the General Officer Commanding-in-Chief, formed a hollow square in front of the shield.

In his address, Sir Charles Harrington referred to the theatres of war in which the late sister regiments of the 6th Cavalry and 7th Lancers had participated, and how the presence of such a Memorial always with the Regiment would be a stimulus to all ranks to maintain the high traditions on which it was founded. He then unveiled the Shield and after it had been consecrated by the Regimental Pandit and Maulvi the Regiment marched past in column of troops and saluted their new memorial.

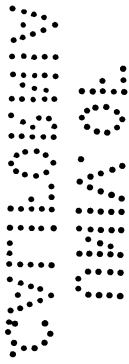


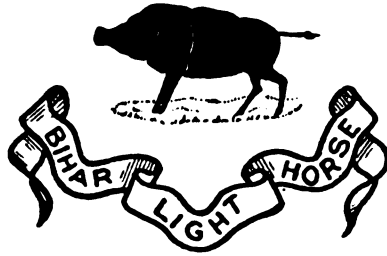


MARCH PAST BY TROOPS



THE WAR MEMORIAL, SHIELD





BIHAR LIGHT HORSE

(The Oldest Volunteer Cavalry Regiment in India)

By CAPTAIN H. B. ELLIS, 15th Lancers,
Adjutant, Bihar Light Horse

“ Over the valley, over the level,
Thro’ the Dak jungle we ride like the devil
There’s a Nullah in front, a boar as well ;
Sit down in your saddles and ride like hell.”
(Cruickshanks).

WHEN the Bihar Light Horse adopted the above as their battle cry, they could not have selected finer words. If the number of pig killed by the Bihar Light Horse since it was formed could be put on paper it would be a record that none could surpass.

This short article on the Corps has been compiled from the history originally written by one of the officers (the late Major G. W. Disney), together with extract of records in the Regimental Office.

In 1857, the only troops in North Bihar were the 12th Bengal Irregular Cavalry, stationed at Segowli, under the command of Major Holmes.

At this time it was apparent that the Indian Troops were on the point of mutiny, so Mr. Latour, the Collector of the Tirhoot District, called the European residents into Mozaffarpur (the present headquarters of the Bihar Light Horse).

A Defence Force was organized over fifty strong, and Mr. J. Wilson was elected Commandant. The force was armed with double-barrelled, muzzle-loading fowling pieces and rifles, and a few had revolvers. A defence post was next selected at the residences of the Civil Surgeon and the Sub-Judge. The former is still standing and is now occupied by the Session Judge. In honour of the Civil Surgeon his house was named "Fort Pill Box," a name by which it is still known.

Mr. Wilson, the Commander, formed his force as follows:—

The ladies and children occupying the houses.

The men under canvas as outposts on three sides of the houses. The north side of the post was bound by the Shikandrapore lake.

During the day and up to 11 p.m. a portico guard of the old and bold was formed. This was designated the "*vieille garde*," and was necessitated by the fact that the ladies and younger men declined to recognize danger and insisted on dancing every night to the utter demoralisation of the sentries.

The town of Mozaffarpore was patrolled by mounted parties from time to time.

Soon after the defence post was organized, a party was sent out to arrest a Police Darogah who was in communication with the mutineers. A section of four proceeded to Motipur under the guise of a shooting party and succeeded in arresting the culprit, Wazir Ali, in the act of writing a letter inviting the Patna mutineers to come over and loot the Mozaffarpur Treasury. This man was hanged in the course of a few days.

One night sentries observed a long line of lights advancing across the open space in front of "Fort Pill Box." The alarm was given and the garrison turned out, a gun was accidentally fired and the advancing line of lights stopped and every torch was thrown down. The mounted patrol investigated but found nothing but smouldering torches. It has never been ascertained

whom these were borne by, but suspicion pointed to the Treasure Guard, who, if they could have got rid of the garrison, would have had over 1,000,000 rupees in their hands.

Shortly after this, two of the garrison proceeded to Dowlatpore factory, fifty miles away, and arrested another rebel who was levying blackmail and stopping boat traffic on the Chotta Gandak River. This man was tried and imprisoned for ten years.

Soon afterwards the 12th Irregular Cavalry mutinied and murdered their Commander at Segowli, which left no regular troops north of the River Ganges.

History gives several instances of stout fights put up by planters and officers against the rebels during the next few weeks, and finally a detachment of Ratrays' Sikhs was sent to Mozaffarpore, when "Fort Pill Box" was properly fortified, loopholed and provisioned but was not afterwards required. Regiments of Gurkhas from Nepal were also afterwards quartered at Mozaffarpore.

The above incident of the mutiny was originally the foundation stone of the now Bihar Light Horse, but the credit of being the founder of the Regiment goes to Mr. Collingridge, of Daudpore, one mile from "Fort Pill Box." In conjunction with Mr. Metcalf the Joint Magistrate of Tirhoot, he formulated a scheme for raising a mounted volunteer corps in 1861.

The first names were recorded at Daudpore, and an application signed by fifty-four residents for enrolment was submitted to the Commissioner. The name of the Corps proposed was the Soubah Bihar Mounted Rifles. The first officers nominated were Commandant J. Furlong with rank of Captain, Lieutenant C. T. Metcalfe, Lieutenant Hollway, Adjutant F. Collingridge. The arms proposed were sword and Terry's breech-loading rifle.

The reply to the application from the Secretary to the Government of Bengal was as follows :

"I am desired to request you will express to those gentlemen, through their Commandant, Mr. J. Furlong, the Lieutenant-Governor's high appreciation of the loyalty and public spirit which has induced them to make this tender

of their services, and that you will assure them of the cordial co-operation and support of Government."

On 5th December, 1862, formal sanction of the Government of India to the formation of the Corps was accorded.

The first Nominal Roll of the Corps shows a strength of four officers, seventy-one other ranks, of whom twenty had been through the mutiny at Mozaffarpore in "Fort Pill Box."

On 12th June, 1863, the enrolled strength had increased to 108, and during the same year the regiment was inspected at Sonepur by General Sir S. Corbet. About 100 members were on parade, and before the parade the horses, which were mostly roaring cabuls were galloped round the race course to steady them.

The following are extracts from a letter which was sent by the Government of Bengal to the Government of India on 4th February, 1865 :

"On a recent visit to Mozaffarpore, the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal had the opportunity of seeing the Corps, which he stated consisted of 120 gentlemen admirably mounted and equipped, well trained in the use of their firearms, proud of their status and organization, and animated by a spirit of mutual confidence as well as of loyalty and good will towards Government."

It further says :

"The opinion expressed by the Lieutenant-Governor was as follows: 'He is quite convinced that the Government may rely upon the Corps to maintain order under all circumstances throughout the Province of Bihar, especially in the Districts North of the Ganges, and to check hostile invasion until supported by regular troops.'"

During the year 1870, an application was made to change the Corps into Lancers, but this was not sanctioned.

In 1872, an application was made for a regular Adjutant, but according to records, the first regular Adjutant was Captain A. E. Money, posted in 1875.

The Regiment encamped at Bankipore in January, 1876, on the occasion of the visit of H.R.H. the Prince of Wales,

and formed escorts to H.R.H. from the station. On this occasion all Commissioned Officers and twenty rank and file of the Corps (the latter selected by lot) were invited to the Durbar and subsequent breakfast to meet H's Royal Highness. The Prince, accompanied by Sir Richard Temple and escorted by the Bihar Mounted Rifles, afterwards drove to the station and left for Benares.

From 1880 to 1900 many interesting things happened in the Corps, but space here will only allow reference to some of them.

In 1881, Mr. W. B. Hudson, who had formerly been a Captain in the Corps, was elected to the Command. This post he held for nearly eighteen years, during which time vast improvements were made. In 1893, Lieutenant-Colonel W. B. Hudson's name appeared in the New Year's Honours list, being gazetted a K.C.I.E.

The regiment left Mozaffarpore for Calcutta to take part in the proclamation on 27th December, 1883, and returned on 6th January, 1884. It paraded over 200 strong, and also took part in a Divisional Field Day, under H.E. the Commander-in-Chief, Sir Donald Stewart.

In January, 1884, an application was made that the designation of the Corps be changed to the Bihar Light Horse. This was sanctioned in G.G.O. No. 120, of the 29th February, 1884.

In February, 1885, when General Gordon was making his last stand at Khartoum, a strong desire came over the Corps for duty on active service. The Commanding Officer called for volunteers for the Soudan, if the Government would accept their services.

One hundred men and horses was fixed as the strength of the detachment, and in a few days many more names were sent in than could be accepted, and on the news being received that the Government of India were to despatch troops, the Commanding Officer offered the services of the detachment. By this time a regular expedition had been determined on and the Viceroy in the following letter replied to the offer made by the regiment.

“ Government House,
“ Calcutta,
“ 18th February, 1885.

“ MY DEAR COLONEL HUDSON,

“ Sir Rivers Thompson has communicated to me your letter of the 12th instant, and I need scarcely say that the patriotic suggestion which it contains has given me very great satisfaction. At the same time I cannot say it has caused me any surprise, for I already know the Bihar Light Horse by reputation, and am fully aware of the spirit of patriotism and devotion with which they are animated. If at any time their services are required, I shall not hesitate to demand them, and I know well that they will gladly respond to the call of duty. At present the Home Government has instructed me to despatch merely a small force to Suakim, and has restricted to very narrow limits the part which we are to play in the expedition. It would be out of place, therefore, to suggest to the Home authorities that your regiment should be added to the Brigade under orders to embark, but I appreciate not the less deeply on that account the offer of the Regiment to volunteer for foreign service, and the laudable motives by which that offer was prompted.

“ Believe me, my dear Colonel Hudson,

“ Yours sincerely,

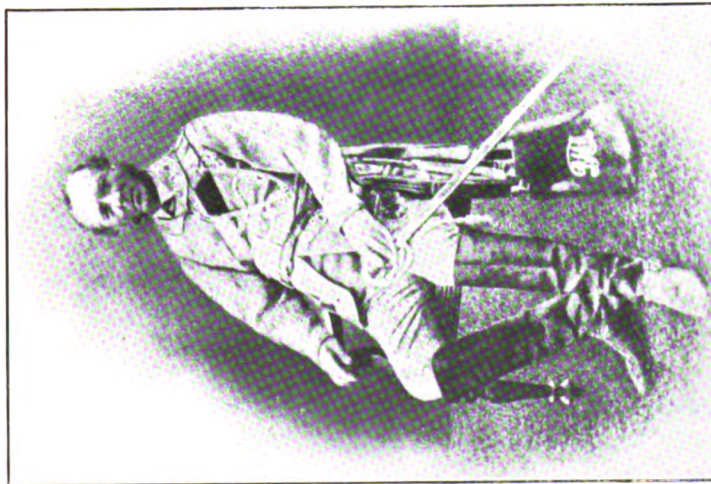
“ (Sd.) DUFFERIN.”

In 1893, one hundred sets of regulation saddlery at a cost of £700 were presented to the Corps by Trooper Lachlan Macdonald.

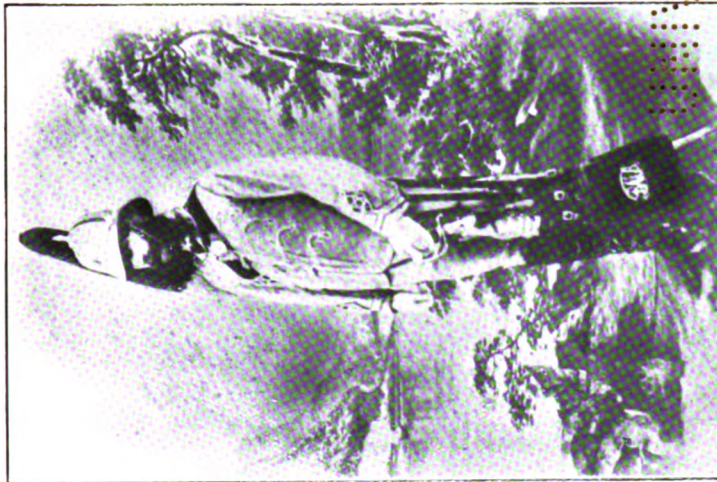
In September the same year members of the Corps assisted the Police in rounding up a cattle rescuing mob at Basantapur Thana. The call was received at 2.15 a.m. and the party were on the road to the Thana, which was twelve miles distant, at 2.45 a.m.

The Government of India recorded the action as follows :

“ The Government of India consider that the prompt assistance rendered to the Civil Power by a detachment of



MAJOR J. FURLONG,
1st Commandant Bihar Mounted Rifles
1862-1868



MAJOR FRED COLLINGRIDGE,
Founder of Bihar Mounted Rifles, 1862
Commandant 1868-1880

the Bihar Light Horse, is most creditable to Major Hodding and the volunteers who formed the detachment."

The following extract from the *Englishman* is of interest: "To show clearly the importance which the Bengal Government place in the Bihar Light Horse, the military cantonments at Segowli upon the frontier have been broken up, and the Light Horse is responsible for the dignity of the Empire, from Dinapore across the Ganges to the Nepalese Frontier."

In 1896, it was the Corps' desire to possess a machine gun. Former members of the Corps now resident in England were approached on the subject, and they responded handsomely by presenting the Corps with a Maxim gun. Messrs. H. W. Hudson and Hill headed the list with a subscription of 100 guineas each. Lieutenant Disney, who was on leave, purchased the gun and went through a course of instruction in Messrs. Maxim's workshops.

In 1899, after the disastrous week to the British Army in South Africa, Colonel Hodding volunteered on behalf of the regiment, to supply a squadron, fully horsed and equipped, also a Maxim gun and detachment for active service there. The services of half the squadron (fifty-four officers and men) could, however, only be accepted. This detachment formed "A" Company of Lumsden's Horse, and proceeded to South Africa, where it performed good work.

Regimental Order No. 57, dated 24th September, 1900, is as follows:—

"The Commanding Officer has with the utmost regret to publish the following casualties among the men of the Regiment, serving in Lumsden's Horse, under Lieutenant Crane, and consisting entirely of Bihar Light Horsemen who were detached to hold a kopje, and when it came to their turn to retire had to do so across the open under heavy fire at close range.

"Lieutenant Crane and Sergeant-Major Marsham were both severely wounded in the retirement, and Troopers Lumsden, Daubeney and Case were killed.

"Sergeant MacNamara was wounded and Troopers

Firth, McGillivray, Williams and Macdonald missing."

It is interesting to note that after twenty-seven years, Crane, MacNamara, Macdonald are to-day still serving in the Bihar Light Horse, together with six others of the South African war detachment.

The honours and distinctions won by the above-mentioned detachment which proceeded to South Africa are as follows :

D.S.O.	..	..	..	..	1
D.C.M's	..	..	..	..	2
Honorary rank in the Army	..				3
Commissions in the Regular Army	..				9
Commission in the S.A. Constabulary					1
Mentioned in Despatches	..	..			2

On 5th November, 1906, an escort furnished by "B" Troop, Bihar Light Horse, was given to H.E. Lord Kitchener, Commander-in-Chief in India, from Raxaul on the Nepal Frontier for some distance into Nepal.

On 17th December, 1911, the Regiment was inspected at Arrah by H.M. the King Emperor. His Majesty presented the Regiment with signed photographs of their Imperial Majesties.

On the outbreak of the Great War many younger members volunteered for active service, but the older members kept the Corps going.

On 31st March, 1917, the Corps as a volunteer regiment, ceased to exist on the passing of the Indian Defence Force Act.

Unfortunately many of the oldest members were not eligible for service under the I.D.F. and had to resign from the Corps, after in many cases, over twenty years' continuous service as volunteers. Many of these old members, however, rejoined the Corps in 1920, when it became a unit of the Auxiliary Force.

During the history of the Corps many amusing incidents have occurred, some of which are appended herewith.

On one occasion when a General Officer Commanding was inspecting the Corps a certain "Trooper" was pointed out by the Commanding Officer as being the son of the Archbishop of Canterbury. The General after a few seconds, thought, turned

to the Officer Commanding and said: "Poor fellow, drink, I suppose."

H. Hobbs, in his book, "It was Like This," refers to the Bihar Light Horse's visit to Calcutta as follows:

"The Viceroy at this period was not particularly popular, mainly owing to the uproar caused by the introduction of the Ilbert Bill. The Bihar Light Horse came to Calcutta in great force for a camp of exercise. The rumour which found many believers at the time was that they intended to kidnap the Viceroy and place him on a steamer bound for Europe. The idea was to carry out a sort of Jameson Raid, and possibly just about as idiotic."

While the Bihar Light Horse were in camp on the Maidan one of their troopers fell down the stairs of the Hotel D'Europe (now the Bristol Hotel) and was killed. There was a lot of comment about it then, and some inventive minds tried to make out that because he belonged to the Bihar Light Horse he had been done away with, forgetting perhaps in their regard for their comrade that "Daniel Crawford" was a fairly familiar name in that hotel. They were a very swanky lot, and their drill was of that friendly nature associated with the early days of the volunteer force, but they looked well as they were the wealthy and healthy indigo planters of Bihar. The failure of indigo caused great losses as well as almost complete disappearance of some of the finest old squires that ever crossed a saddle or cursed the weather.

An amusing story is told, about the escort formed by "B" Troop to H.E. Lord Kitchener, Commander-in-Chief in India, on his visit to Nepal. His Excellency was expected to arrive by special train at Raxaul, but for some unknown reason he arrived on the local train half an hour early. The escort, which consisted of twenty-four 15-stone Light Horsemen, were sitting on their mounts outside the station smoking their pipes, commanded by Captain A. The escort commander promptly gave the order "pipes out," and turned to shake hands with the Commander-in-Chief, and proceeded to do so completely forgetting that his own briar was still fuming in the right corner

of his mouth. The Commander-in-Chief in India's report on the escort was a good one, so it is assumed that he failed to notice Captain A.'s pipe.

On another occasion the Regiment was being inspected by a District Commander, and on coming up to a troop commander who had extremely white hair and only one star on his shoulder, the General turned to the Officer Commanding and said: "Promotion seems to be very slow in this Regiment." The Second-Lieutenant in question was a very high Government Official.

On the occasion when His Majesty the King Emperor inspected the Regiment at Arrah, in 1911, Trooper G. of the Corps was not altogether popular with the officers of a very well-known Regular Infantry Battalion. It so happened that this regiment of the line, prior to His Majesty's inspection, spent a considerable amount of time in front of the Bihar Light Horse camp practising ceremonial drill. As the Battalion drew level with one line of tents a very well delivered "Eyes Right" was given and every eye was immediately turned to the right with the efficiency for which the Battalion was known. One can imagine the feelings of the officers and the chuckles of the rank and file on seeing Trooper G., Bihar Light Horse, clad only in a bath towel taking the salute, for which he had given the command.

On the occasion of the visit of Sir John Woodman (Governor of Bengal) to the Province of Bihar, an escort was detailed to meet him at the Railway Station, and one member of the Corps was detailed to send a carriage and pair to the station to be placed at the disposal of the Governor. It occurred to this member, however, that syces should take the escorts' mounts to the station and the escort should drive down to the station in good time in the said carriage allotted to the Governor. For some unknown reason there was a mistake in timings and Sir John Woodman appeared on the steps of the railway station before the escort arrived. Some few minutes afterwards a carriage and pair appeared in sight laden with hefty Bihar Light Horsemen. However, this did not upset the proceedings. The Light Horsemen alighted from the carriage

with all the speed their bulky figures would allow, mounted their horses and lined the road at the station door. Sir John then proceeded down the steps acknowledged the salute, took his seat in the carriage and drove off in grand style accompanied by his Light Horse escort.

At a camp in recent years, the General Officer Commanding in Chief addressed the Corps and then proceeded to walk down the line and talk to the rank and file. He noticed that several were wearing the Volunteer Long Service Medal and on questioning one trooper as to the length of his service with the Bihar Light Horse, received the reply, "forty-three years, Sir." This bold trooper at present has two sons in the Indian Cavalry, one of which has an I.P.A. handicap of 7, the other 3.

The latest story on record originated at this year's annual camp of exercise. A Staff Officer from Army Headquarters who inspected the Regiment noticed when passing a trooper's tent that the table inside was covered with files. The Staff Officer turned to the servant standing at the door and said: "Who's tent is this?" and was met with the reply, "General Sahib ka hai." Being a little taken back, he inquired from the Officer Commanding as to the occupant of the tent, and was informed that the trooper was otherwise known as the Inspector General of Police.

The Corps at the present day boasts of two active members both well over the age of seventy:

Firstly, Trooper Savi, who is seventy-eight years of age and still playing regular polo twice a week. Up until last year Trooper Savi played a pony aged thirty-two years, and their combined age was 109 years. This surely must be a record. Since writing this article I regret to announce the death of Trooper F. A. Savi. He had completed 42 years' service with the Corps and was playing polo within two days of his death.

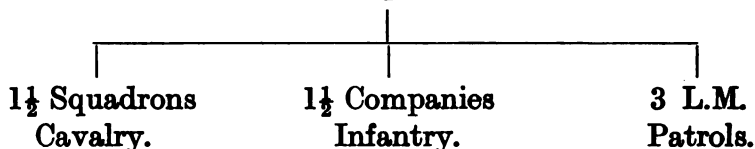
Secondly, Private Johnson, of the Purneah Light Motor Patrol, who, at the age of seventy-eight, last year won the Patrol shooting competition for members over fifty years, with 4 bulls and 1 inner, on the regulation 4 feet target, at 200 yards.

During the Great War, 192 members of the Corps held commissions and saw active service on the various fronts.

Practically every member of the mounted branch of the Corps plays polo and the majority have stuck pig. Lieutenant-Colonel J. J. MacLeod's pig of $42\frac{1}{2}$ inches, is probably the biggest on record.

The Corps at present is commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel C. G. Lees, V.D., A.D.C., and consists of :

Headquarters



The enrollable maximum is 450, but owing to the shortage of younger fellows coming into the Province the actual strength on 1st July, 1927, is as follows :

Cavalry	..	..	..	..	149
Infantry	..	..	..	..	136
Light Motor Patrols	..	..	..	..	51



THE SOLDIER'S BRIDE

“ As for the women, though we scorn and flout 'em,
We may live with, but cannot live without 'em.”

F. Reynolds.

THE soldier's bride has, in fiction and poetry at any rate, been a romantic figure, because she has usually, though often inaccurately, been identified with the girl he left behind him. But the soldier's wife, that is the girl he (willy-nilly) took with him (and often enough not the girl she was), was probably less picturesque, and certainly more troublesome, than the slim maiden of the popular picture, who, drooping forlornly against a convenient tree on an equally convenient hill top, waves a tear-sodden wisp of handkerchief to her resplendent lover returning to the wars (probably via the nearest tavern or place of public refreshment). There is little that is romantic about the married families of our army; but in their history can be found much that is of interest, and much that is admirable and even amusing—something of which we will proceed to set down here.

Married families, like the poor, have always been with us. In 1800 General Harry Calvert, then the Adjutant-General at the Horse Guards, laid down in a letter to General Officers Commanding Districts very precise regulations as to the number of women to be allowed to accompany regiments on embarking for Foreign Service. Such women being the lawful wives of soldiers were to be in the proportion of six to every hundred men, and this proportion was to be “under no pretence whatever exceeded, as an Inattention to this Circumstance has in many Instances been productive of serious Prejudice to His Majesty's Service.” Those not permitted to embark were to receive

"one guinea, with five shillings for each child born in lawful wedlock under Ten Years of Age" to enable them to return home. There are yet earlier regulations on this matter: a memorial to colonels of regiments going to the West Indies, dated 1764, refers to the allowance of six women per company "being conformable to the regulations long established in the army." This takes us far back from the days of the "brave old Duke of York," whose relations with Mrs. Mary Anne Clarke so delighted a scandal-loving country, and of General William Howe, who according to his contemporaries always "had his little whore"—both of whom might be suspected of a weakness for the weaker sex. In fact, if we take the phrase used in the 1764 memorial *au pied de la lettre*, we are not far from the very earliest beginnings of the British standing army, before which there were no soldiers, and therefore no soldiers' wives, and certainly no regulations to govern their conduct.

It must be remembered in this connection that this proportion of six wives per 100 men was allowed not only for units proceeding to a foreign garrison but for those going on active service too. Howe's regiments which left England for the American War in 1776-7 took their fifty odd women with them and so did those who fought under the Duke of York in Flanders and under Wellington in the Peninsula. In King's Regulations, 1811, the allowance of wives was restated at six per company for active service and twelve per company for foreign garrisons, and it was not till 1822 that units about to proceed on active field service were wisely forbidden to take any women at all with them, though some wives seem to have gone to the Crimea. Meanwhile their adventures had contributed many amusing and not a few poignant incidents to the pages of contemporary memoir writers.

In theory the rôle of the soldier's wife was that so comprehensively described in "The Sorcerer":

"She will tend him, nurse him, mend him,
Air his linen, dry his tears,"

but these beneficent occupations were not suited entirely to monopolise the time of at any rate a proportion of them.

According to the memoir writers above mentioned, soldiers' wives were divisible into two classes. In the one the graces of youth and beauty were allied—as they are to-day, if one may believe all one reads in the daily press, in every typist who gets murdered, every lady novelist who loses her memory, and in fact in any and every young woman to whom any thing unusual happens. The other class were adorned by neither youth nor beauty nor grace, but only by a combination of disagreeable qualities, the most prominent being usually an addiction to Mrs. Gamp's teapot, to which they helped themselves “when so disposed,”—that is, pretty often. But this was by no means their only vice; the most indisciplined of their indisciplined sex, they feared neither God nor yet the provost-marshal, in whose side they were a constant thorn, and, in despite of all orders to the contrary, encumbered the line of march, straggled from the columns on any or on no pretext, quarrelled among themselves over their cooking pots and kettles, and frequently came to blows with each other and with any misguided individual who endeavoured to pacify them.

Most of the soldiers' wives were no wit behind their spouses in that gentle art, which under the name of “scrounging,” less politely, plundering—“‘convey’ the wise it call”—was the most incurable vice of British Armies during the Revolutionary and Napoleonic wars. At the Battle of Tourcoing in 1794, the women who had inadvertently been permitted to follow the Brigade of Guards into action caused the greatest disorder; having laden themselves with plunder during the first period of the fighting, when the British were advancing, they were caught unawares when the tide turned and the army was compelled to retreat. Some of them were killed, some wounded; the remainder had great difficulty in keeping up with the marching columns and many of them fell into the hands of the French. The latter however—possibly because the number of those in whom the graces of youth and beauty were allied was disproportionately small—politely restored them in a few days to their lords and masters. According to their own statements the returning prodigals had been excellently treated in their

short captivity, having been furnished with wine and provisions, and escorted back to the outposts to music of bands (playing possibly the French equivalent of "Oh, what pain it is to part"). No doubt also more than one of them found herself some (shall we say nine ?) months later in possession of a souvenir of her visit to a courteous enemy more permanent than a pleasant recollection. Their reception by the Duke of York at least was hardly enthusiastic ; for on 23rd May there was published a most ferocious General Order forbidding women to follow any column of troops, and authorizing the Provost-Marshal to inflict exemplary punishment, even to execution on the spot, for cruelty, plundering or marauding so as to bring disgrace on the troops under His Royal Highness's command. This order was to be read out at roll call, all women and followers to attend "that none may plead ignorance of the awful punishment to which they will subject themselves by this crime."

Fifteen years later in the Peninsula we find the same phenomenon repeating itself. In 1809 orders had to be issued forbidding the women with the army to buy bread in the villages close to the line of march and so deprive it of possible food supplies (these women were already allowed a ration of food equivalent to half that of the soldier, with an additional one-third for each child). Another forbade the practice of women riding on the transport wagons, which were already overloaded with clothing and baggage and the progress of which was greatly delayed by this additional burden. Deprived of this means of carriage, all those wives who could afford it thereupon purchased—or "conveyed"—for themselves donkeys, on which they rode, in front of and intermingled with the troops on the march, to the latter's great delay and discomfort. Accordingly during the retreat from Burgos an order was issued that donkeys found anywhere except in rear of the unit to which their owners belonged would be shot. Next day a party of women of the 34th Foot set off at early dawn, confident in the resemblance of this particular order to the proverbial piecrust, only to find the Provost Marshal and an armed party waiting for them at a narrow turn of the road. The first two

women were dismounted and forced to take to their feet with their goods, leaving their donkeys to the tender mercies of the military police, and weeping and wailing and calling down curses on the Provost ("Bad luck to his ugly face, the spy of the camp—may he never see home till the vultures have picked his eyes out the born varmint" and so forth in the best style of the perfect lady), they fell back to their allotted place in the rear of the regiment—only to resume the van again on the morrow. In fact they were incorrigible—"as hard as nails, expert plunderers, supreme partisans of the excellence of their own battalion, much given to fighting"—as Sir Charles Oman sums up the women of the Peninsular Army; and as they were then, so they had always been and so they remained. Kinglake tells how the Turks retreating from the Balaclava heights before the Russians met a new and terrible foe in the person of a wife of a sergeant of the 93rd Highlanders, who, armed with a broomstick, dealt her blows thick on the backs of the Faithful as they ran, applying at the same time much invective, the bulk of which no doubt her victims understood as little as she the epithet "Kokona" (honoured maiden) with which they sought to stop the vials of her wrath, and by which she was afterwards known in the regiment.

Indeed these viragoes needed to be (to use an expressive term) "hard-boiled" to survive the trials and perils attendant on a war as it was then carried on. The memoirs and diaries of the times are full of stories of their misfortunes, miseries and privations. During the Duke of York's retreat from Breda to the Ems in the winter of 1794-5, though the women seem to have been well provided for in the way of clothing—every one of them had in the previous spring been issued with a grey cloak, flannel shifts, petticoats and shoes—they suffered fearfully. Many of them were left behind with their children to freeze and die by the roadside; one unfortunate wretch, taken untimely by labour pains, was found locked in the arms of her husband and clasping her new-born baby, all three dead from exposure. Similar experiences fell to their lot in the Peninsula, and especially on the retreat to Coruna. Rifleman

Harris of the 95th describes with a touch of grim humour how he saw the wives following the column among the sick soldiers "looking like a band of travelling beggars, with soldiers' cloaks fastened over their heads and their ragged and scanty clothing below revealing their bare legs." He tells how one unfortunate soldier and his wife perished one night in the snow, wrapped in each other's arms in a vain attempt to maintain warmth and life; and of another hardy young female, who on a wintry night in the fields, was seized with birth pains and delivered of a child there and then. No one ever expected to see her again, but a few hours later, to the general astonishment, she reappeared on the line of march carrying her baby with her; both came through the whole retreat and returned with the army to England, none the worse for their fearful experience. They were more fortunate than the poor woman, who in the retreat from Burgos was riding a pony across a swift flowing river, when the animal stumbled and the child she was holding slipped from her grasp. She plunged in to its rescue, but both were swept away in the current and never seen again. The most astonishing story however is that told of one Pullen, who had with him his wife, a son and a daughter, and on the first day of the retreat to Coruna lost them all; when the miserable remnant of the army arrived in England, the man found to his surprise that his wife was alive and had come home on another transport and an affecting reunion took place on the beach in which the pair mingled with their tears of happiness at finding each other those of grief for the loss of their babes. A few days later however an advertisement in the press elicited the information that the daughter was also alive at Plymouth in the care of the artillery, who, with a fellow-feeling for *enfants perdus* that one would rather have expected in the grenadiers, had found her lost by the wayside, and brought her home with them. Not long after it was found that the son also was alive and well, though in a French prison, and at the end of the war it is believed that mother, and children were happily reunited, though poor Pullen had fallen a victim to fever in Walcheren in 1809.

These however were unusual cases. In another diary, that of Sergt. Anton of the 42nd, we find outlined in a series of little everyday incidents the ordinary lot of a soldier's wife on active service. It is a succession of one petty discomfort and disaster after another. We see Mrs. Anton sharing a leaky tent on a rainy night with her husband and eleven other soldiers; or quartered in a long hut with a number of men, constrained to suspend her apron from the ceiling and to fasten it to the wall with pins, in order to get any privacy at all—a privacy which, it may be added, was, despite the flimsy nature of the barrier, scrupulously respected by her hut-mates. In another hut some months later she was less fortunate; in the middle of the night a gale blew the roof off, and whirled away the one blanket which covered her husband and herself, and the unlucky pair were compelled to seek refuge under the lee of a rock, the only available shelter. Next morning, their rations having been ruined by the rain, Mrs. Anton set to forage round to find food; she was successful, but, while hurrying back with it through a muddy lane, slipped and fell and lost it; so after all they had to go hungry. On another occasion when Anton was on guard, his wife, wishing to be near him, could find no shelter for herself but a disused pigsty near battalion headquarters, and even from this she was ungallantly evicted by one of the orderly room staff and forced to spend the night in the open in the rain. A few weeks later a more alarming experience befell her; she and the small donkey on which were borne all their worldly goods by some mischance became separated from the regiment, and were left on the other side of a bridge over a rapid stream in spate. This, when the time came, the animal obstinately refused to cross: another regiment was marching forward up the narrow defile, and it must have gone hard with the young woman had not a giant of a man in the front rank taken pity on her and, picking up donkey and load, carried it over to the far side. The whole story is one of squalor, misery and discomfort, and gives us a shrewd idea of what the married families of those days, who were lucky enough to be allowed to accompany their husbands in the field, had to put

up with ; only women of hardihood, spirit and courage could have survived such experiences.

That there was among them no lack of such qualities many a story goes to show. Elizabeth Hopkins, wife of a sergeant in the 104th, proved herself in the American War of Independence a worthy wife for a soldier. After being wounded in the left leg in a naval action in which she was helping to serve the guns, she contrived the escape of her husband who had been captured by the enemy, provided him and twenty-two deserters who accompanied him with arms and ammunition, and led them back to Philadelphia despite pursuit by a body of dragoons. One of these, who attacked and wounded her in the arm, she shot, and rode back on his horse in triumph. Later she showed great gallantry in the siege of Pensacola, where she was captured with the rest of the garrison, after helping to serve in the batteries and using strips of her clothing as wadding for the guns. Released on parole, she was shipwrecked, while "in a certain condition," rescued and delivered of triplets—an experience which can have been no novel one to her, for her children numbered twenty-two all told, of whom eleven survived. She seems to have been a truly Spartan mother, for, after seeing two of her sons and one son-in-law killed before her eyes at Fort Erie, she "called her other children round her, made them an animated speech charging them to be revenged on the Yankees for their loss, and cheered them into action."

Nor was she the only one of her kind. General Stewart tells how in the attack on New Vigie (St. Vincent) in 1796, he was amazed on crowning the enemy's ramparts to see beside him the wife of a man of the 42nd "with her clothes up to her knees"—a sight to which we of a more fortunate generation are too accustomed for surprise. "Well done, my Highland lads," cried this warrior dame, seizing the general's arm, much to his delight, no doubt—"see how the brigands scamper like so many deer. Come and let us drive them from yonder hill." But perhaps the most gracious and most heroic of these warrior women was Mrs. Retson, the wife of a sergeant in the 94th, whose gallantry at Fort Matagorda, Cadiz, is to be found

immortalized in the pages of Napier. At the time when the French bombardment opened she was sleeping in a hut in the battery with her four-year-old child ; and before either was properly awake, her frail shelter was hit and demolished by a 24-pdr. shot. Crawling out from amid the ruins she carried her infant to safety in the bomb proof, and returning to the scene of action busied herself bandaging the wounded, tearing up her own linen for the purpose. Soon her patients began to call for water, but to draw it from the exposed well meant almost certain death. A drummer boy was detailed for the task but pardonably enough shrank from it. "I will go," cried Mrs. Retson and, fetching a bucket and venturing out into the fire, she lowered it into the water only to see the rope cut by a bullet within an inch of her hands. She retrieved it and brought back the coveted water for her charges. All that day she kept at her self-appointed post, careless of her own safety and even assisting her husband, when the fire was hottest, to repair the embrasure under his charge, which had been damaged by shot. Next day the French delivered an assault which the gallant young woman, armed with a pike, helped to repel, and, when at last the commandant of the place decided to evacuate the fort, she was among the last of the garrison to leave.

The gracious figure of Mrs. Retson, who, so the chronicler assures us, was "young and blooming in health and beauty," sheds a heroic light on the sorrows and discomforts and distresses which too often fell to the lot of her fellow wives. But few of these could have had, and fewer still perhaps would have seized, such opportunities for proving their possession of the virtues of a soldier ; for most of them it was probably a hard enough task to preserve intact the virtues—not to say the virtue—peculiar to their sex, in the terrible conditions in which they had normally to live.

E. W. S.

*A CAVALRY EPIC OF 1785**

By PERCY CROSS STANDING

WHEREAS it is a matter of familiar history that the great cavalry and camelry battle of the Pyramids, won by Napoleon, then General Bonaparte, in 1798, crippled the power of the Mamelukes in Egypt, it is not so well known that, but a dozen years previously, a devastating struggle had been waged between that mighty military power and the expeditionary force of the Turkish "Kapudan Pasha" despatched to Cairo by the Sultan of Turkey, Abdul-Hamid I. It must be premised that practically throughout this period Turkey was also at war with her hereditary enemy Russia, rendering the task of maintaining her suzerainty over the Land of the Pharaohs one of increasing difficulty. Varneri, a great officer of cavalry, in his treatise on the Turks evinces "how bad the internal constitution of the Turkish Empire was."

Ordered from Constantinople to Egypt at the head of a totally inadequate force for the chastisement of the warlike and recalcitrant Beys—who "made themselves merry with the person of the Sultan as a mighty insignificant man, whose commands they scorned to obey"—the Turkish commander appears to have skirmished around Cairo and its formidable citadel for an indefinite period of the summer and autumn of 1785. Treachery played its customary part in the conduct of the campaign. Some of the Beys made an offer to the Turkish Generalissimo of their services to the Sultan; but he distrusted them and would not admit them to the citadel. They then made a rendezvous in Upper Egypt and were not pursued by him, the wily Turk being too intent upon a policy of plunder-

* Based upon a rare document drawn up at Trieste in 1788.

ings and exactions. Eventually, however, he did follow them into Upper Egypt, being encouraged thereto by the defection of two of their Pashas with nearly 2,000 troops. In the battle which ensued in a thick fog on the early morning of 27th October, 1785, I have been unable to obtain even an approximate estimate of the numbers engaged on either side.

“The Beys had no artillery, but a vanguard of 1,600 armed horsemen” says a quaintly-worded account written at Trieste, “each of whom was provided with two large fire-arms and four pistols. These now rode in full gallop up to the troops of the Kapudan Pasha, and gave them no time to re-charge their muskets. Immediately the Osmanli, otherwise their bravest warriors, took their flight, and after them the Pashas, and at last the Beys, all in full speed; on which they were pursued by the enemy for six hours successively with guns, sabres and pistols. When they had reached their forts, the *Kiaia*, who had the guard, ordered the artillery to play upon the Beys, and thus prevented their total defeat; which, had it not been for this lucky thought, his people must inevitably have suffered. In this action the Beys lost no more than ten horses, which were shot dead by the first firing of the great guns; whereas, of the 12,000 horses the Kapudan Pasha had before the onset, there remained not more than a thousand, and these had been very ill-treated. In this attack Ismail Bey had his lower jaw fractured by a shot, on which account he returned to Cairo on the 30th.”

The defeated Ottoman army went back to Cairo by sea on 5th November, reporting that they had been “surprised” by the vehement onslaught of the Beys, who were now plundering the surrounding country. The Turkish Generalissimo immediately sought to “save his face” and the situation by ordering a fresh levy of 12,000 recruits, which included some fifteen hundred of the fiery and relentless Mameluke cavalry. Fixing his headquarters at three hours’ march from Cairo, he erected a battery of twelve guns and issued a manifesto to the Beys admonishing them to return to the capital forthwith and no longer to resist the will of the Sultan. A brief period of fruitless negotiation ensued, terminated by the capture by the Egyptian

host, which was now led by Amurath Bey, of the rich caravan of gold-dust and other specie from Aleppo. Amurath mustered not less than 30,000 men, "namely 4,500 of the people belonging to the Beys, 10,000 Arabs—a robust and warlike race—and 15,500 vassals, with 20,000 horses, mules and asses."

To this formidable array the Turkish commander-in-chief could oppose but 18,000 of all arms, overweighted by the great number of 30,000 "horses and other beasts of burden." Moreover, a terrible plague of dysentery was raging within the Turkish encampment, and from this and other reasons it was not until 16th February, 1786, that the decisive clash of arms took place.

It was to a great extent a Cavalry *mêlée* on the grand scale. Thus, we are told, "the cavalry of the Beys and of the Osmanli came quite unexpectedly upon one another. They fought on both sides with great bravery, till the rear-guard of the Little Beys suddenly entered and Ismail Pasha, who was hastening up, was killed. Upon this, the troops of the Kapudan Pasha took to flight. The enemy pursued them to their very ramparts and made a dreadful slaughter among them. Where the *galeangi*, having posted themselves behind the grave-stones after the manner of the Albanese, and being besides covered by a *chevaux-de-frise* and two batteries of fifteen cannon at the distance of a cannon-shot from each other, fired upon the Beys and thereby compelled their vanguard to halt.

"The cavalry still pursued them, when all at once, finding themselves drawn under the cannon, they attempted an attack upon the very batteries and rode up to them full speed. Here, however, they met so strong a resistance that they thought fit to retreat. The infantry, who had rested themselves a little, sought to reinforce the van by making a junction with the cavalry. Which done, they attacked the batteries with united force. After a fight of six hours the Little Beys retired to their camp, where the Great ones were awaiting the issue of the combat. The Beys had only 58 killed and 12 wounded. The Kapudan Pasha, on the other hand, counted 6,000 dead and more than a thousand wounded."

A slightly ghastly detail is supplied in the information that the fifty-eight heads of those killed on the Egyptian side were subsequently brought into Cairo; but this was doubtless an ordinary episode of the warfare as then conducted. A veritable reign of terror appears to have followed in Egypt.

So far from having effected the "punishment" of the recalcitrant Beys, the Turkish Army had had the worst of two pitched battles and several lesser engagements. Word was now brought to the Ottoman commander at Cairo that Amurath Bey was on the march for that City at the head of 20,000 Arabs, including a large and well-equipped cavalry. This intelligence proved to be only too well founded, and a period of negotiation ensued. It is proverbial that a council of war never fights, and after a futile interchange of letters—and presents!—between the Beys and the Turkish Pasha they assured him, in effect, that "they would no longer prosecute the war. It went against their consciences to be the death of their orthodox brethren and the subjects of their Sultan. If he were determined to send cavalry against them, they would then flee before them. Were these weary of pursuing and beginning to retire? Then would they also stop and turn back, and this flight and return would they so long repeat till he should think proper to leave them in repose. They had not gone to war because they found pleasure in taking up arms, but because their people were hurt by the injurious language his troops had thrown out against theirs, and that the world might not be led to believe that they fled from him out of fear."

Giving vent to the bloodthirsty threat that he would "cut them in pieces with sabres" in the event of non-compliance with his demands, the Turk's next move was the seizure of the Egyptian enemy's sacred banner of the Prophet and the extortion of considerable sums of money and important hostages. The latter included a Bey described as "the greatest scoundrel in the world," together with "twenty sumptuous Arab horses and six camels as a present." By this time the year 1786 was well advanced and the Pasha prepared to return to Constantinople, taking his hostages and ill-gotten gains with him. In all

these months of fruitless warfare he had accomplished practically nothing of military value, but had sacrificed 30,000 lives and laid all Egypt waste. He now left its capital city to the mercy of two rapacious tyrants, Ibrahim Bey and the Pasha commanding the citadel; but their activities were presently cut short by the return of the Beys to Cairo consequent upon the Turks' departure.

In the quaintly-written contemporary account of this internecine warfare which I have been privileged to peruse—and the authenticity of which may be gauged by the circumstance that its author served in the capacity of body-physician to the Turkish commander himself—I have been much impressed by the relatively enormous percentage of the horses and other animals employed on both sides. On the side of the Egyptians, such startling totals as 25,000 and even 30,000 beasts are mentioned—horses, ponies, asses, camels, etc. It further transpires that, particularly when operating away from the Nile delta, the difficulty of feeding adequately and consequent mortality among these animals was excessive on occasions, *plus* the great numbers slain in battle.

Another feature was the reckless bravery displayed in the Cavalry charges and shock-tactics of both armies, especially on the side of the Egyptians. As we find subsequently in Napoleon's battle of the Pyramids and in the British desert campaigns of the Sudan in the 'eighties and 'nineties, this fanatical valour would culminate in the frenzied hurling of the baffled horsemen's long pistols in the faces of their foes after all attempts to penetrate the serried infantry phalanx had come to naught. In the accounts of Murad Bey's great charge at the Pyramids, we read how "10,000 horsemen magnificently dressed, on the fleetest steeds in the world, urging their horses with bloody spurs to the impetuous onset, rending the heavens with their cries, causing the earth to tremble beneath the thunder of iron feet, came down upon the adamantine host. The daring Mamelukes, in their frenzy of rage and disappointment, threw away their lives. They wheeled their horses round and reined them back upon the ranks that they might kick

their way into those terrible living fortresses. Rendered furious by their inability to break the ranks they hurled pistols and carbines at the heads of the French. The wounded crawled along the ground, and with their scimitars cut at the legs of their foes . . . The infantry, witnessing the utter discomfiture of the mounted troops, caught the panic and joined the flight. Thousands plunged into the river and endeavoured to escape by swimming. Others sought the desert, a wild and rabble rout." Yet practically the same cavalry tactics were adopted in the fierce desert fighting of a hundred years subsequently.

In this Turko-Egyptian campaigning of 1785-6, the Ottoman cavalry and camelry were supported by a contingent of the hard-fighting and relentless Janissaries, who had been organised during the fourteenth century out of Christian prisoners who were compelled to embrace the Moslem faith. Acting as a military police-force in peace time, they so rapidly increased in numbers and political power that successive rulers of Turkey endeavoured to curtail their sinister activities. All such endeavours came to nought until the advent of the Sultan Mahmud II, who contrived to embody a counter-force organized upon European lines. A tremendous struggle for the possession of Constantinople ensued in 1826. It culminated in the total and final extinction of the Janissaries, 15,000 of whom are computed to have been put to death and not less than 20,000 sent into banishment or slavery.



HAIG—BRITISH SOLDIER

By CORPORAL-OF-HORSE R. J. T. HILLS

"OF the making of books there is no end." The saying may well be lifted from its biblical setting and applied to the ever-increasing bibliography of the Great War. This notwithstanding, there is ample room for Sir George Arthur's small volume, "Lord Haig" (Heinemann, 6s.) recently published. The complete set of war histories is yet to write. They probably may not be written by authors now living. The accurate focus of posterity will reveal many things. Great war statesmen, generals of world-wide fame, may possibly emerge as something entirely different when all the facts are to hand, when the expediency of the moment has no longer to be considered.

Whatever may be the verdict when Earl Haig stands for the judgment of the pen, whether he be adjudged great general or honest soldier doing his best, he must surely ever be revered as the best of his type—the type of leader whom the British soldier delights to follow, and that to victory almost invariable.

Sir George Arthur's work is in no sense a biography. Its author does not claim so much for it. But it is to such a book the future historian—or biographer—with all the cold facts carefully extracted from the archives, will be glad to turn, to recapture the personal magnetic attraction which will by that time be lost in the tale of years.

* * * * *

It is not generally realized to what extent the pre-war army (and consequently the B.E.F. to which it gave birth) was indebted to Lord Haig. Passing through the Staff College at a period when that institution was just beginning to realize that there were more things in heaven and earth than were ever

dreamt of in its philosophy, Haig came to the fore in Kitchener's Omdurman campaign in far more ample fashion than was to be expected from a mere captain of cavalry. The implicit trust which Kitchener subsequently placed in him may be traced to those days. In South Africa, acting as staff officer to French, he demonstrated how perfectly a brilliant subordinate could exploit a leader, himself described as a "born leader of cavalry," but with certain very definite limitations. "From being the 'brain' of the cavalry division, Haig was put in orders to command one of those columns which trekked to and fro, marched incessantly, fought fitfully, and fared always uncomfortably. The Staff diaries of this column commander have for a quarter of a century been on loan to the Staff College, and are held up to students as models of what such documents should be."

The command of the Seventeenth, the Inspector-Generalship of Cavalry in India, Directorship of Staff Duties, C.G.S., India, and, finally, the coveted Aldershot command, were his. In each and every sphere his influence had far-reaching results. As a regimental officer he was iconoclastic in demanding intelligence from the private soldier. He stirred up sluggish livers in India by inspecting cavalry at the gallop. The Staff College at Quetta, the organization of the Expeditionary Force, the emergence of the Territorials as a serious fighting body, and many another change which was to bear fruit in the years to come—behind all these was the brain of Haig. On the eve of war itself he was practising at Aldershot the very same "manœuvre of retreat" which he had studied at the French Manœuvres of 1913, and which was so very soon to be tried out with live ammunition from Mons to the gates of Paris.

Of the earlier stages of the war, it is not too much to say that, if Haig had been allowed to act in his own way, disasters might have been avoided, brilliant successes have been ours. Not at any one stage of the conflict was he to act unhampered. Even as Commander-in-Chief his plans had always to be subordinated to outside interests. The Somme was fought to relieve Verdun; Arras to exploit—which it certainly did not—

the nimble Nivelles ; Passchendaele in an endeavour to seize the Belgian bases which Germany was using for her air and submarine raids on England ; Cambrai when other hands had deprived him of the priceless divisions sent to Italy.

Through it all came Haig, imperturbable, finally victorious, and above all the one great figure in whom his own men placed infinite confidence. There is mystery in Haig, the mystery of this appeal to those who served under him. Haig was entirely—to coin a word—unsloganised. A section of the Press once tried to exploit him as “Iron Haig.” The country, the army, remained content to accept him as just Haig, the quietest, most imperturbable general who had ever led an imperturbable army to victory. Haig, it is said, was a martinet as a regimental officer. He had been mellowed by experience. His whole attitude as leader of the B.E.F. was one of unbounded confidence in every member of that army of blood-brothers, an attitude which was continued into the days when, the harness unbuckled, he dropped his natural reticence, and burgeoned as the great champion of the ex-service man.

Perhaps his greatest asset was his almost unfailing ability to inspire trust ; trust not only in the general but in the man. Kitchener trusted him ; even the French generals would hear no word against him ; while Foch adored him. The War Cabinet trusted him to the extent of frustrating every effort to remove him. The soldier in the trenches followed his lead with the confidence that by so doing he would arrive at eventual safe anchorage.

Haig was the last to seek popularity—would have been surprised if he had realized how popular he really was with his men. Yet here was the man to whom, if he had but raised a finger in encouragement, even the stolid British soldiery, at even the darkest moment of the war years, would have given acclaim as thunderous as that given to a Napoleon flushed with victory, or to a Caesar flaunting his spoils through the streets of Imperial Rome.

AN INCIDENT IN THE CHINA WAR OF 1860

By COLONEL H. C. WYLLY, C.B.

THE Treaty of Peace, made with the Chinese authorities after the operations of 1842, proved to be little more than an agreement to a mere cessation of hostilities, for in Peking every Chinaman of rank and influence was strenuously opposed to the fulfilment of the terms of the Treaty, which had indeed only been signed under the stern presence of financial exhaustion. In October, 1856, the most serious of many previous outrages called for the enforcement of retaliatory measures, and naval and military operations were put in hand and continued until July, 1859, when the Chinese Government definitely refused compliance with the British demands and made it clear that there was no intention whatever of giving effect to the terms of the Treaties previously made.

The British and French Governments now entered into an alliance for the purpose of enforcing compliance with their demands, and agreed to the dispatch of two forces of 10,000 and 7,000 men respectively, the British rendezvousing at Hongkong and the French at Shanghai.

On the 1st August, 1860, a landing was effected off the Peiho, on the 14th Tang-ku was occupied and by the 21st the Taku forts, and all the country up to and including the city of Tientsin, had been surrendered, while by the 8th September the combined advance in Peking had begun.

A cavalry reconnaissance carried out on the 20th September showed that the enemy were in force about Pa-li-chiao, and on the following day their position was attacked, the French advancing against the village of that name where the bridge

over the U-liang-ho crosses the paved road from Tungchow, the British to the left, and the cavalry making a wide turning movement still further to the left, so as to drive the enemy's right upon their centre, and force them to cross the canal at the points against which the allied advance was being made.

Of what then happened General Sir Hope Grant relates in his private journal: "We were only a short distance from the enemy, and after we had advanced a mile, their guns opened on the French. Opposite the battle was the canal bridge of Pa-li-chiao,* apparently strongly fortified. Our troops were formed up with the infantry on the right, artillery in the centre and cavalry in echelon on the left, and I then rode up to the French to reconnoitre the position of the enemy. As I was riding quietly back, I saw some cavalry on the left front of our allies, which I at first took for some of their skirmishers, when they suddenly approached and I found that they were Tartars. I immediately galloped off to Stirling's guns and opened fire with case at a range of 200 yards, which quickly made them retire. The King's Dragoon Guards and Fane's Horse, with Probyn's Regiment in support, now advanced to the charge, the first-named taking a bank and ditch on their way, and, attacking the Tartars with the utmost vigour, instantly made them give way. Fane's men followed them in pursuit, and on reaching the margin of a road, jumped into it over an interposing high bank and ditch. The front rank cleared it well, but the men in rear, unable to see before them, owing to the excessive dust, almost all rolled into the ditch. Nevertheless, the Tartars suffered severely."

The late Field Marshal Lord Wolseley was also an eye-witness of this affair, and in his "War with China," he wrote: "Our cavalry went straight at them, Fane's Horse and the King's Dragoon Guards in the first line, Probyn's regiment in support behind. The King's Dragoon Guards got well in amongst the Tartars, riding over ponies and men, and knocking both down together like so many ninepins. The Irregulars were soon after

* Whence the French Commander, General de Montauban, derived his title of Count de Palikao.

them, and in the short pursuit which then ensued the wild Pathans of Fane's Horse showed well fighting side by side with the powerful British dragoon. The result was most satisfactory. Riderless Tartar horses were to be seen galloping about in all directions, and the ground passed over in the charge was well strewn with the enemy. At no time subsequently during the day would they allow our cavalry to get sufficiently near for a second charge."

Among those who charged that day in the ranks of the King's Dragoon Guards was Trumpeter John Goldsworthy of that Regiment, and the following is his account of the part he played in the action at Pa-li-chiao :

"On the morning of the 21st September, 1860, being trumpeter to General Sir John Michel, I was ordered to rejoin my Regiment which was about to charge the enemy. This we carried out in excellent style, notwithstanding the difficult nature of the ground, and I had disposed of some six or seven of the enemy, when I noticed that Lieutenant W. S. McLeod, of the Madras Cavalry, who was attached to my Regiment for duty, was surrounded by seven or eight Tartars, one of whom was preparing to give him a final stroke, when I pierced him through the neck, killing him instantly. I then turned my attention immediately to the others, and succeeded in killing, or mortally wounding, them all, thus saving the officer's life. I followed in the pursuit and managed to slay three Mandarins, and, catching the eye of (then) Lieutenant Marsland (now General and late Colonel 5th Dragoon Guards), remarked to him : "That's the way to polish them off, Sir !" He replied : ' Well done, Trumpeter, go on and polish some more off.' I did so, but on coming to a halt, as soon as the smoke had cleared away, found that I was simply in the midst of the Chinese Army.

"I resolved to clear myself, so putting spurs to my horse I made a dash and rode straight through them about a mile and a half in the direction of my Regiment, which I found formed up for the roll-call.

"I had to cut my way right and left to get through the Tartar army as I did, and my trumpet was shot off my back, but

I calculated that forty-six fell to my sword that day. On going in to the camping ground that night, Lieutenant McLeod told his brother officers how I had saved his life, and Lieutenant Marsland was able to tell how he had noticed me 'dispatching the enemy in rare style.' I recovered my trumpet next day, it having been found by one of Probyn's Horse, and on unrolling my cloak from my saddle four bullets rolled out.

"In 1861 my Regiment returned to India, and in January, 1862, at Bangalore, Lieutenant McLeod's brother came out from England and joined the same regiment—the 1st King's Dragoon Guards. I was summoned to his bungalow and there received from him a gold watch and chain, the undermentioned inscription being on the former: 'Presented by W. S. McLeod, of the Madras Cavalry, to Trumpeter Goldsworthy, of the 1st King's Dragoon Guards, in grateful remembrance of the valuable help received from him at the battle of Palichow in China. 21st September, 1860.' I was also recommended for the V.C., but I heard nothing about it until 1868, I being then Saddler-Sergeant of the 3rd Hussars, when a letter was received by the Officer Commanding, stating that no more decorations would be awarded for the China Expedition."

Sergeant Goldsworthy's claims were again put forward through the late Major-General W. E. Marsland, in July, 1896, with the result that this very gallant non-commissioned officer was awarded an additional pension of sixpence a day, in respect of his gallant conduct in action *thirty-six* years previously!

According to General Sir Hope Grant's despatch of the 22nd September, 1860, the following were the losses sustained by the three cavalry regiments engaged near Pa-li-chiao on the previous day:

1st King's Dragoons Guards: one man killed, one officer and seven men wounded.

Probyn's Horse: one man killed.

Fane's Horse: one officer and thirteen men wounded.

It has been said that the explanation of the Trumpeter emerging from the action unscathed, although his cloak was full of bullets, is that the Chinese troops had only very recently

been armed with rifles and that, finding a difficulty in ramming the bullets home, they adopted the simple expedient of filing the bullets down so that they could be dropped into the barrels. But as they then found that the bullets were liable to drop out of the muzzle when the rifle was raised to aim, they "loosed off" into the air, trusting that the bullet would descend upon an enemy !



*JUST THE WORD**or Le Mot Juste*

By "HYDERABAD"

D.

"DRIVELLER, a fool; an ideot (*sic*). A slaverer. The greatest generals may become so through infirmity or extreme old age."—*Military Dictionary*, by Major Charles James, 3rd Edition, 1810.

E.

"EDUCATION, in a *military sense*, implies the training up of youth to the art of war; wherein, first, should be understood, whether nature has given the young man the talents necessary for the profession or not; for here sense, parts, courage, and judgment are required in a very eminent degree. The natural qualities of an officer are a robust constitution, a noble open countenance, a martial genius, fire to push action, phlegm to moderate his transports, and patience to support the toils and fatigues of war, without almost seeming to feel them. Birth and family, added to these advantages, never fail of commanding respect.

"Acquired qualities of an officer consist in moral virtues and sciences: by the first is meant, a regular good conduct, economy, prudence, and a serious application to what regards the service . . ."—*An Universal Military Dictionary*, by Captain George Smith, London, 1779.

F.

"FINISHED *coxcomb*, . . . Although this term can scarcely be considered as a military one, nevertheless we think it worthy of insertion, because we honestly believe, that the British army is by no means free from such a nuisance. A finished coxcomb may be called an insignificant, yet self-important fool, whose existence is devoted to exterior appearance ; who goes through the duties of his situation under the evident influence of affectation ; and if, by accident, he should be called into service, who meets the enemy with no other impulse to act as he ought, than what arises from vanity, or with the foolish indifference of a creature that is not aware of its danger. Yet such coxcombs exist amongst us. We can only add, they are proper food for gunpowder, and the sooner they get shot off, the better ; for of all nuisances in life a military coxcomb is unquestionably the most insupportable."—*James, op. cit.*

G.

"GALLOWSES, braces ; straps used for the purpose of keeping up the breeches or pantaloons of men, and the petticoats of Highlanders and women."—*James, op. cit.*

H.

"*Regimental-HOSPITALS*, are frequently in barns, stables, granaries, and other out-houses ; but above all, churches make the best hospitals from the beginning of June to October . . ."—*George Smith, op. cit.*

I.

"*Indian Camp*. An Indian camp may be considered as one of the loosest assemblages of men, women and children that can perhaps be imagined.

Every common soldier in the army is accompanied by a wife, or concubine ; the officers have several, and the generals

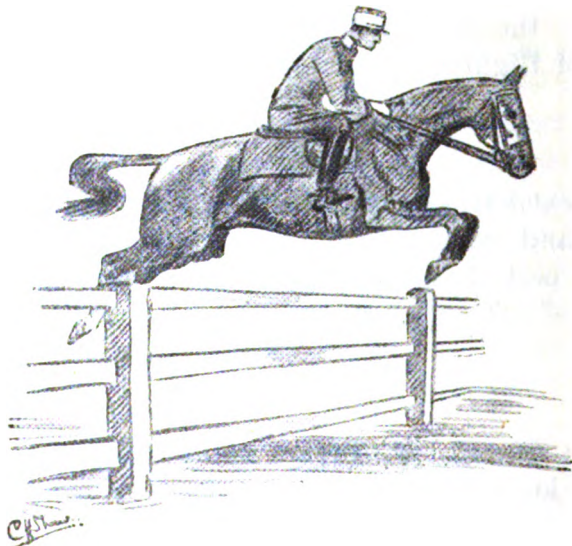
whole seraglios; . . . to supply the various wants of this enervated multitude, dealers, pedlars and retailers of all sorts follow the camp . . . in which they daily exhibit their different commodities . . . all of them sitting on the ground in a line, with their merchandise exposed before them, and sheltered from the sun by a mat supported by sticks."—*James, op cit.*

J.

"JOURNALIZED, done according to daily practice, &c. Hence, *journalized report*, or an account of what has been tried, or effected, day after day."—*James, op. cit.*

K.

"KNAVE, for its military acceptance, see INFANTRY."—*James, op. cit.*



CORRESPONDENCE.

TO THE EDITOR, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—Colonel Langford Lloyd, in his interesting article on "Medical Arrangements for Cavalry" (CAVALRY JOURNAL, July, 1928), comments on the impossibility of carrying Mark 11 stretcher on a horse and remarks that no portable stretcher is authorised for use.

During the Palestine Campaign, short cavalry stretchers were used by the 5th Mounted Brigade (Worcestershire, Warwickshire, and Gloucestershire Yeomanry), and probably by other formations in Desert Mounted Corps. These stretchers were not an issue, but were made by our regimental saddlers; they consisted of two light bamboo poles four feet long, joined by a piece of canvas three feet by nineteen inches, with strap and buckle at each end in order to secure them when rolled up. They were carried, by the four men per squadron who were trained in first aid, attached to the sword, and proved invaluable when full-sized stretchers were not available: the latter was often the case, as the "first line transport vehicle" was frequently, in mountainous country, unable to bring the heavier medical equipment to within some miles of the R.A.P. and led horses. Although these short stretchers was not exactly "a bed of roses" for a badly wounded man, the writer can testify from personal experience that they were the means of saving the life of many a yeoman in the rapidly moving warfare of the Palestine Campaign: this was specially the case in the hill fighting, north of Beersheba, around Jerusalem, in the second Es Salt Raid, and in the mountains of Moab. Before the introduction of this cavalry stretcher, it took four men (in the Sinai Desert) to carry a casualty, in a horse blanket, from the firing line to the led horses.

Yours, etc.,

OSKAR TEICHMAN.

NOTES

HIS Majesty the King has been pleased to promote General His Majesty Alfonso XIII, King of Spain, K.G., G.C.V.O., Colonel-in-Chief, 16th/5th Lancers, to be Field Marshal in the Army.

THE LIFE GUARDS

The King has approved of The Life Guards (1st and 2nd) being in future designated The Life Guards.

ALLIANCES

His Majesty the King has been graciously pleased to approve of the 14th Canadian Light Horse, Non-Permanent Active Militia of Canada, being allied to the 14th/20th Hussars.

His Majesty the King has been graciously pleased to approve of the 2nd Dragoons, Non-Permanent Active Militia of Canada, being allied to The Royal Scots Greys (2nd Dragoons).

ORGANIZATION OF A CAVALRY ARMoured CAR REGIMENT.

A provisional Peace Establishment of a Cavalry Armoured Car Regiment at home has lately been issued. This applies, of course, to the 11th Hussars, now stationed at Aldershot.

The Regiment is organized as follows :

Headquarter Wing ;

Three squadrons, each consisting of Squadron Headquarters and two sections.

The Headquarter Wing comprises Wing Headquarters, Training Cadre, Radio-telephone section and Band section.

The Radio-telephone section consists of 9 other ranks and, attached from the Royal Corps of Signals one officer and 32 other ranks with 4 radio-telephone six-wheeled light lorries.

Each squadron is divided into :

Squadron Headquarters—2 officers, 30 other ranks,
1 armoured car, 4 motor cycle combinations.

Two Sections—Each section consists of a Section Headquarters (one officer, 7 other ranks, 1 armoured car) and one officer, 28 other ranks, 4 armoured cars and 4 motor cycles.

The total establishment of the squadron is 5 officers, 98 other ranks, 11 armoured cars, 8 motor cycles, 4 motor cycle combinations.

The establishment of the Regiment is 21 officers, 417 other ranks, 34 armoured cars and 40 officers' chargers.

One R.A.O.C. artificer staff-sergeant is attached and ten fitters, electricians and carpenters are included among the cavalry personnel, but it is stated that the fitters and electricians are to be found temporarily by the R.A.O.C.

The transport, etc., of the Regiment consists of :

Four radio-telephone six-wheeled lorries (as above),
1 six-wheeled car, 1 heavy van or light lorry,
6 lorries (four-wheeled or six-wheeled) i.e., two
per squadron, 3 store lorries, 3 training chassis,
30 motor cycles, 16 motor cycle combinations.

THE METHUEN CUP. CAVALRY, 1928.

Fired at Bisley, 29th June, 1928. Captain of Team : Lieut. D. S. Frazer, 14/20th Hussars.

PRACTICE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	Total
Capt. T. G. Upton, 11th P.A.O. Hussars ..	35	38	35	40	148
R.Q.M.S. Mason, F. O. 10th R. Hussars ..	43	40	38	27	148
S.S.M. Scarr, C. H. S., 14/20th Hussars ..	40	34	40	34	148
S.S.M. Kendrick, A., 3/6th D.G's. ..	30	37	36	30	133
Sgt. I. of M. Jones, E., 11th Hussars ..	39	40	39	46	164
Sgt. Triggs, R. V. F., 16/5th Lancers ..	39	37	31	36	143
Sgt. Buck, T., 10th R. Hussars	38	30	26	40	134
L/Cpl. Holmes, J., 11th Hussars	36	35	35	35	141
Total	300	291	280	288	1159

Seventeen teams entered. The Cup was won by H.M.S. "Excellent" with a score of 1,242. The Cavalry team being ninth.

EX-CAVALRYMEN'S ASSOCIATION

Number of men registered ; Number of jobs found by the Association ; Number found their own employment ; and number struck off books or failed to reply, from 1st Jan, 1928, to 30th June, 1928.

<i>Regiment.</i>	<i>No. of Men Registered.</i>	<i>No. of Jobs found by Association.</i>	<i>No. of Jobs found by Men.</i>	<i>Struck off Books or failed to Reply.</i>
Life Guards	0	0	0	0
R. H. Guards (Blues) . .	8	4	3	1
1st King's Dragoon Guards ..	10	12	4	1
The Queen's Bays	5	8	0	0
3/6th Dragoon Guards ..	12	13	5	3
4/7th Dragoon Guards ..	25	10	5	0
5th Innis. Dragoon Guards ..	48	41	6	4
The Royal Dragoons . .	7	6	3	1
The Royal Scots Greys ..	25	29	7	0
3rd Hussars	41	27	6	2
4th Hussars	11	5	3	2
7th Hussars	5	6	3	0
8th Hussars	10	8	2	0
9th Lancers	19	5	3	0
10th Hussars . . .	12	5	6	0
11th Hussars . . .	28	15	5	0
12th Lancers	6	0	1	0
13/18th Hussars	19	8	3	0
14/20th Hussars	9	1	1	0
15/19th Hussars	25	11	9	3
16/5th Lancers	29	18	7	0
17/21st Lancers	15	8	5	0
Yeomanry	0	0	0	0
Totals	369	240	87	17

NOTE.—Owing to the fact that a man may have been put into more than one job, the number of jobs found may, in some cases, exceed the number of men registered.

CAVALRY JOURNAL

The undermentioned have become subscribers since the publication of the July number :

Major-General A. Solly Flood, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Equitation School, Saugor.

Captain A. R. Conder, M.C., 4/7th Dragoon Guards.

Major C. E. Bryant, late 12th Royal Lancers.

Lieutenant P. D. Sandback, 12th Royal Lancers.

Major A. L. Danby, Bihar Light Horse.

Garrison Officers' Mess, Esquimalt, B.C., Canada.

Lieutenant Baron Nils Leuhusen, 3rd Life Hussars (Sweden).

Lieutenant D. G. Williams, Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.

Captain Marshall Grout, 101st Cavalry, U.S.A.

Lady Aspley.

New Subscribers	..	..	..	..	10
"	"	Published in July	..	..	56
					—
Total (1928)	..	..	..	..	66
					—

SELF-LOADING RIFLES

Recently the British Government called upon rifle manufacturers and designers to submit self-loading rifles in competition for a prize of £3,000.

This prize was won, after protracted trials, by the B.S.A.-Thompson self-loading rifle, the basic design of which is due to General John Thompson, a well-known officer and small arms expert of the U.S. Army. It is stated that the ordinary soldier will be able to fire 35 shots per minute with this rifle.

WAR OFFICE ,
14th July, 1928.

MEMORIAL TO THE LATE LIEUT.-GENERAL MAXWELL

At a recent meeting of friends and comrades of the late Lieut.-General Sir Ronald Maxwell, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., it was decided to erect a memorial to mark the admiration and respect for his character which is felt by all who knew him, and to

commemorate the eminent services which he rendered, particularly when Quartermaster-General to the Forces in France during the Great War.

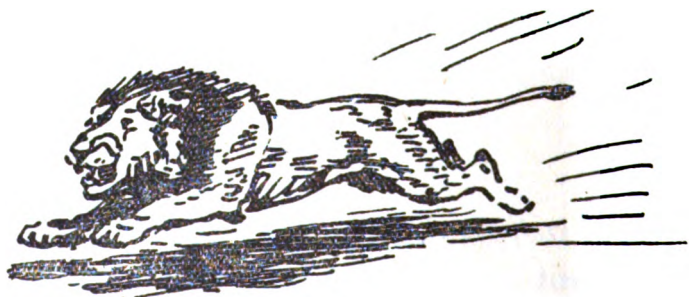
A representative General Committee, with General Sir Bindon Blood, G.C.B., as Chairman and a small Executive Committee with Lieut.-General Sir Henry Lawson as Chairman, have been formed.

The General Committee have decided, with the permission of the Dean and Chapter, to place the Memorial in Rochester Cathedral, close to where so much of Maxwell's Home Service was spent and where he was married. It is hoped to raise sufficient funds for a stained-glass window and tablet.

It is thought that the scheme will appeal to many of those who were associated with Sir Ronald Maxwell during his career, and that these may welcome the opportunity of contributing to the Memorial.

Donations will be gladly received and acknowledged, but no statement of individual contributions will be published.

Lloyd's Bank, Limited (Cox's and King's Branch), No. 6, Pall Mall, S.W.1, have opened an account called "Maxwell Memorial Fund," into which contributions should be paid direct.



*REGIMENTAL ITEMS OF INTEREST**18th K.E.O. Cavalry*

The Regiment returned from Squadron and Regimental Training on 14th May.

On 16th May, General Sir Charles H. Harington, G.B.E., K.C.B., D.S.O., D.C.L., General Officer Commanding-in-Chief, Western Command, on a Full Dress Parade presented a Memorial Shield to the Regiment. The Shield is of bronze with the Regimental Crest and Battle Honours in silver—also in silver is an inscription in Urdu and Hindi which translated reads: "To the memory of brave men and to the glory of the Regiment." The Regiment after the presentation marched past the shield. The Regiment leaves Quetta by train on 21st November for Jhansi, handing over their horses to the 15th Lancers before departure.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

“The Fighting Forces.” July, 1928.

One might call this a light, holiday number, consisting largely of short stories. Some of these are good, but one gets a little tired of the sensational war stories of the future in which nations are always obliterated by some unknown invention, for which the fashion was set by Mr. Britten Austin. There are, however, two valuable contributions to Service thought:—one, on flying boats for the Navy and on the Gilbertian dual control by the Admiralty and the Air Ministry which burdens Naval pilots with two ranks; the other, on the supply of an Armoured Force, in which the author stresses the importance of this force being entirely self-supporting within its own range of action. There is also an interesting account of the aircraft with the Shanghai Defence Force, which is to be continued in the next volume.

“The Journal of the United Service Institution of India.” April.

This volume is of a somewhat severely technical nature, and it is, perhaps, a pity that there is no light relief. The main article is one on Appreciations, Instructions, Operation Orders, and Message Writing, which includes valuable information and advice, but suffers from vagueness. There are three articles dealing purely with Indian Army matters, a note on the economic independence of the United States, a reply to a criticism of the Cardwell system, and some valuable notes on jungle warfare. The reviewer must confess that he turned with rather a feeling of relief to the editorial, which as usual is excellent, and also to a lengthy review of the Great Pyramid and its Purpose, included in this number.

“Canadian Defence Quarterly,” July, 1928. The outstanding article in this number is one by Major Goodeve on Mechanization, in which he briefly outlines the growth and composition of the armoured force. He includes, moreover, a most excellent series of photos of most of the modern types of

armoured vehicles. There is an interesting analysis of the First French advance into Alsace 7th-11th August, 1914, in which the writer points out that the operation was practically doomed to failure before it started. "Its effect was political rather than strategical . . . it led to the employment of far more troops than the object justified and they did not contain even an equal number of the enemy."

Other articles include a history of the Canadian Militia from 1816 to the Crimean War, the story of the squadron of the Fort Garry Horse at Cambrai, reprinted from the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and a historical account of the siege of Metz.

A good number, with something for nearly all tastes.

The Editor acknowledges with thanks the receipt of the following :

<i>The Ypres Times</i>	July 1928.
<i>The Yorkshire Hussars Magazine</i> ..	July 1928.
<i>The Scarlet and Green Journal</i>	—
<i>The Veterinary Journal</i>	June and July 1928.
<i>The Military Gazette</i>	Nos. 11, 12, 14 and 15.
<i>The Journal of the Indian Army Service Corps</i>	May, June and July 1928.
<i>Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps</i>	June, July, Aug. and Sept. 1928.
<i>On the March</i>	June, July, Aug. and Sept. 1928.
<i>The Royal Tank Corps Journal</i> ..	June, July, Aug. and Sept. 1928.
<i>The Journal of the Royal Artillery</i> ..	July 1928.
<i>The Wasp</i>	June 1928.
<i>Faugh-a-Ballagh</i>	April and July 1928.
<i>The 13th/18th Hussars Journal</i> ..	July 1928.
<i>The Eagle</i>	July 1928.
<i>The Wiltshire Legionnaire</i>	No. 2.
<i>Canadian Defence Quarterly</i>	July 1928.
<i>Journal of the 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards</i>	Vol. V, No. 1.
<i>The Royal Engineers' Journal</i>	Sept. 1928.
<i>The Strathcomian</i>	June 1928.
<i>The Xth Royal Hussars Gazette</i> ..	Sept. 1928.
<i>The Royal Military College Magazine and Record</i>	Michaelmas 1928.
<i>The Journal of The Society of Army Historical Research</i>	July 1928.

FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE "Revue de Cavalerie" for May-June contains several papers of an especially up-to-date character. There is an article by General Boucherie describing the manœuvres which were conducted in October last between Provins and Sézanne by the 1st Cavalry Division and the 2nd Air Force Division, acting in combination, under the direction of Generals Thureau and Barés. The operations endured for three days only, but certain problems were studied and some definite conclusions were arrived at. It appears to have been established that except when the advanced troops are actually in contact with the enemy and when other means of inter-communication are impracticable, too much time is lost in sending and receiving messages by wireless—the setting up of the necessary machinery, the receiving, decoding and re-despatch of replies taking, in ordinary cases, the best part of an hour; it is considered from the experience of these manœuvres that, as a rule, the best results are most speedily obtained by the direct employment of planes dropping and picking up ballasted messages. Lieut.-Colonel Argueyvolles continues in this number his account of the work of the cavalry during last year's grand manœuvres carried out by the Army of the Rhine, to which allusion was made in these notes in the last issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and in summing up certain purely cavalry movements of which he was a witness, he writes something as follows: "If those who so readily advocate the replacement of cavalry by armoured cars, by infantry in lorries, by cyclists, etc., could have seen, as I did, the cavalry working over the very broken country bordering the Moselle . . . those impassioned dévotés of mechanization could hardly have seriously suggested any arm which really and effectively could take its place. They must have

been forced to admit that among descents so precipitous, in ravines so thickly wooded, so rocky and roadless, nothing in the way of a caterpillar tractor could have made any progress, while it would everywhere have been liable to surprise and capture."

Continuing his account of the work of the 1st Polish Cavalry Division against the Bolshevik forces in July-October, 1920, Captain Moslard states that this Division, despite its almost complete want of real training, and officered as it was by young men drawn from the cavalry of three different nations, accomplished much and wound up with the achievement of a veritable triumph in the saving of Lvov and Warsaw. But its success was dearly won, owing no doubt to its inexperience and the want of training from highest to lowest, the division suffering in three months casualties amounting to seventy-two officers and 1,200 other ranks killed and wounded.

In the July issue of the "Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires," General de Longueville writes "On the employment and rôle of Cavalry in War," an article which is in effect a reply to the many critics who have urged its abolition or mechanization; and he sets out to justify his claim that no other arm can take its place in covering the mobilization at the outbreak of war, in the gleaning of information, in covering a retreat, or in the pursuit of a defeated enemy. For the first of these the writer insists, as others have before him, that since the cavalry must be the first to take the field, it must be not only numerous and highly trained, but that it must contain in its ranks a smaller proportion of reservists than any other arm. It has been claimed, says General de Longueville, that for the gathering of information the heavier-than-air machine can now take the place of cavalry; but while admitting that the aeroplane can travel both faster and further than can any cavalry body, its activity is dependant upon weather and its range of vision upon atmosphere; while, unlike the cavalry, the aeroplane can take no prisoners and is thus debarred from exploiting at least one source of useful information. In fact, while on return from a flight the airman says: "I have seen nothing,"

the cavalry man will more usefully report: "There is nothing to be seen." The writer considers the replacement of cavalry by any of the newer organizations, and especially does he question the value of infantry bodies which are to be transported rapidly to the front in motor-lorries, pointing out that, by reason of the extreme vulnerability of such while in movement, the transported infantry must be disembarked at so great a distance from the point of entry into action as to run the risk of too late arrival upon the scene. General de Longueville concludes his paper with an interesting statement of the proportion of cavalry to infantry maintained at the present moment in the armies of the European nations.

In the "Militär Wochenblatt" of the 18th May, Lieut.-General von Kayser, Inspector-General of Cavalry in Germany, reviews at some length a book by Major-General von Borries, entitled "The Army Cavalry in a War of Movement," which has recently appeared, and makes certain remarks which the cavalryman will appreciate. He reminds us, opportunely enough, that with every improvement in the transport and resultant mobility of troops, there has been a demand for the abolition of cavalry. He recalls that in 1871, after the close of the war with France, it was claimed in a military publication that cavalry was now superfluous, railway development having caused it to be so—now it is the motor which, we are told, has driven cavalry from the field. The real truth being, as General von Kayser states, that the great improvement noticeable in mechanics, does not therefore render cavalry superfluous, any more than it does any of the other arms, but actually increases its possibilities. It is to be noticed that the Inspector-General of the German cavalry is a warm advocate for the retention of the lance.

In an article on "Modern Cavalry" in the issue of the same paper for the 25th May, the writer pleads that the mechanized guns, etc., to accompany cavalry in the field should be *specially* designed for the purpose, and that these should in no case be, as is too often the case, of a general service pattern.

The importance still attached in Germany to the horse for military purposes may be seen by a correspondence which has lately been carried on in the columns of the "Militär Wochenblatt," deprecating, and suggesting means for repairing, the very serious loss in horse production which has been so noticeable in Germany during the last few years, and particularly in the last twelve months. It is stated that in the winter immediately following the close of the world war, the loss in horse flesh was quickly made good, but that production has lately very greatly declined until it is now threatening to be insufficient for the military needs of the future. One of these writers, in stressing the serious character of the present horse-crisis, states that actually the German Army to-day needs more horses in peace time than formerly—an infantry regiment to-day employs 320 as against formerly 30, a cavalry regiment 840 against 700, while an artillery regiment now requires 860 horses, whereas in pre-war days it required about 450 only.

H. W.

The July number of the "United States Cavalry Journal" is devoted largely to fire-power questions, six articles on this subject being included. Brig.-General James Parker in "The Cavalryman and the Rifle" states that too much importance is given to the machine gun and the machine rifle, and in a demonstration he proved to his satisfaction that the rifle used mounted was more effective than the pistol. He asserts that the rifle is the principal arm of cavalry!

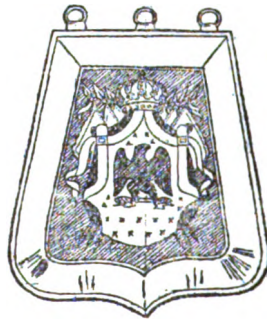
In an article entitled "Employment of Machine Guns," there is an interesting photograph showing an improvised method of carrying the Browning machine gun on a pack-horse. "The gun has been fired from this emergency moving position with fair results." We trust the horse appreciated his position.

A. J. Culbertson describes some "Forefathers of Fox-Hunting," which will fascinate all those who love the chase. The following characters are included: Hugo Meynell, Peter Beckford, Assheton Smith, Nimrod, John Mytton and Surtees. There are reproductions of coloured prints of these fox-hunters by Gordon Ross.

Colonel Wiktorin, of the Austrian army, in "Motorized and Cavalry Divisions," examines the question as to how far the former can replace cavalry. He deals with "Reconnaissance and Terrain, Length of Column, Rate of March, Flank Protection, Protection against Aircraft, Deployment for Battle, etc.," and concludes by "thus one arm cannot be replaced by the other, they both must work together."

In "Topics of the Day," we learn that two new weapons are to be added to the armament of cavalry regiments—firstly, three cross-country cars on each of which is mounted an anti-aircraft machine gun, and secondly, three 37mm. guns packed on horses for employment against armoured cars, tanks and machine gun nests. All these weapons will form part of the regimental machine gun troop. An armoured car squadron (36 cars), a light tank company and an observation squadron of airplanes have also recently been added to a cavalry division.

O. J. F. F.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

PART I.—MILITARY.

“The Employment of Cavalry, from the Lessons to be Drawn from the History of War.” By Major von W. Brenken, Instructor at the Cavalry School, Hanover. (Eisen-schmidt: Berlin.) M. 7.50.

The writer sets out to show, from the history of the training of German cavalry in peace and of its employment in war, how very greatly its usefulness has varied from time to time, pointing out on how very many occasions such usefulness has been impaired by the failure of its leaders always to realise that the true method of the most valuable employment of the mounted arm is to use it before, during, and after an action; that its duty is not merely to exploit a victory, but to contribute to its gain from the very outset.

Beginning with the premise that the Carthaginian horse was employed in emphatically the only true way at the battle of Cannæ, the author goes on to show the constant changes in the methods of cavalry training and employment in the German army from the days of the Great Elector down to the opening of the Great War of 1914-18; we learn how the training inculcated by the Great Elector was altered by his successor, by whom, as we learn, the cavalry was “*infanterisiert*”; how it was at its best during the wars of Frederick the Great; and the writer attributes the resultless character of the German cavalry employment during the Napoleonic wars largely to the fact that war as then waged by Prussia was no longer an offensive war, and that a defensive war had the same effect on the cavalry of those days as had the World War of 1914-18.

The wars that followed are briefly reviewed, the charge of Balaklava being cited in proof of the early declaration, often

since repeated, that the day of cavalry had gone by, and it was not until the outbreak of the war of 1866 that correct ideas prevailed as to the true employment of cavalry in war; but while the German cavalry was then rightly told off into cavalry corps with a view to "massen verwendung," these were unfortunately held back as reserves, with the result that Königgratz was a victory for the Prussians but failed to be a disaster for Austria. In 1870 the balance had swung round again, the cavalry corps had disappeared and the German cavalry was now organized in six divisions varying greatly in strength, so that while many great things were done during the war by the comparatively small bodies of German cavalry, these, by reason of faulty organization and mistaken employment, rarely exercised any really great or enduring influence upon any phase of the campaign.

The lessons of the wars that immediately followed upon the Franco-German war, were, so the author seems to suggest, too often misread; what was accepted as the teaching of the Boer War was abandoned when the reports of the actions in the Russo-Japanese campaign came to hand; and when the Great War opened the majority of the nations which took part had formed wholly false ideas as to the manner in which cavalry could best be employed in the face of modern weapons of precision; and while there was a general consensus of opinion that cavalry should on occasion act dismounted, nobody seemed to know what to expect from the cavalry fire-fight and few realised that a whole cavalry division could set no more rifles in the field than one infantry battalion.

In Count Schlieffen's plan of campaign against France everything depended upon the weight of the right flank attack; the fortresses of Metz and Strassburg, the defences of the Rhine and of the Saar, could be trusted to hold up the advance of the French right until the thrust against their left and rear had made itself felt; the proportion of strength between the German northern and southern flank was to be as 7 to 1, and practically the whole of the German cavalry was, under Schlieffen's plan, to be employed in the north. Von Moltke altered

all this ; the ratio of strength was changed from 7 to 1 to 3 to 1, and the cavalry mass was no longer allotted to the right wing, but it was divided among the different armies in two or more divisions, the three southern armies being given a larger proportion of cavalry than were those in the north, the southern terrain being, moreover, far less suited to the movements of the mounted arm than was the country on the right flank of the German advance.

The writer shows that the change of plan, the weakening of the southern cavalry, and the manner of its limited employment, caused the failure of the German initial effort ; and it is claimed that, had the cavalry mass been where Schlieffen had placed it, there would have been no Marne Battle, for the British Expeditionary Force and the Fifth French Army would equally have suffered not merely defeat but destruction.

Major von W. Brenken reviews the work of the cavalry in the east, where, though the same faulty dispositions were forthcoming, certain very dazzling results were none the less achieved.

Summing up the work of the mounted arm in the Great War and the lessons to be drawn from it, the writer declares that so long as mechanically propelled vehicles can only move by roads or across unenclosed country, these can only remain as aids, and not as replacements, to cavalry. The true value of cavalry, he asserts, lies in fire and mobility, and in the days to come the fire-power of a cavalry division *must* equal that of an infantry division. He lays down how this fire-power is to be arrived at, and he especially stresses the point that cavalry must not be squandered in *petits paquets*, but that under special conditions it must be employed in corps or even in a cavalry-army, particularly at the outset of a campaign, in order to obtain that initial ascendancy which will place the future conduct of a war in the hands of the side which achieves it.

This book is provided with no less than thirty wholly excellent maps, which very clearly illustrate the actions and campaigns referred to in the text.

“The Life of General Lord Rawlinson of Trent, G.C.B.; From His Journal and Letters.” Edited by Major-General Sir Frederick Maurice, K.C.M.G., C.B., LL.D. (Cassell & Co.). 25s. net.

Sir Frederick Maurice has presented us, from the journals and letters of Lord Rawlinson, with the life history of a great soldier and a great sportsman.

Another reviewer has said that his “luck” was proverbial, but this is not the impression given by the story of his life. He made the best use of his intimate association with Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener.

The author in his preface says that he will have failed lamentably if in his book he has not succeeded in illustrating the development of this great soldier’s mind. No student of this book can say that he has failed. Lord Rawlinson’s study of the big questions in India as a young man, when he took full advantage of the experience of Lord Roberts and of his own father, and the manner in which he tackled the far bigger problems which confronted him when he returned as Commander-in-Chief, illustrate this development most strikingly.

In reading the life of this great captain, the student would do well to examine the method in which this development was carried out. Here again the author will not fail him. He depicts very clearly throughout his book two very striking faculties. The first was Lord Rawlinson’s great power of observation, a gift which has been commented on by many great soldiers who knew him intimately. The second was his wonderful foresight. All through his diary appear forecasts of events which, in many cases, proved correct years after his opinion was recorded.

General Maurice does not fail to bring out the importance of sport in a soldier’s life. Lord Inchcape, at a farewell banquet said “. . . . the Commander-in-Chief always had a mysterious engagement every afternoon between 4 and 6. At first I assumed he was going to a meeting of Council, or to a

conference of his Generals ; but from the costume in which he returned, I deduce that the engagement was of another nature. Lord Rawlinson works like a slave and plays like a boy, and it is no wonder that the Army loves him."

"A & Q., or Military Administration in War." By Lieut.-Col. W. G. Lindsell, D.S.O., O.B.E., M.C., *p.s.c.*, R.A. (Gale & Polden, Ltd.). 8s. 6d.

This book is really a supplementary volume to the "Military Organization and Administration" previously produced by the author. This new work deals with the whole question on a much larger scale. Dividing the subject generally into "Movement" and "Maintenance," the author analyses the whole organization of movement from the base to railhead, the movement of troops by strategical and tactical train and by mechanical transport, and the organization and development of road transport. On the maintenance side, he discusses the administration of supply and maintenance and goes into the detail of tactical administration in battle. Finally, he has produced an extremely interesting administrative study of the Palestine campaign.

This is a book which should be invaluable not only for all Staff College students but for all staff and regimental officers.

"The War in the Air." Vol. II. By H. A. Jones. (Humphrey Milford.) 17s. 6d.

The writing of this second volume of the Official Air History of the Great War has been undertaken by Mr. H. A. Jones, who has had the unenviable task of succeeding a very great writer, Sir Walter Raleigh. This second volume, which covers the years 1915 and 1916, is nevertheless no unworthy successor of that excellent first volume which was all that Sir Walter had time to write before his untimely death. Mr. Jones deals with the Gallipoli campaign, the battles of Neuve Chapelle, second Ypres, Loos and the Somme on the Western front, and the war at sea, including the battle of Jutland, from the point of view of the part played by the R.F.C. and R.N.A.S. in these operations,

and also with the air operations from Dunkirk and Luxeuil. His narrative is admirably clear and comprehensive, and he devotes a large proportion of his space to those splendid individual exploits of British and enemy airmen, familiarity with which, it is to be feared, has sometimes led to their inadequate appreciation. McCudden and Ball, Boelcke, Richthofen and Immelmann make their first and sometimes last appearance in these pages, together with a host of less famous but not less gallant or meritorious names. But the book is more than a mere roll of doughty deeds; questions of equipment, armament, organisation, and command are adequately dealt with, and a sober yet convincing picture given of the growth of the air arm from the days when it comprised only a few slow unhandy machines, their pilots unarmed or armed only with rifle or revolvers, to its establishment and recognition as an essential adjunct to victory whether on land or at sea.

“Armaments Year-Book.” (League of Nations Information Section, Geneva, 1928).

The Armaments Year-Book of the League of Nations for the year 1927-1928 has just been published. The first edition of this Year-Book appeared in 1924, in accordance with a resolution adopted by the Council of the League in July, 1923, authorising the Secretary-General to publish a Year-Book of military information. The object of this resolution was to give effect to the last paragraph of Article 8 of the Covenant, which lays down that :

“The Members of the League undertake to interchange full and frank information as to the scale of their armaments, their military, naval and air programmes, and the condition of such of their industries as are adaptable to warlike purposes.”

The present edition contains information regarding the armies of fifty-eight countries, Members or non-Members of the League of Nations. These particulars are given in the form of a series of monographs, each dealing with a separate State.

These monographs, each of which is preceded by geographical and demographical information ; the area, population, length of frontiers, length of railway lines, etc., of the country, consists of three principal divisions :

- (1) Army ;
- (2) Budgetary expenditure allotted to national defence ;
- (3) Production and exchange of goods of importance for National Defence.

The new edition takes into account all the important changes which have taken place in military legislation and, generally, in the organization of the armed forces of the different countries.

All the monographs have been revised and, as far as possible, brought up-to-date in accordance with the most recent documents.

The present edition contains a certain number of graphs and recapitulatory tables which makes it possible to grasp at a glance certain aspects of the military situation of the various States.

“Six British Soldiers.” By The Hon. Sir John Fortescue.
(Williams & Norgate, Ltd.) 12s. 6d.

In this book, the great army historian takes six soldiers—Cromwell, Marlborough, Abercromby, Stuart, Moore, and Wellington—and shows the contribution of each to the making of the Army and the evolution of a military policy. The author is such a master of his craft that one expects very much from him, and it is, perhaps, because of this that the book seems a little disappointing. The space available has been too small for the comprehensive historical outline which he has attempted, and one cannot help feeling he would have done better to have confined his work on Cromwell, Marlborough and Wellington, at any rate, to a more limited aspect of their history. His studies of Moore, Abercromby and particularly of Stuart in the fascinating Mediterranean fighting which is too often ignored are, on the other hand, excellent. It is to be hoped, too, that present and embryo politicians will read these accounts,

which all show the disastrous results of a lack of comprehension on the part of politicians of the strategical employment of the "Forces" in general.

Though disappointing as a study by Sir John Fortescue, this book is very readable and will obviously be a standard work for all those interested in Army development.

PART II.—FICTION.

"Luck's Pendulum." By Colin Davey. (Constable & Co.).
7s. 6d. net.

This is described by the publishers as an open-air story of the Downs and the Racecourse. Unlike most publisher's puffs, in this case it is true.

Colin Davey has given us a racy and vivid narrative—at times rather full flavoured, perhaps—but nevertheless of well-sustained interest and good character drawing. The soldier-rider, the heroine, the hero, the bookmaker, Doulesco, all are clear-cut, lifelike types; while some of the descriptive passages reveal depths of appreciation and feeling uncommon in a tale of this kind.

Our author has handled his technical betting details with skill and knowledge; whilst maintaining the reader's interest he neither palls, nor bewilders one possibly not so agile in deductions or adequately versed in the intricacies of wagering.

He shows himself, too, equally at home in dealing with racing, boxing and love; the resulting blend can be confidently recommended to any readers wishing to pass a chilly autumn evening in the atmosphere of their favourite pastimes.

"For What Land?" By Ardern Beaman. (Constable & Co.)
Price 7s. 6d. net.

Victor Harlsdene, V.C., of Alexander's Horse, "a top-notch at all games" inherited Harlsdene Court with £40,000 a year. Believing himself to be almost a "Superman," he set out to make the estate a model one, and undertook various enterprises with a view to benefiting the local community. He was

so devoted to his schemes of development that, when asked to represent England in the International Polo Matches, he refused to do so, stating "I might have been spared this . . . but no trial is ever spared me." This, we think, stamps the man.

He was persuaded, however, to stand for Parliament in opposition to Morgan Matthews, a rich manufacturer but nevertheless the Communist candidate.

Meantime Victor's love affairs became strained and entangled, in spite of the fact that he was not a marrying man. He was deliberately pursued by Maude Malyon, Matthew's sister, and his liaison with her—he persisted in regarding a certain episode with her "as a praiseworthy act of chivalry"—finally brought about his fall from a self-supposed superman to an ordinary unsuccessful mortal. Incidentally Maude had a shell-shattered husband hidden away.

Joey Broadmead, too, was in love with Victor, who reciprocated the feeling, although he was not entirely cognizant of the fact. However, thanks to a hunting accident, Joey and Victor had to spend the night in a shed and rather than risk chills, wet clothes had to be removed. Being caught in this compromising situation, the girl's enraged grandfather insisted on marriage and Victor's contention that he was too busy to marry carried no weight. The suicide of Maude and the death of her husband scarcely alleviated matters, and gave his enemies a stick, with which he could be beaten with impunity. His personality failed to prevent the burning of his model factory, during which he was hit by a brick-bat. The injury received by Joey, who had rushed to help him, finally sealed his doom, and—"Joey had shorn him of his Samson locks." "Strong in maternal, instinctive, protective strength, she drew down this weaker vessel to the haven of her breast!" Such is the end of Superman Victor. Byron's saying "Man's love is of man's life a thing apart: 'tis woman's whole existence" applies well to this novel.

The book is well written, especially the description of a day's hunting; but it must be confessed that we do not like the author's hero.

“From Double Eagle to Red Flag.” By P. N. Krassnoff.
(Translated from the Second Russian Edition by Erik
Law-Gisiko). (G. Allen & Unwin, Ltd.). 21s. net.

“*Per Astra ad Aspera.*” Krassnoff’s historical novel which depicts life in Russia from the period just prior to the Russo-Japanese War up to the time of the Revolution, is one which is full of interest and gives the reader an insight into the causes of the revolution.

The hero of the novel is Sablin, a Russian aristocrat, serving in a crack cavalry regiment. He was a young officer surrounded by all the vices of life in St. Petersburg. Although he never saw the real danger to Russia which was arising out of the vicious life of her nobles and the officers of the Army, he himself rose above it all to high rank in the army, and to a position of trust on the Tsar’s personal staff.

The book ought to be of special interest to soldiers because it gives a very clear insight into the state of the army and into some of the problems which the more ambitious and professional soldiers had to face.

Before the Russo-Japanese War, ceremonial functions for the Tsar were being allowed to interfere with manœuvres. Balls and parties were taking place on manœuvres. Then came the conflict with Japan. “The War was going on while Russia lived its normal life and showed no interest in the events.” The Russian soldiery were beginning to imbibe education, they questioned and talked to the officers, but the latter were unable to unite with them; they were aloof—their ancestors rose between them.

The novel will correct the prevalent impression formed by those who do not know what were the true characters of the Tsar and his Empress. The Tsar, the educated classes, and the people were separated from each other. The educated classes and not the people were the Tsar’s real enemies.

The Tsar had Russia at heart. He could at that time have done something to bring himself nearer the people, but he was badly advised, and almost impotent. He was forced to sign the declaration of a constitution with freedom of conscience,

personality, meetings, and the Convocation of the State Duma.

The Duma had arisen between the Tsar and his people. It did not govern, it only criticised and showed the people the dark sides of the Government and of the Tsar. Clemencies and favours were given by the Duma ; capital punishment was carried out in the Emperor's name. The people were taught to blame the Tsar.

In spite of all this, and strange as it may seem, there might still have been hope for Russia. When the Great War began, there were no divisions into nobles and people ; there was but one nation with its Army, Officers and Tsar.

The Bolshevik element, however, was at work, and from the start their emissaries were sent to the Front to preach victory to the troops and yet to lead them to defeat. One of these was Sablin's illegitimate son.

The end was not far off. The early days of the Revolution are most vividly described—the murder of General Sablin by his own son perhaps too vividly.



SPORTING NOTES

ASCOT.

Everything tended to make the meeting a success. The weather was favourable, the going as perfect as it could be, and the attendance enormous. It is noteworthy that there is not a single race at the meeting worth less than £1,000.

From the point of view of racing the meeting was scarcely up to the standard of former years. Felstead, Fairway and Flamingo were all absent, and the remark of a well known writer on racing that never before in the history of Ascot have so many really moderate horses won good races is a fair criticism.

Finglas, who was heavily supported to win the Gold Cup, failed to resist a brilliant effort by Carslake on Invershin, but made amends by winning the Alexandra Stakes on the Friday. Priory Park added to his many victories by defeating twenty-four others in the Hunt Cup, carrying 8st. 12lbs., and that good mare Foliation who last year went down before the brilliant Coronach, had little difficulty in winning the Hardwicke Stakes.

In the races confined to three year olds, Royal Minstrel made amends for his running in the Derby by securing the valuable St. James' Palace Stakes. Toboggan confirmed the Oaks running by getting the better of Scuttle, the pair being split by Romany Queen in receipt of a stone, and Sunny Trace and Black Watch both went under to Cyclonic in the King Edward VII Stakes.

It is possible that the best of those that carried silk at the Meeting will be found amongst the two year olds. In the Queen Mary Stakes, Colonel G. Loder's Arabella, by Buchan—Polly Flinders, started at evens in a field of twenty-five and was always commanding the others. There is no saying how good she may be.

Another of whom much should be heard in the future is Major McCalmont's Mr. Jinks, by Tetratema—False Piety. He is undoubtedly very fast and won like a good colt.

Perhaps the most promising of the lot is Costaki Pasha, a very taking youngster and beautifully bred, being by Gainsborough—Cos.

He won the Chesham Stakes by five lengths in a field of sixteen. His dam was best over a short distance but the Gainsborough blood should counteract this and he certainly ran like a stayer in this race.

For once the bookmakers complained of having a bad Ascot. If they had it is about their turn, as if report speaks truly, it is not long since some of the biggest backers were forced to ask for time.

THE ECLIPSE STAKES.

Ever since his downfall in the Derby, there had been conflicting reports as to the wellbeing of Fairway, and up to the day of the race the horse was reported as being a doubtful starter.

That some people believed him to be alright is shown by the fact that between the parade and the start he was backed from 7 to 1 down to 9 to 2. In the race he was always well placed, and soon after entering the straight he took the lead, and drawing away at every stride, won by 8 lengths from Royal Minstrel, who was in turn half a length in front of Book Law.

The value of the Stakes was £13,306.

GOODWOOD.

Every year this Meeting becomes more popular with the public, and the number of cars is now so enormous that the question of getting there and back, especially for those coming from the direction of Midhurst, is assuming serious proportions.

Very few of the Classic horses were on view, and of those that were, Royal Minstrel made a bad hole in his reputation when failing to give 9 lbs. to Marconigram in the Sussex Stakes. He was well placed at the distance but was quite unable to produce the necessary burst of speed at the finish.

His Majesty's Scuttle gave a weak display on the Friday, and it is to be feared that she has trained off.

Cyclonic, on the other hand, put up a very fine performance in the Gordon Stakes, and will surely be hard to beat in the Leger. By Hurry-on—Volcanic he is bred to stay, and seems to improve every time he runs.

The two year old races produced at least one very speedy filly in Tiffin. She won the Ham Produce Stakes over 6 furlongs in a canter, and has not yet been extended in any of her three races.

Another of whom more should be heard is Lord Derby's Hunter's Moon, by Hurry On—Selene. On his first appearance he ran green, but is beautifully bred and will surely improve on this performance.

Of the older horses, Kinchinjunga showed us what a fine stayer he is when winning the Goodwood Cup over 2 miles 5 furlongs. He had to make his own running, but held off the successive challenges of Bois Josselyn and Dark Japan in gallant style. He was admirably ridden by Fox, who seems better this year than he has ever been.

In the Stewards' Cup the lightly weighted Navigator aided by the luck of the draw and the assistance of Richards in the saddle, had little difficulty in holding off the challenge of Endowment.

He was beautifully trained and there was a rush to back him as soon as he appeared in the paddock.

POLO.

THE INTER-REGIMENTAL POLO TOURNAMENT.

Thirteen teams entered for what is to many the most interesting event of the polo season. In the earlier rounds there were two minor surprises. The Bays, who are quartered at Colchester, a place at which it is always difficult to get any good class polo, had no difficulty in defeating the 16th/15th Lancers. Their form brought back recollections of the old days in the nineties when they carried all before them in Indian polo. The two Fanshawes were outstanding in a game in which there was plenty of hard hitting and close combination. Previous to this the 11th Hussars had gone down before the K.D.G's.

The 11th have a strong team but were perhaps rather upset by the recent changes in organization which has resulted in their being temporarily split up. We shall hope to see them back in their old form next year.

The Gunners were expected to show even better form than they did last year, but never seemed to get going. They were unfortunate in losing two of their best ponies, but they are now much better off in this respect than they used to be as we understand they have a considerable fund subscribed to by officers of the R.A.

The London experts predicted something in the nature of a walk over in the final, so much so that an enthusiast who has not missed a final for more years than he would like to remember, went to Henley instead. As a result he missed a magnificent struggle in which the 17th/21st had to draw on every ounce of their reserves to get the better of the Bays, and even then it was probably only the superiority of their ponies that turned the scale.

There is probably not a great deal in it between the six best regiments, and if the tournament was played over again it would occasion no surprise to see two different teams in the final.

Perhaps the most promising of the younger players is Mr. M. P. Ansell, son of that fine player the late Colonel G. K. Ansell, who was killed when gallantly leading the 5th Dragoon Guards at Nery. He has only been at the game three or four years and has all the makings of a first-class player.

The results are given below :—

FIRST TIES.

<i>16th/5th Lancers</i>	beat	<i>3rd/6th Dragoon Guards</i>
Mr. G. Babinton		Capt. S. B. Horn
Capt. A. W. M. S. Pilkington		Capt. W. T. Gill
Mr. C. H. Tyrrel-Martin		Capt. A. B. P. L. Vincent
Capt. D. W. E. Norton		Mr. A. F. Holland
8 goals		4 goals
<i>Queen's Bays</i>	beat	<i>10th Hussars</i>
Capt. G. W. C. Draffen		Mr. C. B. Harvey
Mr. A. H. Barclay		Major D. Richardson
Capt. G. H. Fanshawe		Capt. C. Gairdner
Capt. E. D. Fanshawe		Major W. G. Horne
11 goals		6 goals

<i>Royal Horse Guards</i>	beat	<i>Life Guards</i>
Mr. F. G. W. Jackson		Mr. T. A. Fairhurst
Capt. H. R. Broughton		Mr. F. E. B. Wignall
Mr. W. M. Sale		Capt. R. A. F. Thorp
Capt. Lord Molyneux		Mr. A. H. Ferguson
9 goals		3 goals
<i>Royal Artillery</i>	beat	<i>14th/20th Hussars</i>
Mr. B. W. Fowler		Mr. J. D. G. Chaytor
Capt. H. G. Morrison		Capt. G. M. Hamer
Capt. J. C. Campbell		Lieut. Col. F. B. Hurndall
Capt. C. W. Allfrey		Capt. J. D. L. de Wend-Fenton
7 goals		3 goals
<i>King's Dragoon Guards</i>	beat	<i>11th Hussars</i>
Major L. W. H. Sprot		Major J. C. Humfrey
Major T. H. Gladstone		Capt. R. W. Verelst
Major H. S. Hatfield		Capt. C. H. Tremayne
Capt. R. L. Greenshields		Mr. R. A. G. Bingley
5 goals		4 goals

The following drew Bys :

<i>7th Hussars</i>	<i>Royal Scots Greys</i>
Mr. H. B. Moorhead	Mr. H. R. Mackeson
Mr. R. B. Sheppard	Major G. F. Pigot-Moodie
Lieut. Col. T. A. Thornton	Mr. H. P. Guinness
Major G. C. A. Breitmeyer	Major J. M. Graham
and	
<i>17th/21st Lancers</i>	
Mr. R. B. B. Cooke	
Mr. D. C. J. Miller	
Mr. H. W. Forester	
Major D. C. Boles	

SECOND TIES

<i>16th/5th Lancers</i>	beat	<i>7th Hussars</i>
9 goals		7 goals
<i>Queen's Bays</i>	beat	<i>Royal Horse Guards</i>
7 goals		1 goal
<i>Royal Artillery</i>	beat	<i>Royal Scots Greys</i>
8 goals		1 goal
<i>17th/21st Lancers</i>	beat	<i>King's Dragoon Guards</i>
6 goals		3 goals

SEMI-FINALS

<i>Queen's Bays</i>	beat	<i>16th/5th Lancers</i>
8 goals		5 goals

For the first three chukkers there was not a great deal in it. Draffen and G. H. Fanshawe each scored in the first, but their opponents scored the only goal in the second, and early in the third a nice shot by Pilkington made the score level. Draffen, however, scored again for the Bays, and at half-time

the score was 3—2. The fourth chukker was rather in favour of the 16th/5th. The Bays scored once, but a couple of goals by Pilkington and Norton made the score 4—4.

In the fifth the Bays scored twice and the 16th/5th once, so there was only the odd goal in it at the commencement of the last.

During this period the Bays played better polo than at any time during the match, and Draffen and Barclay each scoring, they ran out clever winners by 8—5.

<i>17th/21st Lancers</i>	beat	<i>Royal Artillery</i>
8 goals		4 goals

This was expected to be a desperately close match as the Artillery had been playing well all through the season, but they were caught on an off day.

There was not much in it during the first chukker, a goal for the 17th/21st by Miller being the only one scored.

In the second the 17th/21st quickly scored twice, and though Fowler added a goal for the Gunners, Bowles neutralised this by scoring another for his side.

The third also went in favour of the 17th/21st, as Forester and Cooke put their side in an unassailable position by each hitting through, and the score at half time was 6—1.

At this period a sudden change came over the game. The Gunners got together. They more than held their opponents, and with Morrison and Fowler playing at the top of their form the score was quickly raised to 6—4. This roused the others but the Gunners still played well and were unlucky when another goal was scored against them at the moment when their back was off the field changing a pony.

This settled it, and a very fine run by Miller brought the score to 8—4.

THE FINAL

<i>17th/21st Lancers</i>	beat	<i>The Queen's Bays</i>
7 goals		6 goals

In this game the 17th/21st were $7\frac{1}{2}$ goals the better on handicap and it is more often in racing than polo that hot favourites go down. The Bays, however, were within an ace of upsetting the odds.

At the beginning of the game they adopted the American tactics of setting a real hot pace from the start, and before the 17th/21st had time to look round the score was 2—0 against them. In fact they seemed for the moment to be a bit rattled, and two shots from favourable positions went wide. Forester then scored, but Draffen soon afterwards gave the Bays back their two goals lead.

The third chukker saw a sudden change. Cooke turned through a long shot from Forester, and, mounted on a very fast pony, broke away from the throw in and scored again. Shortly afterwards Cooke again put through with a screw shot from a very awkward angle. Thus at half time the 17th/21st were leading 4—3.

It was a ding dong struggle during the fourth and fifth chukkers, but the run of the play was slightly in favour of the 17th/21st, and they entered the final chukker with an advantage of two goals. The Bays, however, were far from being done with. They set about their opponents in determined style. G. H. Fanshawe scored with a great drive from over sixty yards range, and, on the run of the play they were rather unlucky not to equalise; and the 17th/21st must have been relieved when the bell rang with their side still leading by the odd goal.

It was a grand match, and whilst congratulating the 17th/21st on yet another victory one could not withhold one's sympathy with the very gallant losers. No matter what they take on one never knows when the Bays are beaten.

THE SUBALTERNS' CUP

The result appeared to be almost a foregone conclusion in view of the fact that the 17th/21st Lancers were represented by the same team that had already won in four consecutive years, and in the final played at Ranelagh on 14th July, they had little difficulty in defeating the 7th Hussars, who were 13 points worse on handicap, by 8 goals to 2.

SEMI-FINALS

<i>17th/21st Lancers</i>	beat	<i>Life Guards</i>
Mr. R. B. B. Cooke		Mr. T. A. Fairhurst
Mr. H. C. Walford		Mr. F. E. B. Wignall
Mr. D. C. J. Miller		Mr. G. W. Pennington
Mr. H. W. Forester		Mr. A. H. Ferguson
14 goals		Nil

The match needs little description. The Life Guards rode hard and hit well, but the team play and stick work of their opponents was too much for them and they never quite looked like scoring.

<i>7th Hussars</i>	beat	<i>Royal Horse Guards</i>
Mr. J. G. P. Andain		Mr. F. G. W. Jackson
Mr. H. P. Moorhead		Mr. W. M. Sale
Mr. R. B. Sheppard		Lord Erne
Mr. F. R. C. Fosdick		Mr. H. Abel-Smith
4 goals		3 goals

The 7th Hussars started well, and at the end of the second chukker were leading 2—0. In the third the Blues rallied and scored twice in quick succession. They took the lead in the fourth, but in the fifth the 7th equalized, and there being no score in the sixth extra time was played.

Taking advantage of a momentary disorganization on the part of the Blues, Mr. Moorhead broke away and hit the winning goal. A feature of the game was the strong hitting out by Mr. Fosdick.

THE POLO SEASON OF 1928

From Notes by an Observer

That there is no falling off in the general popularity of polo is shown by the large demands for stabling with which the London clubs have had to cope during the past season, and by the number of clubs which have taken part in the various matches.

Between twenty and thirty have been represented, the handicaps of the teams varying in aggregate from over thirty to less than half that number. This has thrown a great strain on the managers of the London clubs, who have been hard put to it to arrange for the large number of teams entered in the various tournaments, and have had considerable difficulty in finding sufficient polo grounds and maintaining those which have been available in a satisfactory condition owing to incessant play.

Reports from the Country clubs have been on the whole encouraging. Although Stoke D'Abernon must be added to the list of those which have closed down, many others such as Rugby, Melton Mowbray, Cirencester, Cheltenham, Fleet, Aldershot, Tidworth, Manchester, Liverpool, etc., continue to flourish.

Whether there has been any general advance in the standard of play may be judged from the fact that whilst the number of first class teams now playing can be easily counted on the fingers of one hand, there are probably ten which, although not first class, are capable of giving a good display. In fact, though the "stars" are few and far between it is probable that the general level has slightly advanced.

In the question of weather, players have been unusually fortunate this year. In the earlier part of the season one or two tournaments, notably the Whitney and Buenos Ayres Cups were considerably interfered with by rain, but the majority of tournaments have been played off without hindrance.

The two best teams of the season, as originally formed, were the Hurricanes, viz. : Sanford, Roark, Wise and Harrison ; and El Gordo, consisting of the Duke of Paranda, Villabraggina, Lacey and Traill. They each qualified for the Coronation Cup by winning either the Champion Cup at Hurlingham, the Open Cup at Ranelagh, or the Roehampton Open Cup, the former team winning at Hurlingham and Roehampton. It is doubtful whether Wise had fully recovered from his accident earlier in the season, so that in the Coronation Cup the defeat of the Hurricanes by El Gordo can hardly be taken as a true line to the form. However, El Gordo were at the top of their form and they had the firm surface of the Old Ground at Ranelagh to play on, which precisely suited each of their players. They won chiefly because they were quicker than their opponents. In a series of matches between these two teams it is probable that the balance would be in favour of El Gordo at Ranelagh, whereas the reverse would be the case at Hurlingham.

Of the military teams playing regularly in London the first to get going was the "M" Battery (St. John's Wood) team and they were deservedly the first winners of the Ranelagh Fortnightly Cup. In Elton they have a young player of much promise.

The Blues and Life Guards each had two teams playing and have much improved in team work. They would be more successful in their more important matches if they could put a little more "pep" and quickness into their attacks. Lord Molyneux, Abel Smith, Thorp, Ferguson and others have done well in bringing up the general standard of play.

There was no lack of promising young players taking part in the Regimental and Subalterns' Cups. The ability is there. The important thing, in addition of course to constant practice, is the temperament which rises to a big occasion. It is this which is most difficult to develop, but much can be done in this direction by steady mental training and this is a thing all young players should study.

JUMPING AT OLYMPIA.

Only three countries competed for the Prince of Wales's Challenge Cup—namely Belgium, France and England.

The Cup was won by the English team, which was made up by Broncho, ridden by Colonel Malise Graham ; Sea Count, ridden by Captain W. H. Muir ; and War Baby, ridden by Captain E. B. de Fonblanque. No horse made more than half a fault and they won with a nice balance in hand.

France, represented by Lieutenant H. Gibault on Quinine, Lieutenant H. Bizard on Sultan ; and Captain A. de Laissardière on Zapatéado, was reserve.

The English team has now won the Cup three years in succession.

The Connaught Cup attracted seventy-three entries, and was won by Captain D. A. Stirling, 13th/18th Hussars, on Nancy. He had previously won in 1926 on the same mare.

The second prize was shared by the 14th/20th Hussars, Girlie ; Captain N. A. Coxwell-Rogers, Maid Marion ; Lieutenant R. M. Carr, Red Rover ; and the Equitation School, Sunny Maid.

The Canadian Challenge Cup for horses ridden by officers of any nationality, brought about a very interesting competition, and was eventually won by Devil Kidney, owned by the 14th/20th Hussars, and ridden by Lieutenant W. B. Pemberton. Lieutenant Bizard's Sultan was second.

ARMY CRICKET IN 1928

Only three matches were played, against the Royal Navy, the Royal Air Force and the Public Schools, of which one was won, one lost and one drawn.

That the matches against Oxford and Cambridge have been abandoned is very much regretted on all sides, but the matter was very carefully considered

before the decision was made, and it certainly appeared to be the wisest course to take. It was becoming increasingly difficult to collect the best Army XI for these matches ; and anything short of the best was not good enough to beat either University, perhaps even to extend them.

The University season is short, and the object of the captain of a 'Varsity team is, quite rightly, to arrange a programme of matches that will rapidly bring his side up to concert pitch, and enable him to discern quickly the merits of the players. The matches had to be played, at latest, early in June, and many Army players had had very little practice by then because of musketry or training. Army players frequently arrived for the first match without either having bowled in a match or batted outside a net. An indifferent player who has practised assiduously is more likely to succeed than a good one who has had little or no practice. It is not suggested that any of those who play for their University are indifferent performers, but it is a fact that all who do play have been practising or playing in a match, every day since about 25th April.

Army teams had just about held their own in these matches in the past, but there was beginning to appear a possibility of their being beaten year after year until one or both University Committees decided that the Army were not good enough to give them the practice they required. With this possibility ahead it appeared advisable for the Army to take the initiative and call the matches off, for the simple reason that there was no prospect of the conditions under which the matches were played changing, nor of the time at which the matches were played being altered.

The first match, against the Royal Air Force, was played at the Oval, and three days were allotted to it. The Army had played the Air Force for two or three years after the war, but the match had been dropped because the Air Force were too weak to make a game of it. Cricket in the Air Force has however made considerable progress, and it was therefore decided to revive the match.

The Army did not under-estimate the strength of the opposition and put a thoroughly representative side into the field, confident of success. That the Air Force should have won decisively by ten wickets does not necessarily imply that their confidence was misplaced, for even the keenest supporters of the Air Force would have to admit that their success was due in no small measure to the vagaries of the climate.

Batting on the easiest of Oval wickets the Air Force took nearly the whole of the first day to make about 280 runs, and, if the catches had come more easily, they would never have made 200, for half a dozen difficult chances were missed, besides a couple of rather easy ones. Miles (K.S.L.I.) had the best figures of the Army bowlers, and he bowled very steadily ; but fortune never smiled on Hill (R.A.) who stuck to his work admirably. Gore was frankly disappointing as a bowler and might perhaps be more agile in the field. Lewis-Barclay (Signals) showed promise, but Kirkwood never appeared difficult.

In spite of the missed catches the Army fielding was never bad. E. S. B. Williams (R.B.) who has succeeded Tudor as Captain, sets such a magnificent example, that so long as he is fielding at cover point the standard of the fielding of the whole side appears to be raised. Hudson's fielding too is above reproach, but the same cannot be said for all, particularly the younger members of the team which is a great pity.

After dismissing the Air Force the Army made twenty runs or so without loss before stumps were drawn, and those two Army batsmen would testify that the wicket was a batsman's paradise. Rain during the night, however, spelt disaster to the Army, for the wicket was converted into a genuine glue pot. Fulljames, bowling slow left hand, found the conditions entirely to his liking, and made every use of them. He took seven wickets for less than thirty runs, and the Army were out for just over 100. Following on, the Army quickly discovered that the wicket had not improved, and though they doubled their first innings score the Air Force had plenty of time to make the twenty odd runs required for victory. Fulljames was again the most destructive of the Air Force bowlers.

Williams was top scorer for the Army in both innings and Hudson played well in the second innings, but as far as the rest were concerned the Army batting was not distinguished.

It is regrettable that the spin of a coin can play such a decisive part in the result of a cricket match.

Nevertheless the Army were not to be denied the satisfaction of avenging their last three years' defeat by the Navy, and a ten wicket victory fairly represented the run of the game. Batting the whole of the first day the Army made over 600 runs without losing all their wickets. Williams played a great innings of 228 and Brooke (R.A.), Hudson (R.A.), and Bryan (R.E.) all contributed their share. The Navy bowling was not good. The untimely death of Cadell deprived them of their one bowler who could keep an end going. Their fielding, however, particularly Halsey at cover point, was as good as ever.

All out for under 300 the Navy were obliged to follow on, and thanks to a most courageous stand between Halsey and Cunliffe not only was the innings defeat averted, but the Army had to make forty runs to win. Halsey, it may be added, had batted admirably in the first innings. Arnold was the most successful Army bowler, and in the first innings bowled really well. Hill was again unfortunate, but if he had had a really good first slip he would have got at least four more wickets.

The Army fielding was good in this match, Williams as usual immaculate, but reliable slip catchers are urgently required.

The Public Schools match fizzled out in a colourless draw. Howlett (West Kents), Dynes (R.A.S.C.), and Arnold were responsible for dismissing the Schools for about 150, and the Army then obtained a first innings lead of 130. Rogers (Devons) and Dynes between them made nearly half the runs.

Dropped catches enabled the Schools to make a capital recovery, and after lunch on the second day the prospect of an Army victory faded out of sight. In the end the Schools declared and left the Army 130 to get in just over an hour. The Army set out to try and win the match, but Williams, Hudson and Rogers all lost their wickets before twenty runs had been scored and so departed any chance of forcing a win.

From the point of view of the future the season was not satisfactory. With the possible exception of Dynes no new young players have been found. In the Public Schools match several younger players were tried who were not well known, but they did not prove that they are now ready to step into the shoes of the more seasoned players, who have been holding the fort for many a year. In fact it was very significant that Brooke, who has been abroad for five years, showed clearly in the first innings that he played for the Army that he is still an indispensable member of a representative Army XI. The crying need of the moment is for a really good slow spin bowler. It was hoped that Carbutt (R.A.), who has just returned from India, would fill the breach, but he failed altogether to reproduce the form that earned him a place in the Combined Services side against the Australians in 1921. Hill's fast bowling has been an invaluable asset, and Howlett is ready to take his place. Arnold is a really good end bowler who is capable of getting good players out, and Miles can bowl all day without giving much away, but there is no good slow leg break bowler. There is no anxiety about the batting for Williams played better this year than ever before, and Brooke, Bryan, Hudson and Rogers are all capable of making hundreds in almost any company. As an all rounder Miles is first rate value, and there is no need at the moment to look for a successor to Stanyforth behind the wicket.

Let us hope that next year, again under Williams' very capable leadership, the Army will return to its palmiest days and win all its matches.



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY
BERKELEY

Return to desk from which borrowed.
This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

9 Nov 50 MB

LIBRARY USE

OCT 20 1953

LD 21-100m-11, '49 (B7146s16) 476

